



10-17-08

JFW AF

PTO/SB/17 (10-08)

Approved for use through 06/30/2010. OMB 0651-0032  
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no person are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number

<b>FEE TRANSMITTAL</b> <b>For FY 2009</b>		<b>Complete if Known</b>	
		Application Number	08/977,846
		Filing Date	November 25, 1997
		First Named Inventor	John O. RYAN
		Examiner Name	I. Borissov
<input type="checkbox"/> Applicant claims small entity status. See 37 CFR 1.27		Art Unit	3628
<b>TOTAL AMOUNT OF PAYMENT</b>		<b>(\$)</b>	<b>540.00</b>
		Attorney Docket No.	549222000101

<b>METHOD OF PAYMENT</b> (check all that apply)	
<input type="checkbox"/> Check	<input type="checkbox"/> Credit Card
<input type="checkbox"/> Money Order	<input type="checkbox"/> None
<input type="checkbox"/> Other (please identify): _____	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Deposit Account	Deposit Account Number: 03-1952
Deposit Account Name: Morrison & Foerster LLP	
For the above-identified deposit account, the Director is hereby authorized to: (check all that apply)	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Charge fee(s) indicated below	<input type="checkbox"/> Charge fee(s) indicated below, except for the filing fee
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Charge any additional fee(s) or underpayments of fee(s) under 37 CFR 1.16 and 1.17	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Credit any overpayments

<b>FEE CALCULATION</b>							
<b>1. BASIC FILING, SEARCH, AND EXAMINATION FEES</b>							
	<b>FILING FEES</b>		<b>SEARCH FEES</b>		<b>EXAMINATION FEES</b>		
		<b>Small Entity</b>		<b>Small Entity</b>		<b>Small Entity</b>	
<b>Application Type</b>	<b>Fee (\$)</b>	<b>Fee (\$)</b>	<b>Fee (\$)</b>	<b>Fee (\$)</b>	<b>Fee (\$)</b>	<b>Fee (\$)</b>	<b>Fees Paid (\$)</b>
Utility	330	165	540	270	220	110	0.00
Design	220	110	100	50	140	70	0.00
Plant	220	110	330	165	170	85	0.00
Reissue	330	165	540	270	650	325	0.00
Provisional	220	110	0	0	0	0	0.00
<b>2. EXCESS CLAIM FEES</b>							
						<b>Small Entity</b>	
						<b>Fee (\$)</b>	<b>Fee (\$)</b>
Each claim over 20 (including Reissues)						52	26
Each independent claim over 3 (including Reissues)						220	110
Multiple dependent claims						390	195
<b>Total Claims</b>		<b>Extra Claims</b>	<b>Fee (\$)</b>	<b>Fee Paid (\$)</b>	<b>Multiple Dependent Claims</b>		
59		59	0	52.00	0.00		
HP = highest number of total claims paid for, if greater than 20.						<b>Fee (\$)</b>	<b>Fee Paid (\$)</b>
						390.00	0.00
<b>Indep. Claims</b>		<b>Extra Claims</b>	<b>Fee (\$)</b>	<b>Fee Paid (\$)</b>			
2		2	0	220.00	0.00		
HP = highest number of independent claims paid for, if greater than 3.							
<b>3. APPLICATION SIZE FEE</b>							
If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper (excluding electronically filed sequence or computer listings under 37 CFR 1.52(e)), the application size fee due is \$270 (\$135 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR 1.16(s).							
<b>Total Sheets</b>	<b>Extra Sheets</b>	<b>Number of each additional 50 or fraction thereof</b>			<b>Fee (\$)</b>	<b>Fee Paid (\$)</b>	
_____	- 100 = _____	/50 = 0 (round up to a whole number) x			270.00	= 0.00	
<b>4. OTHER FEE(S)</b>							
Non-English Specification, \$130 fee (no small entity discount)							
Other (e.g., late filing surcharge): 1402 Filing a brief in support of an appeal						540.00	

<b>SUBMITTED BY</b>			
Signature		Registration No. (Attorney/Agent)	33,003
Telephone	(650) 813-5850		
Name (Print/Type)	Norman R. Klivans	Date	October 15, 2008



PTO/SB/21 (09-08)

Approved for use through 10/31/2008. OMB 0651-0031

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

**TRANSMITTAL  
FORM**

(to be used for all correspondence after initial filing)

<b>TRANSMITTAL FORM</b>  (to be used for all correspondence after initial filing)	Application Number	08/977,846	
	Filing Date	November 25, 1997	
	First Named Inventor	John O. RYAN	
	Art Unit	3628	
	Examiner Name	I. Borissov	
Total Number of Pages in This Submission	38 + Binder	Attorney Docket Number	549222000101

**ENCLOSURES (Check all that apply)**

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Fee Transmittal Form (1 page)  <input type="checkbox"/> Fee Attached  <input type="checkbox"/> Amendment/Reply  <input type="checkbox"/> After Final  <input type="checkbox"/> Affidavits/declaration(s)  <input type="checkbox"/> Extension of Time Request  <input type="checkbox"/> Express Abandonment Request  <input type="checkbox"/> Information Disclosure Statement  <input type="checkbox"/> Certified Copy of Priority Document(s)  <input type="checkbox"/> Reply to Missing Parts/Incomplete Application  <input type="checkbox"/> Reply to Missing Parts under 37 CFR 1.52 or 1.53	<input type="checkbox"/> Drawing(s)  <input type="checkbox"/> Licensing-related Papers  <input type="checkbox"/> Petition  <input type="checkbox"/> Petition to Convert to a Provisional Application  <input type="checkbox"/> Power of Attorney, Revocation Change of Correspondence Address  <input type="checkbox"/> Terminal Disclaimer  <input type="checkbox"/> Request for Refund  <input type="checkbox"/> CD, Number of CD(s) _____  <input type="checkbox"/> Landscape Table on CD	<input type="checkbox"/> After Allowance Communication to TC  <input type="checkbox"/> Appeal Communication to Board of Appeals and Interferences  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Appeal Communication to TC (Appeal Notice, Brief, Reply Brief) (36 pages - including 2 tabs)  <input type="checkbox"/> Proprietary Information  <input type="checkbox"/> Status Letter  <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Other Enclosure(s) (please identify below): Appeal Brief Appendix (1 Binder)
<b>Remarks</b>		

**SIGNATURE OF APPLICANT, ATTORNEY, OR AGENT**

Firm Name	MORRISON & FOERSTER LLP (Customer No. 25226)		
Signature			
Printed name	Norman R. Klivans		
Date	October 15, 2008	Reg. No.	33,003

I hereby certify that this paper is being deposited with the U.S. Postal Service as Express Mail, Airbill No. EV 456359271 US, on the date shown below in an envelope addressed to: MS Appeal Brief - Patents, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

Dated: October 15, 2008

Signature: (Jeremy Garcia)



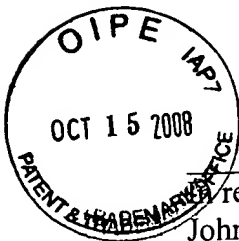
I hereby certify that this paper is being deposited with the U.S. Postal Service as Express Mail, Airbill No. EV 456359271 US, on the date shown below in an envelope addressed to: MS Appeal Brief - Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

Dated: October 15, 2008

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

(Jeremy Garcia)

Docket No.: 549222000101  
(PATENT)



## IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Re Patent Application of:  
John O. RYAN

Application No.: 08/977,846

Confirmation No.: 3572

Filed: November 25, 1997

Art Unit: 3628

For: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR  
INFORMATION DISSEMINATION WITH  
USER MENU INTERFACE (AS AMENDED)

Examiner: I. Borissov

### APPEAL BRIEF

MS Appeal Brief - Patents  
Commissioner for Patents  
P. O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Dear Sir:

Appellant submits this Brief following the Notice of Appeal in this case dated  
October 8, 2008.

#### Real Party in Interest

The real party in interest is the assignee, Command Audio Corp.

#### Related Appeals and Interferences

None.

10/17/2008 SSANDARA 00000004 031952 08977846  
01 FC:1402 540.00 DA

### Status of Claims

Claims 1 and 33-90 were pending, Claims 65-90 have been withdrawn from consideration and do not appear in the Claims Appendix of this Brief. Claims 1 and 33-64 stand rejected. The rejection of all pending claims is appealed here. The Office Action of July 8, 2008 resulted in pending claims being twice rejected.

### Status of Amendments

No amendments were filed subsequent to any final rejection. There are no unentered amendments.

### Summary of Claimed Subject Matter

This summary shows support for each claim element for those claims for which patentability is argued here, referring to the as-filed specification by page and line number and the figures by reference number.

Claim 1: A receiver (page 2, lines 27-28; Fig. 1, item 10) adapted to receive data contained in a transmitted broadcast signal (page 4, line 17) comprising:

    a tuner (page 4, line 20; Fig. 1, item 12) for receiving a broadcast signal;

    a memory (page 5, line 7; Fig. 1, item 28) coupled to the tuner for storing data in the received broadcast signal in a database (page 6, line 19);

    a user interface (page 6, line 24; Fig. 1, item 40) for providing a set of menus (page 6, line 21) describing the database, and for accepting selections from the set of menus (page 6, lines 21-23);

    a controller (page 20, line 20; Fig. 1, item 20) coupled to the memory and the user interface for selecting data from the database in response to the accepted selections (page 6, lines 20-24) and providing the selected data in a digital form (page 5, lines 22-24; Fig. 1, items 39, 45); and

a speech producing sub-system (page 6, line 11; Fig. 1, items 39, 45) coupled to the controller and the memory for converting the selected data from digital form to an analog signal (page 5, lines 22-24; Fig. 1, item 30).

Claim 58: A method for information dissemination comprising the acts of:

- receiving the information at a receiver (page 2, line 20; Fig. 1, item 10);
- storing the received information in a database (page 6, line 19) in memory in the receiver (page 5, line 7; Fig. 1, item 28);
- providing a set of menus (page 6, lines 21-23) describing the database;
- accepting selections from the set of menus (page 6, lines 20-24);
- selecting data from the database in response to the accepted selection (page 6, line 24);
- providing the selected data in digital form (page 5, lines 22-24); and
- converting the selected data to an analog signal (page 5, line 24; Fig. 1 item 30) played from the receiver (page 5, line 24; Fig. 1, items 36, 38).

Claim 62: The receiver of Claim 1, wherein the receiver is adapted to receive and store in the memory continuous updates of the data (page 7, line 24 to page 8, line 7).

Claim 63: The receiver of Claim 62, wherein received items of data include a data stamp thereby to indicate currency of the data (page 13, lines 5-7).

Claim 64: The receiver of Claim 1, wherein the receiver is adapted to disable itself upon receipt of a command received via the tuner (page 9, lines 27 to 30).

**REMARKS****Grounds of Rejection To Be Reviewed On Appeal**

(The following corresponds to the Examiner's numbering of his rejections in the last Office Action dated July 8, 2008 – there were no rejections numbered 8 or 9)

**Rejections under 35 USC §102(a)**

1. Claims 1, 33-37, 39-40, 51, 58-61 stand rejected as anticipated by Yoshio et al (JP4310631).

**Rejections under 35 USC §103(a)**

2. Claims 38, 41-44, 52 and 54-56 stand rejected as unpatentable over Yoshio et al (JP4310631) in view of De Bey (WO 99/03112).

3. Claims 45-50 and 57 stand rejected as unpatentable over Yoshio et al (JP4310631) in view of Official Notice.

4. Claim 53 stands rejected as unpatentable over Yoshio et al (JP4310631) in view of De Bey (WO 99/03112) and further in view of Official Notice.

5. Claims 1, 33-44, 52, 54-56 and 58-62 stand rejected as unpatentable over De Bey (WO 99/03112) and further in view of Yoshio et al (JP4310631).

6. Claims 45-51, 53 and 57 stand rejected as unpatentable over De Bey (WO 99/03112) in view of Yoshio et al (JP4310631). and further in view of Official Notice.

7. Claims 1, 33-37, 49, 52, 54-56 and 58-61 stand rejected as unpatentable over Lang (5,057,932) in view of Yoshio et al (JP4310631).

10. Claims 38, 41 and 42 stand rejected as unpatentable over Lang (5,057,932) in view of Yoshio et al (JP4310631), and further in view of Rovira (WO 92/10040).

11. Claims 39-40, 45-48, 50-51, 53 and 57 stand rejected as unpatentable over Lang (5,057,932) in view of Yoshio et al (JP4310631), and further in view Official Notice.

12. Claims 43 and 44 stand rejected as unpatentable over Lang (5,057,932) in view of Yoshio et al (JP4310631), further in view of Rovira (WO 92/10040) and further in view of De Bey (WO 99/03112).

13. Claim 63 stands rejected as unpatentable over Yoshio et al. (JP 4310631) in view of Ryan (US 5,590,195).

14. Claim 63 stands rejected as unpatentable over De Bey (WO 99/03112) in view of Yoshio et al. (JP 4310631) and further in view of Ryan (US 5,590,195).

15. Claim 64 stands rejected as unpatentable over Yoshio et al. (JP 4310631) in view of Myers et al. (US 5,272,752).

16. Claim 64 stands rejected as unpatentable over De Bey (WO 99/03112) in view of Yoshio et al. (JP 4310631) and further in view of Myers et al. (US 5,272,752).

To simplify, there are three rejections of each of independent Claims 1 and 58. These are the rejections numbered by the Examiner as 1, 5 and 7, these numbers being indicated above. In rejection 1, Claims 1 and 58 were rejected as anticipated by Yoshio (hereinafter "Yoshio"). In rejection 5, Claims 1 and 58 were rejected under §103 as unpatentable over De Bey in view of Yoshio. In rejection 7, Claims 1 and 58 were rejected as unpatentable over Lang in view of Yoshio. The remaining rejections applied only to dependent claims.

### **ARGUMENT**

#### **I. Rejection of Claims 1 and 58 Over Yoshio.**

The Examiner rejected independent Claims 1 and 58 as anticipated by Yoshio.

Appellant earlier submitted a second (certified) translation of Yoshio in the Information Disclosure Statement filed February 7, 2008, of record. The second translation provided clarification regarding some terminology used in Yoshio. For example, in the first submitted

translation of Yoshio, the word “receiver” was used to refer to the person receiving information (the listener) and the device for receiving the information was referred to as “receiving equipment”. In the second translation, the person receiving information is more appropriately referred to as the “recipient” or “information recipient” and the equipment for receiving transmitted information is referred to as a “receiver”. The second translation uses the same page, paragraph and line numbers as the first translation. A marked copy of the second translation was also submitted which shows the changes made from the earlier translation. In the marked copy, additions are underlined and deletions are strikethroughs.

A. Yoshio Does Not Anticipate Claims 1 and 58

1. Yoshio Does Not Disclose Claimed Combination

Claim 1 is directed at a receiver comprising components that are coupled to one another, both for storing data in a received broadcast signal in a database and for selecting items of data from the database to be provided from the receiver. Claim 1 requires, among other things, a tuner, a memory coupled to the tuner, a user interface and a controller coupled to the memory and the user interface for selecting the items of data from the database in response to the accepted selections and providing the selected data from the memory in a digital form. Claim 58 as amended is directed at a method for receiving a broadcast signal at a receiver, storing information from the broadcast signal in a database in a memory of the receiver, selecting data from the database and converting the selected data to an analog signal played from the receiver.

Yoshio does not disclose a receiver as set forth in Claim 1 or a method performed at a receiver as set forth in Claim 58. As shown in Figure 1 of Yoshio, Yoshio describes a system with three main components – (1) an information provider (broadcasting station), (2) a receiver and optical disk recording device, and (3) a portable optical disk playback device separate from the receiver.

The receiver in Yoshio does not include the combination of elements claimed in each of independent Claims 1 and 58. Rather, in rejecting Claims 1 and 58, the Examiner relied on portions of Yoshio describing other components of the system that are not part of the receiver.

For example, the Examiner referenced Yoshio page 23, line 25 as teaching a user interface. However, this portion of Yoshio does not describe the Yoshio receiver at all and rather describes steps that occur at the broadcasting station prior to broadcast to the receiver. This paragraph refers to “information providers” that provide the audio signal, perform item classification and transmit the resulting audio signal. See also Figure 1, first box, labeled “Information provider (broadcast station)” which includes “Audio signal input”, “Item classification”, “Signal compression” and “Transmitter”. As stated on page 24, lines 5-6, after these steps occur at the broadcast station, the “thus edited audio information is transmitted by information providers using a transmitter.”

The Examiner also referenced Yoshio page 23, lines 21-23 as teaching a speech producing sub-system coupled to the controller and the memory of the claimed receiver. However, this passage also refers to the broadcasting station and not to the receiver. In particular, this passage refers to the conversion of audio information into electrical signals before transmission by the broadcaster (and not to a speech producing sub-system for converting selected data from digital form to an analog signal for output from a receiver).

The Examiner also referenced Yoshio page 25, lines 24-25 as teaching a controller coupled to the memory and user interface of the receiver. However, this passage refers to the playback device and not the receiver. It should be noted that the playback device in Yoshio is separate from the receiver and no mechanical or electrical coupling there between is disclosed or needed. Rather, the recorded disk is physically removed from the receiver/optical disk recording device and manually transferred by the user to his playback device. See Yoshio page 28, lines 1-2 (“the magneto-optical disk having recorded news information recorded therein is moved to a compact optical disk playback device”). See also Yoshio Figure 3 showing the input port 1 (shown as a slot in the side of the playback device) through which the recorded disk is inserted into the playback device.

Yoshio’s description of the receiver is minimal, and at best discloses it only as a means for recording information formatted by the “information provider” onto the consumer’s optical disk recording device. The receiver is only mentioned in three passages of Yoshio as follows:

1. On page 23, lines 10-14, Yoshio states that “the information recipients receive the thus transmitted audio information by means of a receiver, the information is temporarily recorded in a rewritable optical disk by means of an optical disk recording device”.

2. On page 25, lines 2-15, Yoshio states that “The thus sent audio information is received by means of a receiver at the home of an information recipient, and the received audio information is stored in a rewritable optical disk by means of an optical disk recording device. The receiver and optical disk recording device can be integrated in a single unit of equipment, or can be incorporated in a conventional TV broadcast receiver. At this time, if a function of detecting a menu or a keyword of a transmitted signal and automatically recording only the item(s) registered by the recipient in advance in the rewritable optical disk is additionally provided to the receiver or optical disk recording device, the limited recording capacity of the optical disk can be utilized more efficiently without acquiring unnecessary information.”

3. Similarly, on page 27, lines 18-27, Yoshio states that “The audio information is stored on a 3.5-inch magneto-optical disk using a receiver/magneto-optical disk recording device at the home of an information recipient. In this way, news transmission is performed from night time to morning, and thus, the audio information is delivered to each home by the next morning. In addition, this receiver/optical disk recording device can use the limited recording capacity of an optical disk efficiently because it has a function for selectively recording on the optical disk the menu items and keyword associated information registered by the recipient in advance.”

There is no disclosure anywhere in Yoshio of the combination of elements required in Claims 1 and 58. In fact, there is no disclosure of any user interface of the receiver at all. In addition, there is no useful description of how the apparatus is built or its internal operation. See the Second Declaration under Rule 132 of Charles H. Jablonski, filed March 8, 2006, paragraph 3, of record, as affirmed in paragraph 46 of the enclosed Third Declaration under Rule 132 of Charles H. Jablonski, filed February 7, 2008, also of record. The Yoshio receiver is merely described as receiving transmitted audio information and writing it to a disk. While Yoshio does mention an additional function of “automatically recording only item(s) registered by the recipient in advance,” it does not describe how items would be registered in advance or disclose any user interface for doing so. In any event, this function is directed at selecting which items to



record and not at a user interface for selecting data from a database to be output from the receiver.

Accordingly, because Yoshio does not disclose each of the elements of Claims 1 and 58 in the claimed combination, Yoshio does not anticipate either Claim 1 or Claim 58, and reversal of this rejection is respectfully requested.

## 2. Yoshio Is Not Enabling

Yoshio is not enabling and hence as a matter of black letter law not available as a reference for a § 102 rejection. See the Second Declaration under Rule 132 of Charles H. Jablonski, of record and the following.

### Status of Yoshio.

It is respectfully submitted that the Yoshio reference (also referred to here as Yoshio et al.), cited by the Examiner as meeting the present independent claims, can not anticipate the claims as a matter of law because, inter alia, Yoshio is not an enabling disclosure. See the Second Declaration of Jablonski of record, paragraphs 3, 4 and 6. Yoshio is a published unexamined Japanese patent application (“Kokai”). See Second Declaration of Jablonski, paragraph 5. Japanese patent attorneys representing the assignee of this application have verified to the undersigned that the Yoshio application was never even examined. As well known, in Japan a request for examination must be filed by the patent applicant or the application is not examined. According to the Japanese Patent Office database, the Yoshio Japanese patent application was never examined and is deemed to have been withdrawn. No official action was ever issued nor any response filed. It is a matter of public record that no patent in Japan or elsewhere ever issued from or claiming priority to Yoshio. Clearly, no patent will ever issue from the Yoshio application now, given the passage of time. It is not believed that any foreign counterpart applications to Yoshio were ever even filed.

### Lack of Enablement in a Reference—the Law

An applicant for a patent bears the burden of introducing evidence that a reference applied by the USPTO lacks an enabling disclosure. Evidence to such effect may be introduced

into the record by means of an affidavit or declaration pursuant to 37 CFR §1.132, as has been done here.

A prior art publication must be enabling in order to defeat novelty, that is to be anticipating. See, for instance, *Transclean Corp. v. Bridgewood Services, Inc.*, 290 F.3d 1364, 62 USPQ 2d 1865 (Fed. Cir. 2002). In order to anticipate, the reference must enable one of skill in the art to make and use the claimed invention. In other words, to be prior art under §102, a reference must put the anticipating subject matter at issue in the possession of the public through an enabling disclosure. See *Akzo NV v. U. S. International Trade Commission*, 808 F.2d 1471, 1479, 1 USPQ 2d 1241, 1245 (Fed. Cir. 1986). Further, a prior art publication must contain within its four corners sufficient description to enable a person of ordinary skill in the art to make the invention without an unreasonable amount of experimentation. See for instance, *Advanced Display Systems, Inc. v. Kent State University*, 212 F.3d 1272, 1282, 54 USPQ 2d 1673, 1679 (Fed. Cir. 2000).

If the USPTO cites a prior art disclosure that anticipates the claims, the burden of proof shifts to the applicant to rebut a presumption that the disclosure is operable. If the applicant makes a *prima facie* case that the prior art reference is inoperable, the burden shifts back to the PTO to show through prior art or otherwise that the reference is enabling. See *In re Sasse*, 629 F.2d 675, 207 USPQ 107 (CCPA 1980).

#### Yoshio Is Not Enabling and So Does Not Meet Claims 1 and 58

Yoshio, not being an issued patent, does not enjoy any presumption of validity. Moreover, since Yoshio is only a Kokai (publication) and not an issued patent, much less a U.S. issued patent, there is no presumption that it is operable and/or enabling. Even if it were, in the Second Declaration of Jablonski, Appellant rebutted any presumption that the Yoshio disclosure is of an operable apparatus.

As established in the Second Declaration of Jablonski, paragraph 6, the Yoshio disclosure is very sketchy in terms of technical detail. The Yoshio figures and text are lacking in terms of the internal components and operation of the apparatus, except for the very general disclosure

that it is based on an optical recording disc drive and receives a television signal, see Second Declaration of Jablonski, paragraphs 3-4.

The Yoshio receiver has as its storage element a “rewritable optical disk”, see translation page 25, first full paragraph, also referred to as a “magneto-optical disk” at page 27, last paragraph. Yoshio does not describe at all how such a disk stores the recorded material in a way to allow the user to later access it via the menus disclosed at page 28, last paragraph. Instead, it appears that what might occur is that the received material would be stored sequentially on the disk, and any playback would be a simple sequential playback of all the material on the disk in the order it was recorded. The Yoshio disclosure therefore is limited to the aspect of user functionality, and does not describe how the apparatus is built or operates. As further established in the Second Declaration of Jablonski, the description in Yoshio is more a wish list of desired functionality than enabling of any actual apparatus, see Second Declaration of Jablonski paragraph 6.

To summarize, procedurally the Appellant (Applicant) has the initial burden of rebutting any presumption of validity of a reference. However, Yoshio carries no such presumption since it is only a non-examined application. Moreover, once Applicant makes a showing that the reference is inoperable or not enabled (as done in the Second Declaration of Jablonski, of record), the burden shifts back to PTO, where it is now.

The Examiner appears to have dismissed the Second Declaration of Jablonski and not to have meaningfully considered it. This Second Declaration is entitled to the full consideration of the Examiner as being a statement of fact by an expert in the field. Moreover, in dismissing this Second Declaration, the Examiner at page 24, last paragraph of his Action of July 8, 2008, completely misrepresented the law. It is black letter patent law that to anticipate, a reference must be enabling.

Further, to the extent the Examiner relies on inherency in Yoshio his rejection is inadequate. “In relying upon the theory of inherency, the examiner must provide a basis in fact and/or technical reasoning to reasonably support the determination that the allegedly inherent characteristic *necessarily* flows from the teachings of the applied prior art.” See MPEP 2112 citing *Ex parte Levy*, 17 USPQ2d 1461, 1464 (Bd. Pat. App. & Inter. 1990) (emphasis in

original). The Examiner must demonstrate that the missing descriptive matter is necessarily present, and inherency “may not be established by probabilities or possibilities. The mere fact that a certain thing may result from a given set of circumstances is not sufficient”. See MPEP 2112 citing *In re Robertson*, 169 F.3d 743, 745, 49 USPQ2d 1949, 1950-51 (Fed. Cir. 1999).

The Examiner has not cited any references showing the “old and well known” databases and menus to which he has referred in this case or made any other showing that “old and well known” databases and menus are necessarily present in Yoshio. Moreover, mere reference to “old and well known” databases and menus does not teach one of ordinary skill how to build the apparatus described in Yoshio, which lacks a useful description of how the apparatus is built or its internal operation, of how the data is indexed or cataloged for recordation or storage on the disk, and of how the apparatus processes the received data for such storage. See paragraphs 3 and 4 of the Second Declaration of Jablonski. In addition, the description of Yoshio is so vague that it is unclear what is intended to be built, let alone how to build it.

For example, Yoshio provides only a sketchy description of the menus used in his system. The menus (to the extent they can be understood) appear to be generated at the broadcast station (head end) and transmitted as part of the audio information. The audio information is generated by recording a human voice or synthesized by a machine to electrical signals. See Yoshio page 23, lines 21-23. The audio information is then classified and listed on a menu to generate “edited audio information” for transmission. See Yoshio page 23, lines 23-27 and page 24, line 1 (“These audio signals are classified on an item by item basis according to their contents, and the items are listed on a menu. Each menu item is classified into more detailed submenus, thereby making it possible to produce a plurality of levels such as children menus or grandchildren menus.”). The “menus” (again, to the extent they can be understood) appear to be reflected in the structure/organization of the transmitted information itself. The optical disk is the only item provided to the playback device, so any “menus” to be used by the playback device would need to be reflected in the organization of the data on the optical disk itself. There is no disclosure indicating that the “menus” are generated or supplemented by the receiver. Rather, Yoshio appears to contemplate a once a day transfer of the entire set of menus/edited audio information (although portions may selectively not be recorded onto the

optical disk). See Yoshio page 27, lines 19-22 (“news transmission is performed from night time to morning, and thus, the audio information is delivered to each home by the next morning.”).

However, the manner in which menus would be included as part of the “edited audio information” or written onto the optical disk is unclear. The “edited audio information” is described as being transmitted either as “analog audio waveforms” or by a method of “temporarily digitizing and sending the information” or by multiplexing a plurality of audio signals. See page 24, lines 23-27. This suggests that the “edited audio information” is originally an analog audio signal. Yoshio does not disclose how the “menus” or keyword information (which do not appear to be audio information themselves) are included in this analog audio signal. It is also unclear how the “edited” analog audio information would be written to the magneto-optical disk and how the menus would be recovered and used by the playback device. See paragraph 4 of the Second Declaration of Jablonski.

Yoshio also mentions adding “keyword information” to “a specified position within the signalized audio information” to allow searching independent of menu position. However, the manner of adding this keyword information to the analog audio signal is not disclosed nor is any functionality disclosed in the playback device for searching keyword information independent of menu position.

Yoshio also mentions a function of “detecting a menu or a keyword of a transmitted signal and automatically recording only the item(s) registered by the recipient in advance in the rewritable optical disk”. See page 25, lines 8-15. However, there is no description of how this would be done. In addition, since the menus and keywords are generated at the head end and transmitted as part of the “edited audio information”, it is unclear how they could be “registered by the recipient *in advance* in the rewritable optical disk” before they have been received from the broadcast station (emphasis added).

As stated in paragraphs 3 and 4 of the Second Declaration of Jablonski, and affirmed in paragraph 46 of the Third Declaration of Jablonski, there is no useful description of how the Yoshio apparatus is built or its internal operation, or of how the data is indexed or cataloged for recordation or storage on the disc, or how the apparatus processes the received data for such storage. Rather, Yoshio is more of a “wish list” of what a desired apparatus would do rather than

a description of how to make and use such an apparatus, see paragraph 6 of the Second Declaration of Jablonski. This falls far short of enablement.

B. Yoshio Does Not Render Obvious Claims 1 and 58

1. Differences Over Yoshio Are Non-Obvious.

As set forth in paragraphs 9-13 of the Third Declaration of Jablonski, the claimed architecture (referred to here for convenience as the “Ryan Architecture” after the present inventor) provides a complete integrated system that enables continuous reception, storage, selection and retrieval of broadcasted audio using a set of menus describing the stored database. The database and set of menus can be used in embodiments to enable organization and efficient access to a large amount of broadcasted media for playback. Further, coupling of both the tuner and speech producing sub-system to the memory can be used to enable continuous updates to be received. As a result, the benefits of the immediacy provided by a network broadcasting in real time are preserved by the Ryan Architecture while also providing the benefits of organization, efficiency and control over playback (including time of playback, choice among information items stored and, if desired, repetitive playback).

Yoshio does not disclose this Ryan Architecture. Yoshio merely describes a receiver that receives audio information for storage on a rewritable optical disk by means of an optical disk recording device. There is no useful description of how the Yoshio apparatus is built or its internal operation, or of how the data is indexed or cataloged for recordation or storage on the disc, or how the apparatus processes the received data for such storage. See paragraphs 3 and 4 of the Second Declaration of Jablonski, as affirmed in paragraph 46 of the Third Declaration of Jablonski.

Moreover, Yoshio teaches the use of a compact portable playback device that is decoupled from the receiver and broadcast system and thereby teaches away from the Ryan Architecture. In Yoshio, a removable disk and separate portable playback device are used to provide for portability and to allow playback “in a crowded train or while driving a vehicle”, see page 21, line 17. Yoshio fails to appreciate, let alone incorporate into his system, the principal power of broadcast transmission, i.e., the immediacy of the information broadcast. See

paragraph 47 of the Third Declaration of Jablonski. Rather, Yoshio refers to certain advantages of printed media, such as newspapers, where consumption of media is completely decoupled from the means used to deliver it. In Yoshio, “news transmission is performed from night time to morning, and thus, the audio information is delivered to each home by the next morning.” See page 27, lines 19-22. The disk can then be removed and taken on the morning commute like a newspaper. See Yoshio page 28, lines, 2-8 (“In this manner, the magneto-optical disk having recorded news information recorded therein is moved to a compact optical disk playback device . . . This playback-only device can be made compact, thus making it possible to use as a portable device . . . even in a crowded place such as a train”).

One of ordinary skill in the art on March 15, 1993 (the earliest effective filing date of this case), would have viewed Yoshio’s solution (to the extent it could be understood, see comments above, “Yoshio is Not Enabling”) as providing playback separate from delivery of information on the broadcast network and not as teaching or suggesting the Ryan Architecture. See paragraph 48 of Third Declaration of Jablonski. In addition to teaching away as described above, one of ordinary skill in the art on March 15, 1993 would have expected Yoshio to have relatively slow data transfer for writing to optical disk (as is also suggested by having transmission performed from night to morning) and for the recording process to render the disk unavailable for playback. See paragraph 48 of Third Declaration of Jablonski. Accordingly, Yoshio would have been viewed as undesirable by one of ordinary skill in the art for an integrated approach such as in the Ryan Architecture which can be used to receive continuous updates as well as to provide choice and control over playback. See paragraph 48 of Third Declaration of Jablonski.

The differences between the Ryan Architecture and Yoshio are significant. As described in paragraph 49 of the Third Declaration of Jablonski, the Ryan Architecture enables features that cannot be achieved using the approach of Yoshio. This architecture is fundamental for enabling characteristic features and functionality of typical personal video recorders (PVRs, also known as digital video recorders, or DVRs) since they were introduced in 1999, which are required to continuously receive, organize and provide efficient access to a large number broadcasted programs under user control. See paragraphs 9 and 13 of the Third Declaration of Jablonski.

## 2. Objective Indicia of Non-Obviousness.

Objective evidence further demonstrates the non-obviousness of Ryan Architecture over Yoshio. Objective evidence or secondary considerations such as commercial success, long-felt need, failure of others, copying by others, licensing, and skepticism of experts are relevant to the issue of obviousness and must be considered in every case in which they are present. See MPEP § 2141. See also *In re Sullivan*, 84 USPQ2d 1034, \_\_\_\_ (Fed. Cir. 2007). “Evidence rebutting a prima facie case of obviousness can include: ‘...‘evidence that the prior art teaches away from the claimed invention in any material respect,’ and evidence of secondary considerations, such as commercial success and long-felt but unresolved needs.” *Id.* (citations omitted). “If rebuttal evidence of adequate weight is produced, the holding of prima facie obviousness, being a legal inference from previously uncontradicted evidence, is dissipated.” *In re Piasecki*, 223 USPQ 785, 745 F.2d 1468 (Fed. Cir. 1984) (cited with approval in *In re Sullivan*)).

Appellant earlier submitted the Third Declaration of Jablonski and First Declaration under Rule 132 of Donald F. Bogue of record, filed February 7, 2008, demonstrating objective indicia of non-obviousness, including praise and recognition, licensing and commercial success.

### (a) Praise and Recognition.

In late 1998 – more than five years after the present inventor John Ryan filed his first patent application – the first public trials of the TiVo PVR and service began. The TiVo PVR and service were introduced and exhibited at the Consumer Electronics Show (CES) in January 1999 and TiVo (along with ReplayTV) was awarded the 2000-2001 NATAS Engineering Award for that work. See paragraph 14 of the Third Declaration of Jablonski.

Command Audio, the assignee of the present application, also introduced its audio-on-demand device and service, in collaboration with Thomson Consumer Electronics (RCA), at the 1999 CES and earned the Innovation Design and Engineering Award for new products and Command Audio earned the Design and Engineering Award in 1999 for its service, see paragraph 4 of the First Declaration of Bogue. Command Audio’s audio-on-demand device used the Ryan Architecture, see paragraphs 15 to 17 of the Third Declaration of Jablonski.



The introduction of Command Audio's audio-on-demand device and service received numerous positive reviews in the popular press. A selection of those reviews is set forth below:

"Command Audio is the first audio-on-demand service that makes it possible for commuters and other consumers to explore and satisfy their own interests by choosing just what they want from hundreds of local and national programs.... Command Audio, marketed under the RCA brand, will feature programs such as continuously updated local traffic, weather, in-depth news, business, finance and also programs on topics such as home improvement and personal investing. ... About the size of a television remote control unit, the RCA CA-1000 ... features easy-to-use controls that intuitively guide users to choose programs, skip from one to another, scan through them and save favorites for later replay. (See Exhibit B of First Declaration of Bogue.)

... At the recent Consumer Electronics Show in Las Vegas ... it was a small company, Command Audio..., that caught my attention and imagination with a new over-the-air pay service that enables listeners to choose the programming they want to hear, whenever and wherever they are. If successful, it would be the world's first audio-on-demand information and entertainment service. ... The service merges traditional radio broadcasting with the processing power of the computer. Command Audio transmits hundreds of programs each day to its network of receivers. The listener, through menu settings, chooses which of those programs he or she wants to hear. The preferred programs are then stored in the radio's internal memory. The listener can then pause, skip from one program to the next, scan by story or segment, and save programs for later listening. (See Exhibit C of First Declaration of Bogue.)

Command Audio's audio-on-demand device and service was recognized as the first audio-on-demand system of its type that allows "consumers to explore and satisfy their own interests by *choosing just what they want* from hundreds of local and national programs [including] *continuously updated* local traffic, weather, in-depth news" and "merges traditional

radio broadcasting with the processing power of the computer.” See paragraph 6 of the First Declaration of Bogue (emphasis added).

This praise and recognition is directly related to the differences between Yoshio and the Ryan Architecture. As described in paragraph 48 of the Third Declaration of Jablonski, the Ryan Architecture, unlike Yoshio, can be used to both receive *continuous updates* as well as provide *choice and control* over playback.

(b) Licensing

In addition to the present application, Command Audio is the assignee of U.S. Patent Nos. 5,406,626, 5,590,195, 5,751,806, 6,330,334 and 5,524,051, (together the “Ryan Patents”) all of which have the same inventor (John O. Ryan) and describe similar subject matter. (Indeed, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,590,195, 5,751,806, and 6,330,334 all share the same disclosure as the Pending Application because all are continuations-in-part of U.S. Application No. 08/031,763 filed on March 15, 1993). Command Audio has engaged in a licensing program for the Ryan Patents that has focused on the Ryan Architecture, see paragraph 10 of the First Declaration of Bogue. In its licensing presentations, Command Audio only discusses exemplary independent claims with potential licensees, such as Claim 1 of U.S. 5,590,195 or Claim 44 of U.S. Patent No. 6,330,334 which, like pending Claim 1, include a tuner, memory, controller and play back sub-system all coupled together with a menu-driven user interface describing the stored data and allowing selections of specific data for consumption. See paragraph 11 of the First Declaration of Bogue. While in some cases licensees of Command Audio have negotiated for a license under Command Audio’s entire patent portfolio for completeness, the focus of Command Audio’s licensing program, licensing discussions and licenses are the Ryan Patents and the Ryan Architecture. See paragraph 12 of the First Declaration of Bogue.

Command Audio’s licensees include, among others, XM Satellite Radio (“XM”) in the satellite radio field and Sony Electronics, Inc. (“Sony”), ReplayTV (then-owned by Digital Networks North America, Inc.) and Scientific-Atlanta (a subsidiary of Cisco Systems, Inc.) in the personal video recorder field. See paragraphs 7 and 13 of the First Declaration of Bogue. Command Audio’s licensing revenues for this licensing program are in excess of \$19 million. See paragraph 13 of the First Declaration of Bogue.

(c) Commercial Success

XM satellite receiver/recorders are available under the Delphi, Pioneer, Samsung and Audiovox names at national consumer electronics retailers. See paragraph 7 of the First Declaration of Bogue. For example, the Pioneer Inno, which uses the Ryan Architecture (see paragraph 7 of Third Declaration of Jablonski), was recipient of the 2006 Best of CES Award given by CNET and is available at national consumer electronics retailers such as Best Buy and Circuit City. See paragraph 7 of the First Declaration of Bogue. The Ryan Architecture is fundamental for enabling the features and functionality of audio-on-demand devices such as the Pioneer Inno, which continuously receive, organize and provide efficient access to a large amount of broadcasted audio under user control. See paragraphs 18-24 of Third Declaration of Jablonski.

Typical PVRs also use the Ryan Architecture in commercial implementations. See paragraph 25 of Third Declaration of Jablonski. The Ryan Architecture is also fundamental for enabling characteristic features and functionality of typical PVRs since they were introduced in 1999, which continuously receive, organize and provide efficient access to a large number of broadcasted programs under user control. See paragraph 25 of Third Declaration of Jablonski. Representative examples of PVRs implementing the Ryan Architecture that have been widely used by consumers include the Scientific Atlanta Explorer 8000, 8000HD, 8240 and 8300 cable set-top box products and TiVo-enabled PVRs, such as the Sony SVR-2000 and SVR-3000. Both Scientific Atlanta and Sony are licensees of Command Audio.

Scientific Atlanta manufactures a line of PVR products called the Explorer 8000, 8000HD, 8240 and 8300. See paragraph 37 of the Third Declaration of Jablonski. These PVRs use the Ryan Architecture. See paragraphs 38-43 of the Third Declaration of Jablonski. For the quarter ended December 30, 2005, Scientific Atlanta sold 556,000 cable set-top boxes with digital video recording capability and for the previous quarter, sold 465,000 such cable set top boxes with digital video recording capability. See paragraph 17 of the First Declaration of Bogue. Scientific Atlanta has cumulatively shipped more than \$3,000,000,000 worth of DVR-enabled cable set top boxes in the US. See paragraph 17 of the First Declaration of Bogue.

The Sony SVR-2000 and SVR-3000 PVRs use the Ryan Architecture and, on Command Audio's motion for summary judgment, were held to infringe Claim 44 of U.S. Patent No. 6,330,334 in *Command Audio Corporation v. Sony Electronics, Inc.*, Case No. 02-cv-0599 (MJJ) in the United States District Court for the Northern District of California. Claim 44 of the '334 patent, like pending Claim 1 in the current application, includes a tuner, memory, controller and play back sub-system all coupled together with a menu-driven user interface describing the stored data and allowing selections of specific data for consumption. See paragraph 12 of the Third Declaration of Jablonski. Like the SVR-2000 and SVR-3000, other TiVo enabled PVRs manufactured by TiVo and its licensees would also need to implement the Ryan Architecture in order to deliver TiVo's service to a consumer. See paragraphs 26-33 of the Third Declaration of Jablonski: As of January 31, 2004, TiVo had sold 656,000 subscriptions to customers having TiVo-enabled products, including those manufactured by TiVo, Sony, Pioneer, Toshiba and Philips. See paragraph 16 of the First Declaration of Bogue.

The success of these products is directly related to the Ryan Architecture as set forth in pending Claim 1. As set forth in paragraph 49 of the Third Declaration of Jablonski, the Ryan Architecture is fundamental for enabling characteristic features and functionality of audio-on-demand devices such as the Pioneer Inno and typical PVRs such as Scientific Atlanta Explorer 8000, 8000HD, 8240 and 8300 models and TiVo-enabled PVRs, such as the Sony SVR-2000 and SVR-3000. In stark contrast, none of those products use the approach described in Yoshio – and the approach described in Yoshio would not enable these products to perform their characteristic features and functionality as set forth in paragraph 48 of the Third Declaration of Jablonski. See, *Eibel Process Co. v. Minnesota & Ontario Paper Co.*, 261 U.S. 45 (1923) (“[t]he fact that the Eibel pitch has thus been generally adopted in the paper-making business ... is very weighty evidence”); *In re Piasecki*, 223 USPQ at 789 (“evidence of secondary considerations may often be the most probative and cogent evidence in the record”).

### 3. Yoshio Not Enabling

A non-enabling reference constitutes a part of the state of the art that may be considered in determining the §103 standard of obviousness, see MPEP §2121.01II. See also MPEP 2121.02 citing *In re Donahue*, 766 F.2d 533, 226 USPQ 621, for the proposition that the

reference itself need not teach how to make or use the disclosed article, but an additional reference can be cited to do this. However, enablement must be found in the prior art for a proper rejection. However, the Examiner has not cited any other references providing enablement of Yoshio and has not overcome the lack of enablement of Yoshio as established by the Second Declaration of Jablonski. As described above, reference to “old and well known” databases and menus does not teach one of ordinary skill how to build the apparatus of Yoshio, which lacks a useful description of how the apparatus is built or its internal operation, of how the data is indexed or cataloged for recordation or storage on the disc, and of how the apparatus processes the received data for such storage. See paragraphs 3 and 4 of the Second Declaration of Jablonski. In addition, the description of Yoshio is so vague that it is unclear what is intended to be built, let alone how to build it.

Accordingly, for at least the above reasons, Claims 1 and 58 are not rendered obvious by Yoshio and reversal of the rejections citing Yoshio is respectfully requested.

## II. De Bey In View of Yoshio Does Not Make The Claims Obvious

Rejection 5 cited De Bey as the base reference and Yoshio as the secondary reference, Yoshio allegedly provides the set of menus describing the database and for accepting selections from the set of menus which the Examiner admitted is missing from De Bey.

This rejection is also overcome and should be reversed.

First as pointed out above, Yoshio is not enabling of the requisite menus because his description of his menus is so vague. As pointed out in the Second Declaration of Jablonski, Yoshio is not an enabling reference in this regard.

Further even if arguendo Yoshio is regarded as enabling, still the combination of the teachings of Yoshio with De Bey, which, in general, describes a cable television video-on-demand (VOD) system fails to meet the present claims. The Examiner cited Yoshio in his §103 rejection 5 as disclosing the element missing from De Bey, which is the user interface providing a set of menus describing the database and accepting selections from the set of menus.

The Examiner cited Yoshio page 23, line 25. However, as described above, this portion of Yoshio does not describe the receiver at all and rather describes steps that occur at the broadcasting station prior to transmission. These “menus” (to the extent they can be understood) appear to be integrated with the program items themselves and are broadcasted at the same time (for example, from night time to morning). A VOD system would not use such a “menu” and would not distribute all of the programs available at the head end to the receiver at one time organized on a “menu” structure. Instead a VOD system would provide a separate menu (or accept orders via the PSTN of De Bey), and only transmit the program(s) ordered using that separate menu.

In a VOD system like De Bey, control over the library of video programs would be maintained at the head end and not transmitted all at once for local storage at a receiver. In fact, the combination of the “menu” structure described by Yoshio in the De Bey system would not be operable. Among other things, a “menu” structure integrated with all of video programs that could be selected would be too large to transmit and store locally in a system like De Bey with limited local storage. This lack of operability of the Yoshio “menus” in the De Bey system therefore indicates that the motivation to combine is absent.

Thus, for at least these reasons, even the combination of De Bey and Yoshio fails to make obvious the present claims because first Yoshio is not enabling, and second the motivation to combine the references is lacking due to the non-operability of the combination. Accordingly, reversal of the rejection over De Bey in view of Yoshio is respectfully requested.

### III. Lang in View of Yoshio Does Not Make The Claims Obvious

Rejection 7 cited Lang as a base reference and Yoshio as the secondary reference. Again, as in rejection 5 citing Yoshio and De Bey in combination, Yoshio allegedly provides a set of menus describing the database and for accepting selections from the set of menus which the Examiner admits is missing from Lang. Lang, in general, describes an improved video cassette recorder (VCR) which allows editing of programs recorded on videotape.

This rejection is also overcome and should be reversed.

As pointed out above with respect to rejection 5 involving Yoshio and De Bey in combination, Yoshio is not enabling of the requisite menus because his description of his menus is so vague. Again, as pointed out above and as established by the Second Declaration of Jablonski, Yoshio is not enabling. Hence the same reasons apply as regards the missing elements from Yoshio in rejection 7 as in rejection 5 as to why rejection 7 is inadequate.

Further, even if arguendo Yoshio is regarded as enabling, even the combination of the teachings of Yoshio with Lang fails to meet the present claims. The Examiner cited Yoshio in the §103 rejection as disclosing the missing element from Lang, which is the user interface providing a set of menus describing the database and accepting selections from the set of menus. The Examiner cited Yoshio page 23, line 25.

This section of Yoshio refers to classification of items on a menu by the information provider at the head end and does not describe a user interface of a receiver.

The Examiner cites three passages in Lang as describing a user interface, as follows:

1. Column 6, line 53 "In addition, a program may be edited, one frame at a time".
2. Column 11, lines 32-40 "When it is desired to view a program stored in memory 13, data from memory 13 is decompressed and converted to an analog signal by VCU 12, and the resulting signal is provided on an output lead 57 to a RF modulator 58, which modulates the video signal so that it can be received and stored by AVRU 11 or viewed on a television coupled to cable 53. (As mentioned above, in the FIG. 3 embodiment, AVRU 11 is a conventional VCR."
3. Column 8, lines 27-33 "It is also envisioned that in the future, a video library may be established which downloads video programs at an accelerated rate via optical fibers to a subscriber's VCR-ET. After downloading, the program may be viewed, stored in memory, edited and/or a hard copy of the program may be made on magnetic tape, optical disk, etc."

Passage 1 relates to the frame editor. Passage 2 does not appear to relate to a user interface (other than displaying the video on a television). Passage 3 relates to a video library where a selected program may be downloaded. As noted above with regard to De Bey, one

would not use a Yoshio type menu to organize all the videos for transmission to the receiving end since such a menu would be too large to download into local memory.

For meeting the memory/database element, the Examiner cited memory 13 in Figure 3, column 11, line 30 which references storing a digitized compressed signal in the memory and column 8, lines 38-50 which says "Analog output signals from AVRU 11 are delivered to the common terminal 38 of a selector switch 39. When set to position A, switch 39 delivers the output signal of AVRU 11 directly to a video output line 41 as a standard STCS composite signal; when set to position B switch 39 delivers the output of VRU 11 to the input of RF modulator 19. Modulator 19 converts the video signal to an RF-modulated composite signal for delivery to such devices as televisions and conventional VCR's. These types of devices play back the video program on a particular frequency channel (such as channel 4) on the television. Delivery to the television or VCR is via RF output line 42." But, none of these citations discloses a database.

As established in the First Declaration of Jablonski paragraphs 12-14, Lang is deficient in the same way as De Bey in not having a menu describing a database, or any set of menus, or selecting data from a database using the menus. Lang does mention a "menu" at col. 6, line 63-col. 7, line 5, but this single "menu" is not of the type called for in the present claims, see First Declaration of Jablonski, paragraphs 12 and 13. The "menu" in Lang is strictly a list of the numbers of currently stored video frames. (A video frame is a single video image.) The frames are only listed by number. It is not seen how a menu of the Yoshio type would be useful in the context of Lang. "Menus" which organize data at the head end as in Yoshio would not show the particular video frames held in the Lang VCR memory. Also, the menu items in Yoshio relate to types of programs such as news or music, which are categorized by type, title, summary, etc. It is unclear how or why a menu of this type would be used for video frame editing. Instead, of course, the Lang menu is generated at the VCR from those currently stored frames and merely indicates their frame identifying number. There is in fact no particular relationship of the stored frames to any particular program in the Lang menu. It is especially not seen how the Yoshio type menu would be useful in connection with a VCR as in Lang, where it is desired to edit by particular video frames. There is no attempt to track frames in Yoshio's system. Again this shows that there is no particular relationship between the Lang approach and the Yoshio



approach as regards menus. Hence there is no motivation to make the suggested combination of Lang and Yoshio and the rejection fails on that ground, in addition to the lack of enablement of Yoshio.

Further, the combination of Yoshio and Lang as suggested by the Examiner, even if arguendo properly motivated, fails to meet the present claims. For example, one of the Examiner's citations refers to a video library (see Lang column 8, lines 27-33) and the Examiner seems to suggest a combination where the Yoshio menus would be used to select items from a video library. As pointed out above, Yoshio-type menus are not suitable for such a Lang VOD type system. Note that the combination suggested by the Examiner is stated to be for allowing programs to be organized by interest "thereby allowing the user to select the desired channel at a glance without memorizing the program code". The Examiner seemed to suggest using Yoshio's menu as a channel guide for choosing what channel to receive rather than for describing a database in local memory from which data may be selected for playback. This fails to meet Claim 1. Also, of course, there would be no "database" in this case and no "set of menus" describing the database. Hence even the suggested combination fails to meet amended Claim 1.

Thus, for at least these reasons, the combination of Lang in view of Yoshio fails to render the current claims obvious. Accordingly, reversal of the rejection over Lang in view of Yoshio is respectfully requested.

#### Examiner's Response to Arguments

At page 24 of the Office Action of July 8, 2008, the Examiner purportedly responded to Appellant's earlier arguments. These points have been dealt with above, but point by point his response is further refuted here.

First, the Examiner said that Yoshio at page 23, line 12 discloses receiving equipment. There is no question that Yoshio does have equipment that receives. However as pointed out above, his receiver is separate from his playback apparatus. That is the point made above, hence this particular comment by the Examiner is not relevant.

Next, the Examiner says that Yoshio does teach a user interface because he discloses presenting items via a menu and sub-menu, see page 23, lines 25-27. Again as pointed out

above, there is no disclosure in Yoshio of any user interface of his receiver at all. His only user interface is on the playback device. Of course in addition, there is no useful description of how the Yoshio receiver or playback device are built or their internal operation, hence Yoshio is not enabling. Moreover in any event, whatever menus or sub-menus there are in Yoshio are for selecting which items to record and not a user interface for selecting data from a database for playback.

Next, the Examiner says that Yoshio does teach a memory since he has recording functionality at page 23, line 13. There is no dispute that Yoshio does record. It is not believed that this is in dispute. But no recording is done by the Yoshio playback device.

Next, the Examiner said that Yoshio does have a speech producing sub-system at page 23, lines 21-23. However as pointed out above, this passage of Yoshio refers to the broadcasting station and not the receiver. In particular, this passage refers to the conversion of audio information into electrical signals before transmission by the broadcaster and not to a speech producing sub-system for converting selected data from digital form to an analog signal for output from a receiver. Hence the Examiner is clearly mistaken here.

Finally and as pointed out above, the Examiner does not seem to understand here that enablement is a legal requirement for an anticipating reference.

#### IV. All Claims Are Allowable

In view of the above, independent Claims 1 and 58 each are allowable over all the rejections, and all the dependent claims are similarly allowable.

#### V. Dependent Claims 62-64 Additionally Distinguish and are Patentable

Claims 62-64 are each dependent on base Claim 1 or 58. As pointed out above, the apparatus of Claim 1 and method of Claim 58 are clearly novel over Yoshio, in addition to being non-obvious over both Yoshio used as a single reference and in combination with the other cited references. Hence all dependent Claims 33-57 and 59-64 are allowable for at least the same reason as the respective base claim.

#### Claim 62

Claim 62 is supported by the specification at page 7 last paragraph carrying over to page 8, see end of the paragraph “Tuner 12, ...and memory 28 typically remain powered at all times...to receive a continuous update of the broadcast database, and thereby to store current news in memory 28.” Provision of “continuous updates of the data” as recited in Claim 62 is clearly advantageous since it allows the user to listen to updated news, stock prices, weather reports, etc. As described above, this feature is not available in Yoshio which the Examiner cited in his rejection 1. Further, the Examiner’s rejection 1 of Claim 62 at Office Action of July 8, 2008, page 4, erroneously states that Claim 62 is not limiting. Further rejection 5 also rejects Claim 62 citing Yoshio and De Bey, and similarly erroneously says that Claim 62 is not limiting. Rejection 5 also says that Claim 62 is obvious but gives no reasons. Hence the rejection of Claim 62 is inadequate and should be reversed.

#### Claim 63

Claim 63 is supported by the specification at page 13 “The data for a particular story or article will need to have a date stamp to indicate to the user the currency of the information.” Claim 63 was subject to rejection 13 (Yoshio and Ryan) and 14 (De Bey and Yoshio and Ryan US 5,590,195). Ryan US 5,590,195 is the pertinent reference since the Examiner cited it as disclosing the feature of Claim 63. But Ryan 5,590,195 has the exact same inventor and is part of the same patent family as the present application.

Further, the present application is a continuation of U.S. application no. 08/769,092 filed December 18, 1996, which in turn is a divisional of U.S. application no. 08/181,394, which is Ryan U.S. 5,590,195, which is a CIP of U.S. application no. 08/031,763 filed March 15, 1993, now U.S. 5,406,626.

So the present application is a continuation of a divisional of U.S. 5,590,195 which cannot be, as a matter of law, prior art against the present application. So this rejection is faulty and should be reversed.

#### Claim 64

Claim 64 is supported by the specification at page 9, second to last paragraph “In one embodiment a simple addressed on/off command is transmitted...to disable individual units

belonging to people who have not paid the required monthly subscription fee to receive the service.” Claim 64 thus recites “...the receiver is adapted to disable itself upon receipt of a command received via the tuner.” Claim 64 was subject to rejection 15 (Yoshio and Myers et al.) and rejection 16 (De Bey and Yoshio and Myers et al.) Myers et al. is the pertinent reference since the Examiner cites it at col. 2, lines 25-40 as disclosing the feature of Claim 64. Myers et al. discloses here (col. 2, lines 34-36) disabling a receiver when a “transaction is sent to all receivers containing the current and previous authorization codes.” No “command” is sent in Myers et al. as in Claim 64; instead Myers et al. depends on the dual code matching by the terminal. This dual code approach is more complex than and different from what is recited in Claim 64, which thereby distinguishes there over.

Claims Appendix (Attached)

Evidence Appendix (Attached)

Related Proceedings Appendix

(None)


**CONCLUSION**

In view of the above, all pending Claims 1 and 33-90 in this application are believed to be allowable. Accordingly, the Board is respectfully requested to reverse all outstanding rejections of the claims. If it is determined that a telephone conference would expedite prosecution of this appeal, the Board staff is invited to telephone the undersigned at the number given below.

In the event the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office determines that an extension and/or other relief is required, Appellant petitions for any required relief including extensions of time and authorizes the Commissioner to charge the cost of such petitions and/or other fees due in connection with the filing of this document to **Deposit Account No. 03-1952** referencing **Attorney Docket No. 549222000101**.

Dated: October 15, 2008

Respectfully submitted,

By 

Norman R. Klivans

Registration No.: 33,003

MORRISON & FOERSTER LLP

755 Page Mill Road

Palo Alto, California 94304-1018

(650) 813-5850

## **CLAIMS APPENDIX**

### **TITLE: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR INFORMATION DISSEMINATION WITH USER MENU INTERFACE (AS AMENDED)**

**By: John O. RYAN**

**U.S. Serial No.: 08/977,846**

**Attorney Docket No.: 54922-20001.01**

Claim 1: A receiver adapted to receive data contained in a transmitted broadcast signal comprising:

a tuner for receiving a broadcast signal;

a memory coupled to the tuner for storing data in the received broadcast signal in a database;

a user interface for providing a set of menus describing the database, and for accepting selections from the set of menus;

a controller coupled to the memory and the user interface for selecting data from the database in response to the accepted selections and providing the selected data in a digital form; and

a speech producing sub-system coupled to the controller and the memory for converting the selected data from digital form to an analog signal.

Claim 33: The receiver of Claim 1, wherein the memory stores the entire database.

Claim 34: The receiver of Claim 1, wherein the memory comprises a combination of a volatile RAM memory and a non-volatile memory.

Claim 35: The receiver of Claim 34, wherein the non-volatile memory is selected from the group consisting of an audio tape, a magneto-optical mini-disk, a magnetic disk or an optical disk.

Claim 36: The receiver of Claim 1, wherein the received data is audio data that has been converted from analog form to digital form.

Claim 37: The receiver of Claim 36, wherein the received audio data is digitized and has been compressed.

Claim 38: The receiver of Claim 36, wherein the received audio data has been encrypted.

Claim 39: The receiver of Claim 1, wherein the received data is alphanumeric data that has been converted from analog form to digital form.

Claim 40: The receiver of Claim 39, wherein the alphanumeric data is converted to voice data by a speech synthesizer.

Claim 41: The receiver of Claim 1, wherein the data is in digital form, has been encrypted and compressed, and further comprising a decryptor for decrypting the data.

Claim 42: The receiver of Claim 41, wherein said system has a decompression algorithm to decompress data that has been compressed at a transmitter prior to being broadcast.

Claim 43: The receiver of Claim 41, wherein the decryptor is enabled by a key received by the tuner.

Claim 44: The receiver of Claim 41, wherein the decryptor is enabled by a key device operatively connected to the decryptor.

Claim 45: The receiver of Claim 1, wherein the user interface is voice activated.

Claim 46: The receiver of Claim 1, wherein the user interface includes:

- a manual input device adapted to be mountable on an automobile steering wheel;
- and
- a link from the manual input device to the controller.

Claim 47: The receiver of Claim 1, wherein the user interface includes a control for determining a speed at which the speech producing sub-system outputs the analog signal.

Claim 48: The receiver of Claim 1, wherein the tuner channel skips to tune to a particular transmitter.

Claim 49: The receiver of Claim 1, further comprising:

- an amplifier connected to the speech producing sub-system for amplifying the analog signal; and

means for converting the amplified signal to sound.

Claim 50: The receiver of Claim 1, further comprising means for connecting the receiver to an automobile radio set.

Claim 51: The receiver of Claim 1, further comprising means for designating by a broadcaster of the broadcast signal a hierarchy for the database.

Claim 52: The receiver of Claim 1, wherein the memory stores the data received in a random access memory up to the capacity of the random access memory before transferring said data to one of a disk medium or a tape medium.

Claim 53: The receiver of Claim 52, wherein the tape medium is a digital audio tape.

Claim 54: The receiver of Claim 52, wherein the disk medium is a magnetic disk.

Claim 55: The receiver of Claim 52, wherein the disk medium is a magnetic-optical disk.

Claim 56: The receiver of Claim 52, wherein the disk medium is an optical disk.

Claim 57: The receiver of Claim 1, wherein a speed of transmission of the data in the broadcast signal is varied to most efficiently use the available bandwidth.

Claim 58: A method for information dissemination comprising the acts of:

- receiving the information at a receiver;
- storing the received information in a database in memory in the receiver;
- providing a set of menus describing the database;
- accepting selections from the set of menus;
- selecting data from the database in response to the accepted selection;
- providing the selected data in digital form; and
- converting the selected data to an analog signal played from the receiver.

Claim 59: The method of Claim 58, wherein the received information is transmitted by a broadcast signal.



Claim 60: The receiver of Claim 1, wherein the memory is sufficient to store data representing the content of at least one entire program.

Claim 61: The method of Claim 58, wherein the stored information includes the content of at least one entire program.

Claim 62: The receiver of Claim 1, wherein the receiver is adapted to receive and store in the memory continuous updates of the data.

Claim 63: The receiver of Claim 62, wherein received items of data include a data stamp thereby to indicate currency of the data.

Claim 64: The receiver of Claim 1, wherein the receiver is adapted to disable itself upon receipt of a command received via the tuner.

## **EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

### **Table of Contents and Location in Record**

1. Certified Translation of Yoshio and mark-up comparing to earlier translation, both filed February 7, 2008.
2. Second Declaration of Jablonski with 1 Exhibit, filed March 8, 2006.
3. Third Declaration of Jablonski with Exhibits A-L, filed February 7, 2008.
4. First Declaration of Bogue with Exhibits A-I, filed February 7, 2008.

**US Application No. 08/977,846**

**Docket No. 5492200101**

**EVIDENCE APPENDIX**

Table of Contents and Location in Record

1. Certified Translation of Yoshio and mark-up comparing to earlier translation, both filed February 7, 2008.
2. Second Declaration of Jablonski with 1 Exhibit, filed March 8, 2006.
3. Third Declaration of Jablonski with Exhibits A-L, filed February 7, 2008.
4. First Declaration of Bogue with Exhibits A-I, filed February 7, 2008.

TITLE OF THE INVENTION

INFORMATION TRANSMISSION SYSTEM EMPLOYING REWRITABLE OPTICAL  
DISK

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

[0001]

[Field of Industrial Use]

The present invention relates to an information transmission system employing a rewritable optical disk for recording, replaying, and erasing information with the use of laser light, thereby speedily providing information to a large number of people.

[0002] [Prior Art]

Audio, video and printed matter systems are used as systems for transmitting information to a large number of people. Among them, audio information transmission has an advantage over video images or printed matter in that information can be received in limited space, with simple equipment, and while doing other work. For example, audio information transmission using a radio is the most convenient means for obtaining information such as news in a crowded train or while driving a vehicle.

[0003] [Objects the Invention]

However, radio broadcasting, which is a

conventional audio information transmission system, has suffered from the following disadvantage. That is, it is impossible to select only information on fields in which individual information recipients are interested, and thus, the information is limited to very general topics. Assuming that detailed information is to be included in a broadcast, a large amount of time would be required for one broadcast. From among the information broadcast, the information recipients must wait for a long time until the information that they want to listen to is broadcasted. This situation is inefficient for the recipient. Furthermore, information is sent only at times determined unilaterally, when the broadcast station desires. The information that they listened to cannot be repeatedly listened to for confirmation. These disadvantages contrast with news reports using printed matter, such as newspapers. In the case of newspapers, it is possible to pick up only information that information recipients want, from among a variety of fields. In addition, the recipients can read them at a time convenient to them, and it is possible to reread them any number of times for confirmation.

[0004]

The object of the present invention is to provide an audio information transmission system that makes use of the advantages of audio information, solves the above disadvantages, and in which it is possible for recipients to select only information they desire and replay it any number of times at any desired time.

[0005]

[Means for Solving the Problem]

The above described disadvantages can be solved by employing an information transmission system employing a rewritable optical disk characterized in that, in an information transmission system between an information provider that provides audio information and a plurality of information recipients, the information provider classifies audio information on an item by item basis, the audio information is transmitted to the information recipients in a form compressed at a time shorter than required for audio playback, the information recipients receive the thus transmitted audio information by means of a receiver, the audio information is temporarily recorded in a rewritable optical disk by means of an optical disk recording device, and only items selected from among items of audio information are replayed at a desired time by employing an optical disk playback device.

[0006]

[Function]

FIG. 1 shows the flow of information in an information transmission system using this scheme. Information providers are typically newspaper publishers or broadcasters. Audio information is input by recording a human voice, or by converting audio synthesized by a machine to electrical signals. These audio signals are classified on an item by item basis according to their contents, and the items are listed on a menu. Each menu item is classified into more detailed submenus, thereby making it possible to produce a plurality of levels such

as children menus or grandchildren menus. Furthermore, if some keywords are extracted from among items of information, and the keyword information is added to a specific position within the signalized audio information, it is possible to search specific matters and associated information irrespective of the menu positions.

[0007]

The thus edited audio information is transmitted by information providers using a transmitter. This transfer means may include a method employing television radio waves such as UHF and VHF, a transfer method using microwaves via communication satellites, or a transfer method through wired TV cables or the like. Additionally, if a dedicated channel is used for these respective transmission methods, and if the transmission is multiplexed on TV broadcast waves and sent as back-channel audio, the transmission could occupy a channel during TV broadcast off-air time late at night.

[0008]

Upon transfer of the audio information, the audio information is sent in a time-compressed format. That is, transfer is completed within a shorter time than the time required for replaying as audio all of the audio information transmitted. This time compression can be performed by a method of simply sending analog audio waveforms in a fast mode, a method of temporarily digitizing and sending information at high speed, or a method of sending a plurality of audio information while multiplexing them simultaneously.

[0009]

The thus sent audio information is received by means of a receiver at the home of an information recipient, and the received audio information is stored in a rewritable optical disk by means of an optical disk recording device. The receiver and optical disk recording device can be integrated in a single unit of equipment, or can be incorporated in a conventional TV broadcast receiver. At this time, if a function of detecting a menu or a keyword of a transmitted signal and automatically recording only the item(s) registered by the recipient in advance in the rewritable optical disk is additionally provided to the receiver or optical disk recording device, the limited recording capacity of the optical disk can be utilized more efficiently without acquiring unnecessary information.

[0010]

The thus transmitted audio information is played back as audio information by using an optical disk playback device. A magneto-optical disk playback device exclusively used for playback can be made more compact, so it can be made into a portable device, thus making it possible to perform playback in a train, or listen to audio information replayed while driving with it being mounted on a vehicle. The playback device has a function of allowing selection of required items from level-based menus, making it possible to pick up only information that a recipient is interested in and replaying it. The playback device also allows attachment of an image



monitor. In this case, it is possible to display which item on a menu has been selected, using characters on a screen, or display a still image sent from an information provider.

[0011]

The rewritable optical disk can be repeatedly used, so by using one or two disks, it is possible to utilize this information system for a long time. In addition, in this system, the disk rewriting count is several thousands times at the most, so the optical disk to be used would be sufficient if it guarantees rewriting on the order of ten thousand times.

[0012]

[Embodiments] Embodiment 1

In the present embodiment, the information provider is a broadcaster that provides audio information, mainly news information. General news is recorded from a human voice, and a fixed format such as weather forecast or stock market information is inputted by utilizing mechanical voice synthesizing. In addition, other than news, audio information includes content with less immediacy, such as music, dramas, entertainment, or English language courses. These types of audio information are classified on an item-by-item basis according to their content, and are managed with a menu shown in FIG. 2. Large menu items largely follow the classification of content as found in newspapers. The respective menus are divided into detailed submenus, and a plurality of levels, such as children menus or grandchildren menus, are produced. In the case of news, more detailed

information, such as titles, summaries, and details relating to the items, can be obtained as the menu level goes down, whereby the recipients can arbitrarily select a degree of details of obtained information according to the recipient's depth of interest. In the case of music, classification on a style-by-style basis is provided as a submenu, and further, titles and performance become available as the menu level goes down.

[0013] The thus edited audio information is transmitted from a broadcaster to an information recipient. At this time, audio information is sent to a relay point via a communication satellite by means of microwaves, from where the transmitted audio information is propagated to each home through wired TV cables. This transfer is sent wherein a channel is occupied during late-night TV broadcast off-air time. Here, the audio information is temporarily digitized and sent at high speed, whereby transfer is performed in a time-compressed format. The audio information is stored on a 3.5-inch magneto-optical disk using a receiver/magneto-optical disk recording device at the home of an information recipient. In this way, news transmission is performed from night time to morning, and thus, the audio information is delivered to each home by the next morning. In addition, this receiver/optical disk recording device can use the limited recording capacity of an optical disk efficiently because it has a function for selectively recording on the optical disk the menu items and keyword associated information registered by the recipient in advance.

[0014] In this manner, the magneto-optical disk having recorded news information recorded therein is moved to a compact optical disk playback device, and is played back as audio. This playback-only device can be made compact, thus making it possible to use as a portable device or mount it on a vehicle. In the case where the playback device is used as a portable device, even in a crowded place such as train, one can listen to audio without bothering persons around him or her, by employing earphones. In addition, when the playback device is mounted on a vehicle, one can listen to replayed audio information while driving.

[0015] FIG. 3 shows an external view diagram of the optical disk playback device used in the embodiment. The optical disk is inserted in an insert port 1. A liquid crystal display panel 2 displays which item on a menu has been selected. In addition, a still image sent from a broadcasting station can be displayed on this monitor. Control buttons 3 include the operating buttons (Replay), (Stop), (Fast Feed), and (Rewind), which relate to audio playback, and the operating buttons (Select Current Item), (Proceed to Next Item), (Back to Previous Item), and (Back to Upper-Level Menu), which relate to item selection on a menu. Replayed audio can be listened to by connecting to earphone plug 4. The volume is controlled by means of a volume knob 5.

[0016]

[Effect of the Invention]

According to the present invention, it is possible to perform information transmission to the public, speedily and in detail; an information recipient can obtain only the information desirable to one's self, at one's preferred time, and it is possible to confirm information as many times as required.

#### BRIEF EXPLANATION OF THE DRAWINGS

[FIG. 1] FIG. 1 is a conceptual view of the flow of audio information in an information transmission system according to the present invention.

[FIG. 2] FIG. 2 is the menu structure according to embodiment 1.

[FIG. 3] FIG. 3 is an external view of an optical disk playback device for use according to embodiment 1.

#### [Explanation of References]

1... Optical disk insert port 2... Liquid crystal display panel 3... Control buttons

4... Earphone plug 5... Volume knob

FIG. 1

Information provider (broadcasting station)

Audio signal input

Item classification

Signal compression

Transmitter

Wired or wireless broadcasting

At home

Receiver

Optical disk recording device

Rewritable optical disk

Portable optical disk playback device

Replayed audio information

Information recipient

FIG. 2

News	Important news	Title of item 1	Summary of item 1	Details of item 1
		Title of item 2	Summary of item 2	Details of item 2
	Politics			
	Economy			
	International			
	Economy			

Society

Science

Industry

Entertainment

Others

Music

Classic

Title of music number 1

Performance of music number 1

Title of music number 2

Performance of music number 2

Pop Music

Japanese Pop Music

English language course

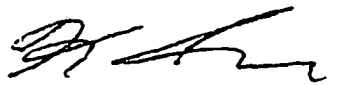
Contents of English language course



TRANSPERFECT

City of New York, State of New York, County of New York

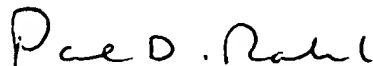
I, Kayoko Imori, hereby certify that the following is, to the best of my knowledge and belief, a true and accurate translation of the following document, "Japanese Unexamined Patent Application Publication H4-310631," from Japanese into English.



Kayoko Imori

Sworn to before me this

17<sup>th</sup> day of January, 2008

  
Signature, Notary Public

PAUL D. RALSTON  
Notary Public, State of New York  
No. 01RA6023867  
Qualified in Queens County  
Commission Expires May 3, 2011

Stamp, Notary Public  
State of New York

ALBANY  
AMSTERDAM  
ATLANTA  
AUSTIN  
BARCELONA  
BOSTON  
BRUSSELS  
CHARLOTTE  
CHICAGO  
DALLAS  
DENVER  
DUBLIN  
FRANKFURT  
GENEVA  
HONG KONG  
HOUSTON  
IRVINE  
LONDON  
LOS ANGELES  
MIAMI  
MINNEAPOLIS  
MONTREAL  
MUNICH  
NEW YORK  
PARIS  
PHILADELPHIA  
PORTLAND  
RESEARCH  
TRIANGLE PARK  
SAN DIEGO  
SAN FRANCISCO  
SAN JOSE  
SEATTLE  
SINGAPORE  
STOCKHOLM  
SYDNEY  
TOKYO  
TORONTO  
WASHINGTON, DC



TITLE OF THE INVENTION

INFORMATION TRANSMISSION SYSTEM EMPLOYING REWRITABLE OPTICAL  
DISK

Deleted: .  
Deleted: .  
Deleted: .  
Deleted: KOKAL  
Deleted: a

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

[0001]

[Field of Industrial Use]

The present invention relates to an information transmission system employing a rewritable optical disk for recording, replaying, and erasing information with the use of laser light, thereby speedily providing information to a large number of people.

Deleted: reproducing  
Deleted: beams  
Deleted: plenty

[0002] [Prior Art]

Audio, video and printed matter systems are used as systems for transmitting information to a large number of people. Among them, audio information transmission has an advantage over video images or printed matter in that information can be received in limited space, with simple equipment, and while doing other work. For example, audio information transmission using a radio is the most convenient means for obtaining information such as news in a crowded train or while driving a vehicle.

Deleted: of  
Deleted: plenty  
Deleted: is used by means of voice, video images, and printed matters  
Deleted: voice  
Deleted: s  
Deleted: ifi  
Deleted: d  
Deleted: an  
Deleted:  
Deleted: voice  
Deleted: in a  
Deleted:  
Deleted:  
Deleted: conventional

[0003] [Objects the Invention]

However, radio broadcasting, which is a

conventional audio information transmission system, has suffered from the following disadvantage. That is, it is impossible to select only information on fields in which individual information recipients are interested, and thus, the information is limited to very general topics. Assuming that detailed information is to be included in a broadcast, a large amount of time would be required for one broadcast. From among the information broadcast, the information recipients must wait for a long time until the information that they want to listen to is broadcasted. This situation is inefficient for the recipient. Furthermore, information is sent only at times determined unilaterally, when the broadcast station desires. The information that they listened to cannot be repeatedly listened to for confirmation. These disadvantages contrast with news reports using printed matter, such as newspapers. In the case of newspapers, it is possible to pick up only information that information recipients want, from among a variety of fields. In addition, the recipients can read them at a time convenient to them, and it is possible to reread them any number of times for confirmation.

[0004]

The object of the present invention is to provide an audio information transmission system that makes use of the advantages of audio information, solves the above disadvantages, and in which it is possible for recipients to select only information they desire and replay it any number of times at any desired time.

[0005]

Deleted: voice

Deleted: receivers

Deleted: contained

Deleted: ing

Deleted: is

Deleted: m

Deleted: receivers

Deleted: which

Deleted: receivers

Deleted:

Deleted: not

Deleted: during a pre

Deleted: time in a one-sided manner

Deleted: which

Deleted: are antitypical to

Deleted: s

Deleted: which

Deleted: receivers

Deleted: receivers

Deleted: plenty

Deleted: o

Deleted:

Deleted: has been made to solve the above described disadvantages. It is an object of the present invention to provide

Deleted: voice

Deleted: makes

Deleted: information

Deleted: e

Deleted: vers

Deleted: want

Deleted: reproduce

Deleted: plenty

Deleted: an arbitrary

Deleted:

[Means for Solving the Problem]

The above described disadvantages can be solved by employing an information transmission system employing a rewritable optical disk characterized in that, in an information transmission system between an information provider that provides audio information and a plurality of information recipients, the information provider classifies audio information on an item by item basis, the audio information is transmitted to the information recipients in a form compressed at a time shorter than required for audio playback, the information recipients receive the thus transmitted audio information by means of a receiver, the audio information is temporarily recorded in a rewritable optical disk by means of an optical disk recording device, and only items selected from among items of audio information are replayed at a desired time by employing an optical disk playback device.

[0006]

[Function]

FIG. 1 shows the flow of information in an information transmission system using this scheme. Information providers are typically newspaper publishers or broadcasters. Audio information is input by recording a human voice, or by converting audio synthesized by a machine to electrical signals. These audio signals are classified on an item by item basis according to their contents, and the items are listed on a menu. Each menu item is classified into more detailed submenus, thereby making it possible to produce a plurality of levels such

~~Deleted:~~ Achiev

~~Deleted:~~ Objects

~~Deleted:~~ for

~~Deleted:~~ ing

~~Deleted:~~ voice

~~Deleted:~~ receivers

~~Deleted:~~ voice

~~Deleted:~~ voice

~~Deleted:~~ receivers

~~Deleted:~~ during

~~Deleted:~~ voice

~~Deleted:~~ reproduction

~~Deleted:~~ receivers

~~Deleted:~~ s

~~Deleted:~~ voice

~~Deleted:~~ receiving equipment

~~Deleted:~~ voice

~~Deleted:~~ voice

~~Deleted:~~ reproduced

~~Deleted:~~ an arbitrary

~~Deleted:~~ reproduction

~~Deleted:~~

~~Deleted:~~

~~Deleted:~~ Voice

~~Deleted:~~ converted to electric signals by voice synthesizing through human voice recording or machines

~~Deleted:~~ voice

~~Deleted:~~ s are

~~Deleted:~~ hierarchies

as children menus or grandchildren menus. Furthermore, if some keywords are extracted from among items of information, and the keyword information is added to a specific position within the signalized audio information, it is possible to search specific matters and associated information irrespective of the menu positions.

[0007]

The thus edited audio information is transmitted by information providers using a transmitter. This transfer means may include a method employing television radio waves such as UHF and VHF, a transfer method using microwaves via communication satellites, or a transfer method through wired TV cables or the like. Additionally, if a dedicated channel is used for these respective transmission methods, and if the transmission is multiplexed on TV broadcast waves and sent as back-channel audio, the transmission could occupy a channel during TV broadcast off-air time late at night.

[0008]

Upon transfer of the audio information, the audio information is sent in a time-compressed format. That is, transfer is completed within a shorter time than the time required for replaying as audio all of the audio information transmitted. This time compression can be performed by a method of simply sending analog audio waveforms in a fast mode, a method of temporarily digitizing and sending information at high speed, or a method of sending a plurality of audio information while multiplexing them simultaneously.

Deleted:

Deleted:

Deleted: ed

Deleted: s of

Deleted: voice

Deleted:

Deleted:

Deleted: voice

Deleted: transferred

Deleted: s

Deleted: and

Deleted: In addition, in connection with these respective transfer methods, there can be several cases in which where a specific channel is used for their respective transfer method back-channel voice is sent while it is multiplexed on TV broadcast radio waves, and information is sent while one occupies a channel at a midnight TV broadcast intermission time.

Deleted: voice

Deleted: voice

Deleted: form

Deleted: in view of time intervals .

Deleted: a

Deleted: reproducing

Deleted: a voice information to be transferred all the voice

Deleted: voice

Deleted: and

Deleted: voice

[0009]

The thus sent audio information is received by means of a receiver at the home of an information recipient, and the received audio information is stored in a rewritable optical disk by means of an optical disk recording device. The receiver and optical disk recording device can be integrated in a single unit of equipment, or can be incorporated in a conventional TV broadcast receiver. At this time, if a function of detecting a menu or a keyword of a transmitted signal and automatically recording only the item(s) registered by the recipient in advance in the rewritable optical disk is additionally provided to the receiver or optical disk recording device, the limited recording capacity of the optical disk can be utilized more efficiently without acquiring unnecessary information.

Deleted: voice...the...receiving  
equipment...receiver...voice...receiving  
equipment...with...  
and...the...receiving  
equipment...sens...transferred...{...cord  
ed...receiving  
equipment...a...n...redundant... [1]

[0010]

The thus transmitted audio information is played back as audio information by using an optical disk playback device. A magneto-optical disk playback device exclusively used for playback can be made more compact, so it can be made into a portable device, thus making it possible to perform playback in a train, or listen to audio information replayed while driving with it being mounted on a vehicle. The playback device has a function of allowing selection of required items from level-based menus, making it possible to pick up only information that a recipient is interested in and replaying it. The playback device also allows attachment of an image

Deleted: transferred...voice...reproduc  
ed...voice...by employ...ing  
the...reproduction...reproduction...re  
production...downsized...reproduction...  
while a portable device is  
u...sed...making it possible  
to...voice...reproduced...reproduction...  
g...hierarchical...which...the...receivers  
are...reproducing...reproduction...can  
mount [2]

monitor. In this case, it is possible to display which item on a menu has been selected,  
using characters on a screen, or display a still image sent from an information provider.

[0011]

The rewritable optical disk can be repeatedly used, so by using one or two disks, it  
is possible to utilize this information system for a long time. In addition, in this system,  
the disk rewriting count is several thousands times at the most, so the optical disk to be  
used would be sufficient if it guarantees rewriting on the order of ten thousand times.

[0012]

[Embodiments] Embodiment 1

In the present embodiment, the information provider is a broadcaster that provides  
audio information, mainly news information. General news is recorded from a human  
voice, and a fixed format such as weather forecast or stock market information is inputted  
by utilizing mechanical voice synthesizing. In addition, other than news, audio  
information includes content with less immediacy, such as music, dramas, entertainment,  
or English language courses. These types of audio information are classified on an  
item-by-item basis according to their content, and are managed with a menu shown in FIG.  
2. Large menu items largely follow the classification of content as found in newspapers.  
The respective menus are divided into detailed submenus, and a plurality of levels, such as  
children menus or grandchildren menus, are produced. In the case of news, more detailed

Deleted:

Deleted: i

Deleted: by

Deleted:

Deleted: thus making it

Deleted: as long as one or two disks  
are present

Deleted: one

Deleted: it is sufficient that

Deleted: an

Deleted: of rewriting

Deleted:

Deleted: f

Deleted:

Deleted: an

Deleted: which

Deleted: voice

Deleted:

Deleted: voice

Deleted: s

Deleted: s

Deleted: a well as news

Deleted: voice

Deleted:

Deleted:

Deleted: s

Deleted: by

Deleted: headlines in most cases

Deleted: hierarchies

information, such as titles, summaries, and details relating to the items, can be obtained as the menu level goes down, whereby the recipients can arbitrarily select a degree of details of obtained information according to the recipient's depth of interest. In the case of music, classification on a style-by-style basis is provided as a submenu, and further, titles and performance become available as the menu level goes down.

[0013] The thus edited audio information is transmitted from a broadcaster to an information recipient. At this time, audio information is sent to a relay point via a communication satellite by means of microwaves, from where the transmitted audio information is propagated to each home through wired TV cables. This transfer is sent wherein a channel is occupied during late-night TV broadcast off-air time. Here, the audio information is temporarily digitized and sent at high speed, whereby transfer is performed in a time-compressed format. The audio information is stored on a 3.5-inch magneto-optical disk using a receiver/magneto-optical disk recording device at the home of an information recipient. In this way, news transmission is performed from night time to morning, and thus, the audio information is delivered to each home by the next morning. In addition, this receiver/optical disk recording device can use the limited recording capacity of an optical disk efficiently because it has a function for selectively recording on the optical disk the menu items and keyword associated information registered by the recipient in advance.

Deleted: l
Deleted: outlines
Deleted: hierarchy
Deleted: receivers
Deleted: receiver
Deleted:
Deleted:
Deleted: laced
Deleted: are added
Deleted: hierarchy
Deleted:
Deleted: f
Deleted: voice
Deleted: transferred
Deleted: receiver
Deleted: voice
Deleted: sent
Deleted: voice
Deleted:
Deleted: while
Deleted: at a
Deleted: mid
Deleted: video image broadcast intermission
Deleted: voice
Deleted: a
Deleted: mode
Deleted: in view of time intervals
Deleted: voice
Deleted: i
Deleted: receiver
Deleted: voice
Deleted: at a
Deleted: early
Deleted: of the receiving equipment
Deleted: a
Deleted: n
Deleted: i
Deleted: receiver

[0014] In this manner, the magneto-optical disk having recorded news information recorded therein is moved to a compact optical disk playback device, and is played back as audio. This playback-only device can be made compact, thus making it possible to use as a portable device or mount it on a vehicle. In the case where the playback device is used as a portable device, even in a crowded place such as train, one can listen to audio without bothering persons around him or her, by employing earphones. In addition, when the playback device is mounted on a vehicle, one can listen to replayed audio information while driving.

Deleted: ¶  
small sized... reproduction... voice... is reproduced... e... exclusively used for reproduction... downsized... reproduction voice... reproduction... voice... reproduce d ... in ... [3]

[0015] FIG. 3 shows an external view diagram of the optical disk playback device used in the embodiment. The optical disk is inserted in an insert port 1. A liquid crystal display panel 2 displays which item on a menu has been selected. In addition, a still image sent from a broadcasting station can be displayed on this monitor. Control buttons 3 include the operating buttons (Replay), (Stop), (Fast Feed), and (Rewind), which relate to audio playback, and the operating buttons (Select Current Item), (Proceed to Next Item), (Back to Previous Item), and (Back to Upper-Level Menu), which relate to item selection on a menu. Replayed audio can be listened to by connecting to earphone plug 4. The volume is controlled by means of a volume knob 5.

Formatted: Indent: First line: 0"  
Deleted: ¶  
appearance ... an... reproduction... for ... f rom ... is... the... o... of ... Reproduce... ¶ )... ing... voice... reproduction... o... of ' ... .. High-Order... ing... A reproduction... voice... is audible... making ... O... to an ... [4]

[0016]

[Effect of the Invention]

Deleted: Advantages



According to the present invention, it is possible to perform information transmission to the public, speedily and in detail; an information recipient can obtain only the information desirable to one's self, at one's preferred time, and it is possible to confirm information as many times as required.

#### BRIEF EXPLANATION OF THE DRAWINGS

[FIG. 1] FIG. 1 is a conceptual view of the flow of audio information in an information transmission system according to the present invention.

[FIG. 2] FIG. 2 is the menu structure according to embodiment 1.

[FIG. 3] FIG. 3 is an external view of an optical disk playback device for use according to embodiment 1.

#### [Explanation of References]

1... Optical disk insert port 2... Liquid crystal display panel 3... Control buttons

4... Earphone plug 5... Volume knob

Deleted:
Deleted:
Deleted: people
Deleted: Only information desirable to a
Deleted: receiver
Deleted: be
Deleted: ed
Deleted: favorite
Deleted: o
Deleted: t
Deleted:
Deleted: ¶
Deleted: voice
Deleted:
Deleted: ¶
Deleted: a
Deleted:
Deleted: ¶
Deleted: reproduction
Deleted:
Deleted: Numerals
Deleted:
Deleted:

FIG. 1

Information provider (broadcasting station)

Audio signal input

**Deleted:** Voice

Item classification

Signal compression

Transmitter

**Deleted:** Information receiver

Wired or wireless broadcasting

At home

Receiver

**Deleted:** Receiving equipment

Optical disk recording device

**Deleted:** Rewritable disk recording device

Rewritable optical disk

Portable optical disk playback device

**Deleted:** reproduction

Replayed audio information

**Deleted:** voice

Information recipient

FIG. 2

News\_\_\_Important news \_Title of item 1\_\_Summary of item 1\_\_Details of item 1

\_\_Title of item 2\_\_Summary of item 2\_\_Details of item 2

Politics

Economy

International

Economy

Society

Deleted: ¶

.....Section Break (Next Page).....

Science

Deleted:

Industry

Deleted:

Entertainment

Deleted:

Deleted: ¶

Deleted: ¶

Others \_\_\_\_\_ Music \_\_\_\_\_ Classic \_\_\_\_\_ Title of music number 1 Performance of music number 1

Title of music number 2 Performance of music number 2

Deleted: s

\_\_\_\_\_ Pop Music \_\_\_\_\_

Deleted: Hit parade

\_\_\_\_\_ Japanese Pop Music \_\_\_\_\_

English language course \_\_\_\_\_ Contents of English language course

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 10:39:00 AM

voice

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:35:00 AM

the

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:08:00 AM

receiving equipment

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:06:00 AM

receiver

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 10:39:00 AM

voice

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:03:00 AM

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:07:00 AM

receiving equipment

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:36:00 AM

with

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:36:00 AM

and

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:36:00 AM

the

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:07:00 AM

receiving equipment

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:37:00 AM

sens

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:14:00 AM

transferred

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:06:00 AM

{

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:38:00 AM

corded

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:08:00 AM

receiving equipment

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:39:00 AM

a

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:39:00 AM

n

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:39:00 AM

redundant

Page 5: [1] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 10:51:00 AM

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:14:00 AM

transferred

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 10:39:00 AM

voice

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:02:00 AM

reproduced

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 10:39:00 AM

voice

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:40:00 AM

by employ

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:40:00 AM

ing the

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:21:00 AM

reproduction

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 10:50:00 AM

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:21:00 AM

reproduction

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:21:00 AM

reproduction

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:40:00 AM

downsized

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:21:00 AM

reproduction

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:42:00 AM

while a portable device is u

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:42:00 AM

sed

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:42:00 AM

making it possible to

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 10:39:00 AM

voice

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:01:00 AM

reproduced

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:21:00 AM

reproduction

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:18:00 AM

g

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:43:00 AM

hierarchical

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:26:00 AM

which

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:43:00 AM

the

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:06:00 AM

receivers

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:43:00 AM

are

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:22:00 AM



reproducing

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:21:00 AM

reproduction

Page 5: [2] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:19:00 AM

can mount

Page 8: [3] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:10:00 PM

Page 8: [3] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:10:00 PM

small sized

Page 8: [3] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:19:00 AM

reproduction

Page 8: [3] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 10:40:00 AM

voice

Page 8: [3] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:10:00 PM

is reproduced

Page 8: [3] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:11:00 PM

e

Page 8: [3] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:11:00 PM

exclusively used for reproduction

Page 8: [3] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:11:00 PM

downsized

Page 8: [3] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:19:00 AM

reproduction

Page 8: [3] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 10:40:00 AM

voice

Page 8: [3] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:19:00 AM

reproduction

Page 8: [3] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 10:40:00 AM

voice

Page 8: [3] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:02:00 AM

reproduced

Page 8: [3] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:01:00 AM

in

Page 8: [3] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 10:54:00 AM

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:10:00 PM

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:12:00 PM

appearance

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:12:00 PM

an

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:19:00 AM

reproduction

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:13:00 PM

for

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:13:00 PM

from

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:13:00 PM

is

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:13:00 PM

the

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:13:00 PM

o

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:14:00 PM

of

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:02:00 AM

Reproduce

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:20:00 AM

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:13:00 PM

}

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:14:00 PM

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:14:00 PM

ing

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 10:40:00 AM

voice

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:19:00 AM

reproduction

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:14:00 PM

o

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:14:00 PM

of

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:02:00 AM

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:02:00 AM

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:02:00 AM

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:15:00 PM

High-Order

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:15:00 PM

ing

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:20:00 AM

A reproduction

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 10:40:00 AM

voice

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:21:00 AM

is audible

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:21:00 AM

making

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:21:00 AM

0

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 12:16:00 PM

to an

Page 8: [4] Deleted tpuser 11/2/2007 11:02:00 AM



I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the U.S. Postal Service as Express Mail, Airbill No. EV 456358007 US, in an envelope addressed to: MS RCE, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450, on the date shown below.

Dated: March 8, 2006

Signature:

*Georgina Mejias*  
(Georgina Mejias)

Docket No.: 549222000101  
(PATENT)

**IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

In re Patent Application of:  
John O. RYAN

Application No.: 08/977,846

Confirmation No.: 3572

Filed: (Intl.) November 25, 1997

Art Unit: 3639

For: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR  
INFORMATION DISSEMINATION WITH  
USER MENU INTERFACE

Examiner: M. Dinh

**SECOND DECLARATION UNDER RULE 132**

Commissioner for Patents  
P. O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Dear Sir:

1. My name is Charles H. Jablonski. My qualifications are attached as Exhibit 2. I am an independent consultant.

2. I reviewed the specification and currently pending claims of U.S. Patent Application No. 08/977,846 filed November 25, 1997 titled "Method and System for Information Dissemination with User Menu Interface," inventor John O. Ryan. I also reviewed the Office Action in that application having a mailing date of December 13, 2005 and the cited reference assigned to Hitachi Limited, inventor Yoshio et al., Japanese Patent Application No. 04-310631. I reviewed an English language translation of Yoshio et al. I note that in the December 13, 2005

Office Action the Examiner referred to this reference erroneously as "Yoshiro et al. ('631)." The last name of the first inventor is "Yoshio."

3. The disclosure of Yoshio et al. is limited. There is disclosure of how the user would use the apparatus, referred to as a "rewritable optical disc." However, there is no useful description of how the apparatus is built or its internal operation.

4. There is no description in Yoshio et al of internal components and how they are interrelated or operation of the rewritable optical disc apparatus. The exception is that the apparatus is described as based on an optical recording disc drive and having the capability of receiving a television signal. There is no description in Yoshio et al of how the data is indexed or cataloged for recordation or storage on the disc, or how the apparatus processes the received data for such storage. This is not enough for one of ordinary skill in the television/video field to understand how the apparatus would actually be built or operate.

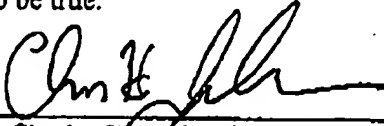
5. Yoshio et al is only an unexamined Japanese patent publication ("Kokai"). It is not an issued patent.

6. In my professional activities I have reviewed many patents and technical articles and technical specifications in the video and television and telecommunications fields. The specification of Yoshio et al. is remarkably sketchy in terms of technical detail of how the apparatus would be implemented. I view the Yoshio et al description as more of a wish list of what a desired apparatus would do rather than a description of how to make and use such an apparatus.

7. I believe that the Yoshio et al description, even to one of ordinary skill in the relevant technical field, which I believe is television and/or video and/or telecommunications, is insufficient to enable such a person to make or use the apparatus, even with some experimentation.

8. I understand that willful false statements and the like in this declaration are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both (18 U.S.C. § 1001) and may jeopardize the validity of the above cited application or any patent issuing thereon. All statements made in this declaration of my own knowledge are true and all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true.

Signed:

  
Charles H. Jablonski

Date:

3-Mar-06



I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the U.S. Postal Service as Express Mail, Airbill No. EV 582592297 US, in an envelope addressed to: MS Amendment, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450, on the date shown below.

Dated: February 7, 2008

Signature: 

(Sarah J. Jeromin)

Docket No.: 549222000101  
(PATENT)

**IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

re Patent Application of:  
John O. RYAN

Application No.: 08/977,846

Confirmation No.: 3572

Filed: November 25, 1997

Art Unit: 3628

For: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR  
INFORMATION DISSEMINATION WITH  
USER MENU INTERFACE (AS AMENDED)

Examiner: I. Borissov

**THIRD DECLARATION UNDER RULE 132**

I, Charles H. Jablonski, declare as follows:

**Qualifications**

1. I make each of the statements in this declaration based on my personal knowledge, except where I indicate that the statement is based on information and belief. I would, if necessary, testify to the truth of each of those statements.

2. Command Audio Corporation has retained me as a consultant in relation to above cited U.S. Patent Application No. 08/997,846. (the "Ryan Application".) I previously consulted with Command Audio in *Command Audio Corporation v. Sony Electronics, Inc.*, Case No. 02-cv-0599 (MJJ) in the United States District Court for the Northern District of California (the "Sony Litigation"). In the Sony Litigation, I provided my independent opinions about the infringement and validity of Command Audio's U.S. Patent Nos. 5,590,195 and 6,330,334. (Those patents share the same disclosure as the present application, and like the present application, are continuations-in-part of U.S. Application No. 08/031,763 filed on March 15, 1993.) I have also provided my independent opinions regarding references cited in the prior Office Action having a mailing date of

December 13, 2005 in my First Declaration Under Rule 132 of Charles H. Jablonski, filed March 8, 2006, of record (regarding De Bey WO99/03112 and Lang U.S. 5,057,932), and in my Second Declaration Under Rule 132 of Charles H. Jablonski, filed March 8, 2006, of record (regarding Yoshio, Japanese Patent Application No. 04-310631). For my current consulting work, I am being compensated at my ordinary consulting rate of \$350 per hour.

3. Attached as Exhibit A to this declaration is a copy of my *curriculum vitae*. I studied electrical engineering at Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute and Union College. I have worked in the broadcasting industry for 24 years. From 1983 to 1993, I worked for National Broadcasting Company ("NBC"), where I became Chief Engineer for the Network, responsible for capital and strategic planning as well as various fast track technology projects. From 1993 to 1999, I was Vice President of Broadcast and Network Engineering at NBC, responsible for the Network's commercial operations. My responsibilities included design, procurement and implementation of end-to-end data broadcast network for affiliate sites and implementation of the Network Operating Center. My responsibilities also involved reviewing technology and intellectual property of interest to the Network. In 1999, I joined Geocast Network Systems, Inc., a startup focused on building a new network that used digital broadcast infrastructure to deliver personalized rich-media information and programming and data to the PC desktop. In 2000, I became Geocast's Chief Operating Officer. Since 2001, I have been interim President and Chief Executive Officer of Myrio Corporation, a startup focused on an open standards architecture solution for IPTV (Internet protocol television) allowing interoperability of core components such as set-top boxes. Since 1988, I have been the Chairman of the National Academy of Television Arts & Sciences Engineering Achievement Awards ("NATAS Engineering Awards") Committee.

4. Exhibit B is a list of materials referenced below that I reviewed in preparing this declaration.

### State of the Art in 1993

5. As NBC's Vice President of Broadcast and Network Engineering in 1993 I am personally and fully familiar with the state of "art" to which the Ryan Application relates, i.e., equipment and systems for broadcasted media consumption.

6. On March 15, 1993 when Ryan's first application was filed, consumer digital broadcast transmission was largely experimental. (For perspective, the first deployment of a digital broadcast system for consumer use was in June 1994 by DirecTV, for which the 1994-95 NATAS Engineering Award was awarded.) In 1993 broadcasted media was delivered to consumers by "over the air broadcast" to televisions and radio receivers, by analog cable systems, and by the sale of fixed media to be played back on home players such as Video Home System (VHS) and audio Compact Disc Read-Only Memory (CD-ROM) players.

7. The first time (of which I am aware) that any practical digital video and audio consumer recording technology was demonstrated was a private demonstration by Panasonic to NBC in November 1994 in Osaka, Japan. In 1993, VHS, Betamax and audio tape recorders were used by consumers to capture and play back broadcasted media. Magneto-optical (MO) drives had not been widely used in the broadcast or audio recording industry due to the slow transfer rate of data to the disk relative to the data acquisition rate from the source. (In about 1992, Sony introduced the MiniDisc for audio which had a direct overwrite feature to help address this problem. However, the MiniDisc was originally based exclusively on ATRAC audio compression format and was not a data disk. The data format for the MiniDisc was not introduced until about 1994.) Rewritable Compact Disc (CD-RW) was not introduced until 1997. In addition, the first suite of Moving Picture Experts Group (MPEG) standards (ISO/IEC 11172-3) was not published until 1993 and the second suite of MPEG standards, MPEG-2 (ISO/IEC 13818-3), was not published until 1995.

8. In 1993, industry professionals had available limited digital video recorders such as hard disc and MO drives used largely for secondary storage and image manipulation. It was not

until 1994 that NBC realistically considered large scale digital video storage for its network operations.

### **The Ryan Architecture**

9. The Ryan Application and his related patents solved the problem of the inability of individuals in 1993 to consume whatever broadcasted audio they wanted, whenever they wanted. Ryan's solution allows individuals to enjoy the immediacy of broadcasted media while providing them with choice and control over content and consumption.

10. An embodiment described in the Ryan Application and the Ryan patents (U.S. Patent Nos. 5,406,626; 5,524,051; 5,590,195; 5,751,806 and 6,330,334) enables commuters to listen to whatever programming they wanted, including continuous updates, whenever they wanted. To be clear, this is not merely a time shifting device like a VHS or audio cassette recorder on which broadcasted media can only be searched and replayed in linear (sequential) fashion. It allows broadcasted audio to be continuously updated and randomly recalled and accessed in linear and non-linear (random access) fashions using a set of menus describing the database of locally stored broadcasted media. As I have stated, this combines the usefulness of time shifting with the ability to receive, organize and efficiently consume broadcasted media including continuous updates, such as current news. As Ryan states at page 7, lines 24-25 and page 8, lines 3-7 of the Ryan Application, "For full effectiveness the information dissemination device needs to be on 24 hours a day. ... The FM subcarrier tuner 12, microcontroller 20, conditional access circuitry 16 and random access memory 28 typically remain powered at all times (by battery power if necessary) to receive a continuous update of the broadcast database, and thereby to store current news in RAM 28."

11. The claims pending in the Ryan Application define aspects of the above-described solution that Ryan invented that enables his novel mode of media consumption which I will refer to as the "Ryan Architecture". I set forth pending Claim I (previously presented) as an example:

1. A receiver adapted to receive data contained in a transmitted broadcast signal comprising:

a tuner for receiving a broadcast signal;

a memory coupled to the tuner for storing data in the received broadcast signal in a database;

a user interface for providing a set of menus describing the database, and for accepting selections from the set of menus;

a controller coupled to the memory and the user interface for selecting data from the database in response to the accepted selections and providing the selected data in a digital form; and

a speech producing sub-system coupled to the controller and the memory for converting the selected data from digital form to an analog signal.

12. Variations of the Ryan Architecture are also claimed in his other patents, including those at issue in the Sony Litigation. I set forth Claim 44 of U.S. Patent No. 6,330,334 (which was litigated in that action) as an example below:

44. A receiver comprising:

a television tuner;

a controller coupled to the television tuner and which provides audio from a signal received at the television tuner, wherein the audio is carried in an audio or video portion of television signals received at the tuner;

a memory coupled to the controller and which stores the audio;

a user interface coupled to the controller and which provides a menu; and

an audio output device coupled to the controller and which outputs the stored audio in response to a selection from the menu, wherein the stored audio has a designation associated with the menu.

13. As so recited, the Ryan Architecture is a complete integrated system that allows the continuous reception, storage, selection and retrieval of broadcasted audio in linear or non-linear manners. This functionality is enabled by the Ryan Architecture: a tuner, memory, controller and play back sub-system all coupled together with a menu-driven user interface describing the stored data and allowing selections of specific data for consumption.

### **Commercial Implementations of the Ryan Architecture**

14. In late 1998 (more than five years after John Ryan filed his first patent application) the first public trials of a personalized digital video recorder (PVR) and service began. The TiVo PVR and service were exhibited at the Consumer Electronics Show (CES) in January 1999 and TiVo (along with ReplayTV) was awarded the 2000-2001 NATAS Engineering Award for that work. Command Audio also introduced its audio-on-demand device ("RCA CA-1000") and associated service at the 1999 CES and earned the Innovation Design and Engineering Award for new products.

15. Attached to this declaration as Exhibit C is a copy of the "User's Manual" for the RCA CA-1000. I obtained this document and a RCA CA-1000 device from Command Audio, Inc. I disassembled and examined the RCA CA-1000 device. I have also reviewed the RCA CA-1000 User Manual.

16. The RCA CA-1000 includes a "tuner for receiving a broadcast signal". By personal inspection, I was able to confirm that the RCA CA-1000 includes an FM antenna (*see also, e.g.,* Exhibit C, page 12) and tuner that are used to receive programs over FM broadcast radio transmissions. The RCA CA-1000 also includes "a memory coupled to the tuner for storing data in the received broadcast signal in a database". As described on page 28 of Exhibit C, the RCA CA-1000 includes memory sufficient to store up to 8 hours of audio programs. The RCA CA-1000

further includes "a user interface for providing a set of menus describing the database, and for accepting selections from the set of menus". Buttons on the RCA CA-1000 device are used to navigate a set of menus and select programs for playback (*see, e.g., id.* at pages 12, 14 and 15). The RCA CA-1000 includes "a controller coupled to the memory and the user interface for selecting data from the database in response to the accepted selections and providing the selected data in a digital form". In particular, by personal inspection, I was able to confirm that the RCA CA-1000 includes a Motorola 68307 processor. Finally, the RCA CA-1000 includes "a speech producing sub-system coupled to the controller and the memory for converting the selected data from digital form to an analog signal". The programs selected from the database in memory are converted to an analog signal and played back on a speaker.

17. The RCA CA-1000 includes all the elements of pending Claim 1.

18. Another example of an audio-on-demand implementation of the Ryan Architecture is the XM Satellite Radio Holdings, Inc. "Inno" (also known as the XM2go) satellite receiver/recorder manufactured and sold by Pioneer Electronics (USC), Inc. ("Pioneer"). I disassembled and examined an Inno device. I also obtained and reviewed internal photographs of the Inno on file with the FCC ("the FCC Photographs") ([https://fjallfoss.fcc.gov/prod/oet/forms/blobs/retrieve.cgi?attachment\\_id=715697&native\\_or\\_pdf=pdf](https://fjallfoss.fcc.gov/prod/oet/forms/blobs/retrieve.cgi?attachment_id=715697&native_or_pdf=pdf)). The FCC Photographs show the same features I observed in the Inno that I disassembled and examined. I also obtained and reviewed a copy of the Inno User Guide ([www.pioneerelectronics.com/vgn/images/portal/cit\\_11221/310280444enginno\\_usergd\\_5.17.06\[1\].pdf](http://www.pioneerelectronics.com/vgn/images/portal/cit_11221/310280444enginno_usergd_5.17.06[1].pdf)). I have attached the FCC Photographs and the Inno User Guide as to this declaration as Exhibits D and E.

19. Exhibit D1 is the fourth page (of five) from the FCC Photographs entitled "Receiver Board – Front." It shows the Inno's "tuner for receiving a broadcast signal." In that exhibit I have labeled the Inno's antenna and tuner for receiving broadcast signals.

20. Exhibit D2 is the second page (of five) from the FCC Photographs entitled "Controller Board – Front." I have labeled "Memory" the Inno's "memory coupled to the timer for storing data in the received broadcast signal in a database".

21. Page 37-39 of the Inno User Guide attached as Exhibit E, describes the Inno's "user interface for providing a set of menus describing the database, and for accepting selections from the set of menus". As shown on page 38 of the Inno User Guide, the user interface displays options for selecting recorded music, including "All Songs", "Artists" and "Categories". As shown on page 38 of the Inno User Guide, the user interface displays options for selecting recorded music, including "All Songs", "Artists" and "Categories" and up/down arrow buttons are used to make selections. When a selection is made, additional options are displayed. For example, as described on pages 38-39 of the Inno User Guide, a list of artists may be displayed. Once an artist is selected, the user interface will display a list of songs by that artist that have been recorded and a song from that list can be selected for playback. I have labeled the Inno's "Display" and "Control Pad" on Exhibit D2.

22. I have also labeled "Controller" on Exhibit D2 the Inno's "controller coupled to the memory and the user interface for selecting data from the database in response to the accepted selections and providing the selected data in a digital form". I have labeled as "Audio D to A" on Exhibit D1 and as "Headphone Jack" on Exhibit D1 the Inno's "a speech producing sub-system coupled to the controller and the memory for converting the selected data from digital form to an analog signal".

23. The Pioneer Inno includes all the elements of pending Claim 1.

24. According to Command Audio's web site, XM is a licensee of Command Audio ([www.commandaudio.com/licensees.php#XM%20Satellite%20Radio](http://www.commandaudio.com/licensees.php#XM%20Satellite%20Radio)).

25. Typical PVRs also use the Ryan Architecture. As I have stated, the Ryan Architecture enables continuous reception, storage, selection and retrieval of broadcasted audio in linear or non-linear manners using a set of menus describing the stored database. The database and set of menus can be used in embodiments to enable organization and efficient access to a large



amount of broadcasted media for playback. Coupling of both the tuner and speech producing subsystem to the memory can be used to enable continuous updates to be received. As a result, the benefits of the immediacy provided by broadcasted media can be preserved while also providing the benefits of organization, efficiency and control over playback. This architecture is fundamental for enabling these characteristic features and functionality of typical PVRs since they were introduced in 1999, which continuously receive, organize and provide efficient access to a large number of broadcasted programs under user control. Below I describe representative examples of PVRs implementing the Ryan Architecture that have been widely used by consumers in the broadcast cable and satellite television markets.

26. Attached to this declaration is a copy of the Sony Electronics, Inc. ("Sony") SVR-3000 PVR Service Manual and Installation Guide (Exhibit F1) that I purchased from a commercial website that offers various technical information and service manuals ([www.nodevice.com](http://www.nodevice.com)). Attached to this declaration as Exhibit F2 is a copy of the Sony SVR-3000 PVR Operation Manual ("TiVo Viewer's Guide") that I purchased from a commercial website that offers various technical information and service manuals ([www.user-manuals-com](http://www.user-manuals-com).) I recognize Exhibits F1-F2 as the same Sony SVR-3000 Service Manual and Installation Guide and TiVo Viewer's Guide that I had previously reviewed during the Sony Litigation. During my work on the Sony Litigation, I also reviewed a substantial amount of additional information relating to the components and operation of the SVR-3000 and related TiVo service. Some of that information is subject to a Protective Order in the Sony Litigation. I base my opinions in this declaration regarding the SVR-3000 device solely on publicly available information.

27. Attached to this declaration as Exhibits G1-G5 are copies of the "Block Diagram" from Section 2-3 of the SVR-3000 PVR Service Manual in Exhibit F1 showing the architecture of the SVR-3000. I have highlighted those copies of the Block Diagram in Exhibits G1-G5 to illustrate where in the SVR-3000 are found the various elements of pending claim 1.

28. In Exhibit G1, I have shown the SVR-3000's "tuner for receiving a broadcast signal" highlighted in yellow. The SVR-3000's tuner is labeled "Tuner/IF".

29. In Exhibit G2, I have shown the SVR-3000's "memory coupled to the tuner for storing data in the received broadcast signal in a database" highlighted in yellow. The Tuner/IF provides to the memory ("HDD 1") data from the received broadcast signal. This data travels through "MPX Audio AD/DA" which is connected to the "Media SW ASIC". The Media SW ASIC provides the audio data to the database in HDD 1 through the "IDE I/F" interface.

30. In Exhibit G3, I have shown the SVR-3000's "user interface for providing a set of menus describing the database, and for accepting selections from the set of menus" highlighted in yellow. The user commands are provided to the SVR-3000 either through "Front Panel" push buttons or an infrared ("IR") control. (Although only the "IR OUT" is shown in the Block Diagram, the IR receive input is shown on page 29 of the SVR-3000 PVR Service Manual in Exhibit F1 as "IR-RECV-IN" at Pin 6 of the IR controller.) These commands are processed by a combination of the Media SW ASIC via the PCI Bus and "MPEG2 Decoder & Bus Bridge" and the MIPS CPU via the CPU Bus which provide appropriate commands and actions to the SVR-3000. Based on the system state, stored information in the database and relevant choices, the MIPS CPU along with the MPEG2 Decoder & Bus Bridge provide a visual display through the "Video Driver" and video output ("Line 1/2/S Video Out") to the user. An example of the visual display showing the menus which describe the database is shown at pages 18 and 31-33 of the TiVo Viewer's Guide (Exhibit F2). As shown on pages 18 and 31-33, the "Now Playing" user interface displays programs saved on the recorder. When a program is selected, additional information describing the program is displayed along with options for selecting the program, including options to "Play" (or "Resume Playing") or to "Save to VCR". Page 11 of the SVR-3000 Installation Guide in Exhibit F1 provides an example of how a user with the IR remote control would access material recorded in the database. As shown on page 11, by operating the "LIST button" and "Navigation arrows and SELECT buttons" a user "opens the 'Now Playing List' of recorded programs" and "moves the highlighted area or cursor left, right, up, or down, and chooses (selects) the currently highlighted item in a menu."

31. In Exhibit G4, I have shown the SVR-3000's "controller coupled to the memory and the user interface for selecting data from the database in response to the accepted selections and

providing the selected data in a digital form" highlighted in yellow. The SVR-3000's controller is coupled to the user interface as described in the previous paragraph. The MIPS CPU is coupled to the HDD 1 via the CPU Bus, the MPEG2 Decoder & Bus Bridge, the PCI Bus, Media SW ASIC and IDE I/F interface. Selected digital data are provided from HDD 1 via the IDE I/F interface and Media SW ASIC.

32. In Exhibit G5, I have shown the SVR-3000's "speech producing sub-system coupled to the controller and the memory for converting the selected data from digital form to an analog signal" highlighted in yellow. The selected digital data provided by the Media SW ASIC are converted from digital to analog signal by MPX Audio AD/DA, which in turn is coupled to MIPS CPU and the Media SW ASIC.

33. The Sony SVR-3000 includes all the element of pending Claim 1. In addition, both Sony's SVR-2000 and SVR-3000 PVRs were held to infringe Claim 44 of U.S. Patent No. 6,330,334 in the Sony Litigation on Command Audio's motion for summary judgment. I have attached a copy of that judgment as Exhibit H to this declaration. Claim 44 of the '344 patent is set out above in Paragraph 12. It is not only my opinion, but it is the judgment of the United States District Court for the Northern District of California, that Sony's SVR-3000 PVR includes a tuner, memory, controller and play back sub-system all coupled together with a menu-driven user interface describing the stored data and allowing selections of specific data for consumption.

34. In December 2005, Sony settled the Sony litigation patent infringement action brought by Command Audio. According to Command Audio's December 15, 2006 press release: "Under terms of a confidential license agreement, Sony has made a financial settlement and has taken a royalty-bearing license to use Command Audio's patented technology in such products as personal video recorders (PVRs) and personal computers with PVR functionality. The worldwide agreement runs for the life of Command Audio's core PVR patents."  
([http://www.commandaudio.com/\\_release.php?which=7](http://www.commandaudio.com/_release.php?which=7))

35. The Sony SVR-3000 PVR was based on hardware reference design and software provided by the TiVo, Inc. (See pages 5-6 of TiVo's Form 10K filed with the SEC on April 15, 2004 for the period ending January 31, 2004 attached as Exhibit I.) According to page 19 of TiVo's Form 10Q filed with the SEC on December 9, 2005 for the period ending October 31, 2005 attached as Exhibit J, TiVo had an indemnification obligation to Sony for the Sony Litigation, and since February 2002, had incurred \$5.8 million in legal expenses.

36. TiVo had also TiVo-enabled PVRs manufactured by and licensed its hardware designs and software to a number of other manufacturers of PVRs including Toshiba, Pioneer, Philips, Thomson Multimedia and Hughes. (See pages 5-6 of TiVo's Form 10K filed with the SEC on April 15, 2004 for the period ending January 31, 2004 attached as Exhibit I.) Like the Sony PVRs, these TiVo enabled PVRs would also need to implement the Ryan Architecture in order to deliver TiVo's service to a consumer.

37. Scientific Atlanta ("SA"), now a subsidiary of Cisco Systems, Inc., also manufactures a line of PVR products including the Explorer 8000, 8000HD, 8240 and 8300. ([www.scientificatlanta.com/Products/consumers/new\\_cableboxes.html](http://www.scientificatlanta.com/Products/consumers/new_cableboxes.html)). Attached to this declaration as Exhibit K1 is a copy of the data sheet for SA's Explorer 8300. Pages 2 and 3 of the SA 8300 Data Sheet outline the Explorer 8300 specifications. Attached as Exhibits K2-K4 are similar data sheets for the Explorer 8000, 8000HD and the 8240. I obtained all these specifications ("SA DVR Specifications") from SA's website at [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps8613/products\\_data\\_sheets\\_list.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps8613/products_data_sheets_list.html). Also attached to this declaration as Exhibit L is SA's Explorer Digital Video Recorder User's Guide ("SA DVR User's Guide"). ([www.scientificatlanta.com/products/consumers/userguidepdfs/4003870.pdf](http://www.scientificatlanta.com/products/consumers/userguidepdfs/4003870.pdf)). The SA DVR User's Guide describes the functionality and operation of SA's Explorer 8000, 8000HD, 8240 and 8300 (see page 48 of Exhibit L).

38. Exhibits K1-K4 each describes the Explorer 8000, 8000HD, 8240 and 8300's "tuner for receiving a broadcast signal". The descriptions for the "Dual Analog and Digital Service Tuners" (Explorer 8000, 8000HD and 8300 Specifications) and "Dual Digital Service Tuners"

(Explorer 8240 Specification) features are found on page 2 of each of the respective SA DVR Specifications.

39. Exhibits K1-K4 also each describes the Explorer 8000, 8000HD, 8240 and 8300's "a memory coupled to the tuner for storing data in the received broadcast signal in a database". The descriptions for the "80 GB Hard Drive" are found on page 2 of each of the respective SA DVR Specifications.

40. Page 18 of the SA User Guide attached as Exhibit L, describes the Explorer 8300's: 8000/8000HD/8420 "user interface for providing a set of menus describing the database, and for accepting selections from the set of menus". As shown on page 18, the "Recorded List" displays programs that have been recorded. When a program is selected, additional information describing the program is displayed along with options for selecting the program, including options to "Play [title of program]" or "Copy to VCR". A button may also be used to display the "Playback Status" screen which provides additional options, including "Copy to VCR", "Play from beginning", "Play from current position" and "Skip to end". The "AllTouch Remote Control" is shown on the second page of the SA User's Guide attached as Exhibit L. (This page is not numbered in the SA User's Guide and is identified as the "inside of front cover" in the contents on page (iv) of the SA User's Guide.) As shown on this page, by operating the "LIST" button a user displays the "list of recordings" and the arrows and "SELECT" button are used to "Move through on-screen choices" and "Perform selected action".

41. Exhibits K1-K4 also each describes the Explorer 8000, 8000HD, 8240 and 8300's "controller coupled to the memory and the user interface for selecting data from the database in response to the accepted selections and providing the selected data in a digital form". The descriptions for the "PowerTV Operating System with HTML Client Engine" and "32-bit RISC Processors" are found on page 2 of the Explorer 8000, 8240 and 8300 Specifications and on page 3 of the Explorer 8000HD Specification.

42. Finally, Exhibits K1-K4 also each describe the Explorer 8000, 8000HD, 8240 and 8300's "speech producing sub-system coupled to the controller and the memory for converting the selected data from digital form to an analog signal". The descriptions for the "BTSC/SAP Encoder" (or "BTSC Encoder" in the case of the 8240) and the "Composite Audio/Video Outputs" are found on pages 2-3 of the Explorer 8000 and page 2 of the Explorer 8000HD, 8240 and 8300 Specifications.

43. The Explorer 8000, 8000HD, 8240 8300 PVRs each include all the elements of pending Claim 1.

44. In April 2007, Scientific Atlanta purchased a license from Command Audio. According to Command Audio's April 24, 2007 press release: "Command Audio Corp., a pioneer in the development of broadcast on-demand media technology, today announced that Scientific Atlanta, a Cisco company and a leader in the market for cable television set-top boxes, has purchased a license to use Command Audio's patented PVR (personal video recorder, also known as digital video recorder, or DVR) technology. Under terms of the agreement, Scientific Atlanta acquired a license to use Command Audio's patented technology in all of its PVR set-top box products." ([http://www.commandaudio.com/\\_release.php?which=10](http://www.commandaudio.com/_release.php?which=10))

### **The Yoshio Publication**

45. The Examiner responsible for examining U.S. Patent Application No. 08/997,846 has rejected pending Claims 1, 33-37, 39-40, 51 and 58-61 under 35 U.S.C. § 102(a) as being anticipated by Japanese Unexamined Patent Application Publication H4-310631 ("Yoshio") and the remaining claims under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) as being unpatentable over Yoshio in view of three other references and Official Notice.

46. In my Second Declaration, I provided my independent opinion that Yoshio does not provide sufficient description for one of ordinary skill in the art to understand how the apparatus would actually be built or operate. I have reviewed a new translation of Yoshio dated Nov. 2, 2007 and the Office Action dated August 10, 2007. In the Office Action, the Examiner states that my

opinions regarding enablement of Yoshio are not convincing, because "the use of databases and menus are old and well known and are seen to be inherent in the reference." However, it remains my opinion that Yoshio does not provide sufficient description for one of ordinary skill in the art to understand how the apparatus would actually be built or operate for the reasons stated in my March 8, 2006 Declaration. Yoshio's solution, to the extent it can be understood from the publication, does not appear to use a conventional database or menus. Instead Yoshio uses his own classification scheme as classified by the "information provider" with associated menus, see his paragraph 12. The existence of "old and well known" databases and menus for other uses does not tell one of ordinary skill in the art how the apparatus described in Yoshio would actually be built or operate.

47. Yoshio describes the problem of broadcasted information as "it is impossible to select only information on fields in which individual information recipients are interested." (See paragraph 3, lines 3-4.) Yoshio contrasts this with printed media: "In the case of newspapers, it is possible to pick up only information that information recipients want, from among a variety of fields. In addition, the recipients can read them at a time convenient to them, and it is possible to reread them any number of times for confirmation." (See paragraph 3, lines 12-13.) Yoshio's solution, to the extent it can be understood from his publication, was to allow a consumer to record broadcasted information on a portable playback only device that could be used in a crowded train or while driving a vehicle. (See paragraph 14, lines 5-8.) Yoshio fails to appreciate, let alone incorporate into his system, the principal power of broadcasted media, i.e., the immediacy and continuous availability of broadcasted information. For example, there is no suggestion in Yoshio that he was even interested in receiving continuous traffic reports updates, breaking news or stock quotes or could provide any capability for doing so.

48. One of ordinary skill in the art on March 15, 1993, would have viewed Yoshio's solution (again, to the extent it could be understood) as providing playback separate from delivery of information on the broadcast network. For example, Yoshio states in paragraph 13, lines 9-10, that "news transmission is performed from night time to morning, and thus, the audio information is delivered to each home by the next morning." Since Yoshio provides for delivery separate from playback and desires to provide portability, a compact playback only device is used. See paragraph

14, lines 2-8. In addition, one of ordinary skill in the art on March 15, 1993 would have expected Yoshio to have relatively slow data transfer for writing to optical disk (as is also suggested by having transmission performed from night to morning) and for the recording process to render the disk unavailable for playback. Yoshio describes - at best - a concept that would theoretically allow a consumer to use an MO drive (of the type made by Yoshio's assignee, Hitachi) as the equivalent of an "electronic newspaper". Accordingly, Yoshio would have been viewed as undesirable for, and would not be suggestive of, an integrated approach such as the Ryan Architecture which can be used to receive continuous updates as well as to provide choice and control over playback.

49. As described in paragraphs 13-43 above, typical PVRs and audio-on-demand devices use the Ryan Architecture, and this architecture is fundamental for enabling characteristic features and functionality of those products. None of the PVRs and audio-on-demand devices described in paragraphs 13-43 above, nor any other PVRs or audio-on-demand devices of which I am aware, use the approach described in Yoshio, and further the approach described in Yoshio would not enable these products to perform their characteristic features and functionality as described above.

50. I understand that willful false statements and the like in this declaration are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both (18 U.S.C. § 1001) and may jeopardize the validity of the above cited application or any patent issuing thereon. All statements made in this declaration of my own knowledge are true and all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true.

Signed:



Charles H. Jablonski

Date:

4-Feb-08



# **CHARLES H. JABLONSKI EXHIBITS**

**FOR**

**METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR  
INFORMATION DISSEMINATION WITH  
USER MENU INTERFACE (AS  
AMENDED)**

**DOCKET No. 549222000101  
APPLICATION No. 08/977,846  
FILING DATE: NOVEMBER 25, 1997**

Charles H. Jablonski  
578 Edgewood Road  
Redwood City, CA 94062  
cjablonski@mindspring.com  
(650) 299-9309

**Position Objective:** Senior Operating and Executive Management Role in fast growth technology, media, communications business.

**Experience Summary:**

June 2001-Present President & CEO Myrio Corporation (Interim) Recruited as interim CEO by investors/Board to focus business, reduce costs and structure business for survivability until profitability. Raised \$16MM in funding from existing investors, reduced staff and costs significantly, continued product evolution and instituting processes and procedures for stability and growth based on market. Closed significant domestic and international sales on target for 100% revenue growth in 2002.

October 2000-End Chief Operating Officer, Geocast Network Systems Overall operational responsibility for startup including engineering, product development, customer development, finance, marketing, HR, and operations. Wound down business in 2<sup>nd</sup> Q 2001; negotiated sales of IP, orderly termination of business activities and asset distribution.

July 1999-October 2000 Senior Vice President Network Operations and Engineering, Geocast Network Systems Responsible for design, procurement and implementation of end-to-end data broadcast network for affiliate sites, implementation and operation of Network Operating Center. Responsibilities also included commercial operations, program and product management and IS.

February 1993-July 1999 Vice President Broadcast & Network Engineering National Broadcasting Company Complete technical and technology responsibility for all aspects of NBC, including Olympics, Owned Stations, International, Network Distribution from the strategic to the implementation and operational units. Additionally included business development and acquisitions, strategic technology assessment and development at Senior Management, GE Capital and Corporate (GE) level.

July 1983-February 1993 Managing Director, Chief Engineer, Director National Broadcasting Company Responsibilities ranged from Managing Director Engineering for two Olympic Games (Seoul and Barcelona), Chief Engineer for the Network, capital and strategic planning, and various fast track technology projects from conversion electronic graphics to conversion to stereo for which NBC was awarded an Engineering Emmy.

**Professional Societies, Interests & Awards:**

Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers: Fellow, Served as President 1999-2000  
Awarded Three Emmys

Serves on Advisory Board for RPI (Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute) School of Engineering  
Chair NATAS (Emmy) Engineering Achievement Award Committee

Member: IEEE, Royal Television Society, BKSTS, and NATAS

Presented Royal Television Society Schoenberg Lecture London November 1999

Various Papers and Presentations over the past two decades at various conferences, seminars and association.

Featured as one of the "10 to Watch" Electronic Media 1999

**Education:**

Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute-Electrical Engineering  
Union College-Electrical Engineering

## Exhibit B

### List of Materials

#### Exhibits:

1. Exhibit A - Curriculum Vitae
2. Exhibit B - List of Materials (Exhibit B)
3. Exhibit C - User's Manual for RCA CA-1000 from Command Audio Corporation
4. Exhibit D - Internal photographs of the Inno on file with the FCC ("the FCC Photographs") from  
[https://fjallfoss.fcc.gov/prod/oet/forms/blobs/retrieve.cgi?attachment\\_id=715697&native\\_or\\_pdf=pdf](https://fjallfoss.fcc.gov/prod/oet/forms/blobs/retrieve.cgi?attachment_id=715697&native_or_pdf=pdf)
5. Exhibit D1 - Fourth page from the FCC Photographs entitled "Receiver Board – Front" with labels added
6. Exhibit D2 - Second page from the FCC Photographs entitled "Controller Board – Front" with labels added
7. Exhibit E - Inno User Manual from  
[www.pioneerelectronics.com/vgn/images/portal/cit\\_11221/310280444enginno\\_usergd\\_5.17.06\[1\].pdf](http://www.pioneerelectronics.com/vgn/images/portal/cit_11221/310280444enginno_usergd_5.17.06[1].pdf)
8. Exhibit F1 - Sony SVR-3000 PVR Service Manual and Installation Guide
9. Exhibit F2 - Sony SVR-3000 PVR Operation Manual
10. Exhibit G1 - Block Diagram from Section 2-3 of SVR-3000 PVR Service Manual with highlighted elements
11. Exhibit G2 - Block Diagram from Section 2-3 of SVR-3000 PVR Service Manual with highlighted elements
12. Exhibit G3 - Block Diagram from Section 2-3 of SVR-3000 PVR Service Manual with highlighted elements
13. Exhibit G4 - Block Diagram from Section 2-3 of SVR-3000 PVR Service Manual with highlighted elements
14. Exhibit G5 - Block Diagram from Section 2-3 of SVR-3000 PVR Service Manual with highlighted elements
15. Exhibit H - Summary Judgment Order dated June 14, 2004 in the Sony Litigation
16. Exhibit I - Pages 5-6 of TiVo's Form 10K filed with the SEC on April 15, 2004 for the period ending January 31, 2004 from  
<http://www.sec.gov/Archives/edgar/data/1088825/000119312504063164/d10k.htm>
17. Exhibit J - Page 19 of TiVo's Form 10Q filed with the SEC on December 9, 2005 for the period ending October 31, 2005 from  
<http://www.sec.gov/Archives/edgar/data/1088825/000119312505240039/d10q.htm>
18. Exhibit K1 – Data Sheet for Scientific Atlanta Explorer 8300 from  
[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps8613/products\\_data\\_sheets\\_list.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps8613/products_data_sheets_list.html)
19. Exhibit K2 - Data Sheet for Scientific Atlanta Explorer 8000 from  
[http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps8613/products\\_data\\_sheets\\_list.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps8613/products_data_sheets_list.html)

20. Exhibit K3 - Data Sheet for Scientific Atlanta Explorer , 8000HD from [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps8613/products\\_data\\_sheets\\_list.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps8613/products_data_sheets_list.html)
21. Exhibit K4 - Data Sheet for Scientific Atlanta Explorer 8240 from [http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps8613/products\\_data\\_sheets\\_list.html](http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps8613/products_data_sheets_list.html)
22. Exhibit L – Scientific Atlanta's Explorer Digital Video Recorder User's Guide from [www.scientificatlanta.com/products/consumers/userguidepdfs/4003870.pdf](http://www.scientificatlanta.com/products/consumers/userguidepdfs/4003870.pdf)

Other Materials:

1. U.S. Patent Application No. 08/997,846
2. U.S. Patent No. 5,406,626
3. U.S. Patent No. 5,524,051
4. U.S. Patent No. 5,590,195
5. U.S. Patent No. 5,751,806
6. U.S. Patent No. 6,330,334
7. Office Action having mailing date of December 13, 2005
8. First Declaration Under Rule 132 of Charles H. Jablonski, filed March 8, 2006
9. Second Declaration Under Rule 132 of Charles H. Jablonski, filed March 8, 2006
10. RCA CA-1000 device from Command Audio Corporation
11. Pioneer Electronics, Inc. Inno device from Command Audio Corporation
12. Command Audio's web site at [www.commandaudio.com/licensees.php#XM%20Satellite%20Radio](http://www.commandaudio.com/licensees.php#XM%20Satellite%20Radio)
13. Command Audio's December 15, 2006 press release from [http://www.commandaudio.com/\\_release.php?which=7](http://www.commandaudio.com/_release.php?which=7)
14. [www.scientificatlanta.com/Products/consumers/new\\_cableboxes.html](http://www.scientificatlanta.com/Products/consumers/new_cableboxes.html)
15. Command Audio's April 24, 2007 press release from [http://www.commandaudio.com/\\_release.php?which=10](http://www.commandaudio.com/_release.php?which=10)
16. Translation dated November 2, 2007 of Japanese Unexamined Patent Application Publication H4-310631 ("Yoshio")
17. Office Action dated August 10, 2007

# RCA

## USER'S MANUAL



COMMAND AUDIO



### AUDIO-ON-DEMAND RECEIVER

## CA1000

## FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION INFORMATION

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

In accordance with FCC requirements, changes or modifications not expressly approved by Thomson Consumer Electronics could void the user's authority to operate this product.

## INTERFERENCE INFORMATION

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

## SERVICE

This product should be serviced only by those specially trained in appropriate servicing techniques. For instructions on how to obtain service, refer to the warranty in this guide.

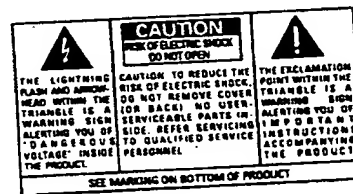
Attach your sales receipt for future reference, or write down the date you purchased or received this product as a gift. This information will be valuable if service should be required during the warranty period.

Purchase Date \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Store \_\_\_\_\_

EID# \_\_\_\_\_

**WARNING:** TO PREVENT FIRE OR ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS PRODUCT TO RAIN OR MOISTURE.



# WARNINGS AND SAFEGUARDS

## USING YOUR RECEIVER WHILE DRIVING

Your safety and the safety of others on the road are very important to us. You should be able to operate and enjoy your RCA CA1000 Receiver safely while driving, but use caution. Keep in mind that using headsets or earphones while driving is dangerous (and illegal in several areas).

## USING YOUR RECEIVER IN A PLANE

The CA1000 contains an FM receiver that can interfere with aircraft navigation systems if not properly handled. You must turn off the CA1000 when instructed to turn off portable electronic devices by airline personnel. To allow for safe air navigation and to comply with requirements of the Federal Aviation Agency, you must NOT turn the unit on or use it while in an aircraft (whether on the ground or in the air) unless you follow the instructions provided by crew members regarding the use of portable electronic devices.

The RCA CA1000 Receiver has a special PLAY ONLY mode. (See "PLAY ONLY" in Section 5, "Operating Your Receiver.") If airline personnel authorize you to turn on the CA1000 when in an aircraft, you may be able to listen to stored Command Audio programming at certain times. Check with airline personnel before using the PLAY ONLY mode.

## SAFELY USING HEADSETS

To use a headset safely, please keep the following in mind:

- Do not play your headset at a high volume. Hearing experts advise against continuous extended play.
- If you experience ringing in your ears, turn down the volume or stop using the headset.
- Do not use a headset while driving a car or riding a bike. This may create a traffic hazard and is illegal in several areas.
- Even if your headset is an open-air type designed to let you hear outside sounds, don't turn up the volume so high that you can't hear sounds around you.

## IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

Some of the following information may not apply to your particular product; however, as with any electronic product, precautions should be observed during handling and use.

- Do not expose product to rain and do not use near water, such as, sink, wet basement, swimming pool, etc.

- Do not expose product to extreme temperatures such as found near a hot radiator or stove, or in a car parked in the Summer sun.
- Connect power cord only to AC power or DC power source as marked on the product.
- Some products employ a polarized AC line plug (one blade is wider). This is a safety feature. The plug will go in the power outlet only one way. If the plug doesn't go into the outlet completely, turn the plug over and put it in the other way. If it still doesn't fit, contact a qualified electrician to change the outlet. Do not defeat the safety purpose of the polarized plug.
- Route power cord to prevent it from being pinched, or walked on, or melted by a hot stove or radiator.
- To clean, unplug AC power cord, then use a soft cloth dampened only with water.
- Unplug AC/DC adapter from outlet during a lightning storm or when product is left unused for a long period of time, to prevent damage due to lightning or power line surges.
- Care should be taken so that objects do not fall on, or liquids do not spill into the product.
- Never add accessories that the product has not been designed to accommodate.
- Use only the manufacturer's approved mounting instructions and hardware when installing product.
- Do not attempt to disassemble. This product does not contain customer serviceable components.
- Damage Requiring Service-This product should be serviced by qualified service personnel when:
  - a. The power supply cord or the plug has been damaged.
  - b. Objects have fallen on, or liquid has been spilled into the product.
  - c. The product has been exposed to rain.
  - d. The product does not appear to operate normally, or exhibits a marked change in performance.
  - e. The product has been dropped or damaged.

#### **BATTERY SAFETY PRECAUTIONS**

- Any battery may leak electrolyte if mixed with a different battery type, if inserted incorrectly, or if all batteries are not replaced at the same time.
- Any battery may leak electrolyte or explode if disposed of in fire, or an attempt is made to charge a battery not intended to be recharged.



- Discard leaky batteries immediately. Leaky batteries can cause skin burns or other personal injury. When discarding batteries, be sure to dispose of them in the proper manner, according to your state and local regulations.
- Remove batteries if storing the unit for a month or more, to avoid damage from leaking batteries.
- Dispose of batteries in the proper manner, according to state and local regulations.

#### **RECHARGEABLE BATTERIES**

- Risk of fire or explosion if the following is not observed:
  - a. Do not charge in this equipment any battery other than rechargeable alkaline AA batteries.
  - b. Do not use or charge the batteries if they appear to be leaking, discolored, deformed or in anyway abnormal.

## **WELCOME TO AUDIO-ON-DEMAND**

Your RCA CA1000 Receiver is designed for active listeners who wish to select, customize and listen to a broad range of information and entertainment never before available from a single source. Whether it's news, sports, weather, or lifestyle programming, information and entertainment are at your command at the press of a button.

The Audio-On-Demand service is provided by Command Audio Corporation and is sold separately.

Command Audio brings you hundreds of programs covering a wide variety of topics. Now you will be able to listen to the information and entertainment you want, when you want.

Visit Command Audio on the web at [www.commandaudio.com](http://www.commandaudio.com)

Command Audio Corporation and Thomson Consumer Electronics are unaffiliated entities.

NOTE: Thomson Consumer Electronics is not in any way liable for the accuracy or availability of the program information provided by the Command Audio service. In no event shall Thomson Consumer Electronics be liable for any amount representing loss of profits, loss of business, or indirect, special, or consequential damages in connection with the availability, provision or use of the Command Audio service or any information or services relating to the Command Audio service.

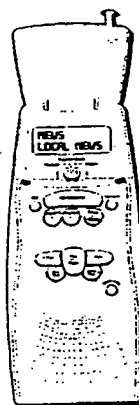
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION INFORMATION</b> .....	2	Antenna and no signal .....	16
<b>WARNING AND SAFEGUARDS</b> .....	3	Effect of traveling out of range of the signal .....	16
Using your Receiver while driving .....	3	<b>SECTION 7: PROGRAM AVAILABILITY</b> .....	17
Using your Receiver in a plane .....	3	<b>SECTION 8: ADDING, REMOVING AND SAVING PROGRAMS</b> .....	18
Safely using headsets .....	3	Adding programs .....	18
Important safety instructions .....	3	Adding programs to PLAYLIST 1 or PLAYLIST 2 from MY PROGRAMS .....	19
<b>WELCOME TO AUDIO-ON-DEMAND</b> .....	6	Saving programs .....	19
<b>SECTION 1: GETTING STARTED</b> .....	8	Saving programs with time limits .....	19
Before you begin .....	9	Removing programs from MY PROGRAMS, PLAYLIST 1 and PLAYLIST 2 .....	20
When you are not listening to the Receiver .....	9	Removing saved shows .....	20
<b>SECTION 2: PROVIDING POWER TO YOUR RECEIVER</b> .....	10	<b>SECTION 9: USING THE OPTIONS</b> .....	21
Using an AC power source .....	10	Description of options .....	21
Using a car's cigarette lighter for DC power ...	10	Auto play .....	21
Using the batteries .....	10	Bulletin .....	21
Low battery indicator .....	10	Playlists .....	21
<b>SECTION 3: ACTIVATING YOUR RECEIVER</b> .....	11	Reorder list .....	22
<b>SECTION 4: GETTING TO KNOW YOUR RECEIVER</b> .....	12	Sys status .....	22
<b>SECTION 5: OPERATING YOUR RECEIVER</b> .....	14	<b>SECTION 10: USING THE RECEIVER IN YOUR CAR</b> ..	23
Turning the Receiver on .....	14	Listening to the Receiver in your car .....	23
Playing programs .....	14	How to install the car mounting kit .....	23
Moving from program to program .....	15	Using the holster with the belt clip .....	26
Moving within a program .....	15	Removing the car mounting kit .....	26
Pause/Play .....	15	<b>SECTION 11: TROUBLESHOOTING</b> .....	27
Bulletins .....	15	<b>SECTION 12: LIMITED WARRANTY</b> .....	29
<b>SECTION 6: RECEPTION</b> .....	16	<b>INDEX</b> .....	32
How programs are updated .....	16		7

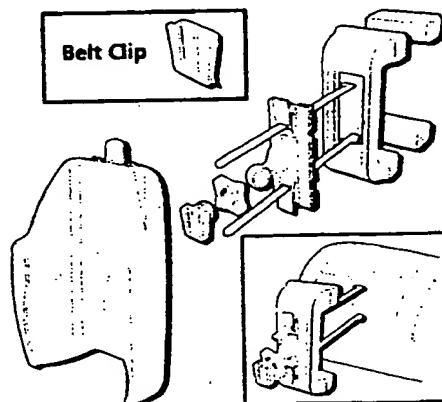
## SECTION 1: GETTING STARTED

Make sure your package contains the following items:

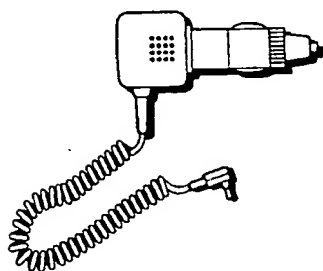
- RCA CA1000 Receiver
- Car mounting kit
- Car DC power adapter
- Cassette adapter
- AC power adapter
- Four (4) rechargeable alkaline "AA" batteries



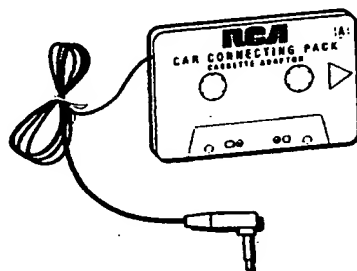
Receiver



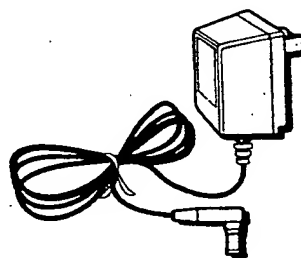
Car Mounting Kit



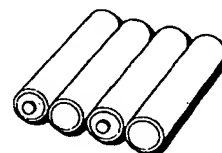
Car DC Power Adapter



Cassette Adapter



AC Power Adapter



Four Rechargeable Alkaline "AA" batteries

## **BEFORE YOU BEGIN**

Before starting your RCA CA1000 Receiver for the first time, there are a few things you should know.

- The CA1000 is continuously updating and storing new programs when it is plugged into a power source, even while you are listening. This means that you don't have to worry about missing new programs while listening to other programs. The information will be there when you are ready to listen to it.
- The CA1000 is constantly recharging its batteries while it is plugged into a wall outlet or car lighter. We recommend always using an external power source. Batteries are provided as a convenience when an external power source is not available.

**NOTE:** The CA1000 will not charge standard alkaline batteries, only rechargeable alkaline batteries.

## **WHEN YOU ARE NOT LISTENING TO THE RECEIVER**

1. Leave it plugged into a power source when possible.
2. Switch it to ON or STANDBY in order to update and store new programs. If you switch the CA1000 to OFF, it will NOT update and store new programs.

**NOTE:** To receive continuous updates of programs, you must activate your CA1000 with Command Audio. (See Section 3, "Activating Your Receiver.")

## SECTION 2: PROVIDING POWER TO YOUR RECEIVER

There are three ways to provide power to your RCA CA1000 Receiver:

- An AC power adapter (wall adapter)
- A DC power adapter for your car (cigarette lighter)
- Four (4) alkaline "AA" batteries.

### USING AN AC POWER SOURCE

To use the AC power adapter:

1. Plug the AC adapter into the wall outlet.
2. Plug the small end of the AC adapter into the power jack on the left side of the CA1000.

### USING A CAR'S CIGARETTE LIGHTER FOR DC POWER

1. Plug the DC adapter into the car's cigarette lighter outlet.
2. Plug the small end of the DC adapter into the power jack on the left side of the CA1000.

**NOTE:** Some cars have cigarette lighters that do not supply power when the ignition is off. You will know

your car lighter turns off with the ignition if the light on the DC adapter turns off with your car.

### USING THE BATTERIES

Your CA1000 comes with four (4) rechargeable alkaline batteries. You also can use standard alkaline batteries. The rechargeable batteries will power your CA1000 for 4-6 hours before requiring recharging (depending on battery usage). The rechargeable batteries can take up to seven (7) hours to fully charge. Standard alkaline batteries will last up to eight (8) hours.

To install the batteries:

1. Remove the battery cover.
2. Put the batteries in, from left to right, making sure that the (+) and (-) are in the same direction as shown in the diagram in the compartment. The CA1000 will not work if the batteries are incorrectly installed.
3. Slide the battery cover back on.

### LOW BATTERY INDICATOR

When the batteries are low, the CA1000 will sound an alert, and the indicator light (LOW BATT) on the front panel will blink.

## SECTION 3: ACTIVATING YOUR RECEIVER

---

- We recommend using rechargeable alkaline or standard alkaline batteries.
- Rechargeable alkaline batteries may result in shorter playing time than standard alkaline batteries.
- Remove batteries if storing the CA1000 for a month or more to avoid battery leakage.
- Dispose of batteries in the proper manner, according to federal, state, and local regulations.
- Any battery may leak electrolyte if mixed with a different battery type, if inserted incorrectly, if all batteries are not replaced at the same time, if disposed of in a fire, or if an attempt is made to charge a battery not intended to be recharged.
- Discard leaky batteries immediately to avoid possible skin burns or other personal injury.

**NOTE:** If batteries are left in the CA1000 while not plugged into an external power source, the batteries will gradually discharge – even if the CA1000 is in the OFF mode.

Your receiver is preset at the factory to receive several popular programs for 24 hours from the first time you turn the power on. To continue receiving updates of programs after that 24-hour period, you must activate your RCA CA1000 Receiver with Command Audio.

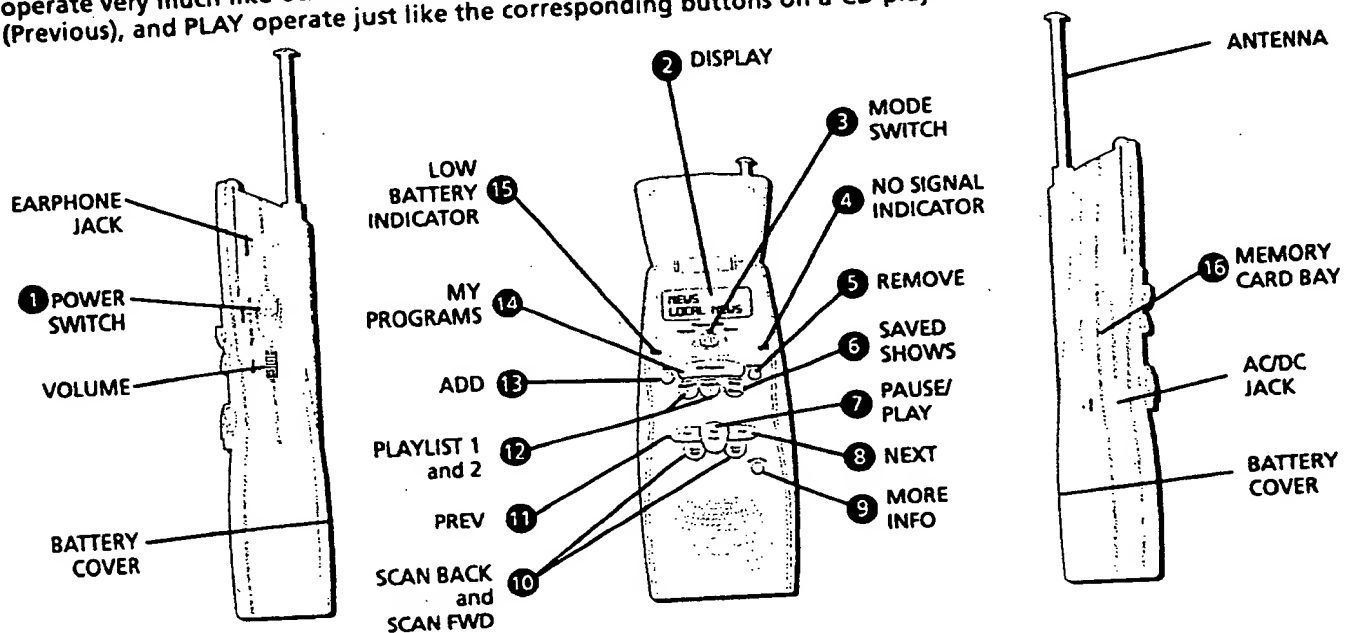
To activate your CA1000:

1. Have your CA1000's EID Number (located on the bottom of your CA1000) and a credit card ready for the Command Audio Listener Care representative who will activate your account.
2. Dial the toll-free activation phone number printed on your CA1000: 1-800-264-7289 (This number is for activations only.)
3. Once you have activated your service, you may peel off the sticker.

**NOTE:** For other customer service needs, please call Listener Care at 1-800-755-4570.

## SECTION 4: GETTING TO KNOW YOUR RECEIVER

This section will help familiarize you with your RCA CA1000 Receiver's controls. You will find that the controls operate very much like other devices you may have used in the past. For example, buttons such as NEXT, PREV (Previous), and PLAY operate just like the corresponding buttons on a CD player.



### 1 POWER SWITCH

On

Listen to previously received programs and receive new programs. Select from the Program Guide. Change Option Settings.

Standby

Receive new programs. All other functions are off.

Off

Power down the CA1000. For use in non-coverage areas or when use of an FM radio is not permitted, such as on an aircraft.



	Playback	Program Guide	Options
Display ②	Presents current program, its place in sequence of available programs, and the total program time remaining.	Presents topic on 1st line and available programs in the topic on 2nd line.	Presents option on 1st line and possible settings for this option on 2nd line.
Mode Switch ③	Listen to programs.	Select programs available on Command Audio for reception and storage.	Advanced features and settings.
No Signal Indicator ④	Red indicator light will blink when the CA1000 cannot receive Command Audio signal due to antenna placement or is out of geographic reception range. The No Signal light will not blink when the CA1000 is connected to your car's cigarette lighter and your ignition is on.		
Remove ⑤	Used to remove programs from My Programs, Playlist 1, 2 or Saved shows.	None	None
Saved Shows ⑥	Initiates playback of saved programs.	None	None
Pause/Play ⑦	Pauses and resumes playback.	None	None
Next ⑧	Moves to the next program in the current playlist.	Moves forward through the topics on the Program Guide.	Moves forward through the options in the CA1000.
More Info ⑨	Presents bulletins to the listener, and information about the current program.	Presents the availability of programs.	Signal strength tone. Steady tone = strong signal Pulsing tone = weak signal
Scan Back and Fwd ⑩	Moves through a program by subject, caller, or segment.	Moves among the programs available within a topic.	Moves among the settings available within an option.
Prev ⑪	Moves to the previous program in My Programs, Playlist 1, 2 or Saved Shows.	Moves backward through the topics on the Program Guide.	Moves backward through the options in the CA1000.
Playlists 1 and 2 ⑫	Initiates playback of a playlist.	Used after Add to add a program from the Program Guide directly to a playlist.	When reordering a playlist, selects which playlist is to be reordered.
Add ⑬	Places current program on Playlist 1, 2 or Saved Shows.	Used to add a program from the Program Guide to My Programs, Playlist 1 or Playlist 2.	For certain settings, confirms entry.
My Programs ⑭	Initiates playback of entire set of programs.	Used after Add to add a program from the Program Guide to My Programs.	None
Low Battery Indicator ⑮	When the batteries are low, the CA1000 will play a low battery warning, and the red indicator light will blink.		
Memory Card Bay ⑯	For future expansion		

## SECTION 5: OPERATING YOUR RECEIVER

Before operating your RCA CA1000 Receiver, make sure that you have already:

1. Read and understood all of the safety instructions.
2. Installed the CA1000's batteries and connected the CA1000 to a power source.
3. Activated the CA1000 by calling Command Audio Listener Care at 1-800-264-7289.

Now you're ready to enjoy all that your CA1000 and Command Audio have to offer.

**NOTE:** It may take several hours before new programs have been received and stored in your CA1000's memory. Leave the CA1000 plugged into a power source, with the POWER switch set to either ON or STANDBY. See your Program Guide insert for a schedule of when the most recent edition of each program will be available.

### TURNING THE RECEIVER ON

To turn the CA1000 on:

1. Slide the POWER switch on the right side of the CA1000 to ON.
2. Move the MODE switch to the PLAYBACK position.
3. Adjust the VOLUME control, (located below the POWER switch).
4. Listen to the brief greeting from Command Audio.

**NOTE:** Always ensure that the POWER switch is in the OFF position before removing all power (i.e. AC wall

adapter, DC car adapter and batteries) from the CA1000. Failure to do so can temporarily corrupt the memory.

### PLAYING PROGRAMS

There are four (4) ways to play back programs that you have selected:

1. Press MY PROGRAMS to hear all of the programs that the CA1000 has collected and arranged alphabetically by topic.
2. Press PLAYLIST 1 to listen to programs in PLAYLIST 1.
3. Press PLAYLIST 2 to listen to programs in PLAYLIST 2.
4. Press SAVED SHOWS to hear specific program editions you have saved.

#### • MY PROGRAMS

Use MY PROGRAMS to store programs that you wish to hear regularly, at the press of a button. Programs are arranged alphabetically under "Topics" from the Program Guide. This is your master list of programs. Any program placed on PLAYLIST 1 and PLAYLIST 2 will also be placed on MY PROGRAMS.

#### • PLAYLIST 1 AND PLAYLIST 2

Use PLAYLIST 1 and PLAYLIST 2 to store programs that you want to hear at a particular time of day or programs enjoyed by one user. For example, you may wish to store programs in PLAYLIST 1 for your morning commute and PLAYLIST 2 for your evening

commute. Or, if more than one person uses the CA1000, that person may choose to store his or her programs in PLAYLIST 1 or PLAYLIST 2.

- **SAVED SHOWS**

Use SAVED SHOWS to store programs you do not want to have removed. To play saved shows, press SAVED SHOWS. If there are multiple shows saved, use NEXT or PREV to select the program you want. The saved shows will play the time stamp of the program, such as "Local News, October 12th."

- **PLAY ONLY**

1. This is another way to listen to your programs. With the POWER switch in the OFF position, hold down the PAUSE/PLAY button for three (3) seconds to trigger the PLAY ONLY mode. In this mode you will not be able to receive program updates, but you can listen to your stored programs.

2. To turn PLAY ONLY off, hold down the PAUSE/PLAY button for three (3) seconds.

NOTE: This mode allows you to safely listen to programs stored in the CA1000 while you are in an aircraft (after airline personnel have announced that it is permissible to do so).

## **MOVING FROM PROGRAM TO PROGRAM**

Press NEXT to advance to the next program. Press PREV to return to the previous program. Press and hold the NEXT or PREV buttons to move rapidly from program to program.

## **MOVING WITHIN A PROGRAM**

Press SCAN FWD or SCAN BACK to move between stories, callers or segments within a program. Press and hold the SCAN buttons to move rapidly between stories, callers or segments.

## **PAUSE/PLAY**

Press PAUSE/PLAY while listening to a program to pause its playback. Press PAUSE/PLAY again to resume the program's playback.

## **BULLETINS**

While listening to your favorite programs you can choose to be notified of traffic reports, Command Audio news or emergency reports. (See "Bulletin" in Section 9, "Using the Options.")

## SECTION 6: RECEPTION

### HOW PROGRAMS ARE UPDATED

Your RCA CA1000 Receiver is constantly updating and storing new programs when connected to a power source, even while you're listening. This means you don't have to worry about missing new programs while listening to other programs. The information will be there when you're ready to listen to it.

Programs are updated throughout the day. Your Program Guide (located in a pocket of the Quick Start Guide) tells you how often new editions of your selected programs are typically available in your CA1000.

### ANTENNA AND NO SIGNAL

It may not always be necessary to extend the antenna for good reception of the Command Audio signal. If the NO SIGNAL light is blinking, extend, reorient, or collapse the antenna, or relocate the CA1000. When the NO SIGNAL light is off, you are receiving the signal.

When the mode switch is in the STANDBY position, the display will indicate the signal status.

To get audible feedback of whether your CA1000 is receiving signal, move the POWER switch to ON and the MODE switch to OPTIONS. Press MORE INFO and listen for a tone. A pulsing tone indicates you do not have a strong enough signal to receive Command Audio programming. A steady tone indicates you

have a strong signal. Change the CA1000's antenna orientation or position until you hear a steady tone. Press MORE INFO again to turn off the tone.

The NO SIGNAL light will not blink when the CA1000 is connected to your car's cigarette lighter and your ignition is on.

### EFFECT OF TRAVELING OUT OF RANGE OF THE SIGNAL

Command Audio service will be available in various cities throughout the United States. See [www.commandaudio.com](http://www.commandaudio.com) for the current list of cities where the service is offered. If you travel out of range of the Command Audio signal (or if you set the power switch to OFF), the CA1000 will stop updating programs. You will, however, be able to play previously stored programs from your CA1000's memory. Once you enter any Command Audio service area, your programs will be updated as usual (of course, if you're traveling outside your home market, local programs such as news, weather, sports and traffic will not be updated).

NOTE: If you missed receiving a scheduled update due to being out of signal range or loss of power, you will not receive a new update until the next scheduled transmission. (For example, if you typically get an update of a program every evening and missed this evening's update due to loss of signal or power, then you will not get the next update until tomorrow evening.)

## **SECTION 7: PROGRAM AVAILABILITY**

---

Your playlist may have a combination of shows that are available at different times throughout the day, once a day or once a week.

When an edition of a program is not available, MY PROGRAMS, PLAYLIST 1, and PLAYLIST 2 will announce when the next edition will be available.

**NOTE:** To find out the edition of the program you are listening to, press MORE INFO.

### **AUTOMATIC DELETION**

The RCA CA1000 Receiver marks programs to be deleted or replaced when:

- A new edition of that program is received.
- Another program you have selected needs the memory.

If you want to keep a specific edition of a program, save it in SAVED SHOWS. (See "Saving Programs" in Section 8, "Adding, Removing and Saving Programs.")

**NOTE:** The CA1000 cannot update and store a program that is paused or playing. If the CA1000 is left in the ON mode, programs that have been played may be marked for deletion.

## SECTION 8: ADDING, REMOVING AND SAVING PROGRAMS

Your RCA CA1000 Receiver comes with an electronic Program Guide. Use this Program Guide to select the programs you want to hear from Command Audio. The CA1000 automatically and continuously updates your selected programs for you.

MY PROGRAMS, PLAYLIST 1, and PLAYLIST 2 are preset at the factory, but you can customize them on your CA1000 by adding or removing programs, or by changing the order in which programs are played.

**NOTE:** Your CA1000 can have up to eight (8) hours of stored programming. This includes programs you have saved in SAVED SHOWS.

### ADDING PROGRAMS

1. Slide the MODE switch to PROGRAM GUIDE.
2. Press the NEXT or PREV buttons to review the topics available on the service.
3. Press the SCAN FWD and SCAN BACK buttons to review the programs within the topics that you can add to MY PROGRAMS, PLAYLIST 1, and PLAYLIST 2. Press MORE INFO while a program is displayed to find out how often a new edition of that program is available.

- Before pressing the ADD button, if the program is already on MY PROGRAMS, PLAYLIST 1, or PLAYLIST 2, you will see a solid green light next to MY PROGRAMS, PLAYLIST 1, and/or PLAYLIST 2.

4. When you decide on a program, press ADD. You will hear an audible prompt, "Add To..." You will see a green light blink next to MY PROGRAMS, PLAYLIST 1, and PLAYLIST 2.
5. Press MY PROGRAMS, PLAYLIST 1, or PLAYLIST 2 to select the list to which the new program will be added. The CA1000 will audibly confirm that the program has been added.
6. Slide the MODE switch back to PLAYBACK when finished. Ongoing new editions of the program will be available on a regular basis, following the initial transmission from Command Audio.

**NOTE:** Adding a program multiple times to a playlist will not affect the list. Any program added to PLAYLIST 1 and/or PLAYLIST 2 will automatically be available in MY PROGRAMS.

## ADDING PROGRAMS TO PLAYLIST 1 OR PLAYLIST 2 FROM MY PROGRAMS

While in the **PLAYBACK** mode, if you want to add a program from **MY PROGRAMS** to **PLAYLIST 1** or **PLAYLIST 2**:

1. Press **MY PROGRAMS**.
2. Use **PREV** and/or **NEXT** to find the program you want.
3. Press **ADD**. You will hear the audible prompt, "Add To..." and the green light next to **PLAYLIST 1** and **PLAYLIST 2** will blink.
4. Press **PLAYLIST 1** or **PLAYLIST 2**. You will hear the audible prompt "Added."

**NOTE:** Programs will appear in your playlist in the order you have selected them. The display shows the number of programs on a playlist and the position of the current program in that list. For example, program two of ten would read "2-10" in the lower left corner.

You can reorder the programs on **PLAYLIST 1** or **PLAYLIST 2** in any sequence you wish. (See "Reorder List" in Section 9, "Using the Options.")

## SAVING PROGRAMS

If you like a particular edition of a program but don't have time to listen to it, or if you don't want that edition replaced when a newer edition becomes available, you can save that edition and play it later. To do this:

1. Select the **PLAYBACK** mode.
2. Choose the program from **MY PROGRAMS**, **PLAYLIST 1**, or **PLAYLIST 2**.
3. Press **ADD**. You will hear an audible prompt, "Add To" and the **SAVED SHOWS** light will blink.
4. Press **SAVED SHOWS**. You will hear an audible prompt "Added, Saved Shows."

## SAVING PROGRAMS WITH TIME LIMITS

Some programs have a time limit on how long they may be saved. If you try to save such a program, the **CA1000** will alert you audibly. When the time limit is reached, the **CA1000** will remove the show automatically.

**NOTE:** Depending upon the programs you select, approximately eight (8) hours of memory are available for storing programs. These eight (8) hours of memory must be shared between incoming programs and stored Saved Shows. As you save more shows, you will decrease the **CA1000's** ability to store new programs.

## **REMOVING PROGRAMS FROM MY PROGRAMS, PLAYLIST 1 AND PLAYLIST 2**

Follow the steps below to remove a program.

1. Select the **PLAYBACK** mode.
2. Press the playlist or **MY PROGRAMS** button that contains the program you want to remove.
3. Use **PREV** and/or **NEXT** to choose the program you want to remove.
4. Press **REMOVE**. You will hear an audible prompt asking you to confirm that you would like to remove the program you selected.
5. Press **REMOVE** again to confirm deletion. You will hear an audible prompt confirming that the program has been removed.

**NOTE:** If you remove a program from a playlist, it will still be available under **MY PROGRAMS**. If you do not want to receive this program at all, remove it from **MY PROGRAMS** using the above procedure. This will also remove it from the playlists.

## **REMOVING SAVED SHOWS**

1. Select the **PLAYBACK** mode.
2. Press **SAVED SHOWS**.
3. Use **PREV** and/or **NEXT** to choose the program you want to remove.
4. Press **REMOVE**. You will hear an audible prompt confirming that you would like to remove the selected program.
5. Press **REMOVE** again. You will hear an audible prompt confirming that the program has been removed.



## SECTION 9: USING THE OPTIONS

Your RCA CA1000 Receiver comes with special options that allow you to further customize it.

To review these options:

1. Set the Power switch to ON, slide the MODE Switch to OPTIONS.
2. Use NEXT and/or PREV to select the described option.
3. Use the SCAN buttons to advance choices within a specific option setting.

### DESCRIPTION OF OPTIONS

This section describes each option and the various settings available for that option.

#### AUTO PLAY

When you turn your CA1000 on, it will automatically begin playing the list you have selected in the AUTO PLAY option.

1. AM-L1, PM-L2 (in the morning PLAYLIST 1, in the afternoon/evening PLAYLIST 2)
2. PLAYLIST 1
3. PLAYLIST 2
4. MY PROGRAMS

#### BULLETIN

If you select INSTANT PLAY, the CA1000 will interrupt the currently playing program as soon as a bulletin

arrives, and then return to the program that was playing. If you choose MORE INFO when a new bulletin arrives, the "More Info" light will blink and the CA1000 will wait for you to press the MORE INFO Button before presenting the bulletin. If you choose OFF, the bulletin will not be presented, and you will not be notified (either visually or audibly) of any bulletins. Examples of bulletins: traffic reports, Command Audio news or emergency reports.

1. INSTANT PLAY
2. MORE INFO
3. OFF

#### PLAYLISTS

PRESENT ALL allows you to hear all the programs on PLAYLISTS 1 and 2, even if you have already listened to them. PRESENT NEW plays only new programs on PLAYLIST 1 and 2 that you have not yet heard.

1. PRESENT ALL
2. PRESENT NEW

## REORDER LIST

This option allows you to reorder the program sequence in the selected playlist. To change the order of a program sequence:

1. Select the OPTIONS mode.
2. Press the NEXT button until REORDER LIST appears on the top line of the display. The green lights will blink under PLAYLIST 1 and PLAYLIST 2.
3. Select the playlist you would like to reorder.
4. Use NEXT and/or PREV to choose the program you want to move.
5. Use the SCAN buttons to change the sequence number. The display will show the current sequence number.
6. Press ADD to confirm your choice.
7. After pressing ADD, the word "Done" will appear in the lower right corner of the display. Pressing ADD at this point will cause you to exit the Reorder List option. Pressing NEXT or PREV will allow you to reorder additional programs; repeat the process starting with step 4.

## SYS STATUS

This option provides you with a troubleshooting code for use if you ever contact Command Audio Listener Care for assistance in solving technical problems.

## SECTION 10: USING THE RECEIVER IN YOUR CAR

Your RCA CA1000 Receiver is designed for safe use in a car. The Car Accessories Kit is provided for conveniently mounting the CA1000 in your car.

The Car Accessories Kit contains the following items:

- Car DC power adapter
- Cassette adapter
- Car mounting kit

**NOTE:** Some cars have cigarette lighters that do not supply power when the ignition is turned off. You will know your car lighter turns off with the ignition if the light on the car DC power adapter turns off with your car.

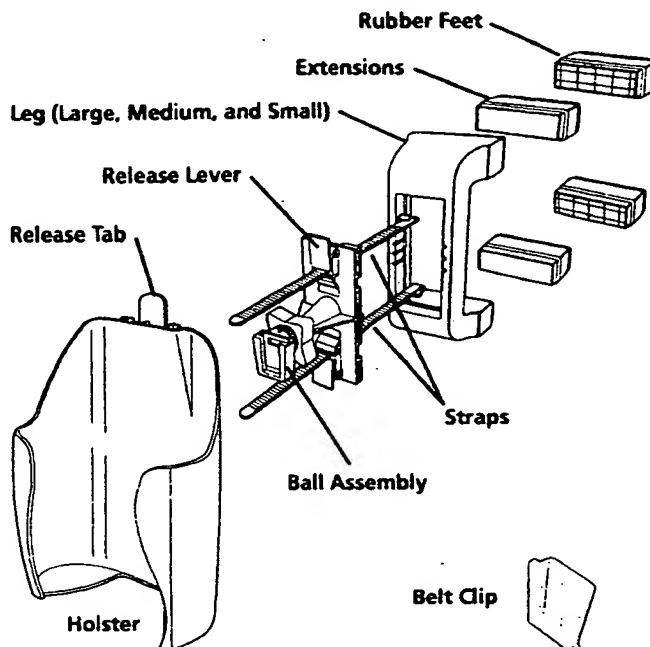
If your car's cigarette lighter does not supply power when the car is turned off, it will be necessary to take your CA1000 with you and plug it into an AC power source when parked for periods of time that exceed the battery's **STANDBY** mode capacity (4-6 hours).

### LISTENING TO THE RECEIVER IN YOUR CAR

To use the cassette adapter:

1. Insert the earphone plug from the cassette adapter into the earphone jack of the CA1000.
2. Insert the cassette adapter into your car's cassette deck. Adjust the volume on your CA1000 and your car radio to the desired levels.

### HOW TO INSTALL THE CAR MOUNTING KIT

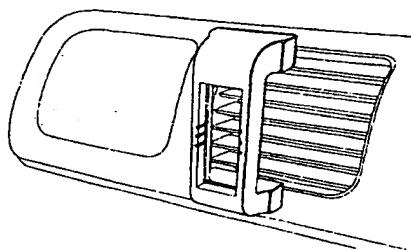
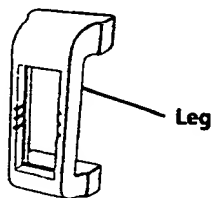


### STEP: 1

Select the best vent for mount attachment. Vents in the center of the dashboard are the best choice because (a) the cigarette lighter/battery connection is close at hand; (b) it is safe and easy to reach the receiver from this position; and (c) you will get the best reception.

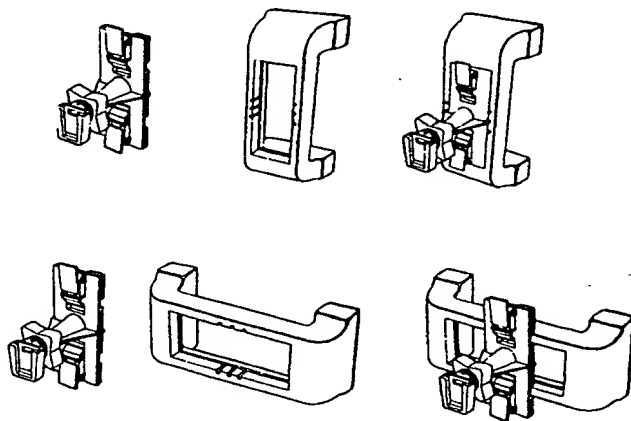
### STEP: 2

Choose which leg best fits your car. The leg should make contact with a solid area around your air vent. Insert the rubber feet into the selected leg.



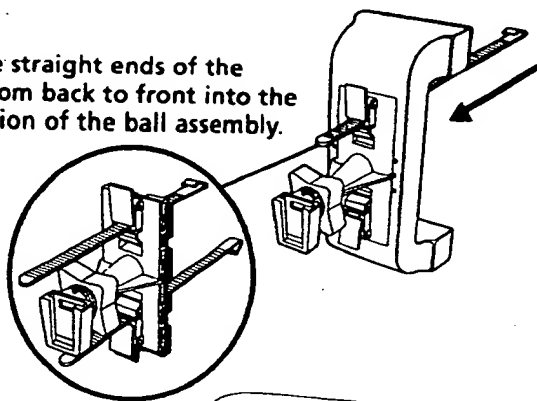
### STEP: 3

Snap the leg onto the ball assembly. The larger leg has three (3) different snap-on positions so that you can adjust the height of the receiver. If your car has a tall and narrow vent, mount the leg horizontally and snap the ball assembly vertically.



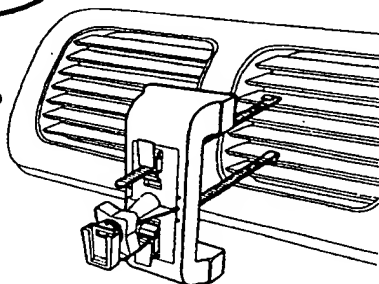
**STEP: 4**

Slide the straight ends of the straps from back to front into the clip portion of the ball assembly.



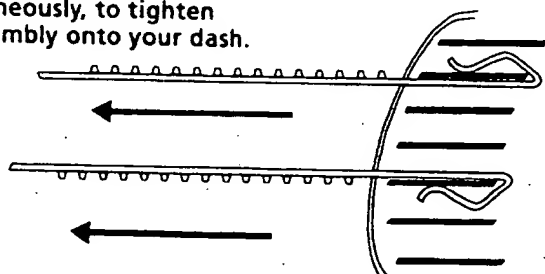
**STEP: 5**

Attach the hooked sides of both straps to the air vent.



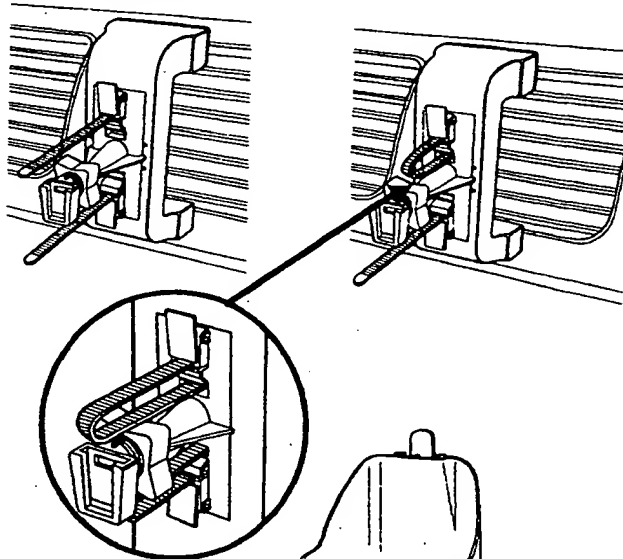
**STEP: 6**

Pull both straps simultaneously, to tighten the assembly onto your dash.



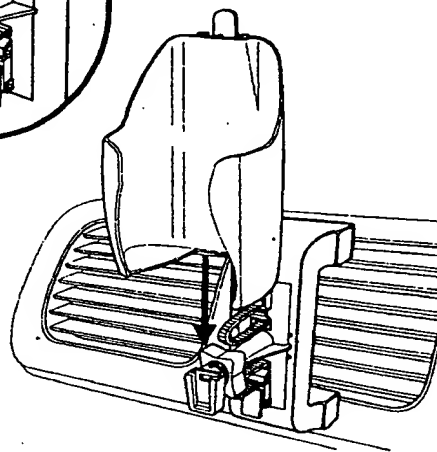
**STEP: 7**

Feed the excess strap length into the return slots.



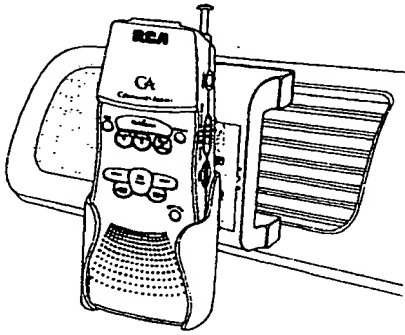
**STEP: 8**

Slide the holster onto the mount.



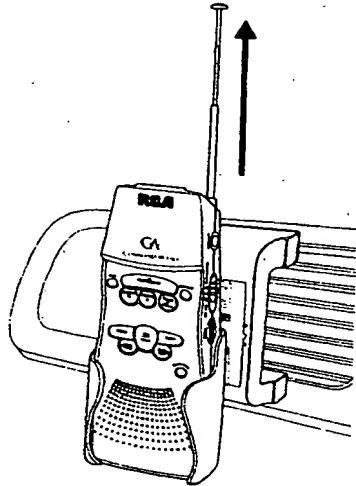
### STEP: 9

Insert the CA1000 into the holster.



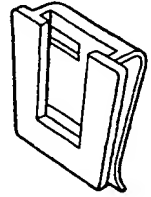
### STEP: 10

Plug in the DC power cord and fully extend the antenna. There is a swivel joint at the bottom of the antenna. The best antenna position is usually behind the rear view mirror.



### USING THE HOLSTER WITH THE BELT CLIP

You can slide the holster off the mount and attach it to the belt clip for portable use. Push the release tab on the back of the holster and slide the holster up to remove it. Then replace it in the belt clip.



### REMOVING THE CAR MOUNTING KIT

Remove the excess straps from the return slots. Press down on the strap release levers and pull the car kit away from the dashboard. Push the straps into the vent to unhook them from the air vent. Then slowly pull the straps out of the vent.

## SECTION 11: TROUBLESHOOTING

### CA1000 DOES NOT OPERATE

Make sure the POWER switch is in the ON position and the MODE switch is in the PLAYBACK position. If "Pause" is flashing in the lower right corner of the display, press PAUSE/PLAY to resume playback. If not all of your programs are playing, check the option PLAYLISTS to make sure it is set for PRESENT ALL, to have all of your programs play.

If using battery power and the display is blank, the batteries may be weak.

- Connect an AC or DC power adapter to recharge the batteries, or insert fresh batteries.

If using AC power, check to see if the power cord is plugged in.

- If the cord is plugged in, turn the CA1000 off, unplug the power cord and remove the batteries. Reinsert the batteries from left to right following the (+) and (-) diagram in the battery compartment, and plug in the AC power cord again.

If using DC power (car cigarette lighter), check to see if the cord is plugged in and the adapter's green light is lit.

- If the light is not lit, start the car - some car cigarette lighters do not supply power when the car ignition is off.

### ALL THE LIGHTS ARE ON AND THE BUTTONS WILL NOT OPERATE

Unplug the AC or DC power cord and remove the batteries. Reinsert the batteries from left to right following the (+) and (-) diagram in the battery compartment, and plug in the AC or DC power cord again.

### NO SIGNAL LIGHT IS BLINKING

If the CA1000 is in a coverage area, extend, reorient or collapse the antenna, or relocate the CA1000 to improve reception. If the NO SIGNAL light is still blinking, move the POWER switch to ON and the MODE switch to OPTIONS. Press MORE INFO and listen for a tone. A pulsing tone indicates you do not have a strong enough signal to receive Command Audio programming. A steady tone indicates that you have a strong signal. Once you are receiving a strong signal, press MORE INFO again to turn off the tone.

### NEW PROGRAMS HAVE NOT BEEN RECEIVED

To receive updates, make sure the POWER switch is in the ON or STANDBY position at all times. To play programs, make sure the POWER switch is in the ON position and the MODE switch is in the PLAYBACK position. Check to see when the program you selected is available. Check to see if the NO SIGNAL light is flashing. Programs that are playing or paused will not be updated.

**NOTE:** Depending upon the programs you select, the CA1000 will hold approximately eight (8) hours of programs. If all of the programs you have selected exceed eight (8) hours in duration, not all of the programs can be stored in the CA1000 at the same time. If this is the case, remove some programs from MY PROGRAMS, PLAYLIST 1 OR PLAYLIST 2. (See "Removing Programs from MY PROGRAMS, PLAYLIST 1 AND PLAYLIST 2," in Section 8, "Adding, Removing and Saving Programs.")

## **GENERAL CARE**

To keep your CA1000 working properly and looking good, follow these guidelines:

- Avoid putting the CA1000 near heating appliances and devices that generate electrical noise (for example, motors or fluorescent lamps).
- Avoid dropping the CA1000, as well as other rough treatment.
- Never use a strong cleaning agent or abrasive powder because this will damage the finish. If you need to clean your CA1000, use a soft cloth dampened only with water.
- Keep the original packaging in case you need to ship the CA1000 at a later date.



## SECTION 12: LIMITED WARRANTY

### What your warranty covers:

- Any defect in materials or workmanship.

### For how long after your purchase:

- 90 days – CA1000 exchange, which includes parts and labor.

### What we will do:

- Exchange the CA1000 with a new or, at our option, refurbished CA1000.

### How you get service:

- Call 1-800-755-4570 and have your CA1000's EID number ready. It is on the bottom of your CA1000.
- A representative will troubleshoot your problem over the phone.
- If the representative determines that you should receive a replacement CA1000 you will be provided with a Service Request (SR) number and the location of a nearby exchange point, if one exists. No returns will be accepted without the SR number.

The representative will advise the address to mail a cashier's check or money order for payment if there are any out of warranty labor or parts charges, and you elect not to use your credit card.

To receive a replacement CA1000 before you return yours:

### Option I:

1. Provide your Discover, MasterCard or Visa account number and expiration date to your phone representative. This is for security purposes only and your account will not be charged at this time.
2. We will send you a replacement CA1000.
3. If you return the CA1000 to us within 14 days from the date you were provided a SR number, only items not covered by warranty will be charged to your account. If your CA1000 is not received within 14 days, the suggested retail value of the CA1000 will be charged to your credit card. This amount will be credited, less a \$10 handling fee, if the CA1000 is subsequently received.
4. Ship your defective Receiver back to us using the replacement CA1000's carton. Please retain all accessories. Shipping instructions will be included in the carton along with your SR number which will allow you to easily ship the CA1000 back to us.

### Include with the shipment:

- Evidence of purchase date such as a bill of sale.
- A brief note describing your CA1000's problem.
- Your name, address and phone number.

### Option II:

1. We will send a replacement CA1000 to our exchange point.
2. The exchange location will notify you of its arrival.

Take your CA1000 and evidence of purchase date, such as a bill of sale, to the exchange location and you will be provided the new or refurbished CA1000. Please retain all accessories. If repairs are covered by your warranty, you will not be charged.

**To receive a replacement CA1000 after we have received your CA1000:**

Write the SR number on the outside of the carton used to return the CA1000. Make sure you insure your shipment in case of damage or loss.

Carefully pack the CA1000 using the original box and packing material if possible. Please retain all accessories that were included with your CA1000.

**Include with the shipment:**

- Evidence of purchase date such as a bill of sale.
- A brief note describing your CA1000's problem.
- Your name, address and phone number.

After we receive your product, a new or refurbished CA1000 will be shipped to you.

Thomson assumes no responsibility for warranty shipments from the customer to the factory if not shipped in the manner prescribed by Thomson.

Return transportation, storage, handling and insurance costs are your responsibility. We accept no responsibility in case of damage or loss.

**What your warranty does not cover:**

- Acts of God.
- Adjustment of customer controls.
- Damage from misuse or neglect.
- A CA1000 that has been modified or incorporated into other products or is used for institutional or other commercial purposes.
- Batteries.
- CA1000s purchased or serviced outside the U.S.A.
- Shipping damage if the CA1000 was not packed and shipped in the manner prescribed by Thomson.
- Storage fees. They may be charged by the exchange point if you fail to pick up the replacement CA1000 in a timely manner.
- Loss of programming.

**Product Registration:**

- Please complete and mail the Product Registration Card packed with your product. It will make it easier to contact you should it ever be necessary. The return of the card is not required for warranty coverage.

**How state law relates to warranty:**

- This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may have other rights that vary from state to state.

**If you purchased your product outside the United States:**

- This warranty does not apply. See your dealer for warranty information.

## CA1000 ACCESSORIES

---

For pricing information and ordering instructions,  
please call 1-800-338-0376.

DOOR, BATTERY .....	244047
DOOR, MEMORY SLOT .....	244048
DOOR, DISPLAY .....	244049
ANTENNA .....	244050
CLIP, BELT .....	244051
ADAPTER, AC/DC .....	244052
ADAPTER, DC .....	244053
(CAR CIGARETTE LIGHTER ADAPTER)	
CRADLE, RECEIVER .....	244054
(HOLSTER)	
KIT, CAR MOUNT .....	244055
MOUNT, BALL	
LEG, SMALL	
LEG, MEDIUM	
LEG, LARGE	
FEET, RUBBER (2)	
STRAPS (2)	
EXTENSIONS (2)	
ADAPTER, CAR CASSETTE .....	54097

# INDEX

<b>A</b>					
AC power		8, 10		Scan Back	12, 13
Accessories		8, 31		Play/Pause	12, 13, 15
Activation		11		More Info	12, 13
Add		12, 13	<b>C</b>		
Adding	Programs to playlists	18, 19	Car accessories kit		23
	Programs to saved shows	19	Car mounting kit		23, 24, 25, 26
Aircraft	Play only mode	3, 15	Cassette adapter		8, 23
	Using your Receiver in a plane	3			
Antenna		12, 16	<b>D</b>		
Audio in your car	Listening to the Receiver in your car	23	DC power		8, 10, 23
Auto play		21	Display		12, 13
Availability	Program availability	17	Driving	Safety precautions	3
				Using the Receiver in your car	23
				Using DC power	10, 23
<b>B</b>					
Batteries	Installing	10, 27			
	Low battery indicator	10, 12, 13	<b>E</b>		
	Standard alkaline	10, 11	External	AC power	8, 10
	Rechargeable alkaline	5, 8, 10, 11		DC power	8, 10, 23
	Removing	11, 27			
	Safety precautions	4, 5, 11	<b>F</b>		
		8, 26			
Belt clip		15, 21	<b>G</b>		
Bulletin		12, 13	General care		28
Buttons	Add	12, 13			
	Remove	12, 13			
	My Programs	12, 13, 14	<b>H</b>		
	Playlist 1	12, 13, 14	Headsets	Safely using headsets	3
	Playlist 2	12, 13, 14	Holster		25, 26
	Saved Shows	12, 13, 15			
	Prev	12, 13			
	Next	12, 13			
	Scan Fwd	12, 13			



<b>Q</b>			
<b>R</b>			
Range	Antenna	12, 16	
	No signal indicator	12, 13, 16	
Receiver		8, 12, 13	
(CA1000)	Activating	11	
	Listening	9, 14, 15	
	Operating your Receiver	14, 15	
	Options	21, 22	
	Powering your Receiver	10, 11	
Remove		12, 13	
	Removing programs	20	
Reordering	Reorder list	22	
<b>S</b>			
Safety	Battery precautions	4, 5, 11	
	Warnings and safeguards	3, 4, 5	
Saved Shows		12, 13, 15	
	Saving programs	19	
	Removing programs	20	
Scan Fwd/Back		12, 13	
Segment	Moving within a program	15	
Signal		16	
Standby		9, 12	
Switches	Power switch	12, 14	
	Mode switch	12, 13, 14	
	Volume control	12, 14	
Sys status		22	
<b>T</b>			
	Time limits	Saving programs with time limits	19
	Troubleshooting		27, 28
<b>U</b>			
	Using the Receiver in your car		23
<b>V</b>			
	Volume		12, 14, 23
<b>W</b>			
	Warnings and safeguards		3, 4, 5
<b>X</b>			
<b>Y</b>			
<b>Z</b>			

## **TRADEMARKS**

Command Audio and the CA logo are trademarks of Command Audio Corporation. All other trademarks are property of their respective owners.

## **PATENT INFORMATION**

The RCA CA1000 Receiver is manufactured in part under one or more of the following Command Audio Corporation, U.S. and International Patents: 5,590,195; 5,524,051; 5,406,626; 5,751,806; 5,809,472; 5,815,671. U.S. and foreign pending patent applications.

The AMBE® voice coding technology embodied in this product is protected by intellectual property rights, including patent rights, copyrights and trade secrets of Digital Voice Systems, Inc.

Dolby® Digital technology in this product is protected by intellectual property rights of Dolby Laboratories, Inc.

**HOW YOU GET SERVICE:**

Call 1-800-755-4570 and have your CA1000's EID number ready. The EID number information is on the bottom of your CA1000.

**THOMSON CONSUMER ELECTRONICS**  
10330 N. Meridian St.  
Indianapolis, IN 46290

©1999 Thomson Consumer Electronics, inc.  
Trademark(s) ® Registered  
Marca(s) Registrada(s)  
Printed in USA  
CA Part #065-0004  
Revision C1-A



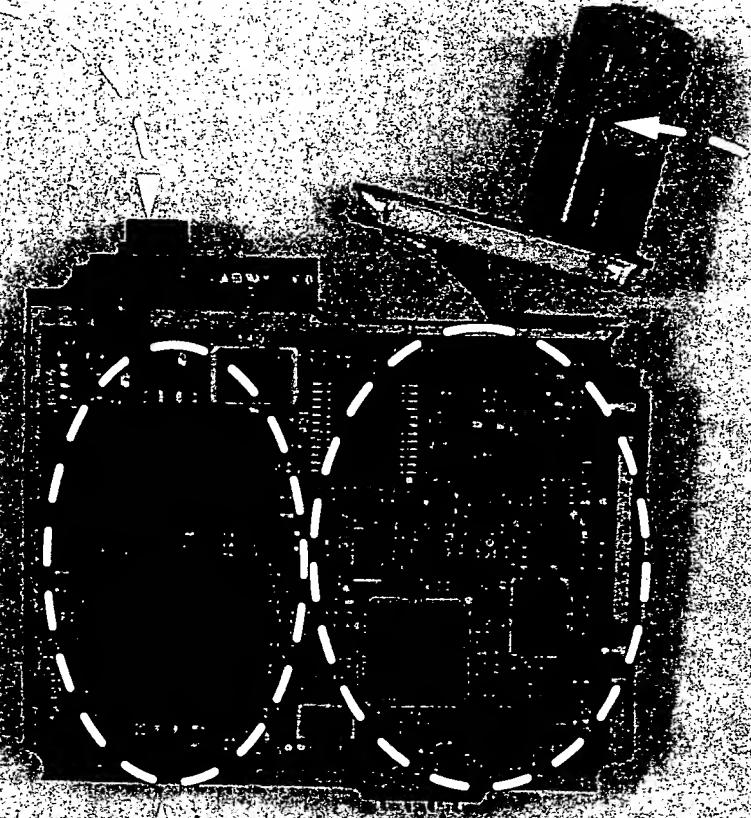
Headphone Jack

Audio D/A

Tuner

Antenna

XM2go50 Receiver Board - Front



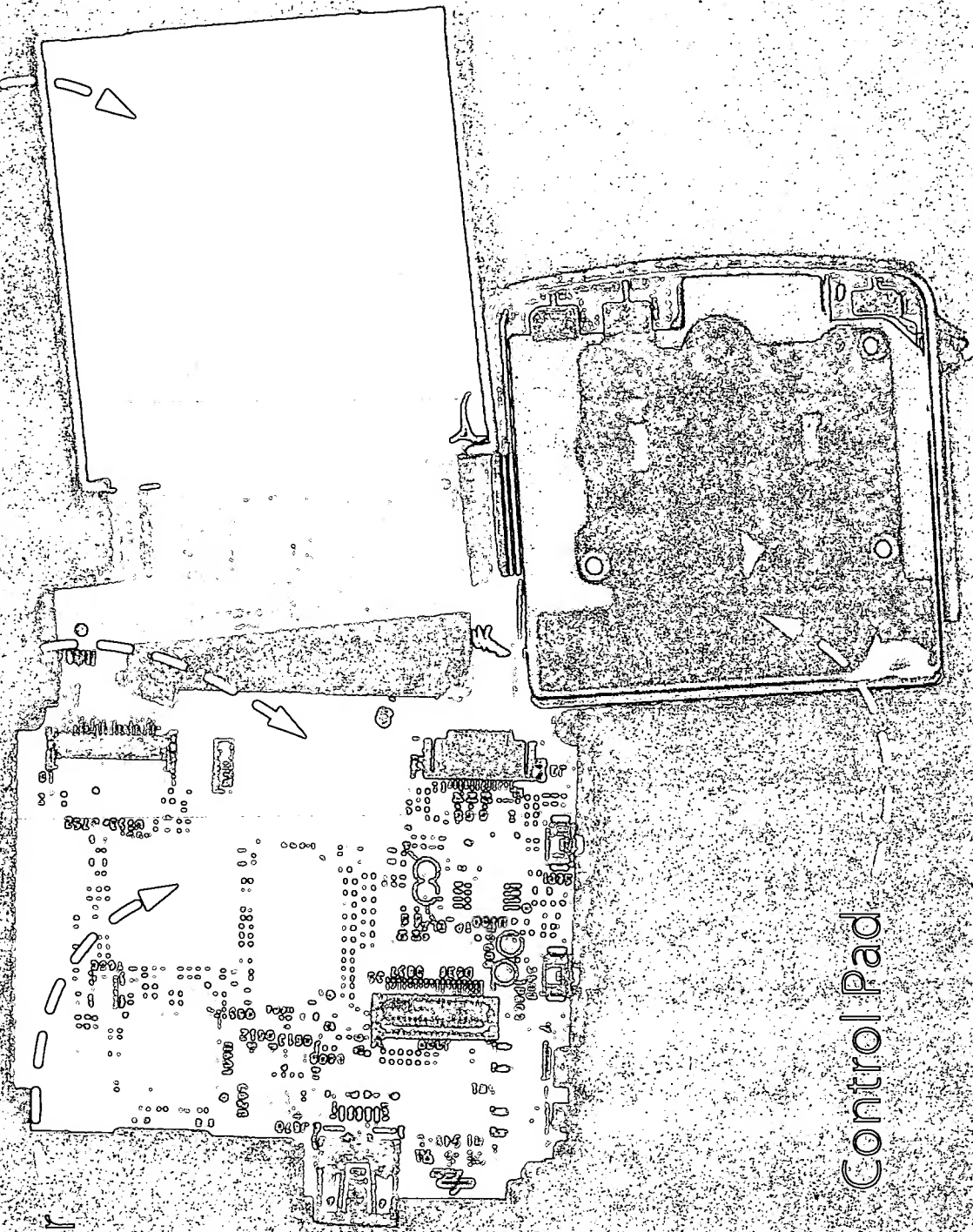
Display

Memory

Controller

Control Pad

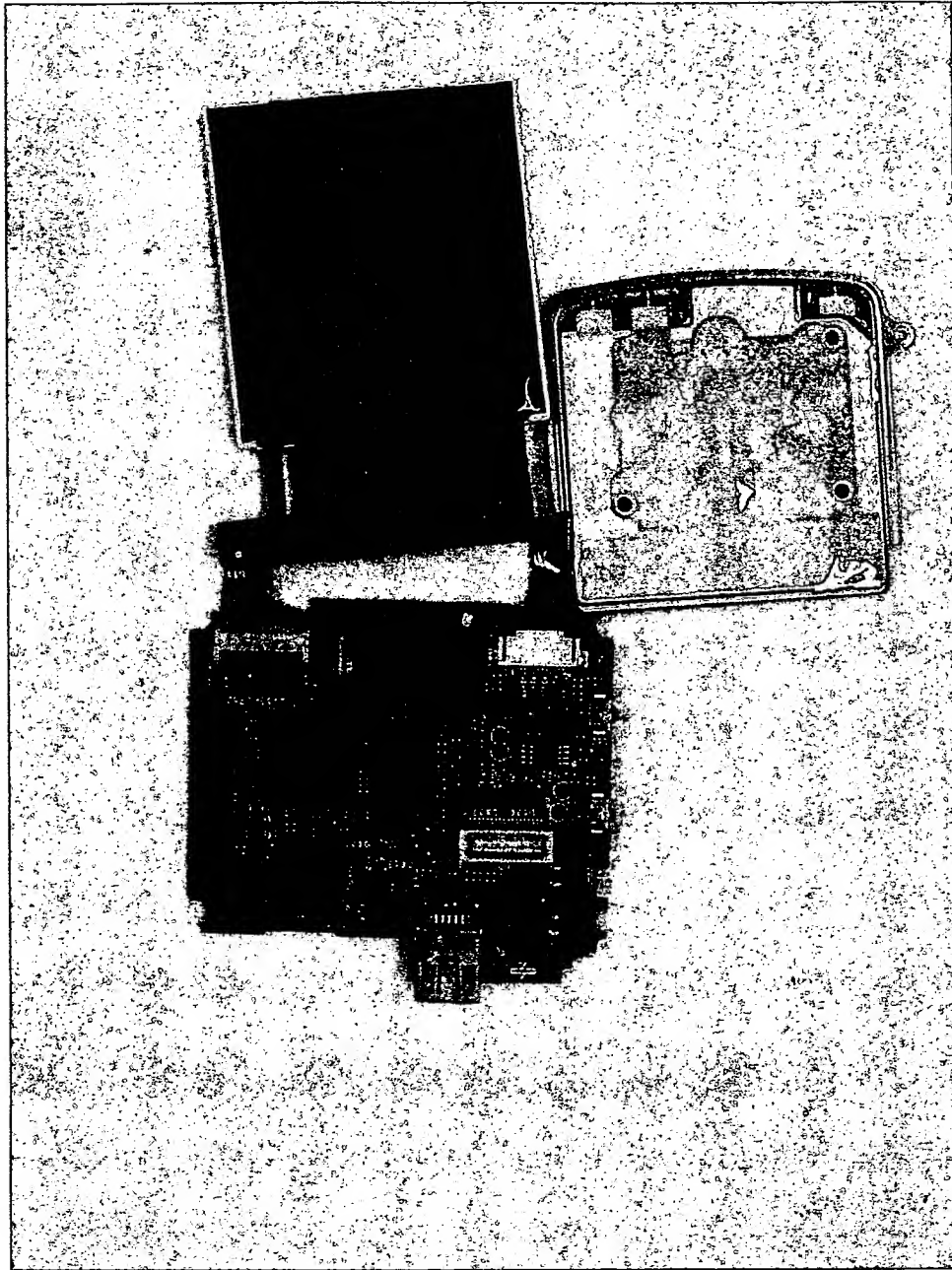
XM2go50 Controller Board - Front



# XM2go50

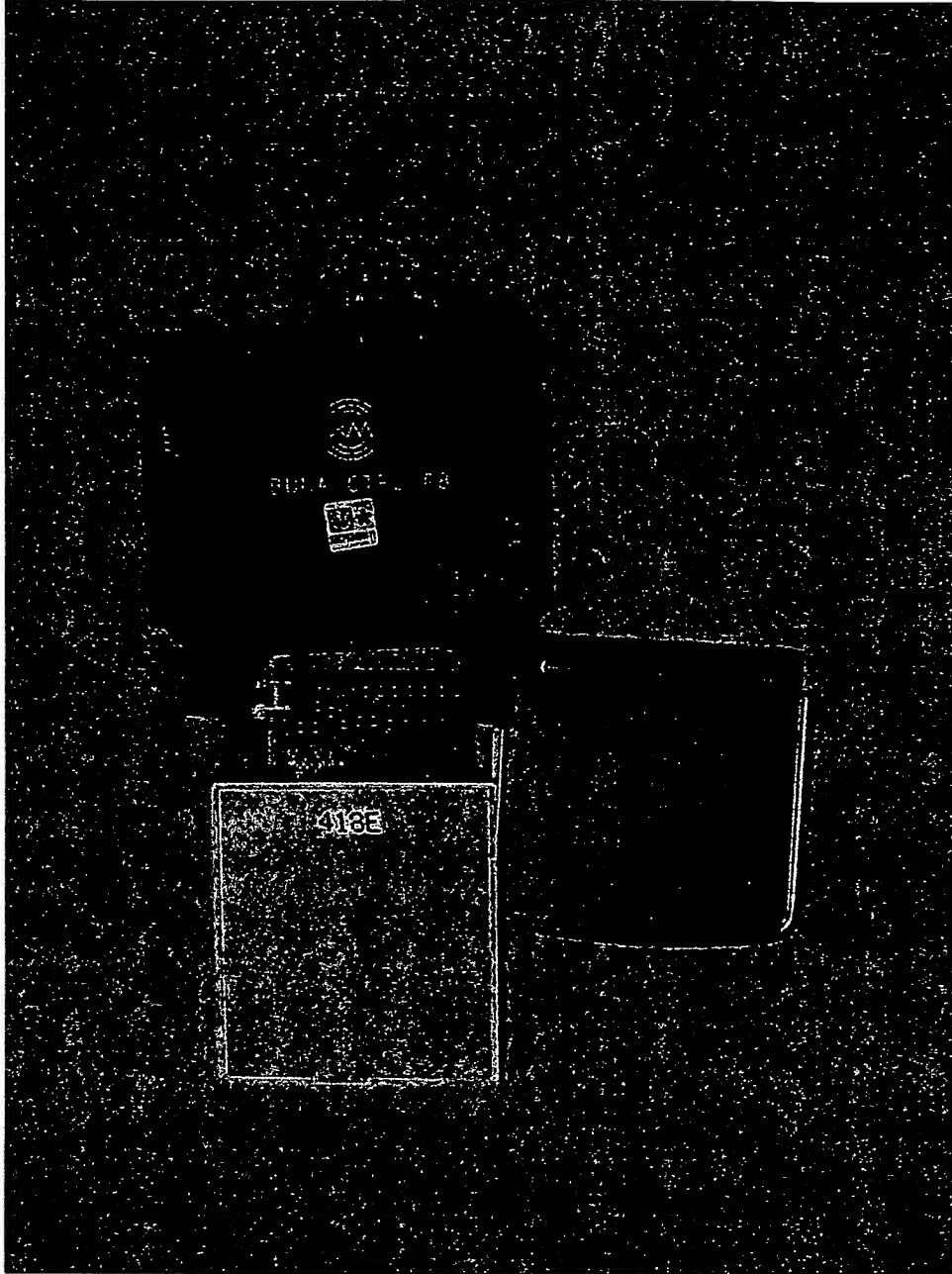
## Internal Photographs





Controller Board - Front





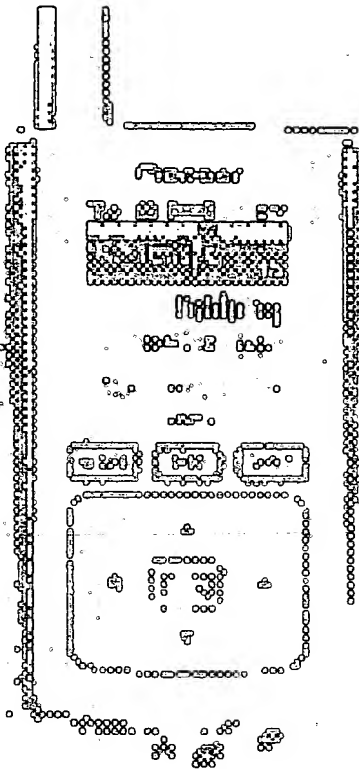
Controller Board - Back



Receiver Board - Front



Receiver Board - Back



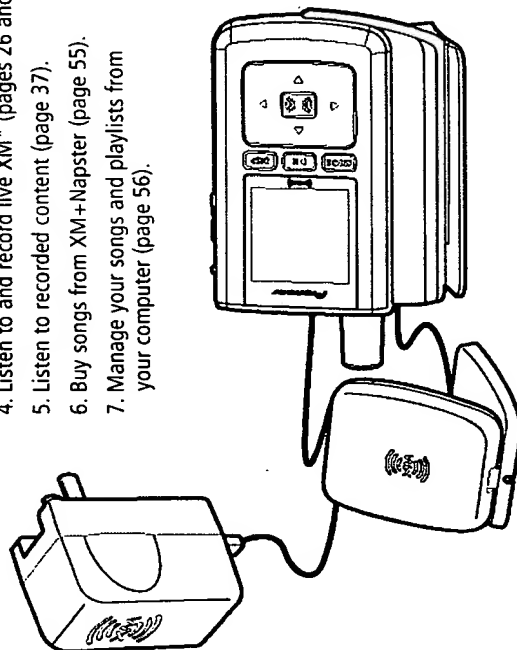
# user guide

inno® Pre-Inst. System-Ready, AT&T®





1. Charge battery for at least 8 hours (page 12).
2. Set up your inno™ (page 20).
3. Activate your XM subscription (page 18).
4. Listen to and record live XM\* (pages 26 and 33).
5. Listen to recorded content (page 37).
6. Buy songs from XM+Napster (page 55).
7. Manage your songs and playlists from your computer (page 56).



\*Hardware and required monthly subscription sold separately. Recorded music not for use in commercial establishments. Installation cost and other fees and taxes, including a one-time activation fee may apply. Subscription fee is consumer only. XM products, programming, services, and fees are subject to change, at any time, without notice. Channels with frequent explicit language are indicated with an XL. Channel blocking is available for XM radio receivers by calling 1-800-XM-RADIO. Subscriptions subject to Customer Agreement available at xmradio.com. XM service only available in the 48 contiguous United States. ©2006 XM Satellite Radio Inc. All rights reserved.

<b>Introduction</b> .....	4
Features .....	4
Safety Instructions .....	7
What's in the Box .....	10
Charging the Battery .....	12
inno Controls .....	13
Using this Guide .....	15
inno Display .....	16
Remote .....	17
<b>Subscribing to XM</b> .....	18
<b>Using Your inno Alone</b> .....	20
Setup .....	20
Live XM .....	26
TuneSelect™ .....	29
Info Extras .....	31
Recording XM .....	33
Listening to Recorded XM Content (My Music) .....	37
Organizing Your Music .....	38
<b>Using inno with a PC</b> .....	48
System Requirements .....	48
Setup .....	49
Registering with XM+Napster .....	51
What Can You Do with XM+Napster? .....	54
Exploring .....	54
Purchasing Music .....	55

Organizing Your Music .....	56
Disconnecting Your inno From the PC .....	60
Listening to XM Radio Online (XMRO) .....	61
Using Your CDs or MP3/WMA Files .....	61
<b>Updating inno Firmware</b> .....	64
Using XM+Napster .....	64
Using the Update Tool .....	65
Using the Web .....	65
<b>Settings</b> .....	66
FM Modulator .....	66
Aiming the Antenna .....	69
Audio .....	70
Display .....	71
Channel Access .....	73
Clock and Sleep Timer .....	75
Vehicle Mode .....	76
Memory Partition .....	77
Restoring Factory Defaults .....	78
<b>Customer Support</b> .....	80
Troubleshooting .....	80
Specifications .....	85
Patent Information .....	85
FCC Statement .....	86
Warranty .....	88

## Features

Congratulations on your purchase of the Pioneer inno™. It's the next-generation XM2go® radio, with an XM receiver, built-in antenna, and storage for XM, MP3, or WMA music files in one portable device.

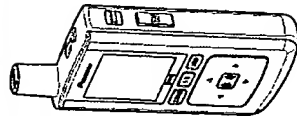
Enjoy XM's 170 channels from coast to coast, with over 80,000 hours of entertainment each month. XM offers musical choice, variety, and discovery – worlds beyond your own collection – plus a wide range of news, sports, talk, comedy, kids, and entertainment channels. Hear XM live, or save XM programming on your inno to listen at your leisure.

We've also teamed up with Napster, a leading provider of online music. Imagine discovering a new artist on XM and then, with just a few clicks of a mouse, buying high-fidelity tracks and albums by that artist and similar artists. It's that simple.

Manage all your music – XM tracks, songs you purchase from Napster, and MP3/WMA files you rip from your CDs – with the easy-to-use XM+Napster program on your Microsoft® Windows® PC.

One device, all the music you could ever hope for, and the easiest way to find the music you want – now that's a music experience!

We recommend that you read the entire manual before using your inno.

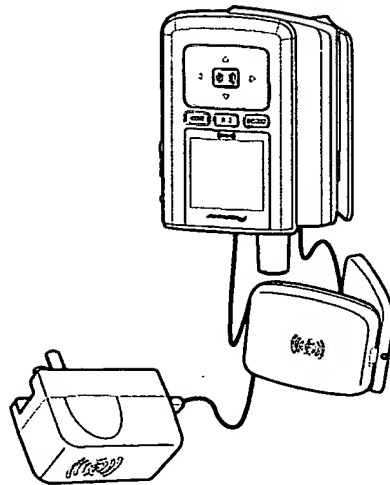


## inno™, Undocked

- Listen to live and recorded XM\* content
- Play MP3 and WMA files
- Manage your tracks, favorite channels, and playlists
- Listen on the go

## inno + Dock + Antenna

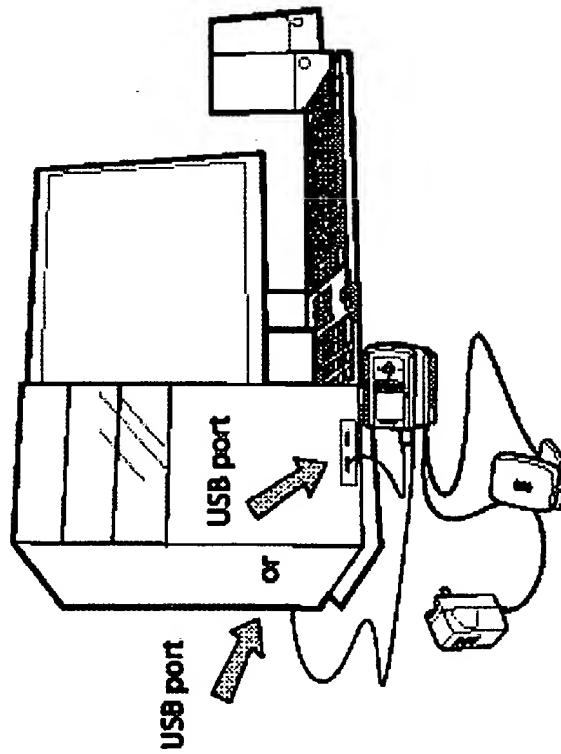
- Listen to live and recorded XM\* content
- Play MP3 and WMA files
- Manage your tracks, favorite channels, and playlists
- Listen in your car or home



\*Hardware and required monthly subscription sold separately. Recorded music not for use in commercial establishments. Installation cost and other fees and taxes, including a one-time activation fee may apply. Subscription fee is consumer only. XM products, programming, services, and fees are subject to change, at any time, without notice. Channels with frequent explicit language are indicated with an XL. Channel blocking is available for XM radio receivers by calling 1-800-XM-RADIO. Subscriptions subject to Customer Agreement available at xmradio.com. XM service only available in the 48 contiguous United States. ©2006 XM Satellite Radio Inc. All rights reserved.

## inno + Dock + Antenna + PC

- Manage content using inno or your PC
- Listen to XM Radio Online
- Purchase music from XM+Napster and upload it to your inno



## Safety Instructions

*Please read and understand all the instructions to avoid injury to yourself and/or damage to your inno. Please be aware that Pioneer claims no responsibility for damage from data loss due to breakdown, repair, or other causes.*

### inno Digital Audio Player

- Do not expose to extreme temperatures (above 140°F or below -4°F, or above 60°C or below -20°C).
- Do not expose to moisture. Do not use inno near or in water.
- Do not let any foreign matter spill into inno.
- Do not expose to chemicals such as benzene and thinners. Do not use liquid or aerosol cleaners. Clean with a soft damp cloth only.
- Do not expose to direct sunlight, fire, flame or other heat sources for a prolonged period.
- Do not try to disassemble and/or repair inno yourself.
- Do not drop your inno or subject it to severe impact.
- Do not place heavy objects on inno.
- Do not subject inno to excessive pressure.
- Do not touch the inno with wet hands.
- Do not store in dusty areas.

**▲ WARNING:** Handling the cord on this product or cords associated with accessories sold with the product will expose you to lead, a chemical known to the State of California and other governmental entities to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.  
**Wash hands after handling.**

## Battery Charger Safety

**Caution:** Opening the case may result in electric shock.

**Caution:** The uninsulated parts inside the power adapter and dock may cause electric shock or fire. For your safety, please do not open these components. Do not let metallic objects, such as necklaces or coins, come into contact with the power adapter plugs or battery terminal.

**Caution:** To avoid electric shock, use the power adapter only with an outlet that matches the shape of the adapter's plug.

**Caution:** Make sure that you insert the adapter's plug all the way into the outlet.

**Caution:** Do not plug several devices into the same electrical outlet.

**Important:** Always read and understand the user guide to prevent problems.

**Warning:** Use the power adapter and dock away from water sources to avoid fire or electric shock.

## Environmental Information

- Follow local guidelines for waste disposal when discarding packaging, batteries, and electronic appliances.
- Your player is packaged with cardboard, polyethylene, etc., and does not contain any unnecessary materials.

## Earbuds and Headphones

- Follow traffic safety instructions.
- Do not use earbuds or headphones while operating a bicycle, automobile, or motorcycle. Not only is it dangerous, it may be prohibited by law in some areas.
- For your safety, make sure the earbud or headphone cable does not get in the way of your arm or other surrounding objects while you're walking or exercising.

## Protect Your Ears

- Maintain a moderate volume when walking or exercising, so that you can be aware of what is happening around you.
- Using earbuds or headphones for an extended time can cause serious damage to your hearing.
- We strongly advise you to set the volume level to medium, which is usually less than 2/3 of the maximum.
- If you hear ringing in your ear(s), lower the volume or stop using the earbuds or headphones.

Sound can be deceiving. Over time your hearing "comfort level" adapts to higher volumes of sound. So what sounds "normal" can actually be loud and harmful to your hearing. Set your equipment at a safe level **BEFORE** your hearing adapts.

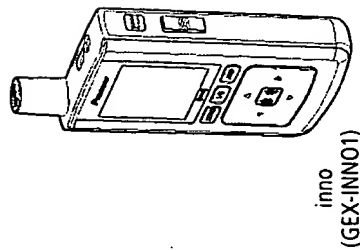
**To establish a safer level:** Start your volume control at a low setting; Slowly increase the sound until you can hear it comfortably and clearly, without distortion.

**Once you have established a comfortable sound level:** Set the dial and leave it there; taking a minute to do this now will help to preserve hearing.

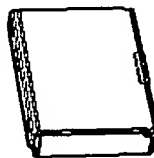
Pioneer and the Consumer Electronics Association recommend you avoid prolonged exposure to excessive noise. Under constant exposure such as sustained listening, sound levels above 85 decibels can be dangerous without hearing protection. (For reference, a garbage disposal or loud shouting at 3 feet away are around 80 decibels; a food blender or gas lawn mower at 3 feet away are around 90 decibels.) The longer your exposure and/or higher the sound level, the greater the danger of permanent hearing damage. Pioneer disclaims all liability for hearing loss, bodily injury or property damage as a result of use or misuse of this product.

**▲ WARNING:** inno should be placed in your vehicle where it will not interfere with the function of safety features, e.g., deployment of airbags. Failure to correctly place inno may result in injury to you or others if the unit becomes detached during an accident and/or obstructs the deployment of an airbag.

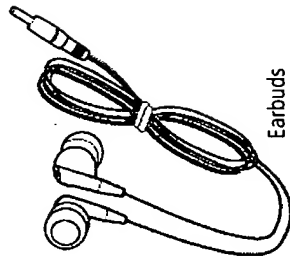
## What's in the Box



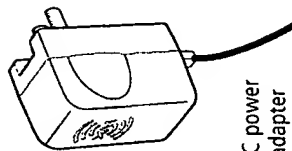
inno  
(GEX-INNO1)



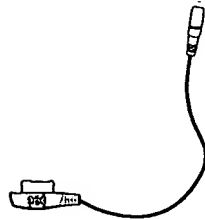
Battery



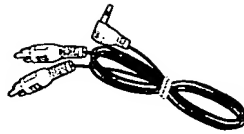
Earbuds



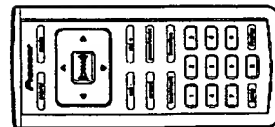
AC power  
adapter



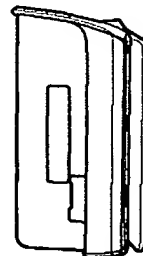
Travel power  
cable



RCA audio cable



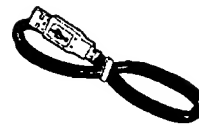
Remote



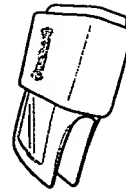
Home dock



Home XM antenna



USB cable

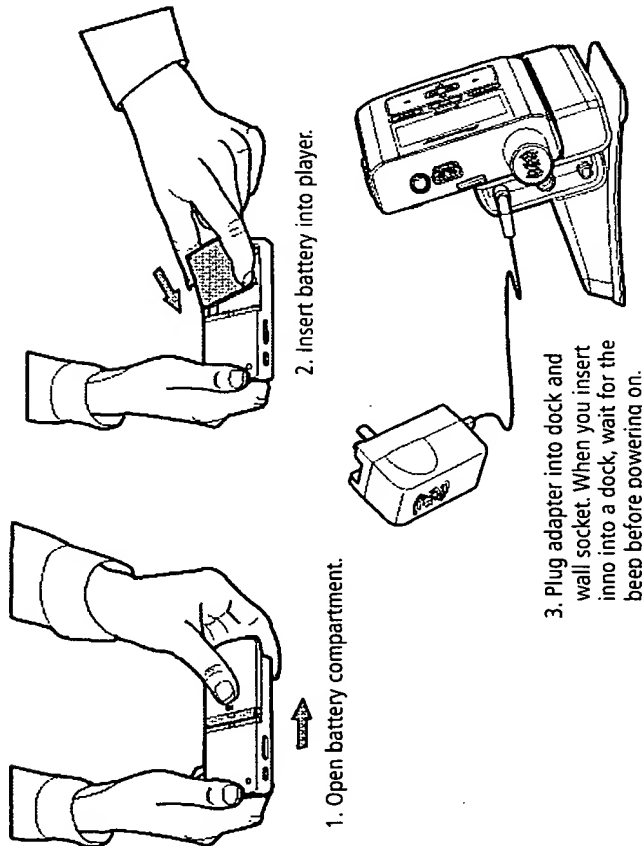


Carrying  
case/holster

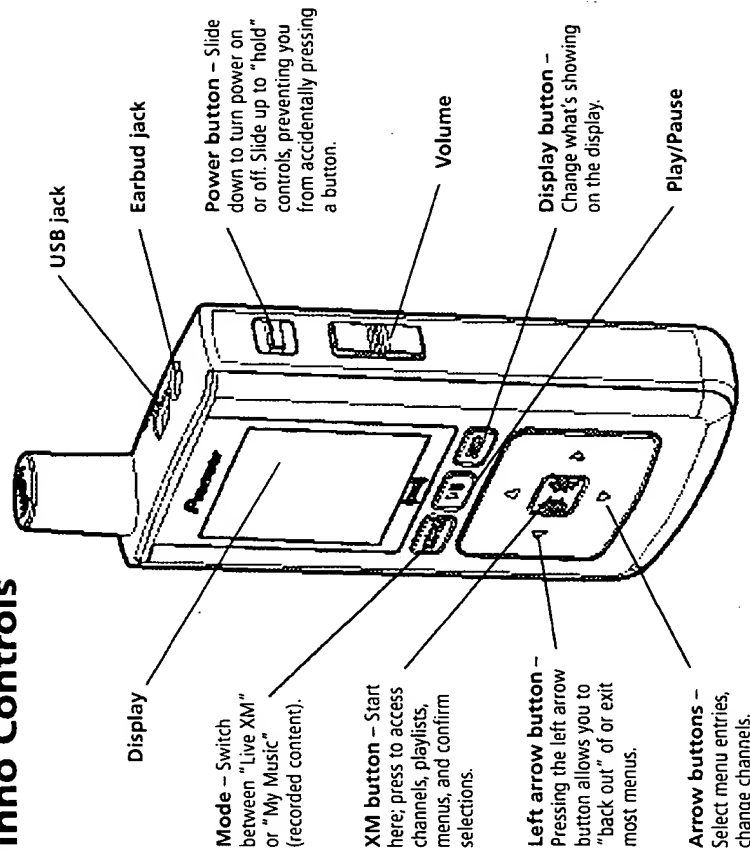
Also included:  
User guide  
XM+Napster install CD

## Charging the Battery

Charge the battery for at least 8 hours before using inno for the first time, or if you have not used it for several months. Be sure to charge the battery in a place where the temperature is between 32°F and 113°F (0°C to 45°C).

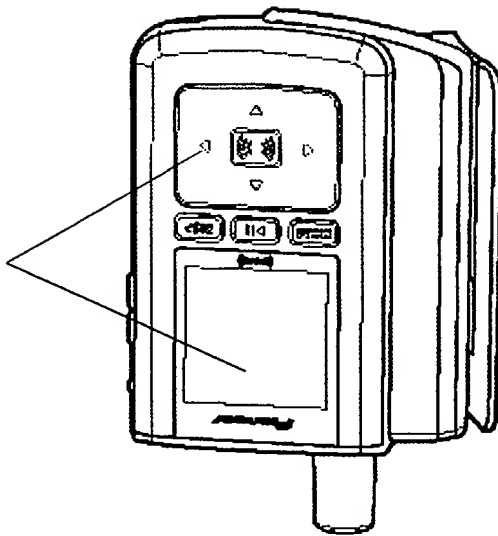


## inno Controls



## inno Controls

When you put inno in its home dock, both the display and arrow buttons rotate by 90° so that "up" really points up!



## Using This Guide

Throughout this guide, you will see instructions such as "Select **XM** → Settings → Setup → Antenna Aiming." This tells you to perform the following actions:

1. Press the **XM** button.
2. You will see a menu whose last option is "Settings." Press the down arrow button several times to highlight "Settings," then press the **XM** button to select it.
3. You will see another menu whose third option is "Setup." Again, press the down arrow button to highlight "Setup," and press the **XM** button to select it.
4. You will see another menu; one of the options is "Antenna Aiming." Press the down arrow button to highlight "Antenna Aiming," and the **XM** button to select it.

Not all of the menu items described in this guide may appear on your inno display. For example, if you have not created any playlists, you will not see "Playlists" if you press the **XM** button while listening to "My Music."

**NOTE:** In most instances, pressing the left arrow button allows you to "back out" of any menu.

## inno Display

**Available memory or signal strength** – Green portion indicates amount of storage taken up by locked XM songs (page 40). In "Live XM" mode, you will see a signal strength indicator instead.

Indicates XM channel, playlist, or MP3 genre.



**Progress bar** – Shows total track length and current location within a track while playing songs in "My Music."

**Battery charge**

**Mode** – ((XM)) shows you're listening to live XM. ((My Music)) shows you're listening to stored XM content or MP3/WMA tracks.

**H** – "H" indicates that the power switch is set in the "hold" position.

**Clock**

**Channel number**

**Artist name**

**Song title**

### Additional symbols:

	play		track assigned to a playlist
	reverse or fast-forward through track		PC track assigned to a playlist
	pause		XM track is locked
	skip to previous or next track		repeat track
	PC track (MP3 or WMA file)		play tracks randomly

## Remote

**Power button**

**Left arrow button** – Pressing the left arrow button allows you to "back out" of or exit most menus.

**Volume**

**Record** – Record a song or channel.

**Bookmark** – Tag interesting songs or tracks.

**Numeric keypad** – Select XM channels by channel number.

**Mode** – "Live XM" or "My Music" (recorded content).

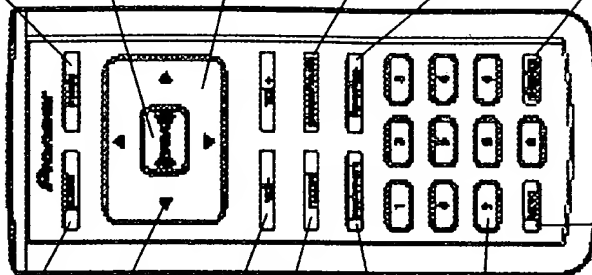
**XM button** – Access menus and confirm selections.

**Arrow buttons** – Select menu entries, change channels.

**Pause/Mute** – Pause playback or mute live XM.

**Favorites** – Go to favorite channels.

**Display** – Change what's showing on the display.



**Jump** – Switch to previous channel you listened to.



## Subscribing to XM

*Before you can listen to or record XM content, you must activate your inno.*

1. Set up your inno, dock station, power adapter, and antenna (page 20 or page 22). Make sure inno can receive the XM signal.
2. Place inno in the "Live XM" mode (page 26).
3. Find the 8-character XM Radio ID, which is printed on the package or in the battery compartment underneath the battery. Or select XM channel 0 to view the Radio ID. Record the Radio ID here for reference:

<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------

The XM Radio ID does not use the letters I, O, S, or F.

4. Activate your XM Satellite Radio service online at <http://activate.xmradio.com> or by calling 1-800-XM-RADIO (1-800-967-2346). You will need a major credit card.

XM will send a signal from the satellites to activate the full channel lineup. Activation normally takes 10 to 15 minutes, but during peak busy periods you may need to keep your player on for up to an hour. When you can access the full channel lineup on your inno, you're finished!

## Product registration

Visit us at the following site:

<http://www.xmradio.com>

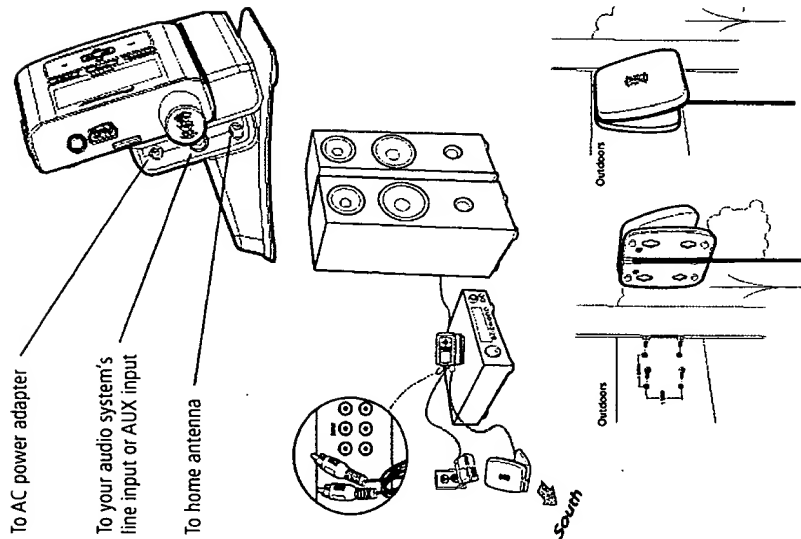
1. Register your product. We will keep the details of your purchase on file to help you refer to this information in the event of an insurance claim such as loss or theft.
2. Receive updates on the latest products and technologies.
3. Download owner's manuals, order product catalogues, research new products, and much more.

**▲ IMPORTANT (Serial Number)** The serial number of this device is located on the back of this unit. For your own security and convenience, be sure to record this number on the enclosed warranty card.

## Using Your inno Alone

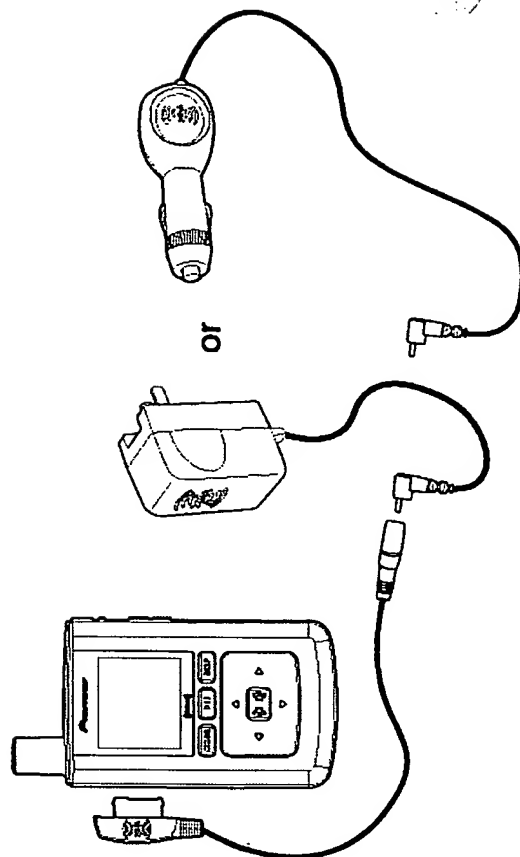
### Setup At Home

1. Insert inno into home dock.
2. Connect inno to your audio system as shown. Connect power adapter and home antenna. Point antenna toward the southern sky through a window.
3. To optimize signal reception, you may mount the home antenna outdoors, facing south. Make sure the antenna is not blocked by buildings or trees.



### While Traveling

If you're traveling, you can connect the power adapter directly to inno using the travel power cable.



## Using Your inno Alone

### Setup

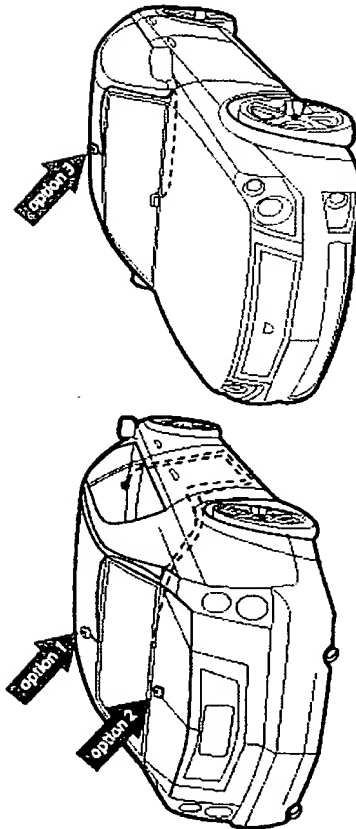
#### In a Vehicle

(requires Car Accessory Kit CD-INCAR1, sold separately)

*Every vehicle is different; for your safety, follow all instructions carefully. Consult a professional installer if you have questions.*

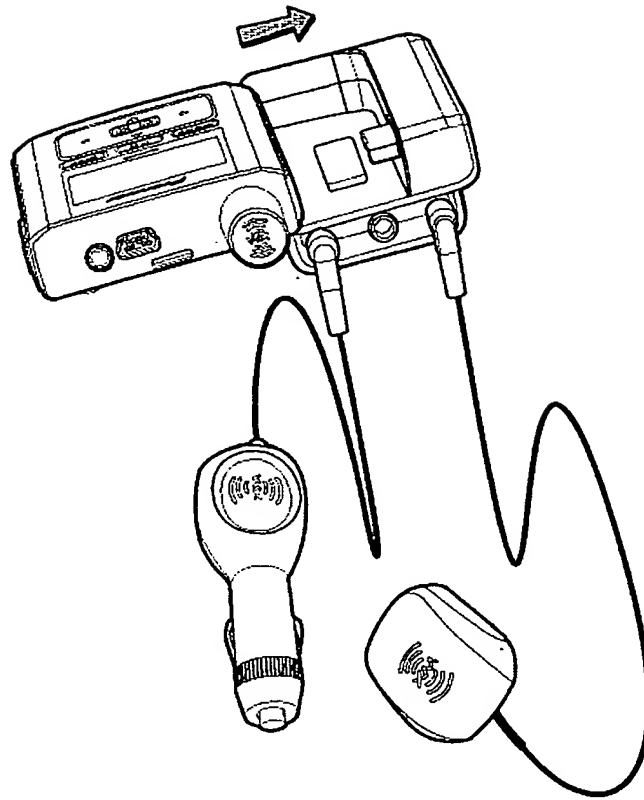
You can listen to your inno through your car stereo by using inno's built-in FM transmitter. Simply find an unused FM frequency on the stereo and set inno to transmit on that same frequency.

1. Mount antenna to the roof or trunk of the vehicle. During installation, make sure you are outdoors and the antenna is not obstructed by tall buildings.



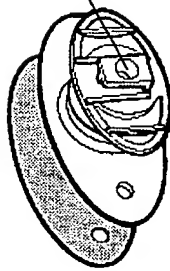
## Using Your inno Alone

2. Insert inno into car dock.
3. Connect car dock to antenna cable and power adapter.



## Using Your inno Alone

4. To install the swivel mount, first find a suitable location. The swivel mount's adhesive is very strong and may be difficult to remove. Do not install this mount on leather surfaces and make sure the air temperature is at least 60°F (15°C).  
Clean the mounting surfaces with the surface preparation kit. Peel away the adhesive liner and firmly press the swivel mount to the surface for 30 seconds. Allow 24 hours before using the mount.

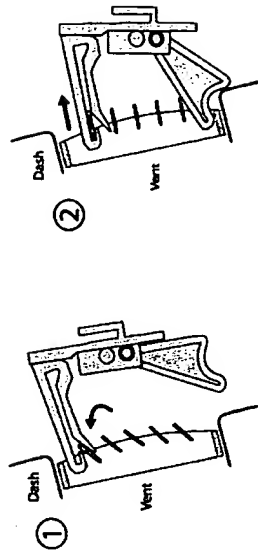


You can adjust the tension of the mount with a screwdriver.

If you need to remove the mount, carefully lift the adhesive pad with your fingers or a spoon. Warming with a hair dryer for several minutes will help soften the adhesive.

## Using Your inno Alone

5. To install the vent mount, find a horizontal vent that is strong enough to hold your inno and dock. To remove the vent mount, push it into the vent and lift upwards slightly to release the mount's hooks from the vent vane.



6. Find an unused FM frequency on your car stereo.
7. Set your inno to the same FM frequency. (Refer to the section marked "Settings," "FM Frequency.")
8. Tune inno to XM channel 1. You should be able to hear XM through your car stereo.

## Using Your inno Alone

## Using Your inno Alone

### Live XM

**NOTE:** You must receive a live XM signal for at least 8 hours a month (which may be split over several listening sessions). This authenticates your XM subscription and ensures that you can continue to enjoy your recorded XM content and live XM programming. If you do not dock your inno as described, you will lose access to your recorded content and live XM programming.



Turn on your inno. Subscribe to XM (page 18) if you haven't done so already.

If you see "XM" at the top of the display, you're listening to XM content that is currently being broadcast from the satellites.

If you see "My Music" on the display, you're listening to recorded XM or MP3/WMA tracks. Press the **Mode** button to switch to "Live XM."

### Selecting Channels

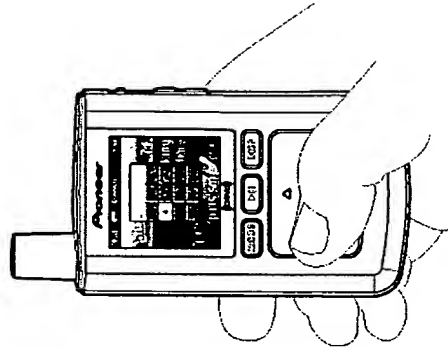
Press the up or down arrow buttons to scroll through the list of channels.

- OR -

Press the number keys on the remote that correspond to the channel number.

- OR -

1. Press the left arrow button on your inno. You will see a virtual keypad on the display.
2. Use the arrow buttons to select the digits corresponding to the channel number. Press the **XM** button after highlighting each digit.
3. When you've entered a valid channel number, your inno will tune to that channel within 2 seconds.



## Favorite Channels

You can save your favorite channels in an easily accessible list.

1. While you're tuned to a channel, press the **XM** button.
2. Select **Favorites** → **Add Channel**.
3. Once you've saved your favorites, you can quickly access the list. From the "Live XM" screen, simply press the right arrow button to see your "Favorites" list. Press the up and down arrow buttons, then the **XM** button to select the desired channel.
4. To remove a channel from the "Favorites" list, select **XM** → **Favorites** → **Edit Channels** → (channel name) → **Remove Channel**.

## Categories

XM channels are organized into categories, or genres, such as "Rock," "Jazz," or "News."

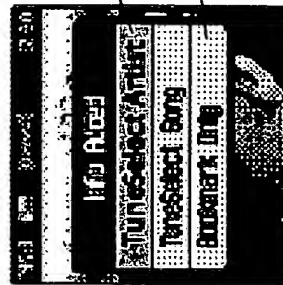
To find a channel by category:

1. Press the right arrow button one or more times. The category name appears in the display. "Favorites" is your first category if you have designated any channel as a "favorite channel."
2. When you've found the category you want, press the up or down arrow buttons to select a channel.
3. Press the **XM** button to tune to that channel.

## TuneSelect™

TuneSelect™ finds your favorite artist or song whenever they're currently being played on any XM channel.

1. When you hear one of your favorite songs, select **XM** → **Bookmark**.
2. You should see the following menu:



Select either "TuneSelect Artist" or "TuneSelect Song" to add the artist or song to your TuneSelect list.

What's a "bookmark"? See page 45.

3. When any song or artist on your TuneSelect list is currently playing on any other XM channel, inno will beep and flash "Artist/Song Found" on the display. Switch to that channel by pressing the **XM** button.
4. To edit the TuneSelect list, select **XM** → **Settings** → **Preferences** → **TuneSelect** → **Edit List**. Choose song or artist and follow the directions on the display.
5. To turn TuneSelect on or off, select **XM** → **Settings** → **Preferences** → **TuneSelect** → **Alert** and choose the desired setting.

TuneSelect also allows you to type an artist name or song title even if the song isn't currently playing on your inno.

1. Select **XM** → **Settings** → **Preferences** → **TuneSelect** → **Edit List** → **Add TuneSelect**.

2. Press the up or down arrow buttons to choose the artist or song title field.

3. Press the **XM** button. You will see a virtual keyboard. Type in the artist name or song title.

4. Select "Enter" when you're finished, or select "Exit" to cancel.

5. Select "Accept" to add that name or title to your TuneSelect list. You can also select "Change" or "Cancel."

**NOTE:** The artist name and song title fields are case-sensitive.

## Info Extras

XM Satellite Radio broadcasts information such as sports scores, stocks, and other features from time to time.

To Choose Sports or Teams:

1. Select **XM** → **Settings** → **Preferences** → **Info Extras** → **Sports**.
2. Use the arrow buttons to highlight (in yellow) a sport or team.
3. Press the **XM** button to select that sport or team. The name of the sport or team will turn green.
4. You may select more than one sport or team to display. Your chosen selections are shown in blue. To remove a selection, go to that entry and press the **XM** button; the entry will change color from blue to gray.
5. When you're finished, press the left arrow button repeatedly until you return to the normal display. Or just wait several seconds for inno to return to its home screen automatically.

To Select Stocks\*:

1. Press **XM** → **Settings** → **Preferences** → **Info Extras** → **Stock Ticker** → **Add Stocks**.

2. You should see a virtual keyboard that will allow you to enter a stock symbol.

3. Use the arrow buttons to highlight the first letter in the stock symbol. Choose that letter by pressing the **XM** button.

\*Quotes are provided by ComStock, Inc. and cover most stocks listed on the NYSE, AMEX, or NASDAQ. Market information is delayed by approximately 25 minutes.



4. Continue selecting letters by using the arrow and **XIM** buttons.
5. Select "Enter" when you've entered the entire stock symbol. Your inno is smart enough to automatically complete some stock symbols.
6. You can track up to 20 stock symbols. When you've entered all your desired stock symbols, select "Exit."
7. Press the left arrow button repeatedly (or simply wait a few seconds) until your inno returns to normal operation.



To display Info Extras, press the **Display** button several times until you see sports scores or a stock ticker at the bottom of the display.

## Recording XM

Your inno enables you to record XM content for personal, non-commercial use. You may record XM content while listening to live XM or by scheduling a recording session. You can then listen to recorded XM content on the go. You can also personalize your XM content by creating playlists for every mood and occasion.\*

## Recording a Single Song

1. While you're listening to live XM, select **XM** → **Record** → **Record Song**. Don't worry if you miss the beginning of the song; your inno captures the entire song even if you start up to 10 minutes after the song begins, as long as you're already tuned to that channel. By selecting "Record Song," you instruct your inno to stop recording at the end of the song.
2. You can continue recording the channel you're listening to by selecting **XM** → **Record** → **Record** → **Rec Channel**.
3. To stop recording at any time, select **XM** → **Record** → **Stop Recording**. If you change channels, inno automatically stops recording.

**SHORTCUT:** To immediately start recording at any time, press and hold the **XM** button until you see the "Recording ..." message appear on the display.

\*XM content cannot be exported from the inno digital audio player. If you wish to own a complete, high-fidelity version of digital content on demand, you should purchase content from XM-Napster. This may allow you to store the content on multiple devices depending upon the digital rights management of such content.



## Using Your inno Alone

### Recording a Channel

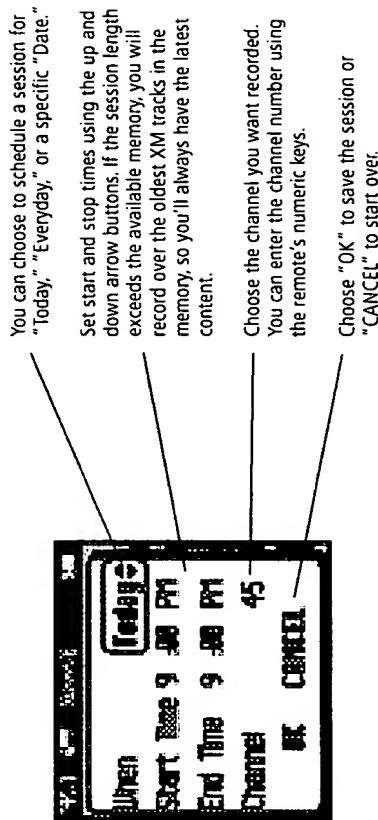
1. While you're listening to live XM, select **XM** → **Record** → **Rec Channel**. You will record the channel you're currently listening to.
2. To stop recording at any time, select **XM** → **Record** → **Stop Recording**. If you change channels, inno automatically stops recording.
3. You can choose to stop recording at the end of the song you're currently listening to by selecting **XM** → **Record** → **Record Song**.

## Using Your inno Alone

### Scheduling a Recording Session

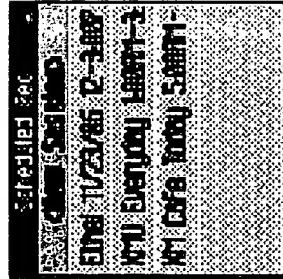
You can set inno to record XM at a later time. When you schedule a recording session, remember that inno must be able to receive a live XM signal when the session begins.

1. To schedule a recording session, select **XM** → **Record** → **Schedule Rec** → **New Session**.
2. The "Scheduled Rec" display allows you to set various options. Use the up and down arrow buttons to adjust each entry. Press the left or right arrow buttons to move to the previous or next option.



inno informs you if there is a scheduling conflict such as overlapping sessions.

3. To edit an existing session, select **XM** → **Record** → **Schedule Recording**. You will see a list of sessions. Highlight the session you wish to edit.



You may not see all the sessions that you scheduled in the past. Sessions that have expired are automatically removed from the list.

4. Choose **Edit Session** to change the session's options.
5. To delete a session, choose **Cancel Session**.

At the scheduled time, your recording session will begin and change channels if needed. Remember that when you schedule a recording session, you are instructing inno to switch to the desired channel.

**NOTE:** Scheduled recording sessions will begin only if inno is put in a home dock or in a boombox with AC power. Your inno can be powered off or on. Make sure your inno can receive a strong XM signal!

## Listening to Recorded XM Content (My Music)

When you see "My Music" at the top of the display, you're listening to XM content that you have recorded and any MP3/WMA files you have transferred to your inno.

1. To switch to "My Music" from "Live XM," press the **Mode** button.
2. Press the up and down arrow buttons to view a list of songs that you have stored on inno. Highlight the song you want to listen to, then press **XM** → **Play** to start playing from that song.
3. You can press the right arrow button to skip to the next song. Press the left arrow button to skip to the previous song.
4. While you're listening to a song, you can also press and hold the right arrow button to fast-forward through that song. Press and hold the left arrow button to reverse through the song.

**NOTE:** In order to access your XM content you have recorded on inno, you must (1) maintain an active XM Satellite Radio subscription, and (2) receive the live XM signal at least 8 hours a month.

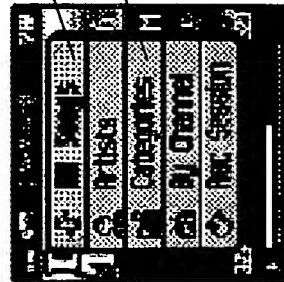
## Using Your inno Alone

### Organizing Your Music

#### Finding Your Music

All songs and tracks that are stored in your inno are normally played in the order that they were recorded or transferred into your inno. You can also sort the selections by artist, category, or channel.

1. While listening to recorded tracks in "My Music," select **XM** → **Find**.
2. Choose how to view your stored music. For example, to sort your stored music by artist, select **Artists**.

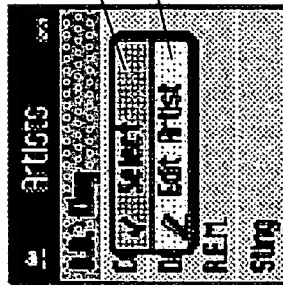


View all songs on your inno.

You can also sort songs by artists, by categories, by channels, or by recording sessions.

3. Press the up or down arrow buttons to scroll through the list of artists. Press the **XM** button to select an artist.

## Using Your inno Alone



Shows the artist's songs in the order they were recorded.

Opens the Edit window, allowing you to add an artist to a playlist, lock or unlock all the artist's songs, or delete all the artist's songs.

4. Once you've selected an artist, you will see a list of songs by that artist that you have recorded.
5. Select the song you want to hear using the arrow and **XM** buttons. Select **XM** → **Play** to begin playing that song.
6. To return to the list of artists, press **XM** → **Find** → **Artists** and select another artist as in steps 3 and 4.
7. You can also sort your tracks by categories or by channels. WMA and MP3 songs show the category or genre that they are assigned to using their ID3 tags, which may or may not be the same as the XM category. WMA and MP3 songs are also assigned to a channel named "MP3/WMA."
8. To view all the songs stored in your inno, press **XM** → **Find** → **All Songs**.

**SHORTCUT:** As soon as you've highlighted a song, simply press the right arrow button to start playback.

## Locking and Unlocking XM Content

When you record XM, your inno records over the oldest XM tracks first. This ensures that you always hear the latest XM content. You can "lock" a song or track to prevent inno from recording over it. Locked songs occupy memory on your inno and reduce your available recording time. Remember that you can buy high-fidelity songs or albums from XM+Napster that can be stored either on your inno or on your PC.

1. While you're listening to a song in "My Music," press the up or down arrow buttons to view the list of songs.
2. Highlight the song you want to lock.
3. Select **XM** → **Edit Song** → **Lock Song**.
4. The locked song is indicated with a padlock symbol to the left of the song title.
5. To unlock a song, highlight the song in the list and select **XM** → **Edit Song** → **Unlock Song**.

**SHORTCUT:** To lock the song you're currently listening to, press and hold the **XM** button, then select **Lock Song**.

You can also lock all songs by an artist, in a category, or in a channel. To lock all songs by an artist:

1. Select **XM** → **Organize** → **Artists** → (artist name) → **Lock Artist**.
2. All songs by this artist are displayed with a padlock symbol to the left of the song title. If you add a song to a playlist, that song is automatically locked.

## Playlists – Adding Songs

You can create one or more custom lists, called playlists. Each playlist is an index of songs that play in a certain order. You can create a "morning drive" playlist, a "workout" playlist, a "best of" playlist, and more.

1. To add a song to a playlist, first select a song using the up or down arrow buttons. The song may be a recorded XM track, an MP3 track, or a WMA track, including songs purchased through XM+Napster.
2. Select **XM** → **Edit Song** → **Add to Playlist**.
3. You can choose to add the song to an existing playlist or to create a new playlist. To choose an existing playlist, simply highlight and select the playlist name. To create a new playlist, choose **New Playlist** and use the virtual keyboard to name that playlist.
4. The display confirms by showing "(playlist name) (song title) Added."
5. Adding a song to a playlist automatically locks that song.

**SHORTCUT:** When you're in "My Music," you can add the recorded XM song that you're currently hearing to a playlist by pressing and holding the **XM** button, then selecting **Add to Playlist**.

You can add a song to more than one playlist or a song to the same playlist more than once.

You can also add all songs by an artist to a playlist: select **XM** → **Organize** → **Artists** → (artist name) → **Add to Playlist**. You can also add all songs in a particular XM channel or category to a playlist.

## Playlists – Removing Entries

You can remove entries from a playlist. Remember that removing a song from one playlist does not remove it from any other playlist, and does not delete that song from inno.

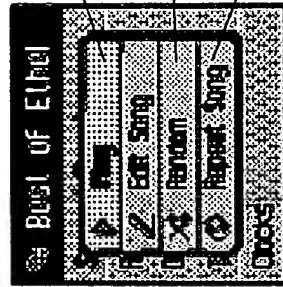
To remove one or more songs from a playlist:

1. Select **XM** → **Playlists** → (playlist name) → **Edit Playlist** → **Remove Songs**.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to highlight a song.
3. Press **XM** → **Select**. The song's name will change to green.
4. Use the up and down arrow buttons to highlight another song, and press the **XM** button to select that song. Do this for all the songs you want to remove; these songs are displayed in blue.
5. Select **XM** → **Remove Song(s)** → **Yes**.
6. inno confirms by displaying "Songs Removed."

**SHORTCUT:** Instead of steps 3 and 4, press the right arrow button to select the song you want to remove.

## Playlists – Playing

1. Select **XM** → **Playlists** → (playlist name) → **Select**.
2. Choose a song you want to hear and press the **XM** button.
3. You will see the following options:



Play songs in the order listed in the playlist, starting from the selected song.

Play songs in random order, starting from the selected song. To cancel random play, select a song but choose "Play" instead of "Random."

Repeat the selected song. To cancel repeat play, select a song but choose "Play" instead of "Repeat Song."

4. To exit a playlist and return to all songs, select **XM** → **Find** → **All Songs**.

## Playlists – Other Options

Normally, the songs in a playlist appear in the order that they were added.

To rearrange the songs in a playlist:

1. Select **XM** → **Playlists** → (playlist name) → **Edit Playlist** → **Arrange Songs**.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to highlight a song.
3. "Pick up" that song by pressing the **XM** button. The song title changes to green.
4. Move the song using the up and down arrow buttons.
5. "Put down" the song by pressing the **XM** button. The song title changes back to yellow.
6. Repeat steps 2-5 for any song you want to move. When you're finished, press the left arrow button repeatedly until you return to normal operation.

To rename a playlist:

1. Select **XM** → **Playlists** → (playlist name) → **Edit Playlist** → **Rename Playlist**.
2. Use the virtual keyboard to change the name of the playlist.
3. Select "Enter" when you're finished, or "Exit" if you don't want to save your changes.

**NOTE:** You can also manage the playlists on your inno by using the XM+Napster application on your PC.

## Bookmarking Songs

"Bookmarks" are a great way to remember interesting songs. You can view all your bookmarks through the XM+Napster application, look up information about the artist or album, or purchase a complete, high-fidelity version of the song that you may play on multiple devices through XM+Napster. You may also purchase songs by the same artist (or similar artists) through XM+Napster.

To bookmark a song in "My Music":

1. Press the up or down arrow buttons until you highlight the song you want to bookmark.
2. Press **XM** → **Edit Song** → **Bookmark Song**.
3. inno confirms by displaying "Info Added."

**SHORTCUT:** To bookmark the song that you're currently listening to in "My Music," press and hold the **XM** button, then select **Bookmark Song**. You can only bookmark live or recorded XM tracks, not MP3 or WMA tracks.

To bookmark a song in "Live XM":

1. Select **XM** → **Bookmark** → **Bookmark Only**.
2. inno confirms by displaying "Info Added."

### Deleting Songs

When you're no longer interested in a song or track, you can delete it from your inno. "Deleting" a song permanently erases it from memory, and is different from "removing" a song from a playlist.

To delete one song from "My Music":

1. Press the up or down arrow buttons until you highlight the song you want to delete.
2. Select **XM** → **Edit Song** → **Delete** → **Yes**.
3. inno confirms the song is erased by displaying "Song Deleted."

**SHORTCUT:** To delete the song that you're currently listening to, press and hold the XM button, then select **Delete**.

To delete multiple songs from "My Music":

1. Select **XM** → **Organize** → **Songs**.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to highlight a song.
3. Select **XM** → **Select Song**. The song's name will be displayed in green.
4. Use the up and down arrow buttons to highlight another song, and press the **XM** button to select that song. Do this for all the songs you want to remove.
5. Select **XM** → **Delete** → **Yes**.
6. inno confirms that the songs are erased by displaying "Songs Deleted."

**SHORTCUT:** Instead of steps 3 and 4, press the right arrow button to select the song you want to delete.

## System Requirements

The inno will not work with all computers.

The PC system must meet the following requirements:

- Intel® Pentium®- class CPU
- Microsoft Windows XP Home, Windows XP Professional, or Windows 2000 operating system\*
- At least 64 MB of RAM.
- At least 13 MB of available hard disk space for XM+Napster application.
- Internet Explorer 5.1 or higher.
- Windows Media Player 9 or higher; Windows Media Player 10 recommended for Windows XP.
- Active Internet connection; we recommend a broadband (cable, DSL, or fiber) connection for optimal performance.
- inno may not work with all computers meeting these requirements depending on system configuration and user demands on existing hardware and software.

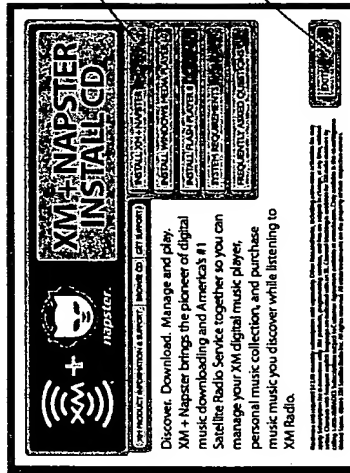
\*The following operating systems are not supported: Windows 95, Windows 98, Windows NT, Windows Me, and Mac OS.

## Setup

We recommend reading this entire section before using your inno with a PC.

To connect your inno to your PC:

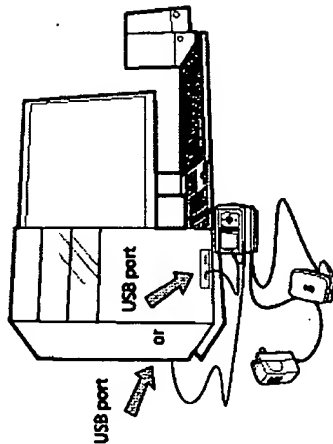
1. If you haven't done so already, disconnect your inno and its dock from your PC.
2. Insert the XM+Napster CD into your computer's CD or DVD drive.
3. The software should start automatically. You should see the following screen on your PC:



Follow the directions indicated on the screen. If you have any questions about the XM+Napster software, see the XM+Napster FAQs at <http://innapster.xradio.com>.



4. Reboot your PC if necessary, then launch the XM+Napster program from the shortcut on your desktop.
5. Set up inno as shown and plug the USB cable into the PC. You can also connect the USB cable directly between your PC and inno without using the home dock, home antenna, and AC power adapter.



**WARNING:** Only use the USB cable supplied in the package. Other USB cables may not allow your inno to charge its battery or communicate with your PC.

6. Your PC should recognize inno. Close any file folders that appear on your screen. You can manage the contents of inno entirely by using the XM+Napster program.
7. When taking your inno with you, you must disconnect inno from the PC by following the procedure described in "Disconnecting Your inno from the PC" (page 60).

## Registering with XM+Napster

Choose either the XM+Napster Light service or the XM+Napster service. XM+Napster Light allows you to buy individual songs or albums whenever you want. XM+Napster lets you stream music to your PC for an additional monthly subscription.

	XM+Napster	XM+Napster Light
Manage XM content and MP3/WMA files on your inno	✓	✓
Transfer MP3/WMA files from your PC to your inno	✓	✓
Buy individual songs or albums to keep forever, burn to CD, and transfer onto your inno	✓	✓
Additional monthly subscription with XM+Napster required	✓	
Download and listen to all the Napster music you want on your PC	✓	
Listen to 75+ XM channels on your PC from XM Radio Online	✓	✓
Community and music discovery tools	✓	

## Using inno with a PC

To register, follow these steps:

1. Click **File/Sign In** on the XM+Napster application. Click on the link for new members.
2. Follow the directions indicated on the registration screen. You must provide your active XM Radio ID and billing ZIP code to register.

**XM+Napster**

**Registration**

**Name:** [Text Field] **Email:** [Text Field] **Password:** [Text Field] **Confirm Password:** [Text Field]

**Billing Information:**

**Card Type:** [Dropdown Menu] **Card Number:** [Text Field] **Expiration Date:** [Text Field]

**Cardholder Name:** [Text Field] **Cardholder Address:** [Text Field] **Cardholder City:** [Text Field] **Cardholder State:** [Text Field] **Cardholder ZIP:** [Text Field]

**Country:** [Dropdown Menu] **Zip/Postal Code:** [Text Field]

**REGISTER**

## Using inno with a PC

3. If you choose XM+Napster, you must provide a valid credit card. Registering for XM+Napster Light does not require a credit card; you only need one when you purchase individual songs or albums. Simply select "Start XM+Napster Light" instead of entering your billing information.

**XM+Napster**

**Registration**

**Name:** [Text Field] **Email:** [Text Field] **Password:** [Text Field] **Confirm Password:** [Text Field]

**Billing Information:**

**Card Type:** [Dropdown Menu] **Card Number:** [Text Field] **Expiration Date:** [Text Field]

**Cardholder Name:** [Text Field] **Cardholder Address:** [Text Field] **Cardholder City:** [Text Field] **Cardholder State:** [Text Field] **Cardholder ZIP:** [Text Field]

**Country:** [Dropdown Menu] **Zip/Postal Code:** [Text Field]

**REGISTER**

For XM+Napster, enter your credit card information.

For XM+Napster Light, simply click here.

4. The next time you use XM+Napster, sign in with your user name and password to access the XM+Napster service. You can also use the XM+Napster software off-line, without signing in, and still retain the ability to manage your inno.

## Using inno with a PC

### What Can You Do with XM+Napster?

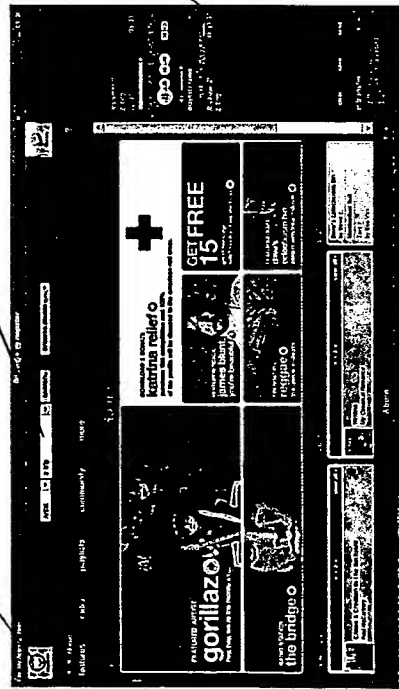
Using XM+Napster, you can:

- Manage songs, playlists, and recording sessions on your inno.
- Transfer MP3 and WMA files between inno and your PC.
- Explore and purchase music from XM+Napster's enormous online store.
- Listen to XM Radio Online.

### Exploring

Explore XM+Napster's online store and community, with over 1.5 million songs, 100,000 albums, and 80,000 artists.

Search by entering an artist name, song title, or album.



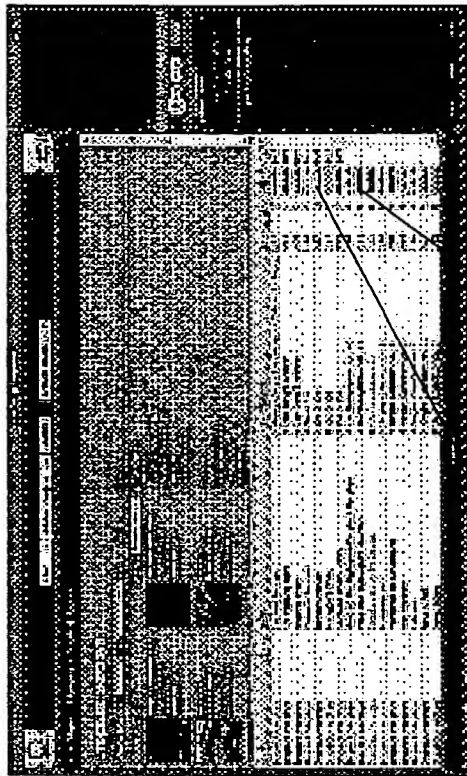
Drag and drop tracks or albums onto the "playlist/radio" pane to play them on your PC.

## Using inno with a PC

### Purchasing Music

The XM+Napster store allows you to stream, download, or buy songs or albums.

- **Stream** – Listen to a song while your PC is connected to the Internet.
- **Download** – Store music on your PC. You can listen to these songs any time, even if your PC is off-line.
- **Buy** – Purchase the track or album. You can transfer these songs to your inno at any time.



"buy only" – Only available to buy or to sample a 30-second clip from XM+Napster.

"download" – Available to buy, download, or stream from XM+Napster.

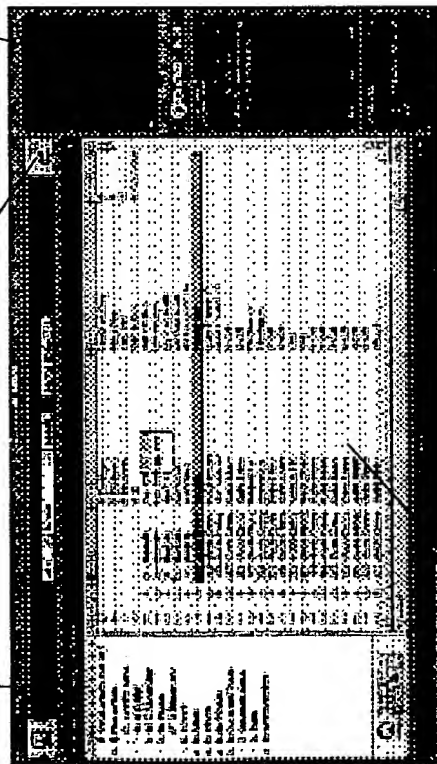
## Using inno with a PC

### Organizing Your Music

The "Folder" pane lets you view the tracks stored on inno or on your PC, playlists, recording sessions, bookmarks, and more. Click on the desired folder to see its contents on the main pane.

View and manage all the XM content you recorded, WMA, and MP3 tracks on your inno and your PC.

Drag and drop tracks or albums onto the "playlist/radio" pane to play them on your PC.



The main pane shows the contents of a folder.

Drag and drop purchased tracks into the "transfer" pane to move them from your PC to your inno.

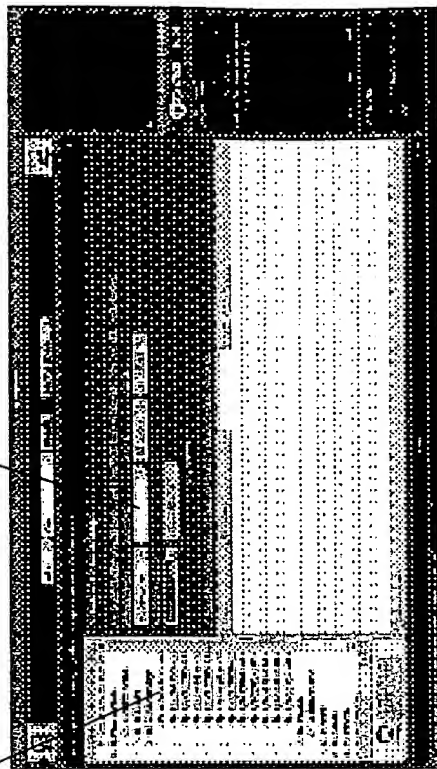
## Using inno with a PC

### Recording Sessions

View and edit your inno recording sessions by selecting Library/inno/XM Recordings on the XM+Napster application.

Create a new recording session or choose an existing session.

Enter the options for the recording session.



## Using inno with a PC

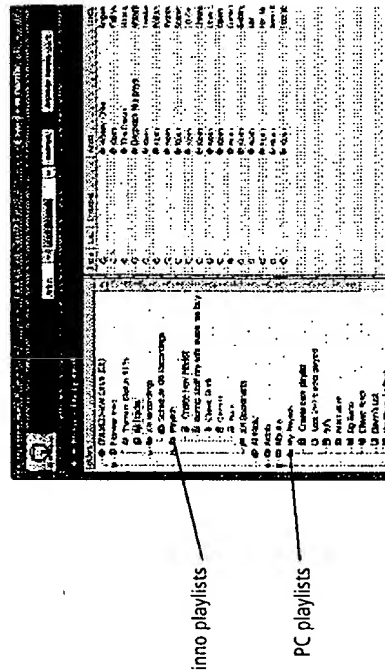
### Playlists

You can manage your inno playlists using XM+Napster. Simply dock your inno, then select **Library/inno/Playlists**. You can create new playlists, or edit or delete any playlists that are stored in your inno.

You can also create and manage playlists for any music content stored on your PC. Select **Library/My Playlists**.

To add a track to any playlist, select that track on the main pane and drag it to the playlist name in the "Folder" pane. Alternatively, right-click on the track name, then select the playlist you want to add the track to.

You can move a PC playlist onto your inno by dragging that playlist name into the **Library/inno/Playlists** line. When you move tracks and playlists onto your inno, you may have to purchase that content from XM+Napster, if you have not done so already.



## Using inno with a PC

### Transferring Between PC and inno



To transfer a track or playlist from your PC to your inno, drag and drop the track or playlist into the "transfer" pane on the lower right-hand side of the XM+Napster application.

You can only transfer songs that you have purchased from XM+Napster or songs that you have ripped from your audio CDs. inno only recognizes file names that use single-byte characters; double-byte and multi-byte character sets (Asian languages such as Chinese, Korean, or Japanese) are not supported.

**WARNING:** Though you can transfer non-MP3/WMA files to your inno using Windows, those files cannot be played as audio files. Furthermore, do not attempt to format the inno storage; doing so may cause damage to the device.

### Disconnecting Your inno From the PC

Before you remove your inno from its dock or unplug the USB cable from the dock or the PC, you must disconnect using one of the following methods:

- In Windows: right-click on the **Safely Remove Hardware** icon , which is on the right side of the Windows taskbar. Select "USB Mass Storage Device," and click on **Stop**.
- On XM+Napster: click on the **Disconnect Device** icon  or select **File/Disconnect portable device**.

If you want to connect inno to your PC again, re-insert inno into its dock.

### Listening to XM Radio Online (XMRO)

XM Radio Online gives you access to over 75 channels of the same amazing programming you hear on XM Satellite Radio, plus 10 select AOL Radio channels for even more choice.

To access XM Radio Online, click on **Home/Radio/XM Radio Online**. Then simply choose your desired channel from the channel list.


Save favorite channels in the preset buttons (at the top of the screen) by dragging a channel onto the desired button. Note that these presets are not the same as the "Favorite Channels" on your inno.

You can enjoy XM Radio Online anywhere you have a PC and a high-speed connection. Remember that you cannot save or transfer XMRO programming onto your inno.

### Using Your CDs or MP3/WMA Files

#### Ripping Your CDs

Use the XM+Napster application to rip tracks from a CD into your Napster library.

1. Insert an audio CD into your PC's CD drive.
2. Click on **Library**, then click on the **CD** icon in the "Folders" pane. You will see a listing of the CD tracks in the main pane.
3. Click the **Rip** icon  on the bottom of the main pane. By default, the tracks will be encoded into the WMA format at 128 kbps. You can change this setting by clicking **File/Options/CD Options**.

#### Importing Tracks Into XM+Napster

If you have already created MP3 or WMA files in your computer, you can import them into your Napster library.

1. Click **File/Import Tracks to My Library ...**
2. Follow the directions on the screen.

#### Burning CDs

Transfer MP3 and WMA files onto a recordable CD or DVD. Please note that the content recorded from XM cannot be burned onto a CD or DVD or otherwise transferred off your inno.

1. Insert a recordable CD or DVD into your PC's CD/DVD drive.
2. Click **Library**.
3. Pull up the **Burn** screen at the bottom of the main pane.
4. Drag and drop tracks into the "Burn" pane.
5. When you've finished selecting tracks, click **Burn Disc**.

For more information, please see the XM+Napster FAQs at <http://napster.xmradio.com>.

Occasionally we make improvements to the inno firmware, which is the software that makes your inno work. Updating the firmware is a quick and easy process.

Remember that:

- Your inno must be docked with a power adapter and must be connected to your PC. You cannot update the firmware if inno is not docked and powered.
- Your PC must be connected to the Internet

## Using XM+Napster

If you have installed and use XM+Napster, it automatically checks the firmware when you connect inno to your PC. XM+Napster notifies you when it's necessary to update the firmware. Simply follow the instructions.

Don't worry if you miss a firmware update. XM+Napster will always check whether your inno needs an update or not.

## Using the Update Tool

If you don't use XM+Napster, you can update the inno firmware manually.

1. Insert the XM+Napster CD in your PC's CD-ROM or DVD drive. The XM+Napster software should start automatically.
2. Click on **Browse CD**.
3. Click on **Utils**, then click on **XM Firmware Update Client**.
4. Follow the instructions on the PC screen.

You can run this firmware update tool at any time. If the firmware needs to be updated, the tool will install it automatically. If the firmware is already up-to-date, nothing happens.

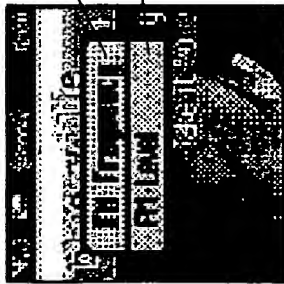


## Using the Web

Point your Web browser to <http://fwupdt.xmradio.com> and follow directions.



## FM Modulator (for optional Car Kit use only)



Set the FM frequency that inno transmits on.

Adjust the volume level of the FM transmission.

## FM Frequency (for optional Car Kit use only)

Your inno contains a built-in FM modulator (or FM transmitter) that allows you to listen to whatever your inno is playing using a car FM radio. All you have to do is set your inno and the FM radio in your car to the same frequency.

1. Place inno in the car dock.
2. Find an unused FM frequency on your FM radio. Note that FM frequency.
3. Select **XM** → **Settings** → **FM Modulator** → **FM Frequency**.
4. Use the up and down arrow buttons to choose the same FM frequency as in step 2. You should hear XM programming over your FM radio when your inno and radio frequencies match.
5. Press the **XM** button to confirm your selection.

## FM Level

When listening to your inno using the FM modulator, you can adjust its volume level to match other audio sources (your CD player, other FM stations, or MP3 player).

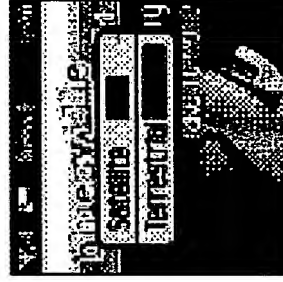
1. Select **XM** → **Settings** → **FM Modulator** → **FM Level**.
2. Press the left arrow button to decrease the volume level or the right arrow button to increase the volume level.
3. Press the **XM** button to confirm your selection.

## Aiming the Antenna

For optimal reception of XM's live satellite signal, your inno antenna should have an unobstructed view of the XM satellites in the southern sky. In large cities, XM also has a network of ground repeaters to help increase the signal coverage.

Your inno can help you aim the home antenna to pull in the strongest possible signal.

1. Select **XM** → **Settings** → **Setup** → **Antenna Aiming**.
2. Slowly turn and tilt the antenna. The signal bars on the display will change.



3. The antenna aiming screen remains as long as it's needed to help you position the antenna. When you've found the best position, press the left arrow button repeatedly to exit the Settings menu.
4. Select XM channel 1. You should be able to listen to the XM Preview Channel.

## Audio

### Tone

You can adjust the audio tone quality to suit the kind of music you're listening to.

1. Select **XM** → **Settings** → **Preferences** → **Set Tone**.
2. Press the up or down arrow buttons to select either "Bass" or "Treble." Adjust the tone settings by pressing the left or right arrows.
3. Press the **XM** button to save your setting and exit the tone control menu. Then press the left arrow button repeatedly until you return to normal operation.

### Line Out Level

If you connect inno to another stereo system, you can adjust inno's audio level to match other audio sources. This is not a volume control; use the volume control on your stereo instead.

1. Select **XM** → **Settings** → **Setup** → **Line Out Level**.
2. Use the left or right arrow buttons to decrease or increase the audio level.
3. Press the **XM** button to confirm your selection. Then press the left arrow button repeatedly until you return to normal operation.

## Display

### Brightness and Contrast

To change the screen's brightness and contrast:

1. Select **XM** → **Settings** → **Preferences** → **Change Display** → **Brightness**.
2. Press the left or right arrow buttons to adjust brightness.
3. Press the **XM** button to confirm your selection. Then press the left arrow button repeatedly until you return to normal operation.

### Backlight Timer

Your inno screen remains lit for a short time after you press a button. To adjust this time period:

1. Select **XM** → **Settings** → **Preferences** → **Change Display** → **Backlight Timer**.
2. Press the up and down arrow buttons to select the desired time period.
3. Press the **XM** button to confirm your selection.

### Stock Ticker

If you created a stock ticker, you will see stock symbols and their prices displayed at the bottom of inno's display. You can control the way the ticker is displayed.

1. Select **XM** → **Settings** → **Preferences** → **Change Display** → **Display Appearance** → **Stock Ticker**.
2. Select **Scrolling** to see the ticker move across the screen from right to left. Select **By Pages** to view the ticker as if you're flipping pages of a book.
3. Press the **XM** button to confirm your selection.

### Info Extras

If you choose sports or other Info Extras features, you will see sports scores and other information displayed at the bottom of inno's display. You can control the way this information is displayed.

1. Select **XM** → **Settings** → **Preferences** → **Change Display** → **Display Appearance** → **Info Extras**.
2. Select **Scrolling** to see the ticker move across the screen from right to left. Select **By Pages** to view the ticker as if you're flipping pages of a book.
3. Press the **XM** button to confirm your selection.

### Channel Access


#### Direct Tune

Normally, as you scroll through live XM channels using the up and down arrow buttons, you can preview the channel list before selecting one channel. inno does not switch to that channel until you push the **XM** button. You can change this so that inno automatically tunes to the channel that you're previewing.

1. Select **XM** → **Settings** → **Preferences** → **Channel Access** → **Direct Tune**.
  2. Select **Direct Tune On**.
  3. Press the **XM** button to confirm your selection. Then press the left arrow button repeatedly until you return to normal operation.
- To return inno to its default behavior, select **Direct Tune Off**.

### Channel Skip/Add

You can simplify the list of channels that you see when you press the up and down arrow buttons. To skip a channel:

1. Select **XM** → **Settings** → **Preferences** → **Channel Access** → **Channel Skip/Add**.
2. You will see a list of channels. Press the **XM** button to skip a channel. You'll see the **Channel Skip** icon  displayed beside the channel name. You can choose to skip more than one channel.
3. To add a channel that has been skipped, highlight that channel then press the **XM** button.
4. Press the left arrow button when you're finished.
5. inno confirms by displaying "Channel List Updated."

You can still tune to a channel directly by using the virtual keypad to enter its channel number.

Channel Skip/Add should not be used as a form of parental control. To completely block access to an XM channel, contact XM Listener Care at 1-800-XM-RADIO (1-800-967-2346).

### Clock and Sleep Timer

#### Time

1. The time is automatically set using the XM signal. Select **XM** → **Settings** → **Setup** → **Set Time** → **Set Clock** → **Select Time Zone** to set the correct time zone for your location.
2. Your inno automatically adjusts for Daylight Savings Time. To turn this feature off, select **XM** → **Settings** → **Setup** → **Set Time** → **Set Clock** → **Daylight Savings Time** → **No**.
3. To display time in 12- or 24-hour format, select the desired format through **XM** → **Settings** → **Setup** → **Set Time** → **Set Clock** → **12/24 Hour Mode**.

#### Sleep Timer

Your inno has a sleep timer that can automatically shut off the unit after a period of time.

1. Select **XM** → **Settings** → **Setup** → **Set Time** → **Sleep Timer**.
2. Select the desired time period.
3. Press the **XM** button to confirm the selection. Your inno will remember this setting the next time you turn it on.

The sleep timer resets to "Off" every time you turn inno off.

## Vehicle Mode

If you listen to your inno in a vehicle, you've probably plugged the power adapter into the cigarette lighter socket. In some vehicles, the cigarette lighter is turned on or off with the ignition key; in other vehicles, the cigarette lighter is powered all the time. To prevent your battery from being drained, choose one of the following settings:

1. Select **XM** → **Settings** → **Setup** → **Set Time** → **Vehicle Mode**.
2. Choose one of the following settings:

Auto ON/OFF	OFF	Choose this option if the cigarette lighter is always powered. You must turn inno on or off using its own power switch.
	ON	Choose this option if the ignition key switches the cigarette lighter on and off.
Delayed Power Off	OFF or 60-180 minutes	Another option if the cigarette lighter is always powered: inno automatically turns off 60 to 180 minutes after you turn it on.

3. The setting is saved even if you turn inno off. The vehicle mode setting is only active when you use the car dock.

## Memory Partition

The internal storage in inno can store recorded XM content and MP3/WMA files. By default, the storage is divided 50/50, but you can select different memory partitions:

setting	typical storage for content recorded from XM	typical storage for PC (MP3 and WMA) tracks
50/50 XM/PC files	25 hours	8 hours
100% XM	50 hours	0 hours

To change the memory partition:

1. Place your inno into the home dock and connect the AC power adapter.
2. Select **XM** → **Settings** → **Setup** → **Memory Partition**.
3. Highlight the desired setting and press the **XM** button.
4. Confirm by selecting **Yes**, or cancel by selecting **No**.

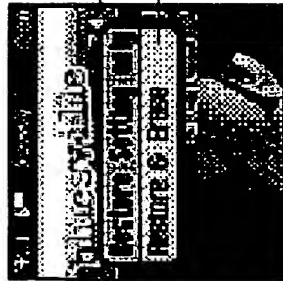
**CAUTION:** When you change the memory partition, you will erase all your stored XM content and MP3/WMA tracks from your inno.

## Settings

### Restoring Factory Defaults

To restore all inno settings and preferences to a "factory fresh" state:

1. Select XM → Settings → Setup → Factory Defaults.
2. You should see this display:



Restore just the settings to factory defaults.

Restore settings to factory defaults and erase all music.

3. Confirm by selecting Yes, or cancel by selecting No.

## Troubleshooting

If your inno does not work the way you expect, first consult this troubleshooting guide. To reset your inno, remove the battery then re-insert it.

If you see this on the display:	You should:
No Signal	Something is blocking the XM signal. Move your inno away from the obstructed area (e.g., an underground garage).
Antenna	Plug the antenna into the home or car dock. Make sure the antenna wire is not bent or broken.
Off Air	The channel you've selected is not currently broadcasting. Tune to another channel.
Loading	Your inno is acquiring audio or program information from the XM signal. This message should disappear in a few seconds in good signal conditions.
Updating	XM is updating your inno with the latest encryption code. Simply wait a few seconds until the update is done. -- OR -- You may be attempting to tune to a channel that is blocked or that you cannot receive with your subscription package. To receive that channel, contact XM Satellite Radio at 1-800-967-2346.
... (no artist or title)	No program information, such as artist name or song title, exists.
Channel	You are attempting to tune to a channel that is not available.
All Recording Features Not Available	Activate your XM subscription to enable you to store XM programming on your inno.
This Channel Not Available for Recording	Some programming cannot be recorded due to restrictions placed by the content owners.
This Program Not Available for Recording	Some programming cannot be recorded due to restrictions placed by the content owners.
Connect to XM Antenna Within 30 Days to Avoid Interruption in Listening to XM Recordings	You must receive a live XM signal for at least 8 hours a month. This authenticates your XM subscription and ensures that you can continue to enjoy your recorded XM content and live XM programming.
Please Connect to XM Antenna to Confirm Valid Subscription	Select "Live XM" and make sure you get a strong signal.
Activation Required for Playback	Activate your XM subscription.

## Troubleshooting


If this happens:	You should:
There is no power or your inno shuts off quickly.	Your inno battery may be low. Charge the battery by putting your inno in the dock station and plugging in the AC adapter.
inno shuts off unexpectedly.	Check whether you set the sleep timer, and set it to "Off" if desired. Check whether "Vehicle Mode/Delayed Power Off" is set, and set it to "Off" if desired. inno remembers the "Vehicle Mode" setting even when you turn the device off.
You do not receive all the XM channels you have subscribed to.	Check that you have not skipped any channels (page 74). If you still do not receive all channels, your inno may not be activated. Contact XM Satellite Radio.
No audio.	Check all connections between your inno and your stereo system.
No song title or artist name is displayed.	Nothing is wrong with your inno. That information may be in the process of being updated. Some channels, such as news and sports, may not have such information.
No audio when listening to inno through an FM radio.	Check that your inno and your radio are tuned to the same FM frequency.
Audio fades or has static when listening through an FM radio.	You might be hearing interference from another FM station. Set your inno and your radio to a different FM frequency.
Audio sounds too soft or is distorted when listening to an FM radio.	Raise or lower the FM audio level until the sound quality improves.
XM Instant Traffic and Weather channels sound different from other channels.	Nothing is wrong with your inno. These channels use a different audio technology than the other XM channels.
Controls do not respond.	Check whether the power switch is in the "hold" position. If so, slide it to the center position to unlock the controls.
The controls still refuse to respond, the display does not change, or the backlight does not turn on or off.	Reset your inno by removing and re-inserting the battery.
Battery level meter does not match the expected charge or playback time.	Fully charge the battery, then use your inno until the battery is exhausted. This calibrates the battery level meter.



## Troubleshooting

If this happens:		You should:
Inno does not communicate with your PC.		Check the power and USB connections between the dock and your PC. Be sure to use the supplied USB cable; any others may prevent your Inno from charging or communicating properly with your PC. Remove your Inno from its dock station, then re-insert.
Artist and song title information does not display correctly.		Inno may not correctly show the artist and song information (ID3 tags) of certain foreign songs.
You cannot transfer songs that you downloaded with Napster To Go™ into Inno.		Inno is not compatible with Napster To Go's monthly subscription service. To transfer songs from your PC to your Inno, you must purchase individual songs or albums from XM+Napster Light or XM+Napster.

## Specifications

Inno Player	
Dimensions	56 mm (W) x 94 mm (H) x 16 mm (D) 2.2 in (W) x 3.7 in (H) x 0.6 in (D)
Weight	128 g 4.5 oz
Storage capacity	1 GB (The capacity of the built-in memory may be less than indicated; a portion of the memory is used by the Inno firmware.)
Music file formats	MP3 and WMA fixed bitrates: 32, 48, 64, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 kbps MP3 and WMA variable bitrates: 64-128, 128-256, 160-320 kbps
Audio output	3.5 mm mini-stereo jack
Antenna connector (home and car dock)	RF SMB
Battery	Type: lithium ion Voltage: 3.7 V Capacity: 1750 mAh
External power	Voltage: 5 V DC Current: 2000 mA Polarity: 

## Specifications

Remote	
Dimensions	39 mm (W) x 95 mm (H) x 12 mm (D) 1.5 in (W) x 3.7 in (H) x 0.47 in (D)
Weight	40 g 1.4 oz
Battery	Type: CR2032 Voltage: 3 V
Model Numbers	
Inno player	GEX-INNO1
Home kit	CD-INHOME1
Car accessory kit	CD-INCAR1

## Patent Information

**Technology.** It is prohibited to copy, decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, hack, manipulate, or otherwise make available any technology incorporated in receivers compatible with the XM Satellite Radio System or that support the XM website, the Online Service or any of its content. Furthermore, the AMBE® voice compression software included in this product is protected by intellectual property rights including patent rights, copyrights, and trade secrets of Digital Voice Systems, Inc. You also agree not to upload, post, transmit or otherwise make available any material that contains software viruses or any other computer code, files, or programs designed to interrupt, disable, or limit the functionality of the XM website or the Online Service. Furthermore, the music, talk, news, entertainment, data, and other content on the Services are protected by copyright and other intellectual property laws and all ownership rights remain with the respective content and data service providers. You are prohibited from any export of the data (or derivative thereof) except in compliance with applicable export laws, rules, and regulations. The use of this or any other software contained in an XM Radio or the XM website and all software used in connection with either is explicitly prohibited from attempting to copy, decompile, reverse engineer, or disassemble the object code, or in any other way convert the object code into human-readable form. The software is licensed solely for use within this product.

The product unit accompanying this user guide is licensed under certain intellectual property rights of certain third parties. In particular, this product is licensed under the following U.S. patents: 5,991,715, 5,740,317, 4,972,484, 5,214,678, 5,323,396, 5,539,829, 5,606,618, 5,530,655, 5,777,992, 6,289,308, 5,610,985, 5,481,643, 5,544,247, 5,960,037, 6,023,490, 5,878,080, and under U.S. Published Patent Application No. 2001-44713-A1.

This license is limited to private non-commercial use by end-user consumers for licensed contents. No rights are granted for commercial use. The license does not cover any product unit other than this product unit and the license does not extend to any unlicensed product unit or process conforming to ISO/IEC 11172-3 or ISO/IEC 13818-3 used or sold in combination with this product unit. The license only covers the use of this product unit to encode and/or decode audio files conforming to the ISO/IEC 11172-3 or ISO/IEC 13818-3. No rights are granted under this license for product features or functions that do not conform to the ISO/IEC 11172-3 or ISO/IEC 13818-3.

## FCC Statement

*This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:*

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**CAUTION:** Any changes or modifications in construction of this device which are not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**NOTE:** This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment to an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

## LIMITED WARRANTY

### WARRANTY VALID ONLY IN COUNTRY OF PRODUCT PURCHASE

## WARRANTY

Pioneer Electronics (USA) Inc. (PUSA), and Pioneer Electronics of Canada, Inc. (POC), warrants that products distributed by PUSA in the U.S.A., and by POC in Canada that fail to function properly under normal use due to a manufacturing defect when installed and operated according to the owner's manual enclosed with the unit will be repaired or replaced with a unit of comparable value, at the option of PUSA or POC, without charge to you for parts or actual repair work. Parts supplied under this warranty may be new or rebuilt at the option of PUSA or POC.

THIS LIMITED WARRANTY APPLIES TO THE ORIGINAL OR ANY SUBSEQUENT OWNER OF THIS PIONEER PRODUCT DURING THE WARRANTY PERIOD PROVIDED THE PRODUCT WAS PURCHASED FROM AN AUTHORIZED PIONEER DISTRIBUTOR/DEALER IN THE U.S.A. OR CANADA. YOU WILL BE REQUIRED TO PROVIDE A SALES RECEIPT OR OTHER VALID PROOF OF PURCHASE SHOWING THE DATE OF ORIGINAL PURCHASE OR, IF RENTED, YOUR RENTAL CONTRACT SHOWING THE PLACE AND DATE OF FIRST RENTAL. IN THE EVENT SERVICE IS REQUIRED, THE PRODUCT MUST BE DELIVERED WITHIN THE WARRANTY PERIOD, TRANSPORTATION PREPAID, ONLY FROM WITHIN THE COUNTRY OF PURCHASE AS EXPLAINED IN THIS DOCUMENT. YOU WILL BE RESPONSIBLE FOR REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION OF THE PRODUCT. PUSA OR POC, AS APPROPRIATE, WILL PAY TO RETURN THE REPAIRED OR REPLACEMENT PRODUCT TO YOU WITHIN THE COUNTRY OF PURCHASE.

(warranty continues next page)

**PRODUCT WARRANTY PERIOD**

**Portable Satellite Radio**..... **1 Year Parts & Labor**  
**Portable Satellite Radio Battery**..... **90 Days Parts & Labor**

The warranty period for retail customers who rent the product commences upon the date product is first put into use (a) during the rental period or (b) retail sale, whichever occurs first.

**WHAT IS NOT COVERED**

IF THIS PRODUCT WAS PURCHASED FROM AN UNAUTHORIZED DISTRIBUTOR, THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING THE IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY AND THE IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND THIS PRODUCT IS SOLD STRICTLY "AS IS" AND "WITH ALL FAULTS". PIONEER SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL AND/OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES. PIONEER DOES NOT WARRANT ANY PRODUCT LISTED ABOVE WHEN IT IS USED IN A TRADE OR BUSINESS OR IN ANY INDUSTRIAL OR COMMERCIAL APPLICATION. THIS WARRANTY DOES NOT APPLY IF THE PRODUCT HAS BEEN SUBJECTED TO POWER IN EXCESS OF ITS PUBLISHED POWER RATING. THIS WARRANTY DOES NOT COVER THE CABINET OR ANY APPEARANCE ITEM, USER ATTACHED ANTENNA, ANY DAMAGE TO THE PRODUCT RESULTING FROM ALTERATIONS, MODIFICATIONS NOT AUTHORIZED IN WRITING BY PIONEER, ACCIDENT, MISUSE OR ABUSE, DAMAGE DUE TO LIGHTNING OR TO POWER SURGES, SUBSEQUENT DAMAGE FROM LEAKING, DAMAGE FROM INOPERATIVE BATTERIES, OR THE USE OF BATTERIES NOT CONFORMING TO THOSE SPECIFIED IN THE OWNER'S MANUAL. THIS WARRANTY DOES NOT COVER THE COST OF PARTS OR LABOR WHICH WOULD BE OTHERWISE PROVIDED WITHOUT CHARGE UNDER THIS WARRANTY OBTAINED FROM ANY SOURCE OTHER THAN A PIONEER AUTHORIZED SERVICE COMPANY OR OTHER DESIGNATED LOCATION. THIS WARRANTY DOES NOT COVER DEFECTS OR DAMAGE CAUSED BY THE USE OF UNAUTHORIZED PARTS OR LABOR FROM IMPROPER MAINTENANCE, ALTERED, DEFACED, OR REMOVED SERIAL NUMBERS VOID THIS ENTIRE WARRANTY.

(warranty continues next page)

**NO OTHER WARRANTIES**

IN THE U.S.A. - PIONEER LIMITS ITS OBLIGATIONS UNDER ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TO A PERIOD NOT TO EXCEED THE WARRANTY PERIOD. NO WARRANTIES SHALL APPLY AFTER THE WARRANTY PERIOD. SOME STATES DO NOT ALLOW LIMITATIONS ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY LASTS AND SOME STATES DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THIS WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS AND YOU MAY HAVE OTHER RIGHTS WHICH MAY VARY FROM STATE TO STATE.

IN CANADA - EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PROVIDED HEREIN, THERE ARE NO REPRESENTATIONS, WARRANTIES, OBLIGATIONS OR CONDITIONS, IMPLIED, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, APPLICABLE TO THIS PRODUCT.

**TO OBTAIN SERVICE**

PUSA has appointed a number of Authorized Service Companies throughout the U.S.A. should your product require service. To receive warranty service you need to present your sales receipt showing place and date of original owner's transaction. If shipping the unit you will need to package it carefully and send it, transportation prepaid by a traceable, insured method, to an Authorized Service Company. Package the product using adequate padding material to prevent damage in transit. Include your name, address and telephone number where you can be reached during business hours.

On all complaints and concerns call Customer Support at 1-800-421-1404

## DISPUTE RESOLUTION

Following our response to any initial request to Customer Support, should a dispute arise between you and Pioneer, Pioneer makes available to you, without charge, its Complaint Resolution Program. You are required to use the Complaint Resolution Program before you exercise any rights under, or seek any remedies, created by Title I of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty-Federal Trade Commission Improvement Act, 15 U.S.C. 2301 et seq.

To use the Complaint Resolution Program call 1-800-421-1404 and explain to the customer service representative the problem you are experiencing, steps you have taken to have the product repaired during the warranty period and the name of the authorized Distributor / Dealer from whom the Pioneer product was purchased. After the complaint has been explained to the representative, a resolution number will be issued. Within 40 days of receiving your complaint, Pioneer will investigate the dispute and will either: (1) respond to your complaint in writing informing you what action Pioneer will take, and in what time period, to resolve the dispute; or (2) respond to your complaint in writing informing you why it will not take any action.

For hook-up and operation of your unit or to locate an Authorized Service Company, please call or write:

PIONEER ELECTRONICS SERVICE, INC.  
P.O. BOX 1760  
LONG BEACH, CALIFORNIA 90810  
1-800-421-1404  
<http://www.pioneerelectronics.com>

# **Pioneer**



**SATELLITE  
RADIO**

**PIONEER ELECTRONICS SERVICE, INC.**  
**P.O. BOX 1760**  
**LONG BEACH, CALIFORNIA 90810**  
**1-800-421-1404**  
**<http://www.pioneerelectronics.com>**

XM respects copyrights. This device is for personal use only. XM Programming stored on the device cannot be transferred off the unit. Download legally. Buy digital music from XM+Napster.

The XM name, related logo, and TuneSelect are trademarks of XM Satellite Radio Inc. All rights reserved.

inno is a registered trademark of Pioneer Electronics (U.S.A.) inc.  
©2006

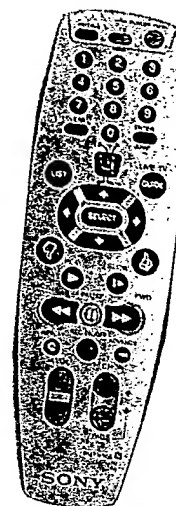
# SERVICE MANUAL

# SVR-3000 RMT-V303

US Model



SVR-3000



RMT-V303

## SPECIFICATIONS

### Inputs and Outputs:

Video In: S-Video 4-pin mini DIN (1)  
Composite Video RCA (1)  
Video Out: S-Video 4-pin mini DIN (2)  
Composite Video RCA (2)  
Audio Line In: Stereo L/R RCA (1 pair)  
Audio Line Out: Stereo L/R RCA (2 pairs)  
RF In: F-Connector Female (1)  
RF Out: F-Connector Female (1)  
Telephone: RJ-11 Female, 2 wire (1)  
Control Out: 3.5 mm Mini Jack Sockets (2)

### Supplied Accessories:

Remote Control (1)  
Size AA (R6) Batteries (2)  
Audio/Video Cable (1)  
IR Control Cable (two IR emitters) (2)  
Serial Control Cable (1)  
S-Video Cable (1)  
Phone Cord (1)  
Phone Splitter (1)

### General: Accessories:

Power Requirements: 120 V AC, 60 Hz  
Power Consumption: 29 W  
Operating Temperature: 21°C to 45°C (70°F to 113°F)  
Operating Humidity: 5% to 80%  
Dimensions: Approx. 430 x 77 x 326 mm (w/h/d)  
Approx. 17<sup>1/4</sup> x 3<sup>1/8</sup> x 12<sup>1/8</sup> (w/h/d)  
(including projecting parts and controls)  
Mass: Approx. 4.5 kg (9 lbs. 1 oz.)

*Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.*



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION TITLE	PAGE
Warnings and Cautions .....	4
Safety Check-Out .....	5
<b>SECTION 1: DISASSEMBLY .....</b>	<b>6</b>
1-1. Top Cover Removal .....	6
1-2. Hard Disk and D.C. Fan Removal .....	6
1-3. MA-411 Board and PS-445 Board Removal .....	7
1-4. Front Panel Assembly Removal .....	7
1-5. Front Frame Removal .....	8
1-6. FL-127 Board and FR-188 Board Removal .....	8
1-7. Service Position .....	9
<b>SECTION 2: DIAGRAMS .....</b>	<b>10</b>
2-1. Circuit Boards Location .....	10
2-2. Printed Wiring Board and Schematic Diagram Information .....	10
2-3. Block Diagram .....	11
2-4. Schematic Diagrams and Supporting Information .....	12
System Power .....	12
System Clock & Reset for MA PWB 1-686-359-12 .....	13
System Clock & Reset for MA PWB 1-686-359-13 .....	14
NTSC Video Decoder .....	15
Tuner/MTS Stereo Decode & ADC .....	16
A/V Encoder SDRAM .....	17
MIPS CPU .....	18
Host Ctl, XPort, MPEG Decoder .....	19
System Memory .....	20
Media Switch ASIC .....	21
Flash/Therm Mgmt/RTC .....	22
IDE Interface for MA Board with IC 1000 .....	23
IDE Interface for MA Board with IC 1002 .....	24
Modem Chipset .....	25
Modem DAA .....	26
USB Host Control .....	27
NTSC Video Encoder .....	28
IR Cont .....	29
@Eshe .....	29
PS-449 Board Schematic Diagram .....	32
FL-127 Board Schematic Diagram .....	34
FR-134 Board Schematic Diagram .....	36
<b>SECTION 3: EXPLODED VIEWS .....</b>	<b>38</b>
3-1. Chassis .....	38
<b>SECTION 4: ELECTRICAL PARTS LIST .....</b>	<b>39</b>



## WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS

### CAUTION


Short circuit the anode of the picture tube and the anode cap to the metal chassis, CRT shield, or carbon painted on the CRT, after removing the anode.

### WARNING!!

An isolation transformer should be used during any service to avoid possible shock hazard, because of live chassis. The chassis of this receiver is directly connected to the ac power line.



### SAFETY-RELATED COMPONENT WARNING!!

Components identified by shading and  mark on the schematic diagrams, exploded views, and in the parts list are critical for safe operation. Replace these components with Sony parts whose part numbers appear as shown in this manual or in supplements published by Sony. Circuit adjustments that are critical for safe operation are identified in this manual. Follow these procedures whenever critical components are replaced or improper operation is suspected.

---


### ATTENTION!!

Après avoir déconnecté le cap de l'anode, court-circuiter l'anode du tube cathodique et celui de l'anode du cap au châssis métallique de l'appareil, ou la couche de carbone peinte sur le tube cathodique ou au blindage du tube cathodique.

Afin d'éviter tout risque d'électrocution provenant d'un châssis sous tension, un transformateur d'isolement doit être utilisé lors de tout dépannage. Le châssis de ce récepteur est directement raccordé à l'alimentation du secteur.



### ATTENTION AUX COMPOSANTS RELATIFS A LA SECURITE!!

Les composants identifiés par une trame et par une marque  sur les schémas de principe, les vues explosées et les listes de pièces sont d'une importance critique pour la sécurité du fonctionnement. Ne les remplacer que par des composants Sony dont le numéro de pièce est indiqué dans le présent manuel ou dans des suppléments publiés par Sony. Les réglages de circuit dont l'importance est critique pour la sécurité du fonctionnement sont identifiés dans le présent manuel. Suivre ces procédures lors de chaque remplacement de composants critiques, ou lorsqu'un mauvais fonctionnement suspecte.

## SAFETY CHECK-OUT

After correcting the original service problem, perform the following safety checks before releasing the set to the customer:

1. Check the area of your repair for unsoldered or poorly soldered connections. Check the entire board surface for solder splashes and bridges.
2. Check the interboard wiring to ensure that no wires are "pinched" or touching high-wattage resistors.
3. Check that all control knobs, shields, covers, ground straps, and mounting hardware have been replaced. Be absolutely certain that you have replaced all the insulators.
4. Look for unauthorized replacement parts, particularly transistors, that were installed during a previous repair. Point them out to the customer and recommend their replacement.
5. Look for parts which, though functioning, show obvious signs of deterioration. Point them out to the customer and recommend their replacement.
6. Check the line cords for cracks and abrasion. Recommend the replacement of any such line cord to the customer.
7. Check the B+ and HV to see if they are specified values. Make sure your instruments are accurate; be suspicious of your HV meter if sets always have low HV.
8. Check the antenna terminals, metal trim, "metallized" knobs, screws, and all other exposed metal parts for AC leakage. Check leakage as described below.

### Leakage Test

The AC leakage from any exposed metal part to earth ground and from all exposed metal parts to any exposed metal part having a return to chassis, must not exceed 0.5 mA (500 microamperes). Leakage current can be measured by any one of three methods.

1. A commercial leakage tester, such as the Simpson 229 or RCA WT-540A. Follow the manufacturers' instructions to use these instructions.
2. A battery-operated AC milliammeter. The Data Precision 245 digital multimeter is suitable for this job.
3. Measuring the voltage drop across a resistor by means of a VOM or battery-operated AC voltmeter. The "limit" indication is 0.75 V, so analog meters must have an accurate low voltage scale. The Simpson's 250 and Sanwa SH-63TRD are examples of passive VOMs that are suitable. Nearly all battery-operated digital multimeters that have a 2 VAC range are suitable (see Figure A).

### How to Find a Good Earth Ground

A cold-water pipe is a guaranteed earth ground; the cover-plate retaining screw on most AC outlet boxes is also at earth ground. If the retaining screw is to be used as your earth ground, verify that it is at ground by measuring the resistance between it and a cold-water pipe with an ohmmeter. The reading should be zero ohms.

If a cold-water pipe is not accessible, connect a 60- to 100-watt trouble-light (not a neon lamp) between the hot side of the receptacle and the retaining screw. Try both slots, if necessary, to locate the hot side on the line; the lamp should light at normal brilliance if the screw is at ground potential (see Figure B).

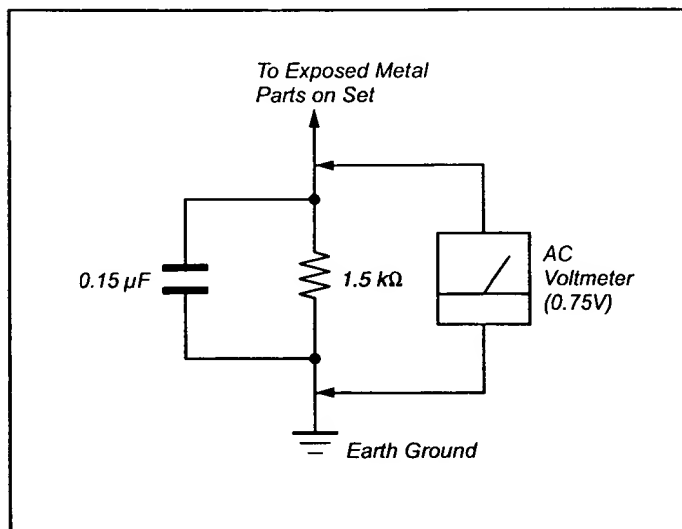


Figure A. Using an AC voltmeter to check AC leakage.

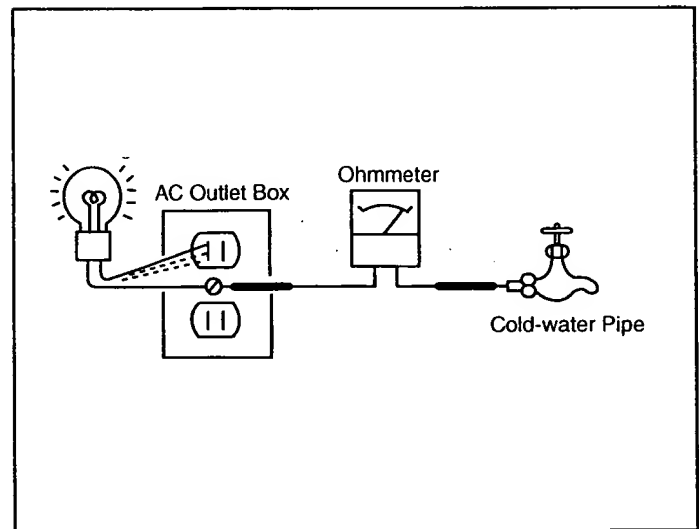
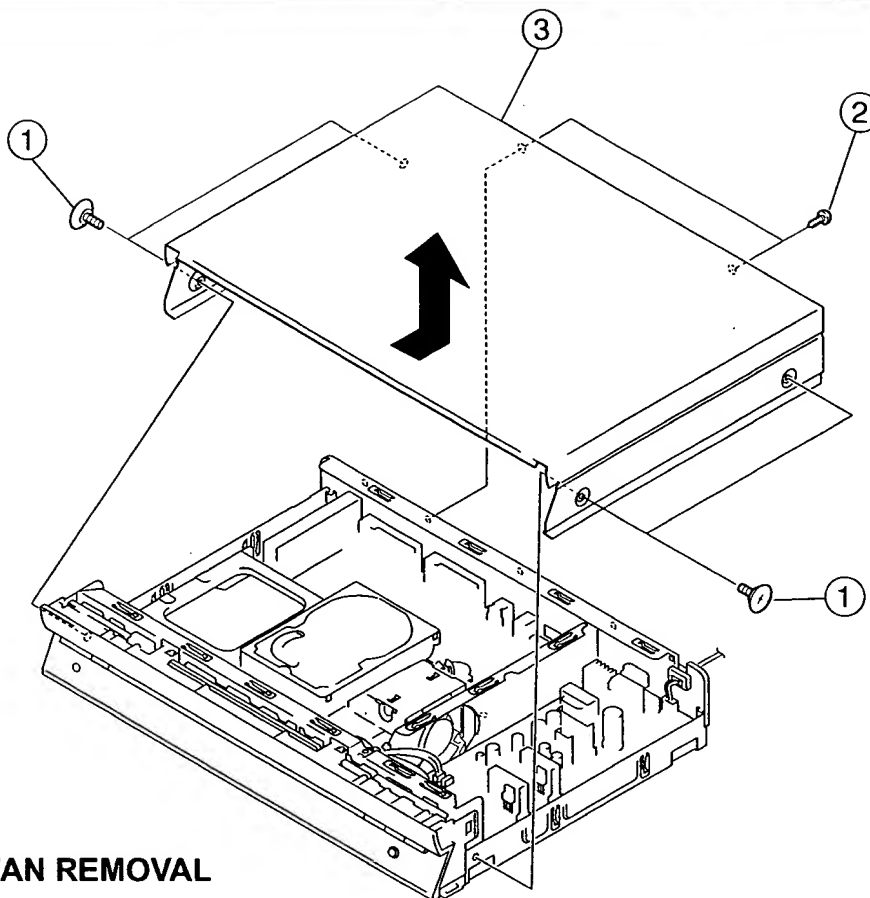


Figure B. Checking for earth ground.

## SECTION 1: DISASSEMBLY

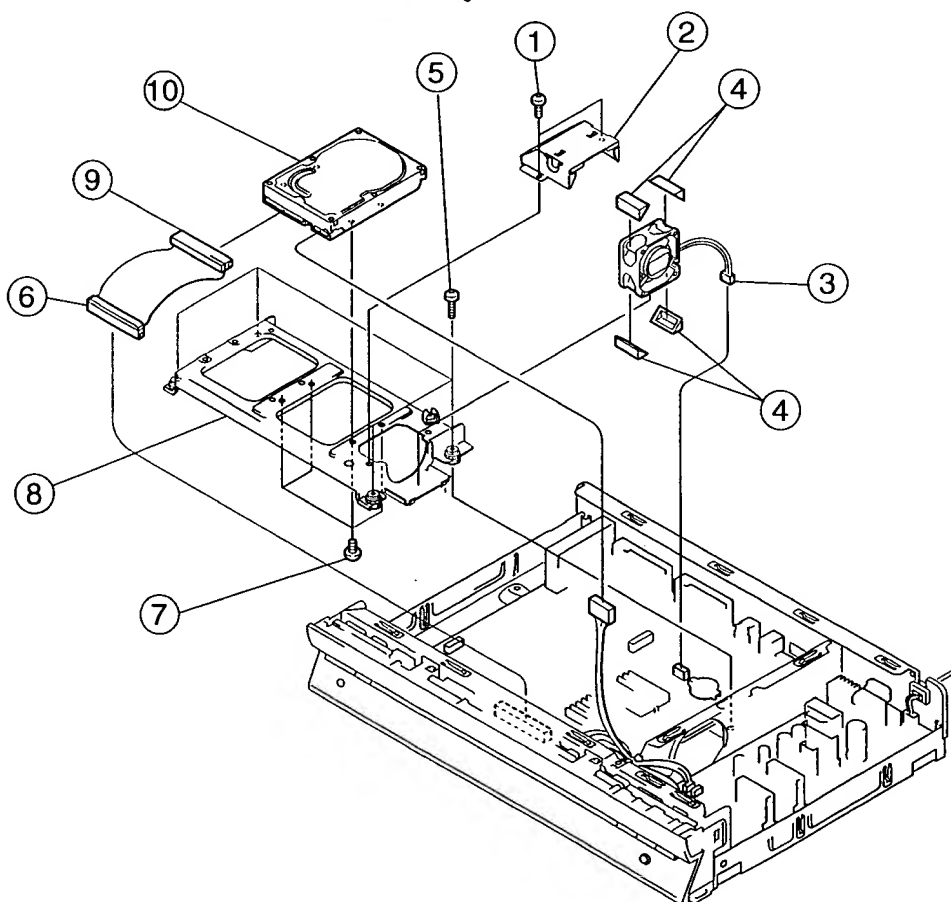
### 1-1. TOP COVER REMOVAL

- ① Remove 4 screws  
(Tapping)
- ② Remove 2 screws  
(+BVTP 3x10 Type 2 IT-3)
- ③ Remove top cover



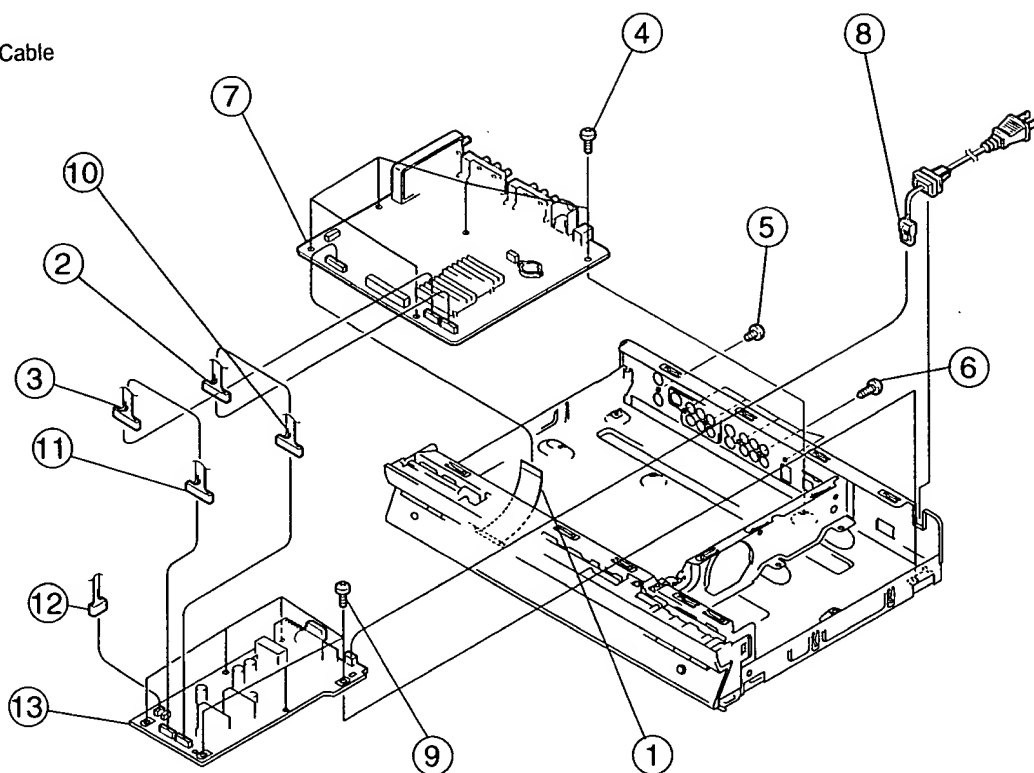
### 1-2. HARD DISK AND D.C. FAN REMOVAL

- ① Remove 2 screws  
(+BV IBR 3x8)
- ② Remove Fitting (F) Bracket
- ③ Remove D.C. fan connector
- ④ Remove fan dampers
- ⑤ Remove 4 screws  
(+BV)
- ⑥ Detach harness (MH-111)
- ⑦ Remove 4 screws  
(Unified Screw 4.5)
- ⑧ Remove Bracket (DX), Fitting
- ⑨ Detach harness (MH-111)  
from hard disk
- ⑩ Remove hard disk



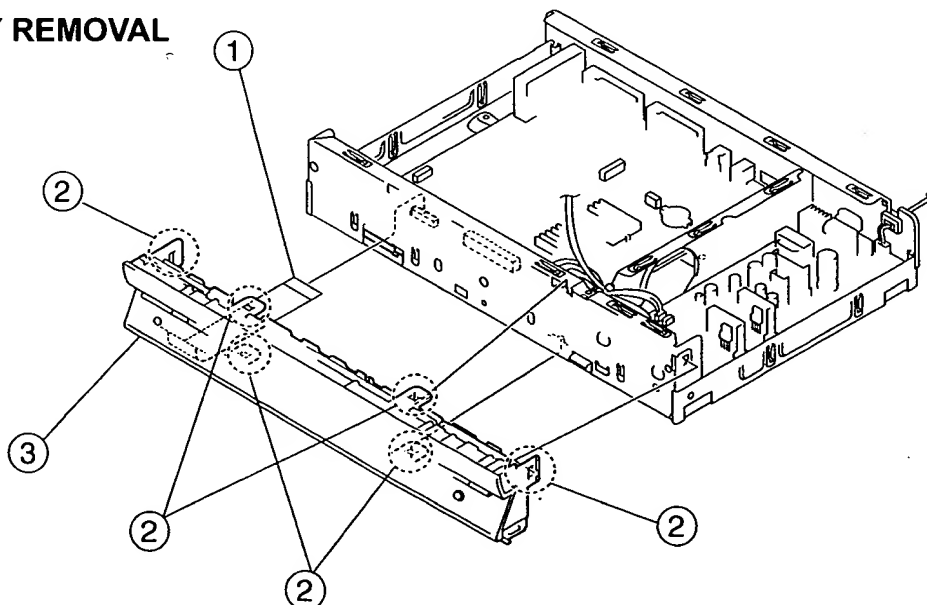
### 1-3. MA-411 BOARD AND PS-445 BOARD REMOVAL

- ① Detach Flat (FMF-002) Cable
- ② Disconnect harness (MP-132)
- ③ Disconnect harness (MP-133)
- ④ Remove 5 screws (+BV IBR 3x8)
- ⑤ Remove 1 screw (Screw +P 3x3)
- ⑥ Remove 5 screws (Screw +BV 3x10)
- ⑦ Remove MA-411 Board
- ⑧ Remove the Power Cord
- ⑨ Remove 6 screws (+BV IBR 3x8)
- ⑩ Remove harness (MP-132)
- ⑪ Disconnect harness (MP-133)
- ⑫ Disconnect harness (HP-140)
- ⑬ Remove PS-445 Board



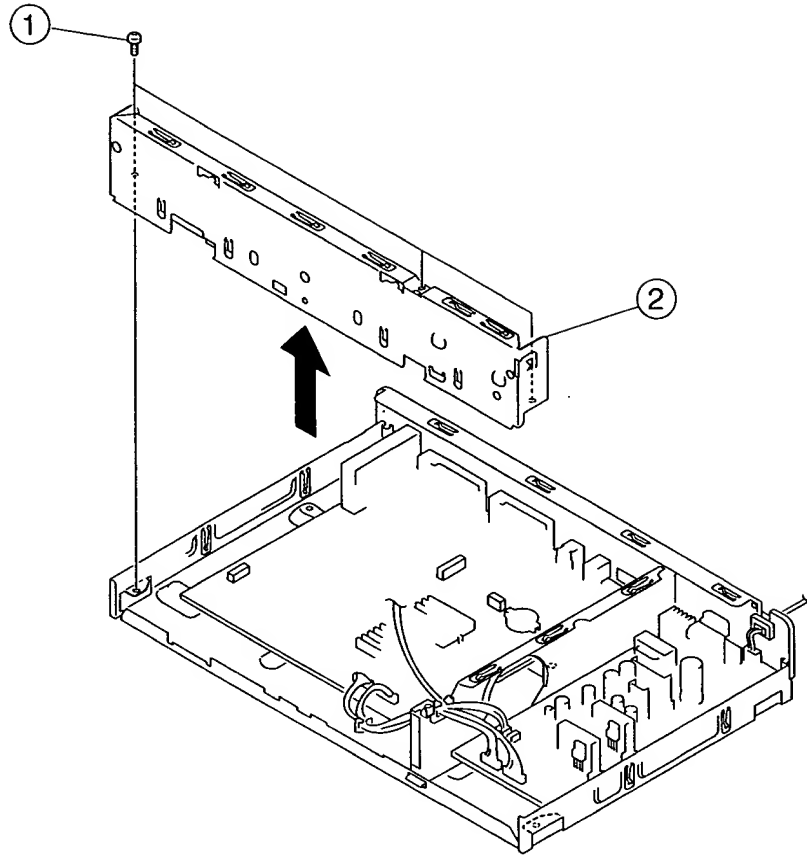
### 1-4. FRONT PANEL ASSEMBLY REMOVAL

- ① Detach Flat (FMF-001) Cable
- ② Release tabs
- ③ Gently pull off Front Panel Assembly



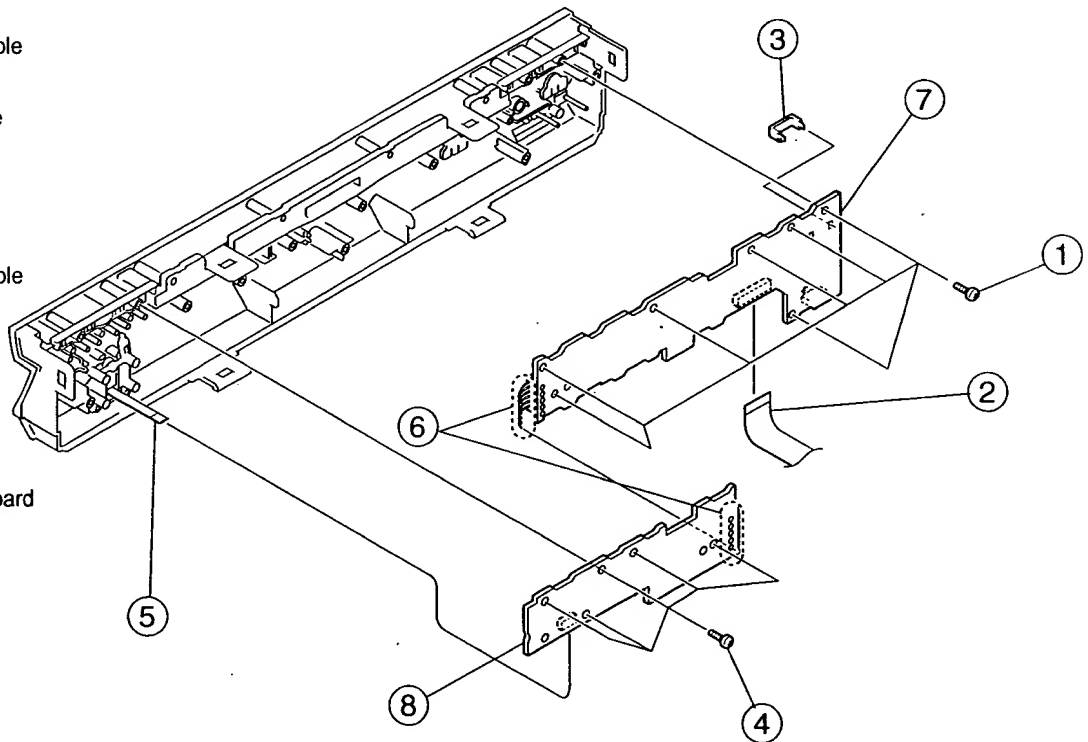
## 1-5. FRONT FRAME REMOVAL

- ① Remove 3 screws  
(+BV IBR 3x8)
- ② Remove Front Frame



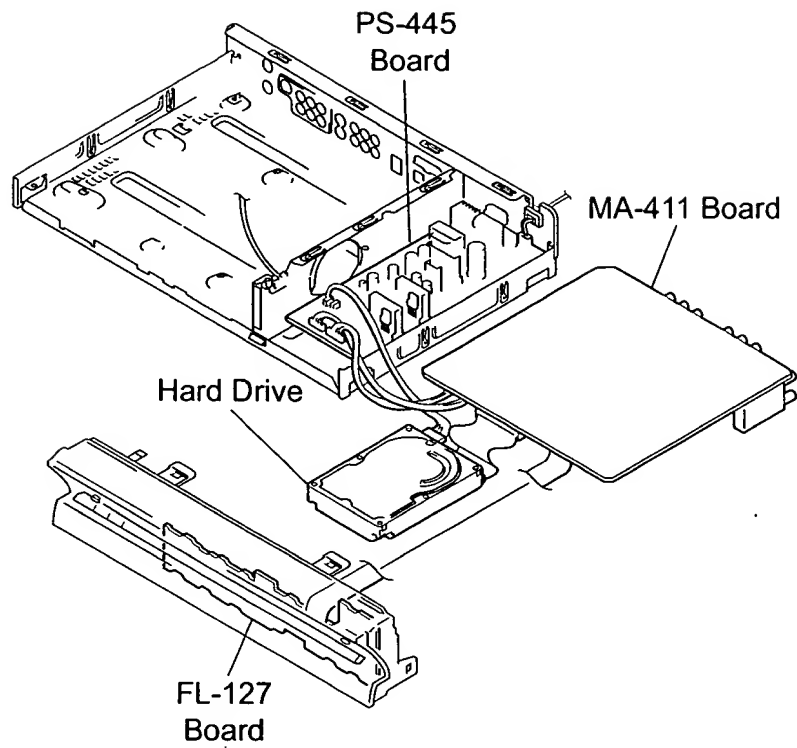
## 1-6. FL-127 BOARD AND FR-188 BOARD REMOVAL

- ① Remove 6 screws  
(+BVTP 2.6x12)
- ② Disconnect Flat Cable
- ③ Remove Push Plate
- ④ Remove 5 screws  
(+BVTP 2.6x12)
- ⑤ Disconnect Flat Cable
- ⑥ Remove CN0402
- ⑦ Remove  
FL-127 Board
- ⑧ Remove FR-188 Board



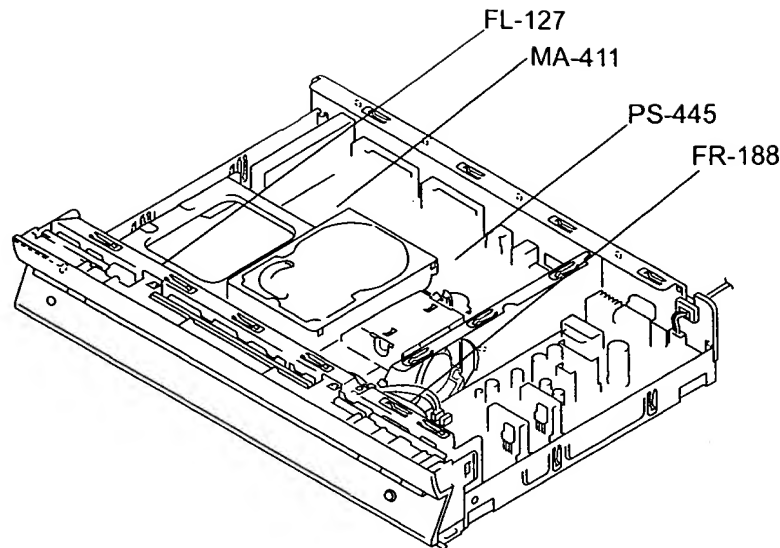
## 1-7. SERVICE POSITION

- ① Remove Top Cover
- ② Remove Hard Disk and Fan
- ③ Remove Boards
- ④ Remove Front Panel Assembly
- ⑤ Remove Front Frame
- ⑥ Use the remote to operate the unit while in Service Position



## SECTION 2: DIAGRAMS

### 2-1. CIRCUIT BOARDS LOCATION



### 2-2. PRINTED WIRING BOARD AND SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM INFORMATION

All capacitors are in  $\mu\text{F}$  unless otherwise noted.  $\text{pF}$  :  $\mu\text{F}$  50WV or less are not indicated except for electrolytics and tantalums.

All electrolytics are in 50V unless otherwise specified.

All resistors are in ohms.  $\text{k}\Omega=1000\Omega$ ,  $\text{M}\Omega=1000\text{k}\Omega$

Indication of resistance, which does not have one for rating electrical power, is as follows: Pitch : 5mm

Rating electrical power :  $\frac{1}{4}\text{W}$

$\frac{1}{4}\text{W}$  in resistance,  $\frac{1}{10}\text{W}$  and  $\frac{1}{8}\text{W}$  in chip resistance.

: nonflammable resistor.

: fusible resistor.

$\Delta$  : internal component.

: panel designation and adjustment for repair.

$\perp$  : earth ground

$\text{---}\text{---}\text{---}$  : earth-chassis

All variable and adjustable resistors have characteristic curve B, unless otherwise noted.

Readings are taken with a color-bar signal input.

Readings are taken with a  $10\text{M}\Omega$  digital multimeter.

Voltages are DC with respect to ground unless otherwise noted.

Voltage variations may be noted due to normal production tolerances.

All voltages are in V.

S : Measurement impossibility.

$\text{---}\text{---}\text{---}$  : B+line.

$\text{---}\text{---}\text{---}$  : B-line (Actual measured value may be different).

: signal path (RF).

Circled numbers are waveform references.

The components identified by shading and  $\Delta$  symbol are critical for safety. Replace only with part number specified.

The symbol indicates a fast operating fuse and is displayed on the component side of the board. Replace only with fuse of the same rating as marked.

Les composants identifiés par un trame et une marque  $\Delta$  sont critiques pour la sécurité. Ne les remplacer que par une pièce portant le numéro spécifié.

Le symbole indique une fusible à action rapide. Doit être remplacé par une fusible de même valeur, comme marqué.

### REFERENCE INFORMATION

#### RESISTOR

: RN METAL FILM  
: RC SOLID  
: FPRD NONFLAMMABLE CARBON  
: FUSE NONFLAMMABLE FUSIBLE  
: RW NONFLAMMABLE WIREWOUND  
: RS NONFLAMMABLE METAL OXIDE  
: RB NONFLAMMABLE CEMENT  
:  $\times$  ADJUSTMENT RESISTOR

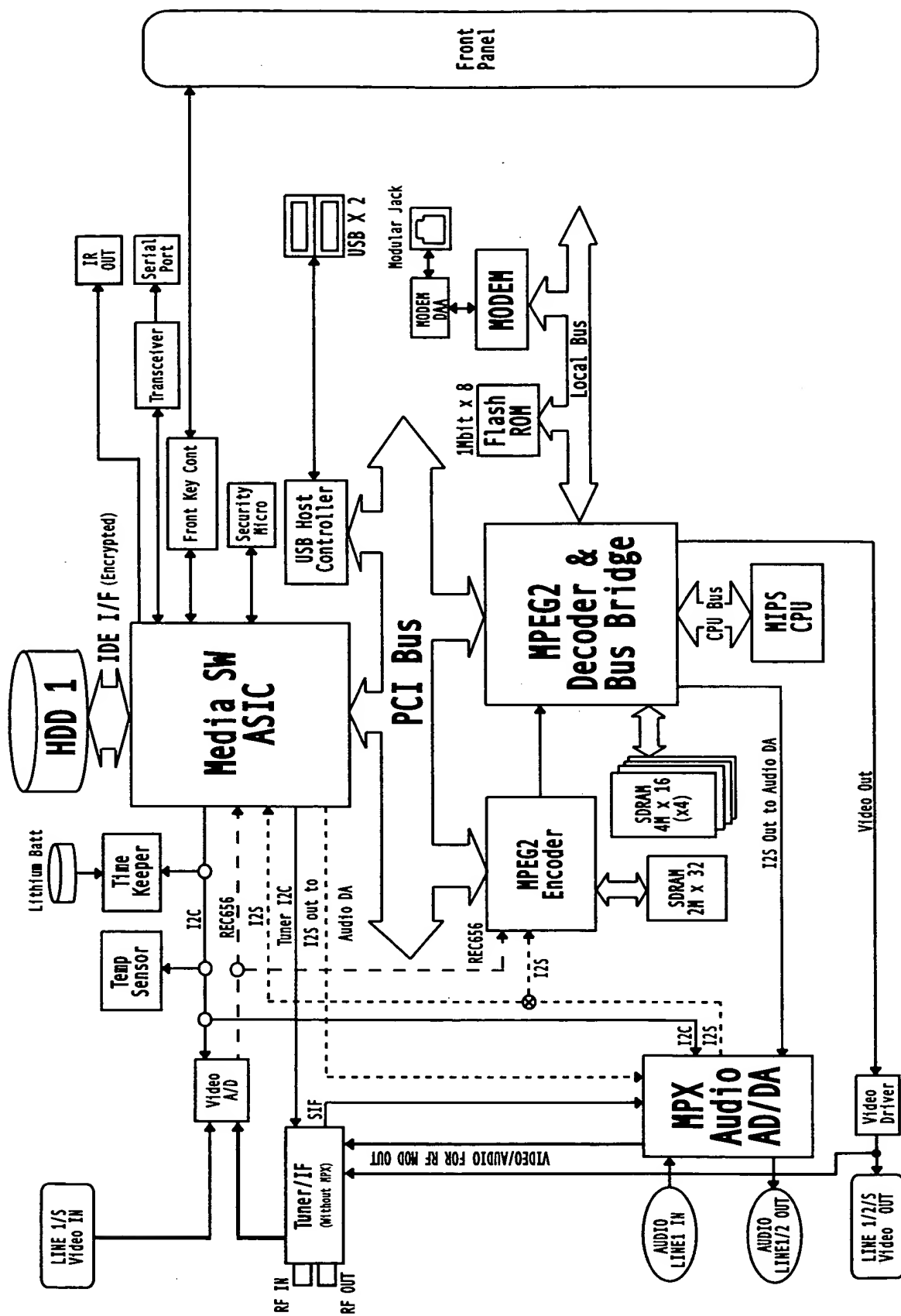
#### CAPACITOR

: TA TANTALUM  
: PS STYROL  
: PP POLYPROPYLENE  
: PT MYLAR  
: MPS METALIZED POLYESTER  
: MPP METALIZED POLYPROPYLENE  
: ALB BIPOLAR  
: ALT HIGH TEMPERATURE  
: ALR HIGH RIPPLE

#### COIL

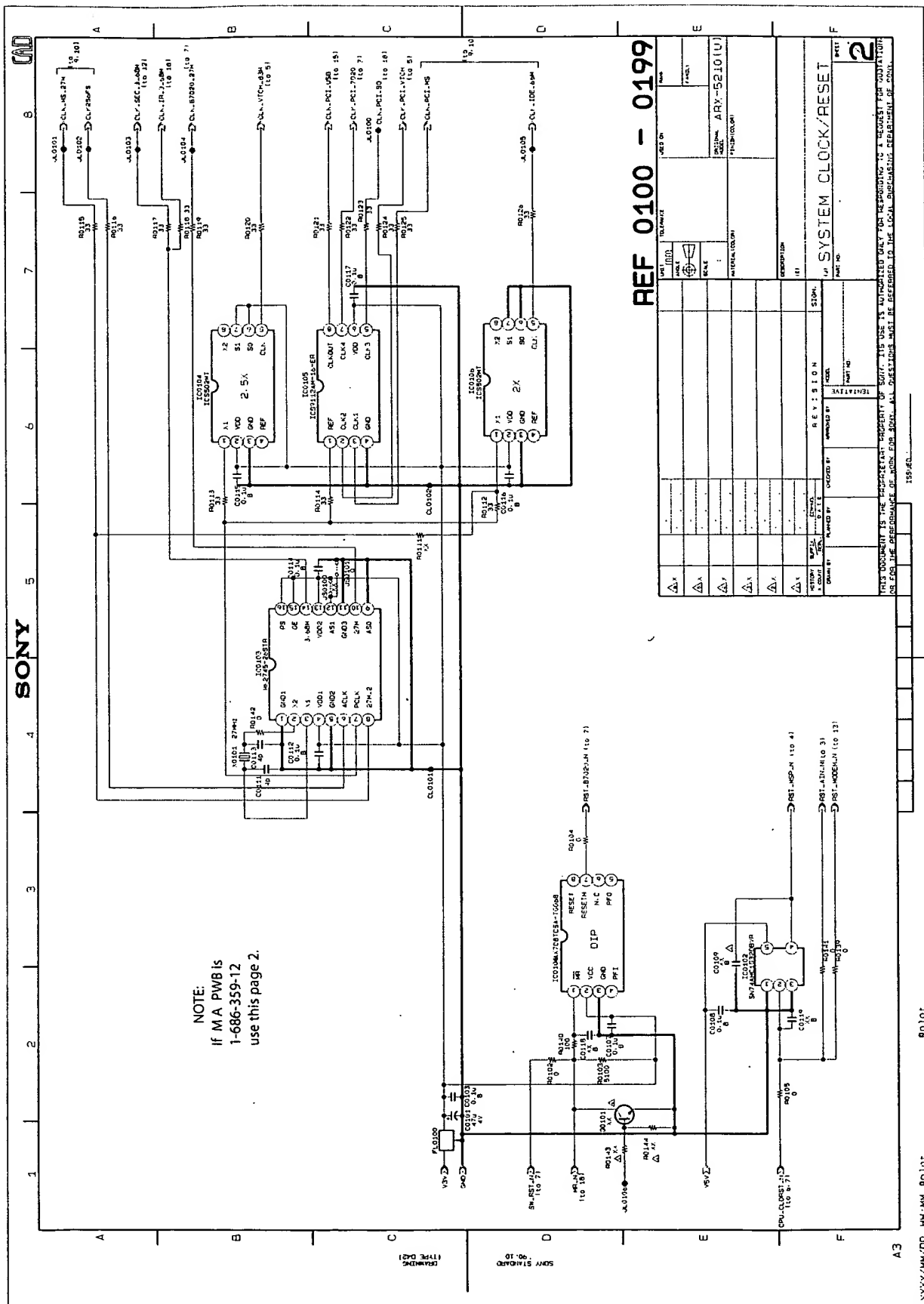
: LF-8L MICRO INDUCTOR

## 2-3. BLOCK DIAGRAM





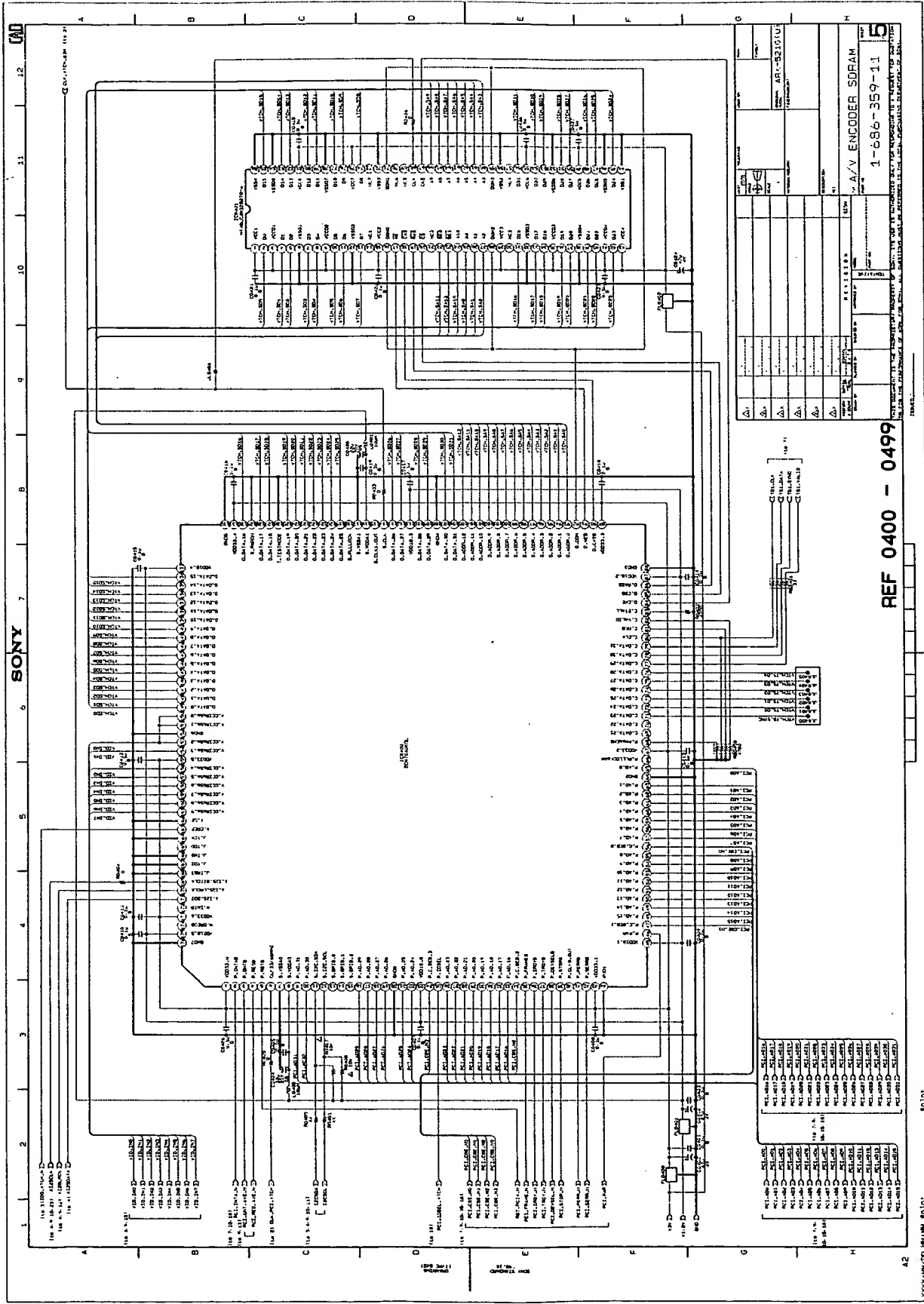












REF 0400 - 0499

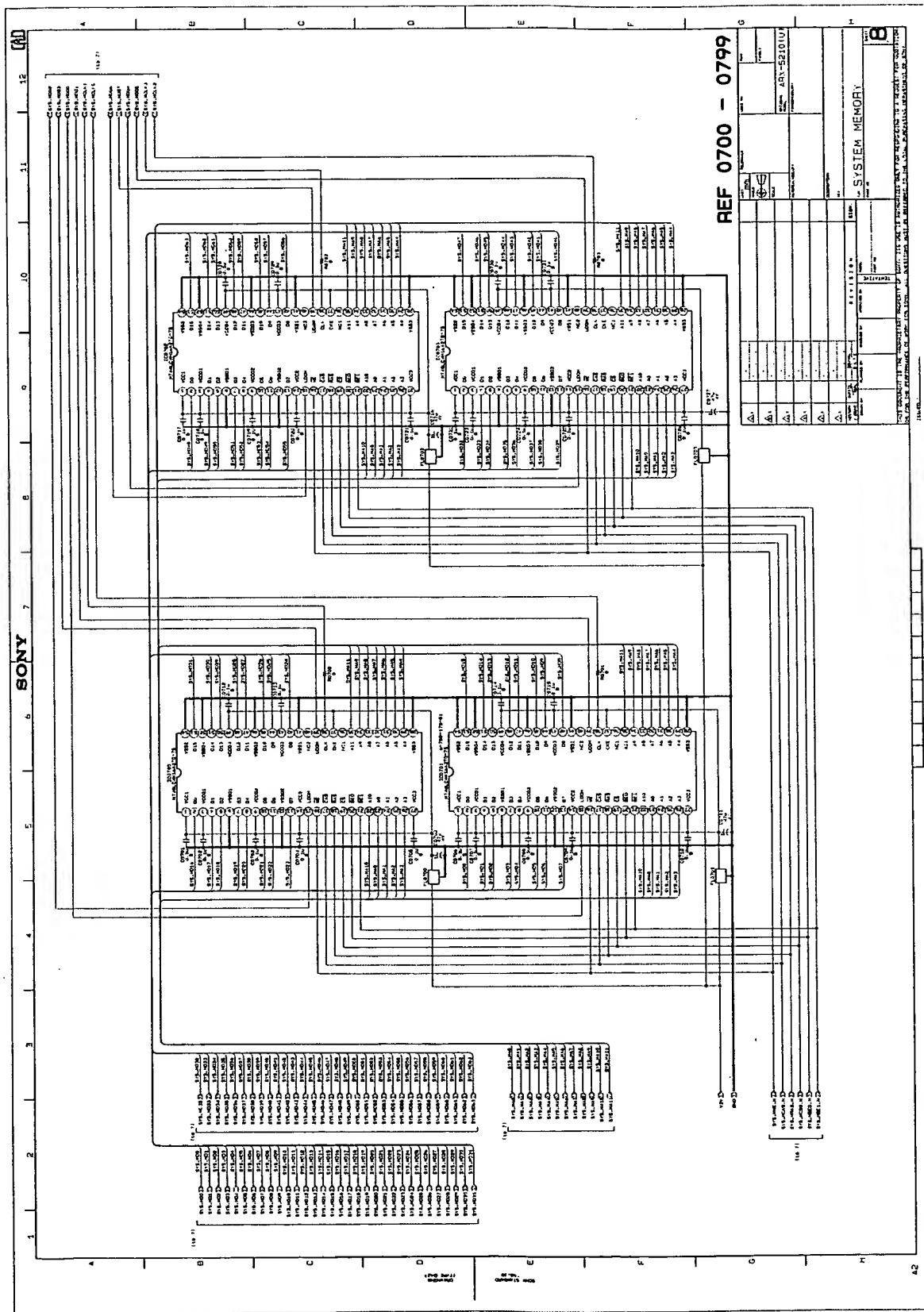
80101

80101

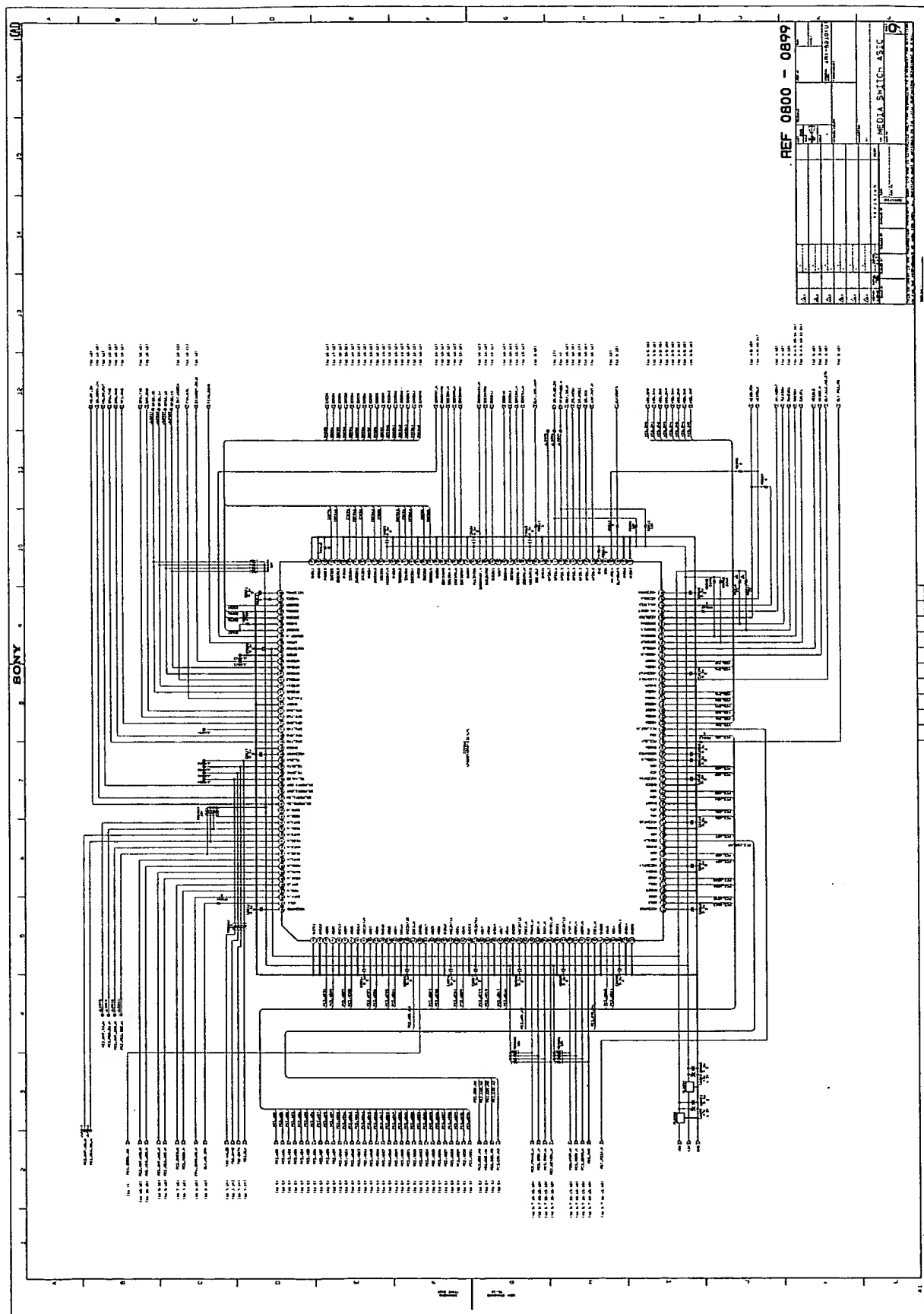




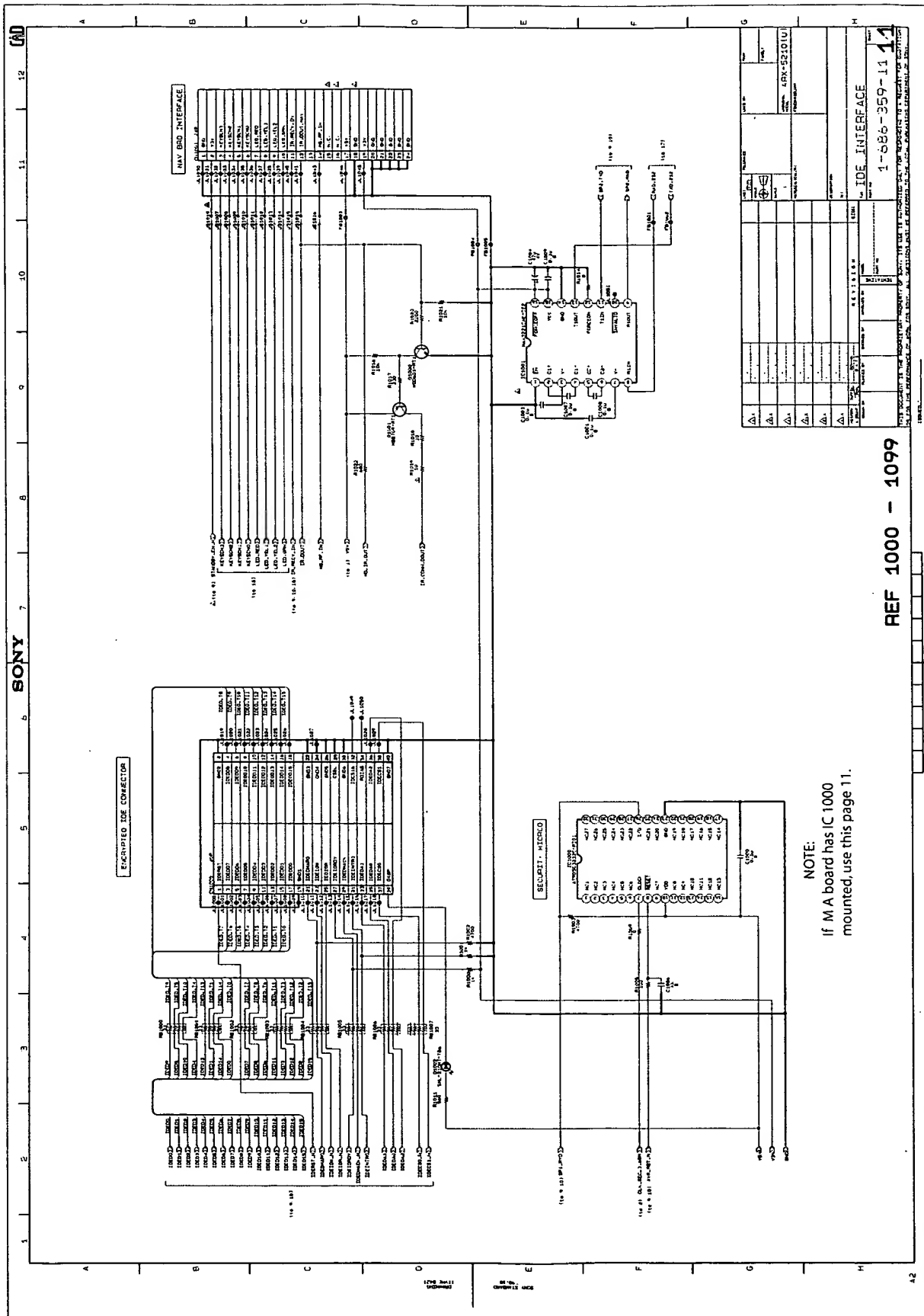




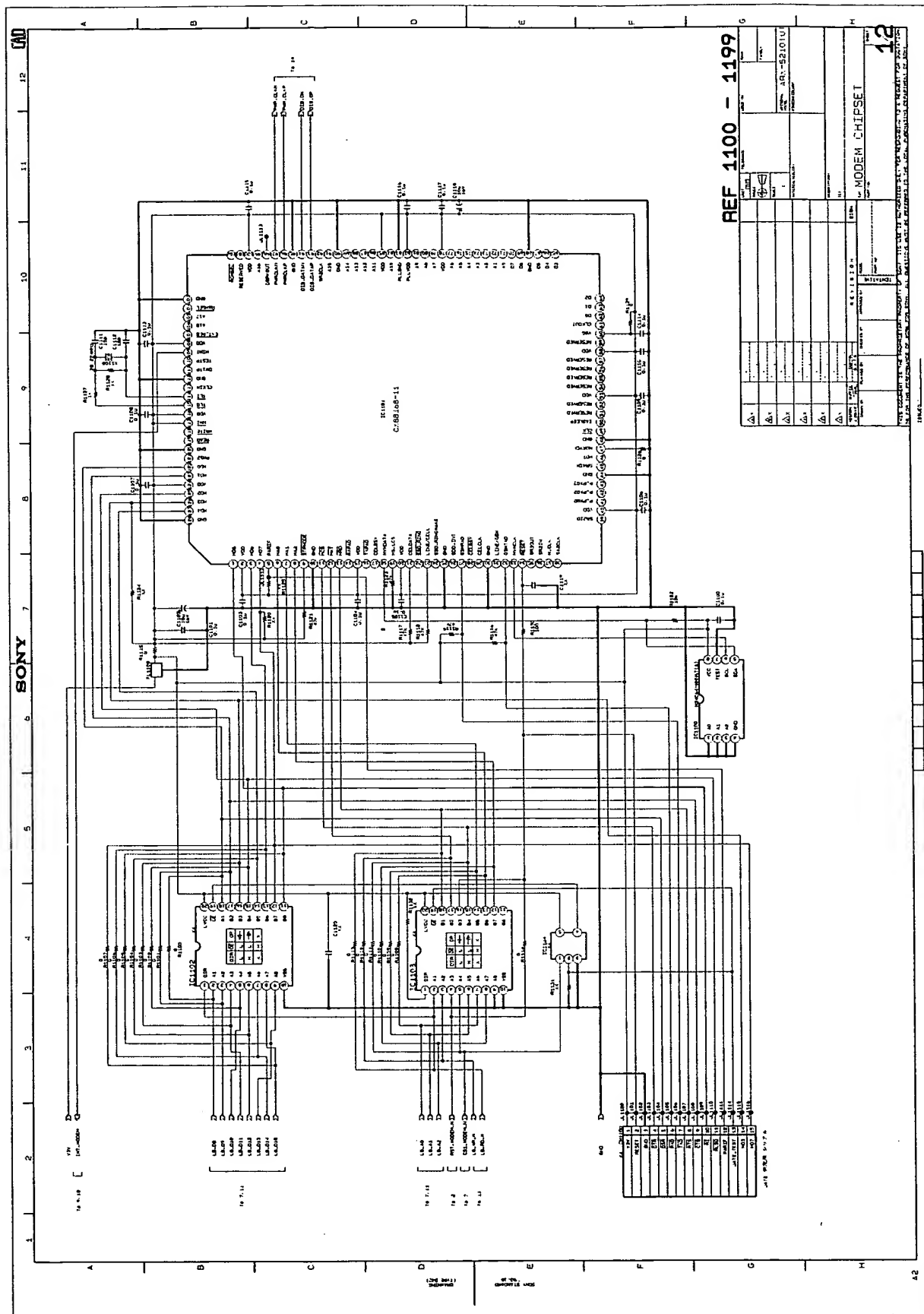
## MEDIA SWITCH ASIC

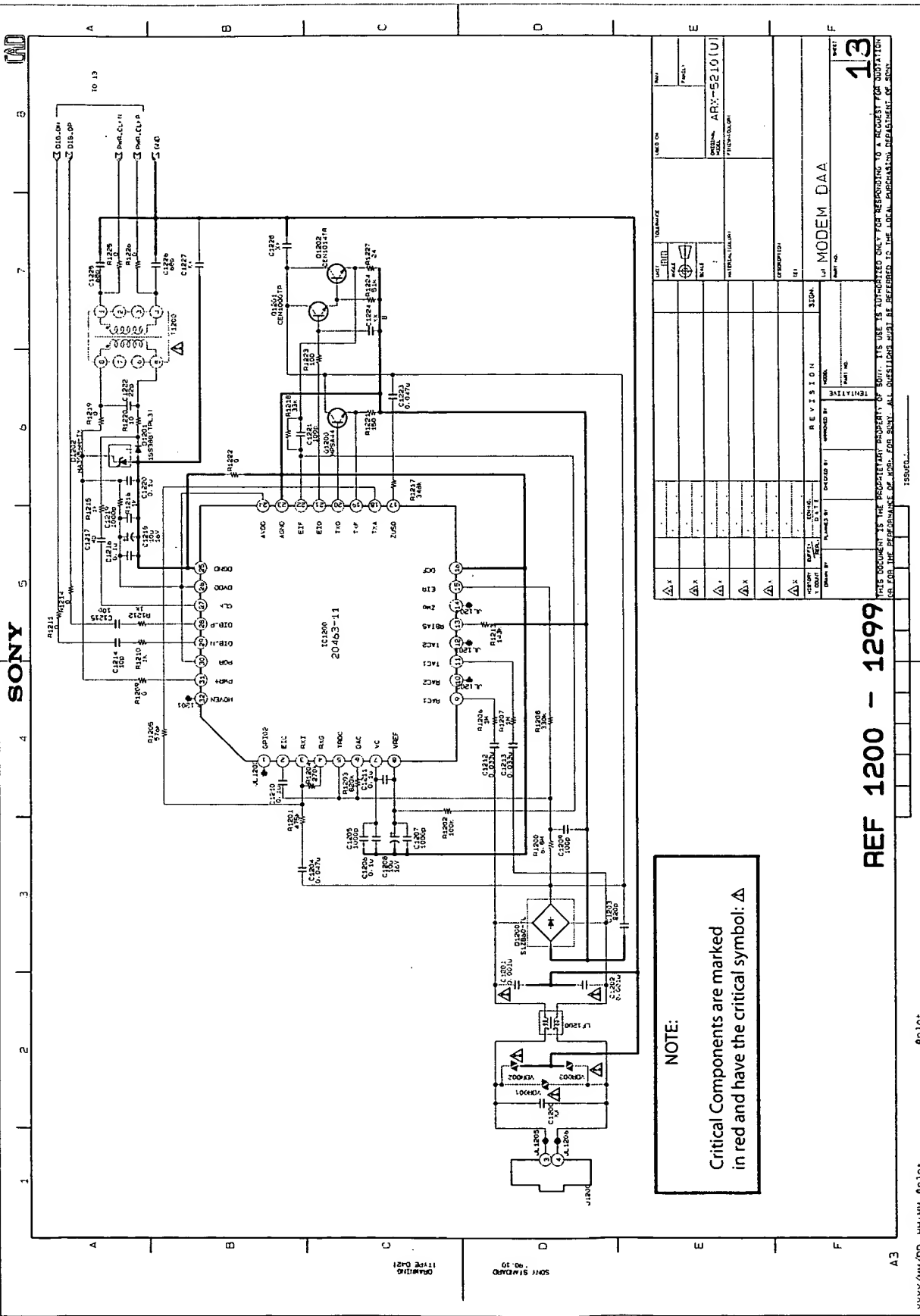












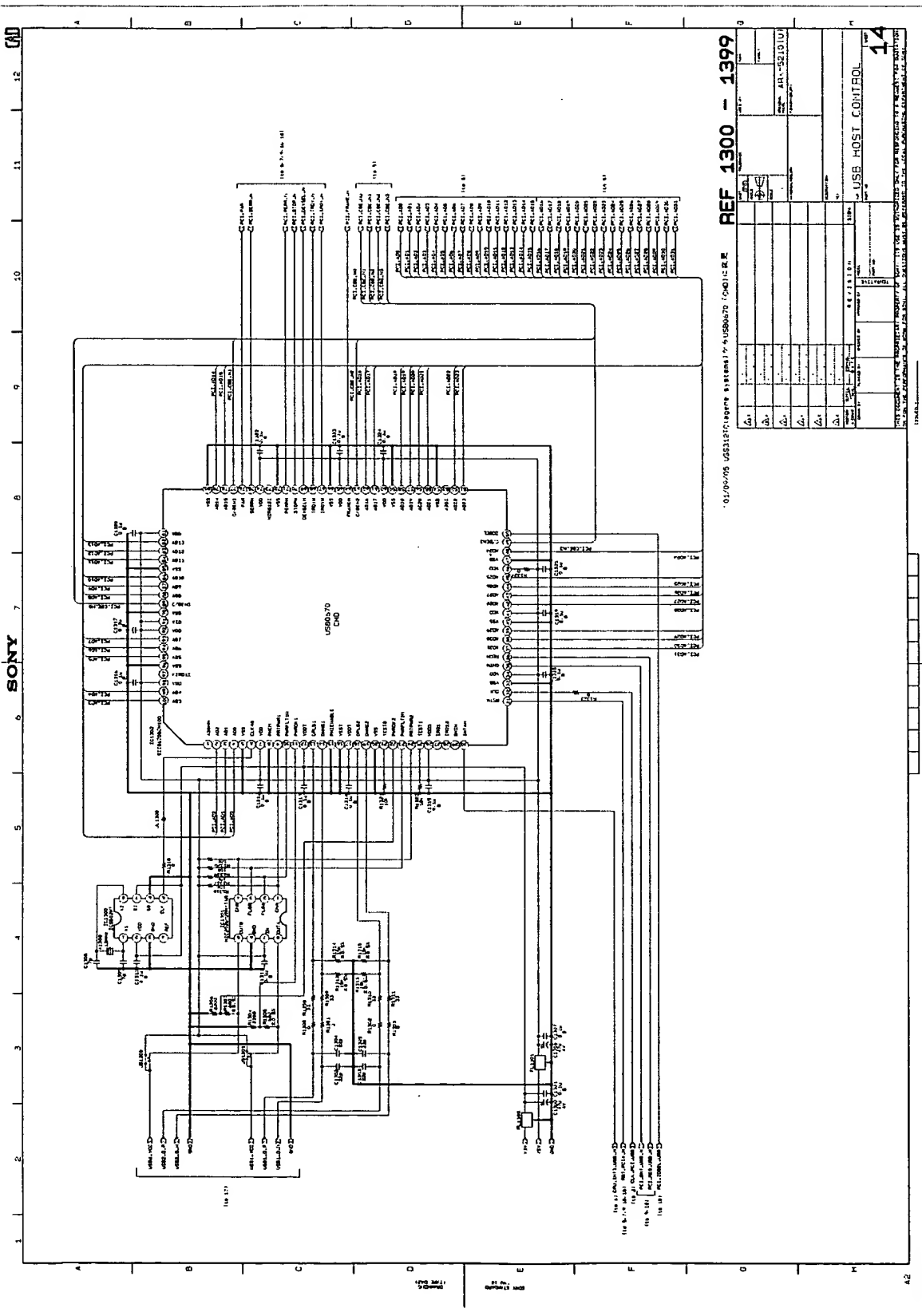
NOTE:  
Critical Components are marked  
in red and have the critical symbol:  $\Delta$

REF 1200 - 1299

13

# USB HOST CONTROL

SVR-3000



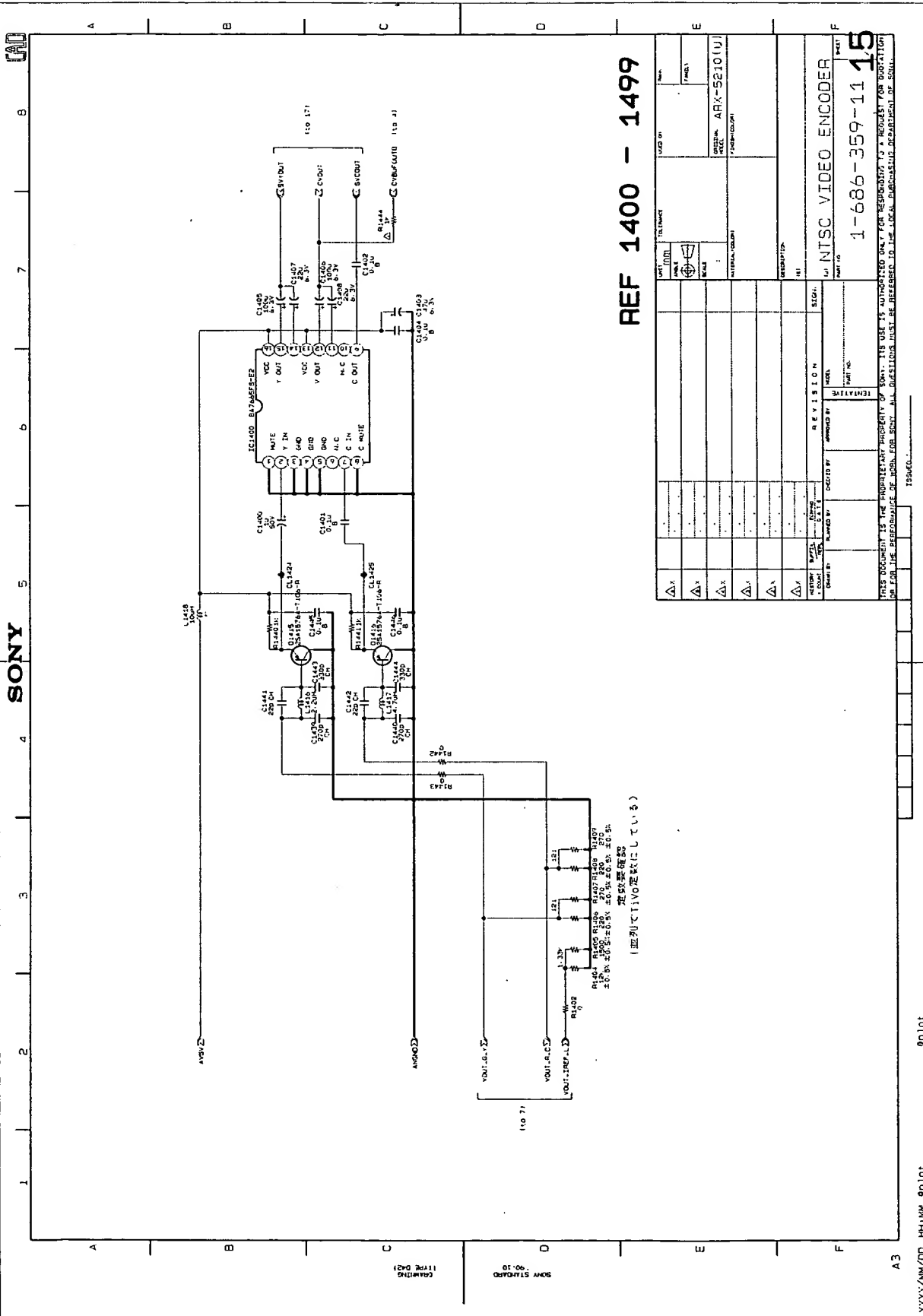
01/09/05 USB157C (Super System) / USB2070 (Connector) REF 1300 - 1399

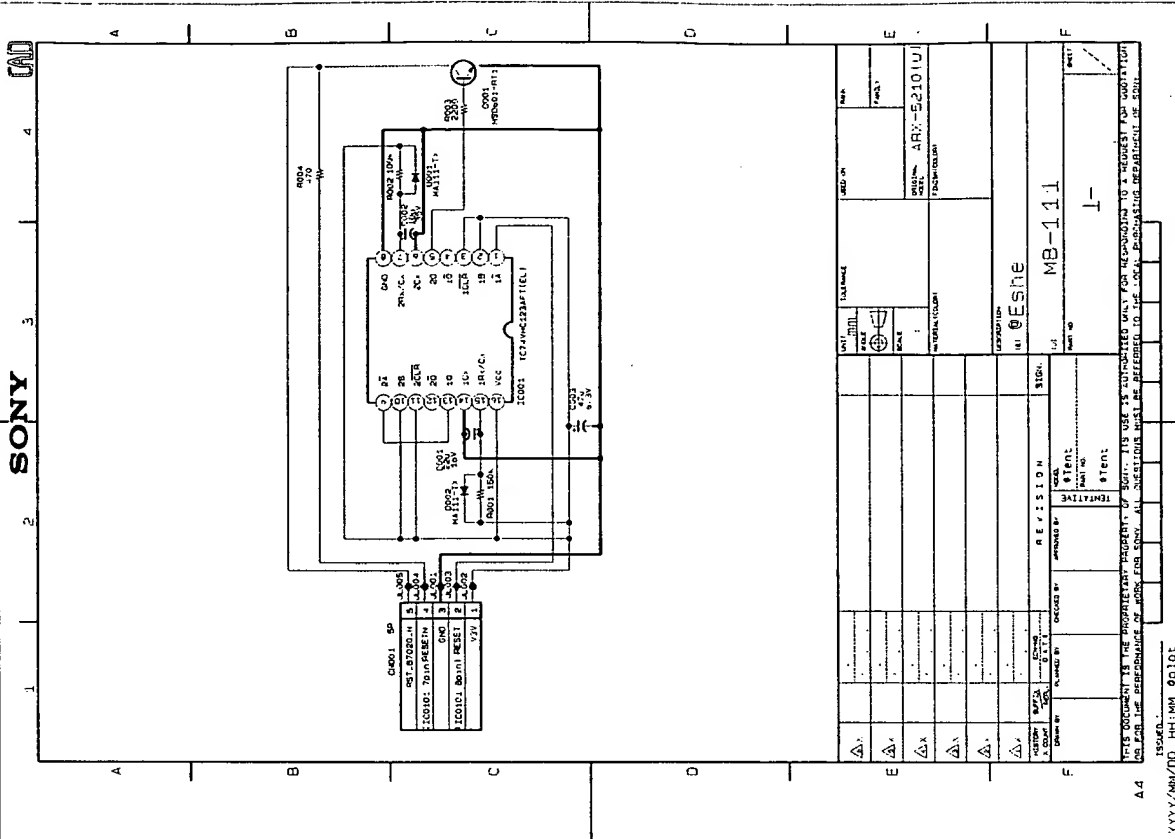
Pin	Signal	Notes
1	VBUS	5V DC
2	D-	Differential Data Pair
3	D+	Differential Data Pair
4	GND	Ground
5	NC	Not Connected
6	VBUS	5V DC
7	D-	Differential Data Pair
8	D+	Differential Data Pair
9	GND	Ground
10	NC	Not Connected
11	VBUS	5V DC
12	D-	Differential Data Pair
13	D+	Differential Data Pair
14	GND	Ground
15	NC	Not Connected
16	VBUS	5V DC
17	D-	Differential Data Pair
18	D+	Differential Data Pair
19	GND	Ground
20	NC	Not Connected
21	VBUS	5V DC
22	D-	Differential Data Pair
23	D+	Differential Data Pair
24	GND	Ground
25	NC	Not Connected



SONY

1

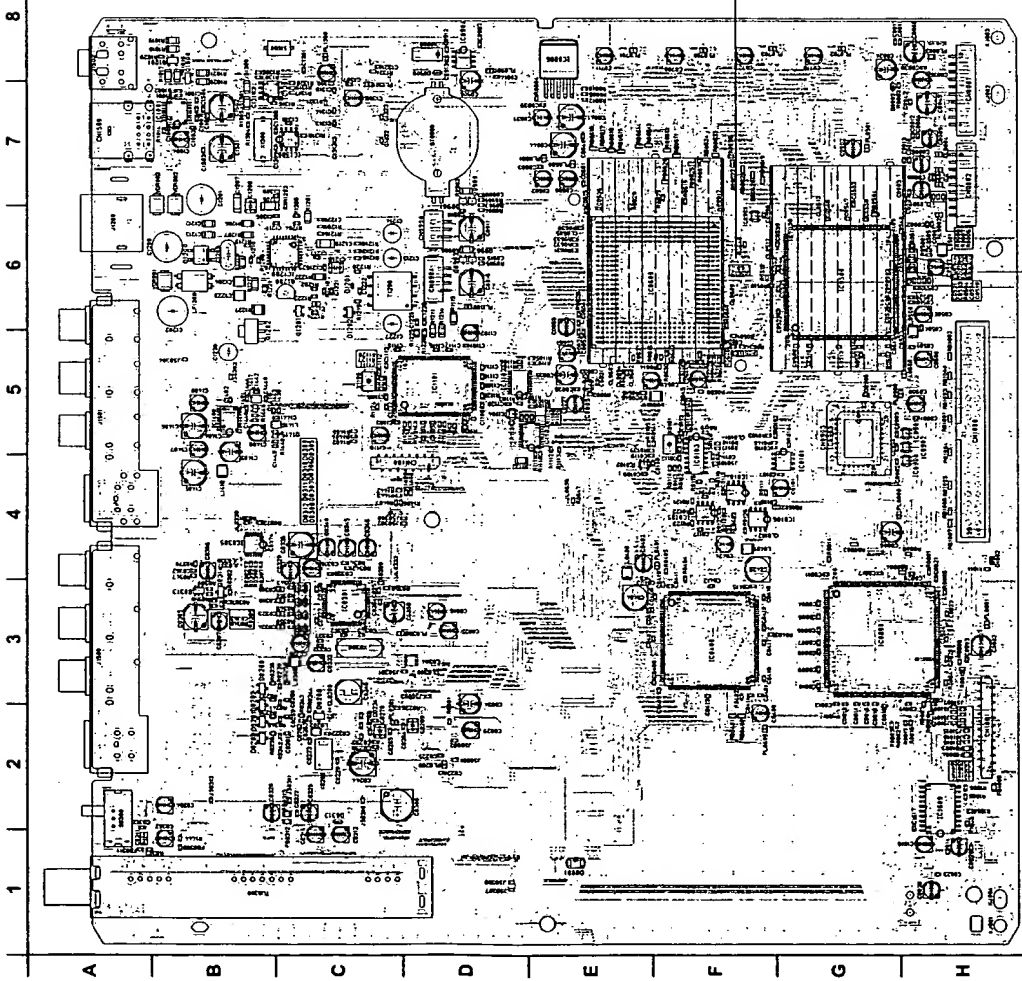




**MA-422**

(MAIN BOARD)

COMPONENT SIDE

**NOTE:**

When replacing IC0600 make sure R0605, R0607, R0606, R0610, R0611 & R0612 remain properly mounted and positioned.

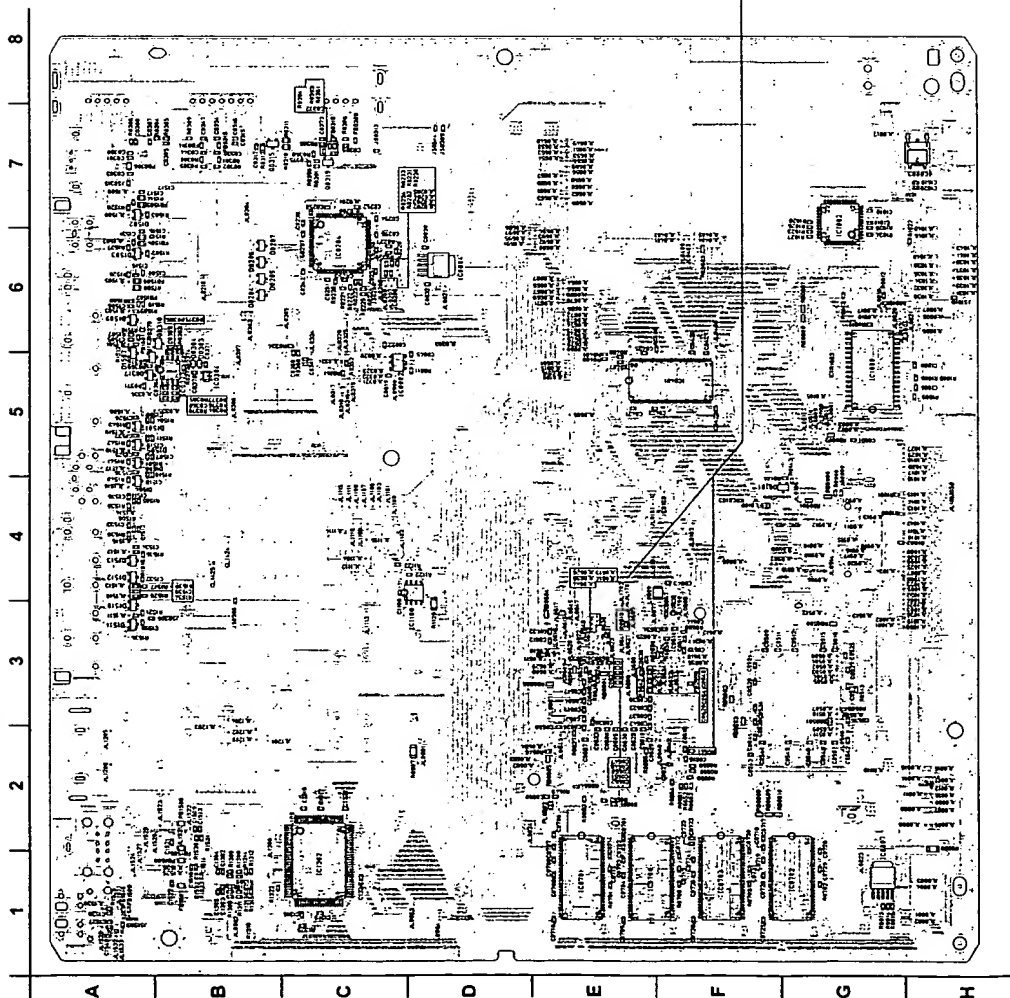
**NOTE:**

When replacing IC0500 make sure R0505 & R0508 remain properly mounted and positioned.

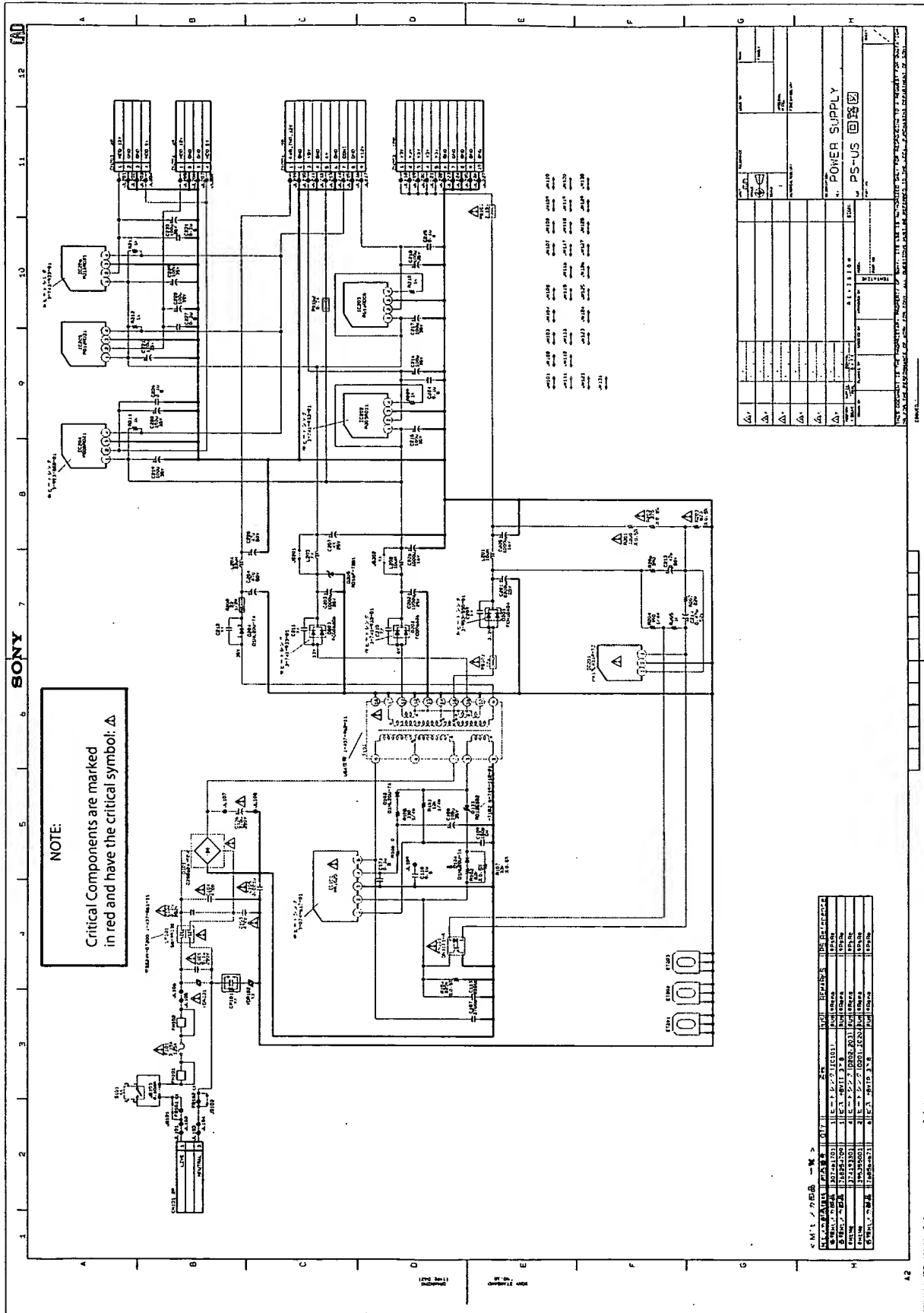
**MA-422**

[MAIN BOARD]

CONDUCTOR SIDE

**NOTE:**

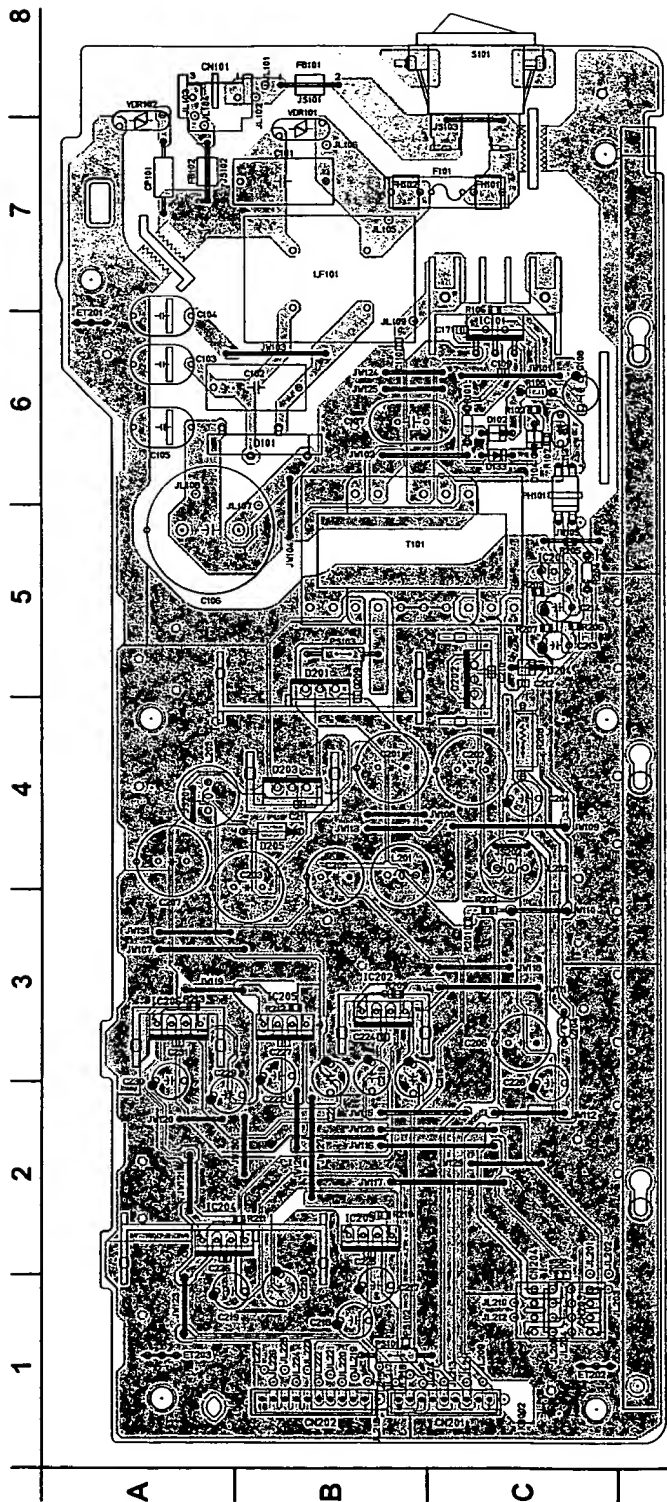
When replacing IC660 make sure R0613, R0641 & R0642 remain properly mounted and positioned.



PS-449

[SWITCHING REGULATOR]

COMPONENT SIDE

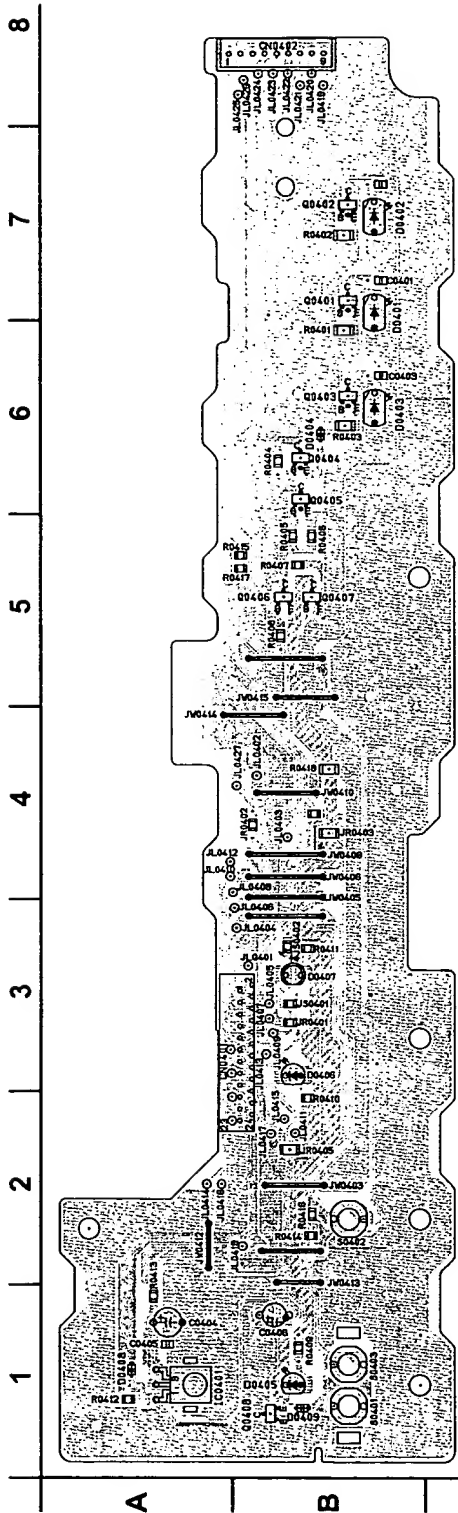




FL-134

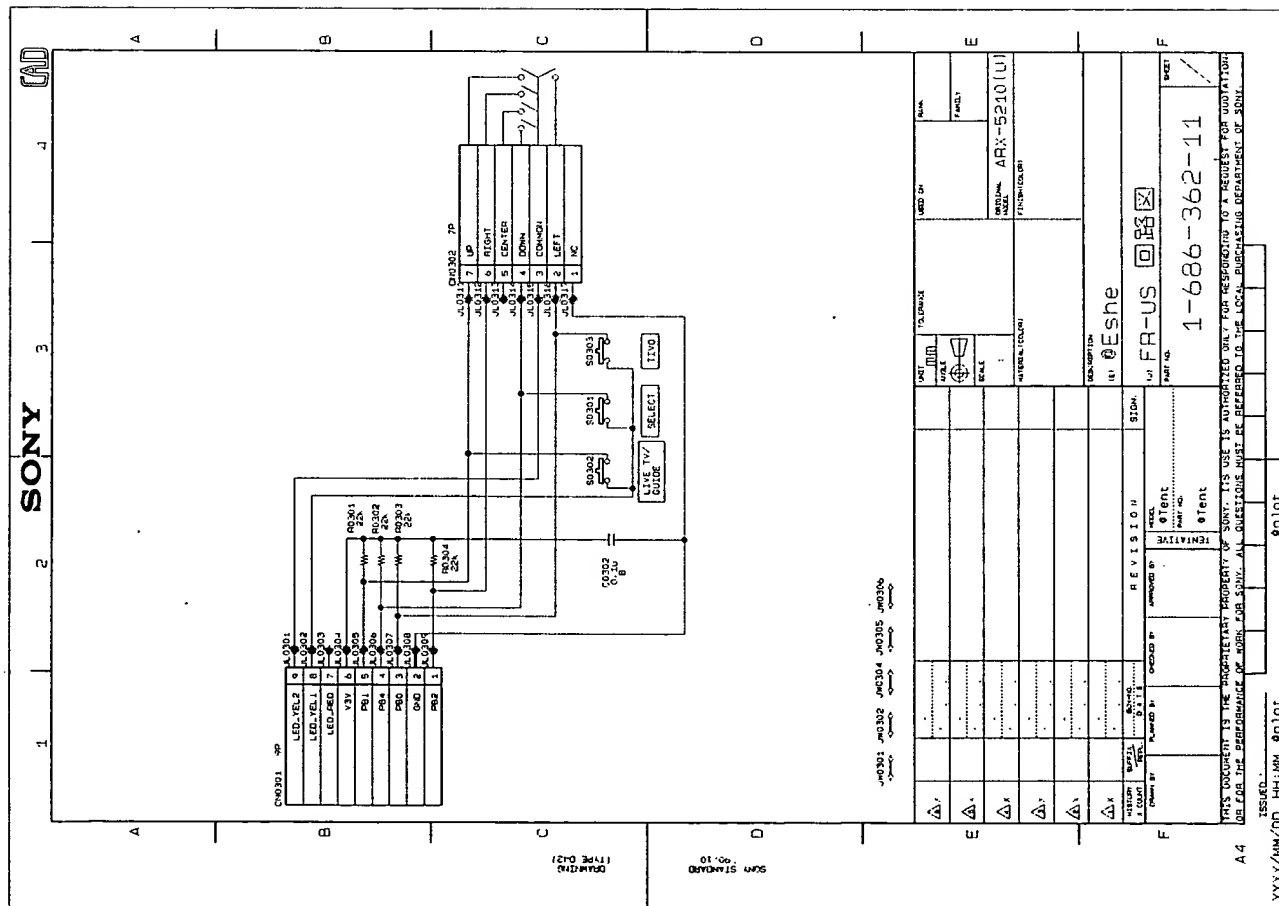
[FUNCTION INDICATOR]

COMPONENT SIDE





# FR-134 BOARD SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



**[FUNCTION KEY]**

SECTION 3: EXPLODED VIEWS

Components not identified by a part number or description are not stocked because they are seldom required for routine service.

The component parts of an assembly are indicated by the reference numbers in the far right column of the parts list and within the dotted lines of the diagram.

\* Items marked with an asterisk are not stocked since they are seldom required for routine service. Expect some delay when ordering these components.

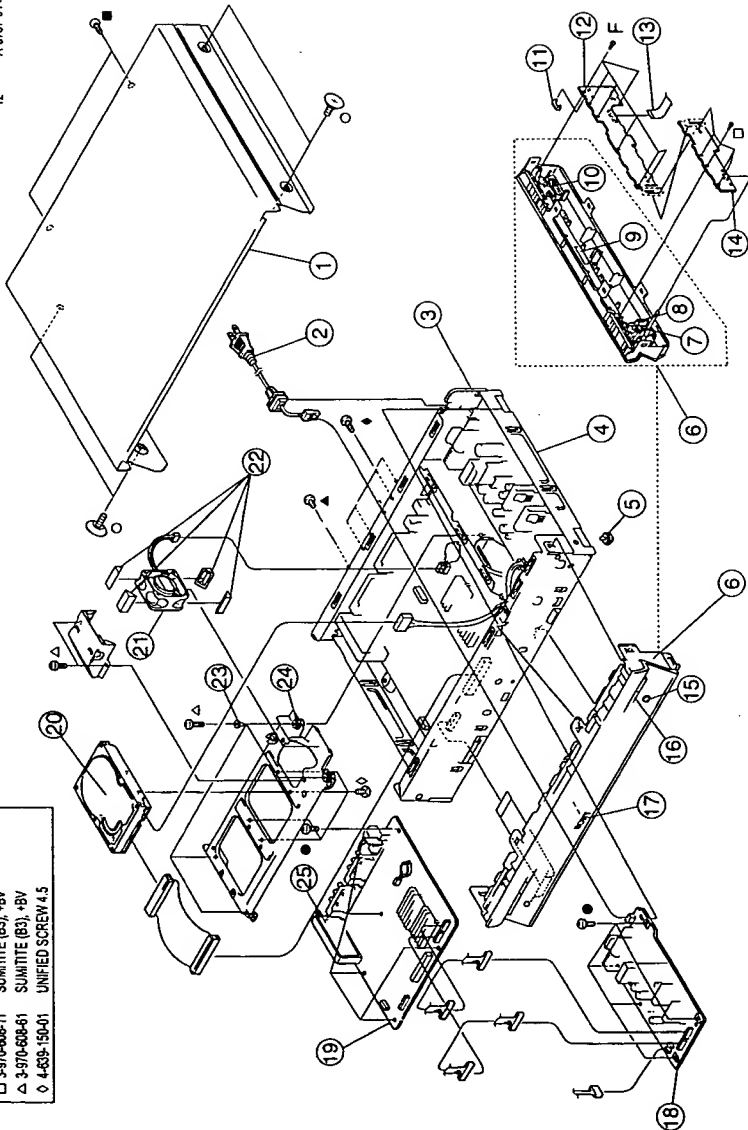
NOTE: The components identified by shading and  $\Delta$  mark are critical for safety. Replace only with part number specified.

NOTE: Les composants identifiés par un tréma et une marque  $\Delta$  sont critiques pour la sécurité. Ne les remplacer que par une pièce portant le numéro spécifié.

3-1. CHASSIS

- 3-058-511-11 +BV I/R
- 3-071-331-01 +BV3 (3-OR)
- ▲ 4-551-620-71 SCREW (2.6)
- ◆ 7-685-647-19 SCREW +BVTP 3X10 TYPE2 IT-3
- 3-070-983-11 SCREW, TAPPING
- 3-970-608-11 SUMITITE (R3) +BV
- △ 3-970-608-61 SUMITITE (R3) +BV
- 4-639-150-01 UNIFIED SCREW 4.5

REF.NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	ASSEMBLY INCLUDES	REF.NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION
1	3-074-558-01	CASE, UPPER		13	1-524-773-11	CABLE, FLAT (FMF-002)
2	1-524-774-11	CORD, POWER		14	A-5787-915-A	FR-198 BOARD, MOUNTED
3	3-078-359-01	PANEL (USA), BACK		15	3-074-872-01	CAP. BUTTON
4	3-074-552-11	CHASSIS		16	X-3952-847-1	BUTTON (MNI) ASSY
5	3-052-379-01	FOOT (A4)		17	4-559-961-11	EMBLEM (NO.4), SONY
6	X-3952-845-1	PANEL ASSY, FRONT (7-10)		18	A-5787-911-A	PS-448 BOARD, COMPLETE
7	3-074-573-01	SW HOLDER		19	A-5787-909-A	MA-472 BOARD, COMPLETE
8	1-771-913-11	SWITCH, TACTILE		20	1-796-876-11	DISK, HARD (80GB)
9	3-074-870-11	LENS, CENTER		21	1-783-816-11	FAN, D.C.
10	X-3952-846-1	BUTTON (PW) ASSY		22	3-074-851-01	DAMPER (FAN 25)
11	3-075-986-02	PLATE, PUSH		23	3-074-846-01	COLLAR (SY), FLANGE
12	A-6787-914-A	FL-134 BOARD, MOUNTED		24	3-074-849-01	DAMPER (SY)



## SECTION 4: ELECTRICAL PARTS LIST

**MA-422**

NOTE: The components identified by shading and  $\triangle$  mark are critical for safety. Replace only with part number specified.

NOTE: Les composants identifiés par un trame et une marque  $\triangle$  sont critiques pour la sécurité. Ne les remplacer que par une pièce portant le numéro spécifié.

\* Items marked with an asterisk are not stocked since they are seldom required for routine service. Expect some delay when ordering these components.

**RESISTORS**

- All resistors are in ohms
- F : nonflammable
- All variable and adjustable resistors have characteristic curve B, unless otherwise noted.

When ordering parts by reference number, please include the board name.

**MA-422**

A-6787-909-A		MA-422 BOARD, COMPLETE			
1-528-174-11		BATTERY, LITHIUM (CR2032 TYPE)			
3-075-711-01		HEAT SINK (IC)			
<b><u>LITHIUM BATTERY</u></b>					
BT0900	1-756-076-21	HOLDER, LITHIUM BATTERY			
<b><u>CAPACITOR</u></b>					
C0002	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1μF	10%	16V
C0004	1-162-967-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.0033μF	10%	50V
C0005	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10μF	20%	16V
C0006	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10μF	20%	16V
C0007	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1μF	10%	16V
C0008	1-126-205-11	ELECT CHIP	47μF	20%	6.3V
C0009	1-128-996-11	ELECT CHIP	4.7μF	20%	50V
C0010	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1μF	10%	16V
C0011	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1μF	10%	16V
C0014	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10μF	20%	16V
C0016	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10μF	20%	16V
C0019	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1μF	10%	16V
C0020	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1μF	10%	16V
C0022	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1μF	10%	16V
C0023	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1μF	10%	16V
C0024	1-126-205-11	ELECT CHIP	47μF	20%	6.3V
C0025	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10μF	20%	16V
C0026	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10μF	20%	16V
C0027	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10μF	20%	16V
C0028	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1μF	10%	16V
C0029	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10μF	20%	16V
C0030	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1μF	10%	16V
C0031	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1μF	10%	16V
C0032	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1μF	10%	16V
C0033	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1μF	10%	16V

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES		
C0034	1-126-205-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V
C0035	1-126-205-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V
C0036	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V
C0037	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V
C0038	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0039	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0040	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0041	1-126-246-11	ELECT CHIP	220 $\mu$ F	20%	4V
C0042	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0043	1-126-205-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V
C0045	1-127-715-91	CERAMIC CHIP	0.22 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0101	1-126-607-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	4V
C0103	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0107	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0108	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0111	1-162-909-11	CERAMIC CHIP	4pF	0.25pF	50V
C0112	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0113	1-162-909-11	CERAMIC CHIP	4pF	0.25pF	50V
C0114	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0115	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0116	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0117	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0139	1-124-778-00	ELECT CHIP	22 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V
C0140	1-126-205-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V
C0141	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V
C0220	1-162-915-11	CERAMIC CHIP	10pF	0.50pF	50V
C0222	1-162-915-11	CERAMIC CHIP	10pF	0.50pF	50V
C0223	1-115-416-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.001 $\mu$ F	5%	25V
C0224	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0225	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0231	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0232	1-165-176-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.047 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0233	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0234	1-165-176-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.047 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0235	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V

MA-422

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES			REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES		
C0236	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0328	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V
C0237	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0329	1-126-601-11	ELECT CHIP	2.2 $\mu$ F	20%	50V
C0238	1-165-176-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.047 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0330	1-126-601-11	ELECT CHIP	2.2 $\mu$ F	20%	50V
C0242	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0331	1-162-924-11	CERAMIC CHIP	56pF	5%	50V
C0244	1-126-206-11	ELECT CHIP	100 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V	C0332	1-126-601-11	ELECT CHIP	2.2 $\mu$ F	20%	50V
C0245	1-135-595-21	ELECT	100 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V	C0333	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0250	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0334	1-162-924-11	CERAMIC CHIP	56pF	5%	50V
C0251	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0335	1-126-204-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	16V
C0252	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0336	1-126-601-11	ELECT CHIP	2.2 $\mu$ F	20%	50V
C0253	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0337	1-162-967-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.0033 $\mu$ F	10%	50V
C0254	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0339	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0255	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0340	1-126-601-11	ELECT CHIP	2.2 $\mu$ F	20%	50V
C0256	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0341	1-162-924-11	CERAMIC CHIP	56pF	5%	50V
C0257	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0342	1-162-909-11	CERAMIC CHIP	4pF	0.25pF	50V
C0258	1-165-176-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.047 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0343	1-162-909-11	CERAMIC CHIP	4pF	0.25pF	50V
C0259	1-165-176-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.047 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0345	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V
C0261	1-165-176-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.047 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0346	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V
C0263	1-165-176-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.047 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0347	1-162-924-11	CERAMIC CHIP	56pF	5%	50V
C0264	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0354	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0265	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0357	1-162-970-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.01 $\mu$ F	10%	25V
C0268	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0358	1-126-205-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V
C0269	1-110-569-11	TANTAL. CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V	C0360	1-162-924-11	CERAMIC CHIP	56pF	5%	50V
C0270	1-110-569-11	TANTAL. CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V	C0362	1-115-416-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.001 $\mu$ F	5%	25V
C0300	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0363	1-115-416-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.001 $\mu$ F	5%	25V
C0302	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V	C0364	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0303	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0365	1-126-204-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	16V
C0304	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V	C0366	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V
C0305	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0367	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V
C0306	1-128-398-11	ELECT CHIP	220 $\mu$ F	20%	16V	C0368	1-162-923-11	CERAMIC CHIP	47pF	5%	50V
C0308	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0369	1-162-923-11	CERAMIC CHIP	47pF	5%	50V
C0311	1-104-915-11	TANTAL. CHIP	2.2 $\mu$ F	20%	20V	C0370	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0312	1-115-416-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.001 $\mu$ F	5%	25V	C0371	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0313	1-128-996-11	ELECT CHIP	4.7 $\mu$ F	20%	50V	C0372	1-162-927-11	CERAMIC CHIP	100pF	5%	50V
C0314	1-128-996-11	ELECT CHIP	4.7 $\mu$ F	20%	50V	C0373	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0315	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0374	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0316	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0375	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0317	1-162-968-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.0047 $\mu$ F	10%	50V	C0400	1-126-607-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	4V
C0322	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0401	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0323	1-125-838-11	CERAMIC CHIP	2.2 $\mu$ F	10%	6.3V	C0402	1-126-607-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	4V
C0324	1-125-838-11	CERAMIC CHIP	2.2 $\mu$ F	10%	6.3V	C0403	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0325	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V	C0404	1-135-600-21	ELECT	22 $\mu$ F	20%	20V
C0326	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0405	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0327	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V						

**MA-422**

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES			REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES		
C0406	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0521	1-162-927-11	CERAMIC CHIP	100pF	5%	50V
C0407	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0522	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0408	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V						
C0409	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0523	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0410	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0524	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
						C0525	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0411	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0526	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0412	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0527	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0413	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V						
C0414	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0528	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0415	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0529	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
						C0530	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0416	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0531	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0417	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0532	1-164-315-11	CERAMIC CHIP	470pF	5%	50V
C0418	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V						
C0419	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0533	1-162-923-11	CERAMIC CHIP	47pF	5%	50V
C0420	1-135-600-21	ELECT	22 $\mu$ F	20%	20V	C0534	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
						C0535	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0421	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0536	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0422	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0537	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0423	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V						
C0424	1-126-607-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	4V	C0538	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0425	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0539	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
						C0540	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0426	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0541	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0427	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0542	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0500	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V						
C0501	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0543	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0502	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V	C0544	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
						C0545	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0503	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0546	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0504	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0547	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0505	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V						
C0506	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V	C0548	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0507	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V	C0549	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
						C0550	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0508	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0551	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0509	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0552	1-162-970-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.01 $\mu$ F	10%	25V
C0510	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V						
C0511	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0553	1-162-970-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.01 $\mu$ F	10%	25V
C0512	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0554	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
						C0600	1-126-607-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	4V
C0513	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0601	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0514	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0602	1-126-607-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	4V
C0515	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V						
C0516	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0603	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0517	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0604	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
						C0605	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0518	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0606	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0519	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C0607	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0520	1-162-927-11	CERAMIC CHIP	100pF	5%	50V						

— 42 —

NOTE: The components identified by shading and  $\triangle$  mark are critical for safety. Replace only with part number specified.

NOTE: Les composants identifiés par un trame et une marque  $\triangle$  sont critiques pour la sécurité. Ne les remplacer que par une pièce portant le numéro spécifié.

# MA-422

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES			REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES		
C0801	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1008	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0802	1-126-205-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V	C1009	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0803	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1010	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0804	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1100	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0805	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1101	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0806	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1102	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V
C0807	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1103	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0808	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1104	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0809	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1105	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0810	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1106	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0811	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1107	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0812	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1108	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0813	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1109	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0814	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1110	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0815	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1111	1-162-917-11	CERAMIC CHIP	15pF	5%	50V
C0816	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1112	1-162-918-11	CERAMIC CHIP	18pF	5%	50V
C0817	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1113	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0818	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1114	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0819	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1115	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0820	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1116	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0821	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1117	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0822	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1118	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V
C0823	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	$\triangle$ C1201	1-113-915-11	CERAMIC	0.001 $\mu$ F	20%	250V
C0824	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	$\triangle$ C1202	1-113-915-11	CERAMIC	0.001 $\mu$ F	20%	250V
C0825	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1203	1-107-824-41	CERAMIC	220pF	5%	1KV
C0900	1-126-607-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	4V	C1204	1-137-723-21	CERAMIC CHIP	0.047 $\mu$ F	10%	250V
C0901	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1205	1-135-965-21	CERAMIC CHIP	1000pF	10%	250V
C0902	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1206	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0903	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1207	1-135-965-21	CERAMIC CHIP	1000pF	10%	250V
C0904	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1208	1-104-913-11	TANTAL. CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V
C0905	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1209	1-162-927-11	CERAMIC CHIP	100pF	5%	50V
C0906	1-126-205-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V	C1210	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0907	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1211	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0908	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1212	1-135-788-21	CERAMIC CHIP	0.033 $\mu$ F	10%	250V
C0909	1-125-837-91	CERAMIC CHIP	1 $\mu$ F	10%	6.3V	C1213	1-135-788-21	CERAMIC CHIP	0.033 $\mu$ F	10%	250V
C0910	1-162-967-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.0033 $\mu$ F	10%	50V	C1214	1-109-842-11	CERAMIC	10pF	5%	2KV
C0912	1-162-909-11	CERAMIC CHIP	4pF	0.25pF	50V	C1215	1-109-842-11	CERAMIC	10pF	5%	2KV
C0913	1-162-909-11	CERAMIC CHIP	4pF	0.25pF	50V	C1216	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0914	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1217	1-162-909-11	CERAMIC CHIP	4pF	0.25pF	50V
C1001	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1218	1-104-913-11	TANTAL. CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V
C1003	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1219	1-135-965-21	CERAMIC CHIP	1000pF	10%	250V
C1004	1-126-607-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	4V	C1220	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C1007	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V						



MA-422

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES			REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES		
C1221	1-162-927-11	CERAMIC CHIP	100pF	5%	50V	C1443	1-162-959-11	CERAMIC CHIP	330pF	5%	50V
C1222	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V	C1444	1-162-959-11	CERAMIC CHIP	330pF	5%	50V
C1223	1-137-723-21	CERAMIC CHIP	0.047 $\mu$ F	10%	250V						
C1225	1-162-925-11	CERAMIC CHIP	68pF	5%	50V	C1445	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C1226	1-162-925-11	CERAMIC CHIP	68pF	5%	50V	C1446	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
						C1500	1-162-927-11	CERAMIC CHIP	100pF	5%	50V
C1300	1-126-607-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	4V	C1501	1-126-206-11	ELECT CHIP	100 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V
C1301	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1502	1-126-206-11	ELECT CHIP	100 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V
C1302	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V						
C1303	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V	C1503	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C1304	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V	C1504	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
						C1505	1-162-927-11	CERAMIC CHIP	100pF	5%	50V
C1305	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V	C1506	1-162-927-11	CERAMIC CHIP	100pF	5%	50V
C1306	1-126-607-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	4V	C1509	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V
C1307	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V						
C1308	1-162-912-11	CERAMIC CHIP	7pF	0.50pF	50V	C1510	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V
C1309	1-162-912-11	CERAMIC CHIP	7pF	0.50pF	50V	C1513	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V
						C1514	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V
C1310	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1521	1-162-970-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.01 $\mu$ F	10%	25V
C1311	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1522	1-162-970-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.01 $\mu$ F	10%	25V
C1312	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V						
C1313	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1525	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V
C1314	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1526	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V
						C1527	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V
C1315	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1528	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V
C1316	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1529	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V
C1317	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V						
C1318	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1531	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V
C1319	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1532	1-162-959-11	CERAMIC CHIP	330pF	5%	50V
						C1533	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V
C1320	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1534	1-162-959-11	CERAMIC CHIP	330pF	5%	50V
C1321	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1535	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V
C1322	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V						
C1323	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1536	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V
C1324	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1537	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V
						C1538	1-162-959-11	CERAMIC CHIP	330pF	5%	50V
C1400	1-126-193-11	ELECT CHIP	1 $\mu$ F	20%	50V	C1539	1-162-959-11	CERAMIC CHIP	330pF	5%	50V
C1401	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1540	1-162-967-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.0033 $\mu$ F	10%	50V
C1402	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V						
C1403	1-126-205-11	ELECT CHIP	47 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V	C1617	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C1404	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V	C1618	1-124-779-00	ELECT CHIP	10 $\mu$ F	20%	16V
						C1619	1-162-962-11	CERAMIC CHIP	470pF	10%	50V
C1405	1-126-206-11	ELECT CHIP	100 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V	C1620	1-162-962-11	CERAMIC CHIP	470pF	10%	50V
C1406	1-126-206-11	ELECT CHIP	100 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V						
C1407	1-124-778-00	ELECT CHIP	22 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V						
C1408	1-124-778-00	ELECT CHIP	22 $\mu$ F	20%	6.3V						
C1439	1-164-388-91	CERAMIC CHIP	270pF	5%	50V						
C1440	1-164-388-91	CERAMIC CHIP	270pF	5%	50V						
C1441	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V						
C1442	1-162-919-11	CERAMIC CHIP	22pF	5%	50V						

**CONNECTOR**

CN0001	1-816-466-21	PIN, CONNECTOR 10P
CN0002	1-816-296-21	PIN, CONNECTOR (PC BOARD) 9P
CN0900	1-794-509-11	PIN, CONNECTOR (PC BOARD) (3P)
CN0903	1-540-151-21	SOCKET, IC
CN1001	1-816-498-21	CONNECTOR, FFC/FPC 24P
CN1500	1-784-011-11	CONNECTOR, USB (AX2)

**MA-422**

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES	REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES
<b>DIODE</b>				FB1502	1-500-283-11	FERRITE	0μH
D0001	8-719-078-04	DIODE	EC31QS03L-TE12L	FB1503	1-414-553-11	FERRITE	0μH
D0002	8-719-988-61	DIODE	1SS355TE-17	FB1504	1-414-553-11	FERRITE	0μH
D0139	8-719-404-50	DIODE	MA111-TX	FB1505	1-469-324-21	FERRITE	0μH
D0140	8-719-404-50	DIODE	MA111-TX	FB1506	1-469-324-21	FERRITE	0μH
D0200	8-719-056-17	DIODE	RD6.2MW-T1B	FB1507	1-469-324-21	FERRITE	0μH
D0201	8-719-056-17	DIODE	RD6.2MW-T1B	FB1508	1-469-324-21	FERRITE	0μH
D0203	8-719-056-17	DIODE	RD6.2MW-T1B	FB1509	1-414-228-11	FERRITE	0μH
D0303	8-719-404-50	DIODE	MA111-TX	FB1510	1-414-228-11	FERRITE	0μH
D0304	8-719-404-50	DIODE	MA111-TX	<b>FILTER</b>			
D0311	8-719-988-61	DIODE	1SS355TE-17	FL0001	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
D0312	8-719-988-61	DIODE	1SS355TE-17	FL0002	1-234-128-21	FERRITE	0μH
D0313	8-719-018-12	DIODE	MA8330	FL0003	1-234-494-21	FILTER, EMI REMOVAL (SMD)	
D0900	8-719-988-61	DIODE	1SS355TE-17	FL0004	1-234-123-21	FERRITE	0μH
D1002	8-719-060-99	DIODE	SML-210MT-T86	FL0005	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
D1200	8-719-050-65	DIODE	S1ZB60	FL0100	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
D1201	8-719-056-48	DIODE	1SS388(TPL3)	FL0200	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
D1202	8-719-401-53	DIODE	MA3056H-TX	FL0201	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
D1500	8-719-421-59	DIODE	MA3130WA-TX	FL0300	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
D1501	8-719-421-59	DIODE	MA3130WA-TX	FL0400	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
D1502	8-719-421-59	DIODE	MA3130WA-TX	FL0401	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
D1503	8-719-421-59	DIODE	MA3130WA-TX	FL0402	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
D1504	8-719-421-59	DIODE	MA3130WA-TX	FL0500	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
D1505	8-719-421-59	DIODE	MA3130WA-TX	FL0501	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
<b>FERRITE BEAD</b>				FL0600	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
FB0306	1-469-324-21	FERRITE	0μH	FL0601	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
FB0308	1-414-228-11	FERRITE	0μH	FL0602	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
FB0309	1-414-228-11	FERRITE	0μH	FL0700	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
FB0310	1-414-228-11	FERRITE	0μH	FL0701	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
FB0311	1-414-228-11	FERRITE	0μH	FL0702	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
FB0312	1-469-324-21	FERRITE	0μH	FL0703	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
FB0313	1-469-324-21	FERRITE	0μH	FL0800	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
FB0314	1-414-228-11	FERRITE	0μH	FL0801	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
FB0315	1-414-228-11	FERRITE	0μH	FL0900	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
FB0600	1-469-836-21	FERRITE	0μH	FL0901	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
FB1001	1-414-228-11	FERRITE	0μH	FL1100	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
FB1002	1-414-228-11	FERRITE	0μH	FL1300	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
FB1003	1-469-324-21	FERRITE	0μH	FL1301	1-234-177-21	FERRITE	0μH
FB1004	1-469-324-21	FERRITE	0μH	<b>IC</b>			
FB1005	1-469-324-21	FERRITE	0μH	IC0002	6-702-619-01	IC	NJM2370U08-TE1
FB1500	1-414-553-11	FERRITE	0μH	IC0003	8-759-157-17	IC	PQ05SZ1U
FB1501	1-500-283-11	FERRITE	0μH				

**MA-422**

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES	REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES
IC0004	8-759-679-48	IC	PQ3DZ13U	J1502	1-565-790-32	JACK, SMALL TYPE 2P	
IC0005	6-702-302-01	IC	TK11133CSCL-G	JS0001	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0006	6-702-381-01	IC	SI-3011ZD-TL				
IC0007	8-749-015-18	IC	PQ07VZ012ZP	JS0002	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0101	6-702-198-01	IC	MAX708TCSA-TG068	JS0003	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0102	8-759-585-51	IC	SN74AHC1G32DBVR	JS0101	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0103	6-702-177-01	IC	MK2745-26STR	JS0200	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0104	6-702-187-01	IC	ICS502MT	JS0300	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0105	8-759-680-53	IC	ICS9112AM-16-ER	JS0301	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0106	6-702-187-01	IC	ICS502MT	JS0302	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0107	8-759-523-97	IC	TC74VHC123AFT(EL)	JS0303	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0204	8-759-676-15	IC	SAA7114H	JS0304	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0301	6-702-188-01	IC	MSP4448G-FH-A2	JS0305	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0303	8-759-357-68	IC	NJM2115M-TE2	JS0306	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0304	8-759-649-28	IC	SN74AHC1G04DBVR	JS0307	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0305	8-759-669-44	IC	SN74LVC74APWR-12	JS0308	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0400	6-702-192-01	IC	BCM7040KQL	JS0309	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0401	6-703-430-01	IC	MT48LC2M32B2TG-6-Y94W	JS0310	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0500	6-702-189-01	IC	UPD30541GD-200-WML	JS0311	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0700	8-759-589-36	IC	MB81F641642C-103LFN-B	JS0312	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0701	8-759-589-36	IC	MB81F641642C-103LFN-B	JS0313	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0702	8-759-589-36	IC	MB81F641642C-103LFN-B	JS0314	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0703	8-759-589-36	IC	MB81F641642C-103LFN-B	JS0315	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0800	6-702-178-01	IC	UPD65948GD-131-LML	JS1007	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0900	8-759-649-28	IC	SN74AHC1G04DBVR	JS1008	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0901	8-759-585-51	IC	SN74AHC1G32DBVR	JS1009	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0902	8-759-585-51	IC	SN74AHC1G32DBVR	JS1010	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0903	8-759-684-98	IC	SST39VF040-70-4C-NH	JS1011	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0904	6-702-186-01	IC	M41T56M6TR	JS1012	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC0905	6-702-197-01	IC	TC74A5-3.3VCT	JS1013	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC1001	8-759-484-69	IC	MAX3221CAE-TE2	JS1014	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC1002	6-802-579-01	IC	AT90SC6464C	JS1015	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC1101	8-749-019-23	IC	CX88168-11	JS1016	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC1200	8-749-019-24	IC	20463-11	JS1018	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC1300	6-702-187-01	IC	ICS502MT	JS1019	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	
IC1301	6-702-024-01	IC	MIC2026-2BM-T&R				
IC1302	6-702-193-01	IC	SI10670BCM100				
IC1400	8-759-662-95	IC	BA7665FS-E2				
IC1600	6-801-554-01	IC	AT90S2313-4SC-SL766				
	<b>JACK</b>						
J1200	1-766-250-11	JACK, MODULAR (2C) 6P					
J1500	1-817-090-11	JACK, PIN					
J1501	1-817-185-11	JACK BLOCK, PIN 8P					
					<b>COIL</b>		
				L0202	1-412-951-11	INDUCTOR	10μH
				L0305	1-414-398-11	INDUCTOR	10μH
				L0400	1-414-398-11	INDUCTOR	10μH
				L0401	1-414-398-11	INDUCTOR	10μH
				L0500	1-414-398-11	INDUCTOR	10μH
				L0501	1-414-398-11	INDUCTOR	10μH
				L0600	1-414-398-11	INDUCTOR	10μH

MA-422

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES			REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES		
L0601	1-414-398-11	INDUCTOR	10μH			R0114	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
L1416	1-412-943-11	INDUCTOR	2.2μH			R0115	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
L1417	1-412-947-11	INDUCTOR	4.7μH			R0116	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
L1418	1-414-398-11	INDUCTOR	10μH			R0117	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
LF1200	1-239-581-21	FERRITE	0μH			R0118	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
<b>TRANSISTOR</b>						R0119	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
Q0139	8-729-010-25	TRANSISTOR	MSD601-RT1			R0120	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
Q0313	8-729-425-18	TRANSISTOR	XN4504			R0121	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
Q0314	8-729-010-05	TRANSISTOR	MSB709-RT1			R0122	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
Q0315	8-729-010-25	TRANSISTOR	MSD601-RT1			R0123	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
Q0316	8-729-010-05	TRANSISTOR	MSB709-RT1			R0124	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
Q0317	8-729-010-25	TRANSISTOR	MSD601-RT1			R0125	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
Q0318	8-729-010-25	TRANSISTOR	MSD601-RT1			R0126	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
Q0319	8-729-200-13	TRANSISTOR	2SC2712-Y			R0139	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
Q0900	8-729-030-20	TRANSISTOR	2SC4097-T106PQR			R0140	1-216-809-11	METAL CHIP	100	5%	1/10W
Q0901	8-729-030-20	TRANSISTOR	2SC4097-T106PQR			R0141	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
Q1000	8-729-010-25	TRANSISTOR	MSD601-RT1			R0142	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
Q1001	8-729-010-05	TRANSISTOR	MSB709-RT1			R0145	1-216-847-11	METAL CHIP	150K	5%	1/10W
Q1200	8-729-055-71	TRANSISTOR	MPSA44			R0146	1-216-817-11	METAL CHIP	470	5%	1/10W
Q1201	8-729-051-96	TRANSISTOR	CEN1000TR			R0147	1-216-845-11	METAL CHIP	100K	5%	1/10W
Q1202	8-729-051-95	TRANSISTOR	CEN1014TR			R0148	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W
Q1415	8-729-026-52	TRANSISTOR	2SA1576A-T106-R			R0220	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
Q1416	8-729-026-52	TRANSISTOR	2SA1576A-T106-R			R0221	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
<b>RESISTOR</b>						R0222	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R0001	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W	R0224	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
R0002	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W	R0225	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
R0003	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W	R0226	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
R0004	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W	R0227	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
R0005	1-218-866-11	METAL CHIP	6.2K	0.50%	1/10W	R0228	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
R0009	1-216-296-11	SHORT CHIP				R0229	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
R0010	1-218-871-11	METAL CHIP	10K	0.50%	1/10W	R0230	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
R0011	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W	R0231	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
R0012	1-216-817-11	METAL CHIP	470	5%	1/10W	R0232	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
R0013	1-216-811-11	METAL CHIP	150	5%	1/10W	R0233	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
R0014	1-218-847-11	METAL CHIP	1K	0.50%	1/10W	R0234	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
R0015	1-218-847-11	METAL CHIP	1K	0.50%	1/10W	R0235	1-216-800-11	METAL CHIP	18	5%	1/10W
R0102	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R0236	1-216-800-11	METAL CHIP	18	5%	1/10W
R0103	1-218-272-11	METAL CHIP	5.1K	5%	1/10W	R0238	1-216-800-11	METAL CHIP	18	5%	1/10W
R0105	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R0239	1-216-806-11	METAL CHIP	56	5%	1/10W
R0112	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R0240	1-216-806-11	METAL CHIP	56	5%	1/10W
R0113	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R0242	1-216-806-11	METAL CHIP	56	5%	1/10W
						R0243	1-216-815-11	METAL CHIP	330	5%	1/10W
						R0244	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W

MA-422

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES			REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES		
R0300	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R0391	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W
R0301	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R0392	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R0302	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W						
R0303	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W	R0393	1-216-809-11	METAL CHIP	100	5%	1/10W
R0304	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R0394	1-216-814-11	METAL CHIP	270	5%	1/10W
						R0395	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0305	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W	R0396	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
R0308	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R0397	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0309	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP									
R0310	1-216-049-11	RES-CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W	R0398	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0311	1-216-065-91	RES-CHIP	4.7K	5%	1/10W	R0399	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
						R0402	1-216-829-11	METAL CHIP	4.7K	5%	1/10W
R0312	1-216-085-91	RES-CHIP	33K	5%	1/10W	R0403	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0334	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R0404	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0341	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP									
R0342	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R0405	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0347	1-216-842-11	METAL CHIP	56K	5%	1/10W	R0406	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
						R0407	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R0348	1-216-842-11	METAL CHIP	56K	5%	1/10W	R0408	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R0349	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W	R0500	1-216-797-11	METAL CHIP	10	5%	1/10W
R0350	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W						
R0356	1-216-809-11	METAL CHIP	100	5%	1/10W	R0501	1-216-829-11	METAL CHIP	4.7K	5%	1/10W
R0359	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R0502	1-216-829-11	METAL CHIP	4.7K	5%	1/10W
						R0503	1-216-829-11	METAL CHIP	4.7K	5%	1/10W
R0360	1-216-830-11	METAL CHIP	5.6K	5%	1/10W	R0504	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W
R0361	1-216-822-11	METAL CHIP	1.2K	5%	1/10W	R0505	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0369	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W						
R0370	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W	R0508	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0371	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W	R0509	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W
						R0510	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
R0372	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R0511	1-216-809-11	METAL CHIP	100	5%	1/10W
R0373	1-216-845-11	METAL CHIP	100K	5%	1/10W	R0512	1-216-809-11	METAL CHIP	100	5%	1/10W
R0374	1-216-846-11	METAL CHIP	120K	5%	1/10W						
R0375	1-216-846-11	METAL CHIP	120K	5%	1/10W	R0513	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0376	1-216-845-11	METAL CHIP	100K	5%	1/10W	R0601	1-216-829-11	METAL CHIP	4.7K	5%	1/10W
						R0602	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W
R0377	1-216-846-11	METAL CHIP	120K	5%	1/10W	R0605	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W
R0378	1-216-846-11	METAL CHIP	120K	5%	1/10W	R0606	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W
R0379	1-216-817-11	METAL CHIP	470	5%	1/10W						
R0380	1-216-817-11	METAL CHIP	470	5%	1/10W	R0607	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W
R0381	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R0608	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W
						R0609	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0382	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R0610	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W
R0383	1-216-845-11	METAL CHIP	100K	5%	1/10W	R0611	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W
R0384	1-216-845-11	METAL CHIP	100K	5%	1/10W						
R0385	1-216-837-11	METAL CHIP	22K	5%	1/10W	R0612	1-216-829-11	METAL CHIP	4.7K	5%	1/10W
R0386	1-216-837-11	METAL CHIP	22K	5%	1/10W	R0613	1-216-829-11	METAL CHIP	4.7K	5%	1/10W
						R0614	1-216-806-11	METAL CHIP	56	5%	1/10W
R0387	1-216-829-11	METAL CHIP	4.7K	5%	1/10W	R0615	1-216-829-11	METAL CHIP	4.7K	5%	1/10W
R0389	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W	R0616	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0390	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W						

MA-422

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES			REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES		
R0617	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R0802	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W
R0618	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R0803	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W
R0619	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R0804	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0624	1-216-809-11	METAL CHIP	100	5%	1/10W	R0805	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0625	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R0806	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R0626	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R0807	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0627	1-216-829-11	METAL CHIP	4.7K	5%	1/10W	R0808	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0629	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R0809	1-216-829-11	METAL CHIP	4.7K	5%	1/10W
R0631	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R0810	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0632	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R0811	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0633	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R0812	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0634	1-216-809-11	METAL CHIP	100	5%	1/10W	R0813	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0635	1-216-809-11	METAL CHIP	100	5%	1/10W	R0814	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0636	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R0815	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R0637	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R0900	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W
R0638	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R0901	1-218-864-11	METAL CHIP	5.1K	0.50%	1/10W
R0639	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R0902	1-216-135-00	RES-CHIP	2.4	5%	1/8W
R0640	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W	R0903	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R0641	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W	R0904	1-216-827-11	METAL CHIP	3.3K	5%	1/10W
R0642	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W	R1000	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W
R0643	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1001	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W
R0646	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W	R1002	1-216-829-11	METAL CHIP	4.7K	5%	1/10W
R0648	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W	R1011	1-216-818-11	METAL CHIP	560	5%	1/10W
R0650	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W	R1014	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0651	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1016	1-216-222-00	RES-CHIP	10K	5%	1/8W
R0652	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1017	1-216-186-00	RES-CHIP	330	5%	1/8W
R0653	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1018	1-216-150-91	RES-CHIP	10	5%	1/8W
R0654	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R1019	1-216-150-91	RES-CHIP	10	5%	1/8W
R0655	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R1020	1-216-206-00	RES-CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/8W
R0656	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R1021	1-216-222-00	RES-CHIP	10K	5%	1/8W
R0657	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R1022	1-218-843-11	METAL CHIP	680	0.50%	1/10W
R0658	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R1023	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0659	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1024	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0660	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1025	1-216-809-11	METAL CHIP	100	5%	1/10W
R0661	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R1026	1-216-829-11	METAL CHIP	4.7K	5%	1/10W
R0662	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R1028	1-216-829-11	METAL CHIP	4.7K	5%	1/10W
R0663	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R1100	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0664	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W	R1101	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0700	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1102	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0701	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1103	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0702	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1104	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0703	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1105	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R0801	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP									

MA-422

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES			REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES		
R1106	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1222	1-216-296-11	SHORT CHIP			
R1107	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1223	1-216-809-11	METAL CHIP	100	5%	1/10W
R1108	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP									
R1109	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1224	1-218-331-11	METAL CHIP	51K	5%	1/10W
R1110	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1225	1-216-295-91	SHORT CHIP			
						R1226	1-216-295-91	SHORT CHIP			
R1111	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1227	1-243-461-21	METAL CHIP	24	0.50%	1/2W
R1112	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1300	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R1113	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP									
R1114	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1301	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R1115	1-216-296-11	SHORT CHIP				R1302	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
						R1303	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R1116	1-216-841-11	METAL CHIP	47K	5%	1/10W	R1304	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W
R1117	1-216-841-11	METAL CHIP	47K	5%	1/10W	R1305	1-218-843-11	METAL CHIP	680	0.50%	1/10W
R1118	1-216-841-11	METAL CHIP	47K	5%	1/10W						
R1119	1-216-841-11	METAL CHIP	47K	5%	1/10W	R1306	1-216-825-11	METAL CHIP	2.2K	5%	1/10W
R1121	1-216-841-11	METAL CHIP	47K	5%	1/10W	R1307	1-218-843-11	METAL CHIP	680	0.50%	1/10W
						R1308	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
R1122	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W	R1309	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
R1123	1-216-841-11	METAL CHIP	47K	5%	1/10W	R1310	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
R1126	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP									
R1127	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W	R1311	1-216-803-11	METAL CHIP	33	5%	1/10W
R1129	1-216-296-11	SHORT CHIP				R1312	1-218-875-11	METAL CHIP	15K	0.50%	1/10W
						R1313	1-218-875-11	METAL CHIP	15K	0.50%	1/10W
R1130	1-216-809-11	METAL CHIP	100	5%	1/10W	R1314	1-218-875-11	METAL CHIP	15K	0.50%	1/10W
R1200	1-243-465-21	METAL CHIP	6.8M	5%	1/4W	R1315	1-218-875-11	METAL CHIP	15K	0.50%	1/10W
R1201	1-243-464-21	METAL CHIP	475K	0.50%	1/4W						
R1202	1-218-895-11	METAL CHIP	100K	0.50%	1/10W	R1316	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R1203	1-218-917-11	METAL CHIP	820K	0.50%	1/10W	R1317	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
						R1318	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R1204	1-216-850-11	METAL CHIP	270K	5%	1/10W	R1319	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R1205	1-243-458-91	METAL CHIP	576K	0.50%	1/10W	R1320	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R1206	1-243-462-21	METAL CHIP	1M	5%	1/4W						
R1207	1-243-462-21	METAL CHIP	1M	5%	1/4W	R1321	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R1208	1-218-907-11	METAL CHIP	330K	0.50%	1/10W	R1322	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
						R1323	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R1209	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1324	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R1210	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W	R1402	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R1211	1-216-296-11	SHORT CHIP									
R1212	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W	R1404	1-218-873-11	METAL CHIP	12K	0.50%	1/10W
R1213	1-243-459-91	METAL CHIP	143K	0.50%	1/10W	R1405	1-218-851-11	METAL CHIP	1.5K	0.50%	1/10W
						R1406	1-218-831-11	METAL CHIP	220	0.50%	1/10W
R1214	1-216-296-11	SHORT CHIP				R1407	1-218-833-11	METAL CHIP	270	0.50%	1/10W
R1215	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W	R1408	1-218-831-11	METAL CHIP	220	0.50%	1/10W
R1216	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W						
R1217	1-243-460-21	METAL CHIP	348K	0.50%	1/4W	R1409	1-218-833-11	METAL CHIP	270	0.50%	1/10W
R1218	1-218-883-11	METAL CHIP	33K	0.50%	1/10W	R1440	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W
						R1441	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W
R1219	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				R1442	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R1220	1-216-797-11	METAL CHIP	10	5%	1/10W	R1443	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP			
R1221	1-216-029-00	RES-CHIP	150	5%	1/10W						

MA-422

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES			REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES
R1444	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W	RESISTOR BRIDGE			
R1501	1-211-990-11	METAL CHIP	75	0.50%	1/10W	RB0400	1-234-377-21	RES, NETWORK 4.7KX4	(1005)
R1502	1-216-801-11	METAL CHIP	22	5%	1/10W	RB0401	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
R1503	1-216-801-11	METAL CHIP	22	5%	1/10W	RB0500	1-234-377-21	RES, NETWORK 4.7KX4	(1005)
R1504	1-211-990-11	METAL CHIP	75	0.50%	1/10W	RB0501	1-234-377-21	RES, NETWORK 4.7KX4	(1005)
						RB0502	1-234-377-21	RES, NETWORK 4.7KX4	(1005)
R1505	1-211-990-11	METAL CHIP	75	0.50%	1/10W				
R1506	1-211-990-11	METAL CHIP	75	0.50%	1/10W	RB0503	1-234-377-21	RES, NETWORK 4.7KX4	(1005)
R1507	1-216-845-11	METAL CHIP	100K	5%	1/10W	RB0504	1-234-377-21	RES, NETWORK 4.7KX4	(1005)
R1508	1-216-845-11	METAL CHIP	100K	5%	1/10W	RB0600	1-234-377-21	RES, NETWORK 4.7KX4	(1005)
R1509	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0601	1-234-377-21	RES, NETWORK 4.7KX4	(1005)
						RB0602	1-234-377-21	RES, NETWORK 4.7KX4	(1005)
R1510	1-211-990-11	METAL CHIP	75	0.50%	1/10W				
R1511	1-211-990-11	METAL CHIP	75	0.50%	1/10W	RB0603	1-234-377-21	RES, NETWORK 4.7KX4	(1005)
R1512	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0604	1-234-377-21	RES, NETWORK 4.7KX4	(1005)
R1516	1-216-817-11	METAL CHIP	470	5%	1/10W	RB0605	1-234-378-21	RES, NETWORK 10KX4	(1005)
R1517	1-216-817-11	METAL CHIP	470	5%	1/10W	RB0606	1-234-376-21	RES, NETWORK 2.2KX4	(1005)
						RB0607	1-234-376-21	RES, NETWORK 2.2KX4	(1005)
R1518	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP							
R1519	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0608	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
R1520	1-216-817-11	METAL CHIP	470	5%	1/10W	RB0609	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
R1521	1-216-817-11	METAL CHIP	470	5%	1/10W	RB0610	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
R1524	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0611	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
						RB0612	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
R1525	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP							
R1526	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0613	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
R1527	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0614	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
R1528	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0615	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
R1530	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0616	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
						RB0617	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
R1531	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP							
R1532	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0618	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
R1533	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0619	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
R1534	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0620	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
R1535	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0621	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
						RB0622	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
R1536	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP							
R1537	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0623	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
R1538	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0624	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
R1539	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0625	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
R1540	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0626	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
						RB0800	1-234-378-21	RES, NETWORK 10KX4	(1005)
R1541	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP							
R1542	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0802	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
R1543	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0803	1-234-378-21	RES, NETWORK 10KX4	(1005)
R1603	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W	RB0804	1-234-378-21	RES, NETWORK 10KX4	(1005)
R1604	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP				RB0900	1-234-378-21	RES, NETWORK 10KX4	(1005)
						RB0901	1-234-378-21	RES, NETWORK 10KX4	(1005)
R1605	1-216-809-11	METAL CHIP	100	5%	1/10W				
R1606	1-216-809-11	METAL CHIP	100	5%	1/10W	RB1000	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
						RB1001	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)
						RB1002	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)



NOTE: The components identified by shading and  $\Delta$  mark are critical for safety. Replace only with part number specified.

NOTE: Les composants identifiés par un trame et une marque  $\Delta$  sont critiques pour la sécurité. Ne les remplacer que par une pièce portant le numéro spécifié.

MA-422








PS-449

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES	REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES
RB1003	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)	C108	1-107-910-11	ELECT	100 $\mu$ F 20% 50V
RB1004	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)	C109	1-164-217-11	CERAMIC CHIP	150pF 5% 50V
				C110	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F 10% 16V
RB1005	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)				
RB1006	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)	C113	1-130-475-00	MYLAR	0.0022 $\mu$ F 5% 50V
RB1007	1-242-963-21	RES, NETWORK 33X4	(1005)	C171	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F 10% 16V
<b>SWITCH</b>				C201	1-128-955-21	ELECT	2200 $\mu$ F 20% 25V
S0300	1-571-588-11	SWITCH, SLIDE		C202	1-128-954-21	ELECT	1000 $\mu$ F 20% 25V
S1600	1-572-474-11	SWITCH, TACTILE		C203	1-128-954-21	ELECT	1000 $\mu$ F 20% 25V
<b>TRANSFORMER</b>							
$\Delta$ T1200	1-435-991-21	TRANSFORMER, MODEM		C204	1-107-909-11	ELECT	47 $\mu$ F 20% 50V
<b>TUNER</b>				C205	1-128-950-21	ELECT	1000 $\mu$ F 20% 16V
TU0300	1-693-597-11	TUNER		C206	1-128-950-21	ELECT	1000 $\mu$ F 20% 16V
<b>VARISTOR</b>				C213	1-126-959-11	ELECT	0.47 $\mu$ F 20% 50V
$\Delta$ VDR001	1-251-628-11	ABSORBER, SURGE		C214	1-126-959-11	ELECT	0.47 $\mu$ F 20% 50V
VDR002	1-417-341-11	ABSORBER, SURGE					
VDR003	1-417-341-11	ABSORBER, SURGE		C215	1-107-910-11	ELECT	100 $\mu$ F 20% 50V
<b>CRYSTAL</b>				C216	1-107-910-11	ELECT	100 $\mu$ F 20% 50V
X0101	1-795-613-11	VIBRATOR, CRYSTAL (27MHZ)		C217	1-107-910-11	ELECT	100 $\mu$ F 20% 50V
X0200	1-767-399-31	VIBRATOR, CRYSTAL		C218	1-107-910-11	ELECT	100 $\mu$ F 20% 50V
X0300	1-795-612-11	VIBRATOR, CRYSTAL		C219	1-107-910-11	ELECT	100 $\mu$ F 20% 50V
X0900	1-760-928-21	VIBRATOR, CRYSTAL					
X1100	1-767-888-21	VIBRATOR, CRYSTAL		C220	1-107-910-11	ELECT	100 $\mu$ F 20% 50V
				C221	1-107-910-11	ELECT	100 $\mu$ F 20% 50V
X1300	1-760-337-21	VIBRATOR, CRYSTAL		C222	1-107-910-11	ELECT	100 $\mu$ F 20% 50V
				C224	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F 10% 16V
				C225	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F 10% 16V
				C226	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F 10% 16V
				C227	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F 10% 16V
				C228	1-107-909-11	ELECT	47 $\mu$ F 20% 50V
				C229	1-107-910-11	ELECT	100 $\mu$ F 20% 50V
				C230	1-107-910-11	ELECT	100 $\mu$ F 20% 50V
				C231	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F 10% 16V
<b>PS-449</b>				<b>CONNECTOR</b>			
* A-6787-911-A	PS-449 BOARD, COMPLETE			* CN101	1-580-230-11	PIN, CONNECTOR (PC BOARD) 2P	
* 3-741-933-01	HEAT SINK			* CN201	1-564-711-11	PIN, CONNECTOR (SMALL TYPE) 9P	
7-682-547-09	SCREW +B 3X6			* CN202	1-564-712-11	PIN, CONNECTOR (SMALL TYPE) 10P	
7-685-646-79	SCREW +BVP 3X8 TYPE2 IT-3			* CN203	1-560-892-00	PIN, CONNECTOR 4P	
				* CN204	1-560-892-00	PIN, CONNECTOR 4P	
<b>CAPACITOR</b>				<b>DIODE</b>			
$\Delta$ C101	1-104-705-11	MYLAR	0.1 $\mu$ F 20% 250V	$\Delta$ D101	8-719-077-76	DIODE	D2SB60A-F04
$\Delta$ C102	1-104-705-11	MYLAR	0.1 $\mu$ F 20% 250V	D102	8-719-063-70	DIODE	D1NL20U
$\Delta$ C103	1-113-900-11	CERAMIC	470pF 10% 250V	D104	8-719-063-70	DIODE	D1NL20U
C104	1-113-900-11	CERAMIC	470pF 10% 250V	D133	8-719-110-31	DIODE	RD12ESB2
$\Delta$ C105	1-113-889-11	CERAMIC	0.001 $\mu$ F 20% 250V	D201	8-719-074-57	DIODE	FCH10A04
$\Delta$ C106	1-125-738-11	ELECT(BLOCK)	270 $\mu$ F 20% 250V				
C107	1-129-928-61	FILM	0.0027 $\mu$ F 5% 630V				

NOTE: The components identified by shading and  $\Delta$  mark are critical for safety. Replace only with part number specified.

NOTE: Les composants identifiés par un trame et une marque  $\Delta$  sont critiques pour la sécurité. Ne les remplacer que par une pièce portant le numéro spécifié.

**PS-449**  
**FL-134**

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES		
D202	8-719-061-66	DIODE	FCQ06A06		
D203	8-719-061-66	DIODE	FCQ06A06		
D204	8-719-063-70	DIODE	D1NL20U		
D205	8-719-160-64	DIODE	RD16FB1		
ET201	1-537-770-21	TERMINAL BOARD, GROUND			
ET202	1-537-770-21	TERMINAL BOARD, GROUND			
ET203	1-537-770-21	TERMINAL BOARD, GROUND			
<b><u>FUSE</u></b>					
 F101	1-533-451-11	FUSE	3.15A	125V	
<b><u>FUSE HOLDER</u></b>					
FH101	1-533-223-11	FUSE HOLDER	0A	0V	
FH102	1-533-223-11	FUSE HOLDER	0A	0V	
<b><u>IC</u></b>					
 IC101	6-702-180-01	IC	MR1520		
 IC201	8-759-667-11	IC	HA17L431P-TZ		
IC202	8-759-471-81	IC	PQ05RD11		
IC203	8-759-438-18	IC	PQ12RD08		
IC204	6-700-898-01	IC	PQ05RD21		
IC205	6-700-897-01	IC	PQ12RD21		
IC206	6-700-897-01	IC	PQ12RD21		
<b><u>COIL</u></b>					
L201	1-406-659-11	INDUCTOR	10μH		
L202	1-406-659-11	INDUCTOR	10μH		
L204	1-410-513-11	INDUCTOR	22μH		
 LF101	1-437-861-11	COIL, LINE FILTER			
<b><u>PHOTO COUPLER</u></b>					
 PH101	8-749-924-35	PHOTO COUPLER	ON3171-R		
<b><u>IC LINK</u></b>					
 PS101	1-533-595-31	IC LINK	3.15A	90V	
PS102	1-576-508-21	IC LINK	0.7A	50V	
 PS103	1-576-288-31	IC LINK	10A	90V	
<b><u>RESISTOR</u></b>					
R101	1-249-430-11	CARBON	12K	5%	1/4W
R102	1-218-893-11	METAL CHIP	82K	0.50%	1/10W
R104	1-218-903-11	METAL CHIP	220K	0.50%	1/10W
R105	1-249-411-11	CARBON	330	5%	1/4W
R106	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	0		

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES		
R107	1-218-883-11	METAL CHIP	33K	0.50%	1/10W
$\Delta$ R201	1-218-849-11	METAL CHIP	1.2K	0.50%	1/10W
$\Delta$ R202	1-218-833-11	METAL CHIP	270	0.50%	1/10W
$\Delta$ R203	1-218-845-11	METAL CHIP	820	0.50%	1/10W
R204	1-249-412-11	CARBON	390	5%	1/4W
R205	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W
R206	1-216-816-11	METAL CHIP	390	5%	1/10W
R207	1-216-813-11	METAL CHIP	220	5%	1/10W
R208	1-212-966-00	FUSIBLE	22	5%	1/2W
R209	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W
R210	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W
R211	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W
R212	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W
R213	1-216-821-11	METAL CHIP	1K	5%	1/10W

**TRANSFORMER**

$\Delta$  T101 1-437-962-11 TRANSFORMER, CONVERTER

**VARISTOR**

$\Delta$  VDR101 1-801-265-31 VARISTOR TNR10V271K660

**FL-134**

**A-6787-914-A FL-134 BOARD, MOUNTED**

**CAPACITOR**

C0401	1-162-970-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.01 $\mu$ F	10%	25V
C0404	1-124-589-11	ELECT	47 $\mu$ F	20%	16V
C0405	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1 $\mu$ F	10%	16V
C0406	1-124-257-00	ELECT	2.2 $\mu$ F	20%	50V

**CONNECTOR**

CN401	1-816-497-11	CONNECTOR, FFC/FPC 24P
CN402	1-568-670-11	CONNECTOR, BOARD TO BOARD 9P

**DIODE**

D0401	8-719-070-83	DIODE	SELU5E20C-TP15
D0404	8-719-404-50	DIODE	MA111-TX
D0405	8-719-080-13	DIODE	MPY3361XT
D0406	8-719-053-87	DIODE	SLR-332VC-T32
D0407	8-719-077-08	DIODE	SLR-332DCT32
D0408	8-719-404-50	DIODE	MA111-TX

FL-134

FR-198

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES		
IC					
IC0401	6-703-128-01	IC	TSOP4840SB1		
CHIP CONDUCTOR					
JR0401	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	0		
JR0402	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	0		
JR0403	1-216-296-11	SHORT CHIP	0		
JR0404	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	0		
JR0405	1-216-296-11	SHORT CHIP	0		
JS0402	1-216-864-11	SHORT CHIP	0		
TRANSISTOR					
Q0401	8-729-010-25	TRANSISTOR	MSD601-RT1		
Q0404	8-729-010-25	TRANSISTOR	MSD601-RT1		
Q0405	8-729-010-05	TRANSISTOR	MSB709-RT1		
Q0406	8-729-010-25	TRANSISTOR	MSD601-RT1		
Q0407	8-729-010-05	TRANSISTOR	MSB709-RT1		
Q0408	8-729-010-05	TRANSISTOR	MSB709-RT1		
RESISTOR					
R0401	1-216-158-00	RES-CHIP	22	5%	1/8W
R0404	1-216-818-11	METAL CHIP	560	5%	1/10W
R0405	1-216-829-11	METAL CHIP	4.7K	5%	1/10W
R0406	1-216-837-11	METAL CHIP	22K	5%	1/10W
R0407	1-216-829-11	METAL CHIP	4.7K	5%	1/10W
R0408	1-216-827-11	METAL CHIP	3.3K	5%	1/10W
R0409	1-216-809-11	METAL CHIP	100	5%	1/10W
R0410	1-216-815-11	METAL CHIP	330	5%	1/10W
R0411	1-216-809-11	METAL CHIP	100	5%	1/10W
R0412	1-216-833-11	METAL CHIP	10K	5%	1/10W
R0413	1-216-809-11	METAL CHIP	100	5%	1/10W
R0414	1-216-837-11	METAL CHIP	22K	5%	1/10W
R0415	1-216-837-11	METAL CHIP	22K	5%	1/10W
R0416	1-216-837-11	METAL CHIP	22K	5%	1/10W
R0417	1-216-837-11	METAL CHIP	22K	5%	1/10W
R0418	1-216-222-00	RES-CHIP	10K	5%	1/8W
SWITCH					
S0401	1-771-349-41	SWITCH, KEYBOARD			
S0402	1-762-875-21	SWITCH, KEYBOARD			
S0403	1-771-349-41	SWITCH, KEYBOARD			

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES		
FR-198					
* A-6787-915-A FR-198 BOARD, MOUNTED					
CAPACITOR					
C0302	1-107-826-11	CERAMIC CHIP	0.1μF	10%	16V
CONNECTOR					
CN0301	1-568-664-11	CONNECTOR, BOARD TO BOARD 9P			
CN0302	1-785-729-21	CONNECTOR, FFC/FPC 7P			
RESISTOR					
R0301	1-216-837-11	METAL CHIP	22K	5%	1/10W
R0302	1-216-837-11	METAL CHIP	22K	5%	1/10W
R0303	1-216-837-11	METAL CHIP	22K	5%	1/10W
R0304	1-216-837-11	METAL CHIP	22K	5%	1/10W
SWITCH					
S0301	1-762-875-21	SWITCH, KEYBOARD			
S0302	1-762-875-21	SWITCH, KEYBOARD			
S0303	1-762-875-21	SWITCH, KEYBOARD			
ACCESSORIES AND PACKAGING					
	1-779-696-22	ADAPTOR, PLUG			
	1-824-651-11	CABLE, DATA			
	1-769-758-21	CABLE, MODULAR (WITH PLUG)			
	1-823-364-21	CORD, CONNECTION			
	1-824-912-11	CORD, CONNECTION			
	3-078-791-02	CUSHION (BOTTOM)			
	3-078-790-02	CUSHION (TOP)			
	3-078-792-02	INDIVIDUAL CARTON			
	1-782-913-22	IR BLASTER			
	3-078-318-01	QUICK SET-UP GUIDE			
	3-078-316-01	SET-UP GUIDE			
	3-078-317-01	VIEWER'S GUIDE			
REMOTE COMMANDER					
	1-476-036-12	REMOTE COMMANDER (RMT-V303)			
	9-885-030-45	BATTERY COVER (FOR RMT-V303)			

**Sony Corporation**  
**Sony Technology Center**  
**Technical Services**  
**Service Promotion Department**

**English**  
**2002LJ74WEB-1**  
**Printed in USA**  
**© 2002.12**



3-078-3

# ***Digital Network Recorder***

---

## ***Installation Guide***

*Please use this manual first*

***SVR-3000***

© 2002 by Sony Electronics Inc.

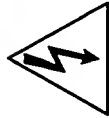
Sony is a registered trade mark of Sony Corporation. TiVo, TV your way, TiVo Central, the TiVo logo, the series 2 logo, Season Pass are trademarks of TiVo Inc. © 2002 Sony Electronics Inc.

## WARNING

To reduce the risk of fire or shock hazard, do not expose the unit to rain or moisture.



This symbol is intended to alert the user to the presence of uninsulated "dangerous voltage" within the product's enclosure that may be of significant magnitude to constitute a risk of electric shock to persons.



This symbol is intended to alert the user to the presence of important operating and maintenance (servicing) instructions in the literature accompanying the appliance.



### Note to the CATV Installer

This reminder is provided to call the CATV system installer's attention to Article 820-40 of the NEC that provides guidelines for proper grounding and, in particular, specifies that the cable ground shall be connected to the grounding system of the building as close to the point of cable entry as practical.

## Attention

### Telephone Line Interruption

Periodically, the SVR Recorder dials in to the TiVo Personal TV Service, via your telephone line using a toll free or local number. If you pick up your telephone during the time information is being transferred, you will hear static noise. If you would like to use your telephone while the information is being transferred you can hang up and pick up your telephone again. The SVR Recorder will disconnect and allow you to place your call. You can also interrupt the transfer at any time by temporarily unplugging the phone line from the receiver.

You are cautioned that any changes or modifications not expressly approved in this manual could void your authority to operate this equipment.

The SVR Recorder is intended for use only within the United States.

## Owner's Record

The model and serial numbers are located on the back of the SVR Recorder. Record these numbers in the space provided below. Refer to these numbers whenever you need to call your sales or service representative regarding this product.

Model Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Serial Number: \_\_\_\_\_

## Customer Support

### For Hardware and Installation

To arrange for the installation of your SVR Recorder, call the dealer from whom you purchased your system.

For general information, or to resolve problems related to the operation of your SVR Recorder, please contact your Sony dealer or visit Sony website at <http://www.sony.com/service>. If your dealer or installer is unable to answer your questions, call the Sony Direct Response Center at 1-877-585-SONY (7669) or <http://www.sel.sony.com/service>.

### TiVo Service and Activation

To use most of the features of your SVR Recorder, you will need to activate the TiVo Service. You can activate the TiVo Service on the web at <http://www.tivo.com/activate>, or by calling TiVo Customer Care at 1-877-367-8486. TiVo Customer Care can also help you if you have questions about your channel lineup, program guide data, or on screen messages.

### Macrovision Information

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology is granted by Macrovision for home and other limited pay per view uses only. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

### Note on Recording Programming

Programming may be recorded for home viewing only. All other recording is expressly prohibited. Some programming may not be recorded. An additional recording fee may be applied. Call your program providers for details.

# Table of contents

## Getting Started

- 7 Overview
- 8 Carton Contents
- 9 Parts, Controls, and Functions
  - 9 Front Panel
  - 10 Back Panel
  - 11 Remote Control
- 13 Installing Batteries

## Connecting Your Equipment

- 15 Connection Examples
- 16 Example 1: Antenna or cable, with a VCR, and splitting the signal
- 18 Example 2: Antenna or cable, with a VCR
- 20 Example 3: Antenna or cable, without a VCR
- 22 Example 4: Satellite set-top box with serial connection, and a VCR, using S-Video cables
- 24 Example 5: Satellite set-top box with IR input, and a VCR, using S-Video cables

- 26 Example 6: Satellite or cable box with IR input, and a VCR, using RF cables
- 28 Example 7: Satellite and antenna or cable, with a VCR
- 30 Example 8: Satellite and cable with boxes, with a VCR
- 32 Continuing Your Connection Steps
- 35 Back Panel Connections Reference
- 39 General Hints

## Setting Up Your System

- 41 Programming Your Remote Control

## Additional Information

- 45 Troubleshooting
- 51 Specifications
- 52 FCC Regulations and Information

## About This Installation Guide

This Installation Guide is part of the complete documentation for your SVR Recorder. This Installation Guide describes how to connect the SVR Recorder and activate the TiVo Service. The Start Here poster provides an easy to read summary of this Installation Guide. The TiVo Viewer's Guide provides detailed information about how to use your TiVo Service, and how to use the different features of this product.

The TiVo Viewer's Guide and this Installation Guide contain some sections with the same name, such as the Troubleshooting section, and similar or related information. These sections are in fact different, but do relate to each other. You will find information regarding connections and activating the TiVo Service in this Installation Guide. You will find information about the different features of the SVR Recorder, and using the TiVo Service, in the TiVo Viewer's Guide.

A **Note** provides information that may be necessary to complete the task.

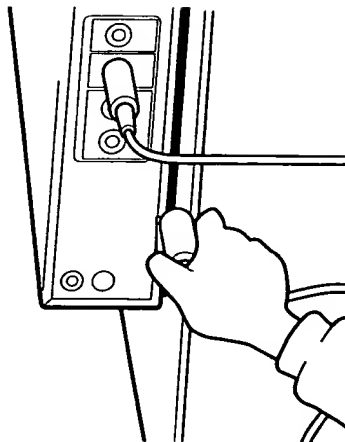
## Overview

Your SVR Recorder comes complete with everything you need to enjoy and enhance your television viewing experience.

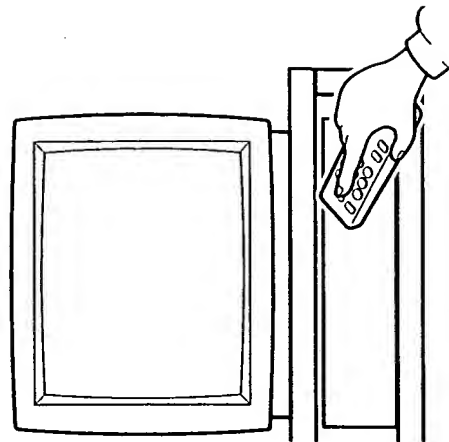
You'll need to have a standard phone line (analog) for the SVR Recorder to use. You do not need to install a new phone jack or phone number for the SVR Recorder to work. However, the SVR Recorder should always be connected to your phone line.

You can find detailed instructions for connecting your SVR Recorder on the Start Here poster and in "Connecting Your Equipment" on page 15.

### 1 Connect Your SVR Recorder.



### 2 Complete Guided Setup, and activate your TiVo Service.



#### Note

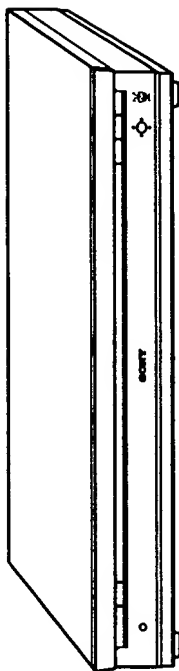
This Installation Guide describes how to connect the SVR Recorder and activate the TiVo Service. The Start Here poster provides an easy to read summary of this Installation Guide. The TiVo Viewer's Guide provides detailed information about how to use your TiVo Service.



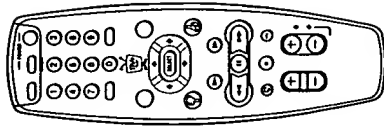
# Carton Contents

Check your carton to make sure all of the following items are included. If you are missing any items, contact your Sony dealer.

SVR Recorder



Remote Control



Size AA (R6)  
batteries



S-Video cable



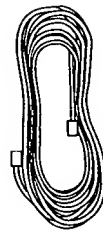
Audio/Video cables



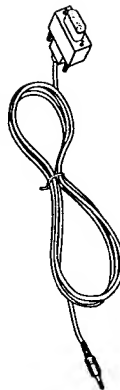
Phone splitter



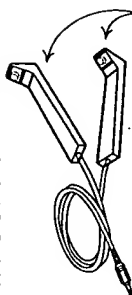
Phone cord



Serial Control cable



IR Control cable



IR Emitters

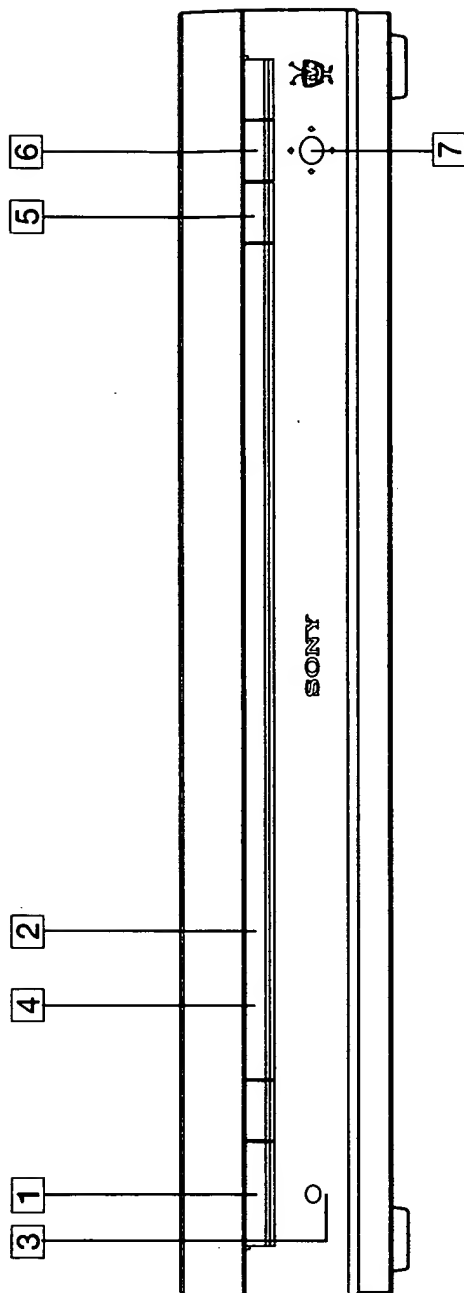
## Notes

- Your SVR Recorder comes with 25 feet of phone cord for you to use to connect to your nearest phone jack. You don't need a dedicated phone line (your SVR Recorder only needs to share the phone line for five to ten minutes a day), but you may wish to consider installing a jack nearby.
- Your SVR Recorder cannot be used with any digital phone system. Doing so will damage your SVR Recorder and void your warranty.

# Parts, Controls, and Functions

## Getting Started

Front Panel



**1 Power button/LED**

Green indicates that the SVR Recorder is powered on.

**2 Connecting LED**

Yellow indicates that the SVR recorder is connecting to the telephone line.

**3 Remote Control Signal Reception Window**

Receives control signals from your Remote Control.

**4 Recording LED**

Red indicates that the SVR Recorder is recording a program.

Yellow indicates that the SVR Recorder is currently using the telephone line to call the TiVo Service.

The LED may appear orange if the unit is both recording a program and using the telephone line.

**5 LIVE TV/GUIDE button**

Switches between live TV and program guide.

**6 SELECT buttons**

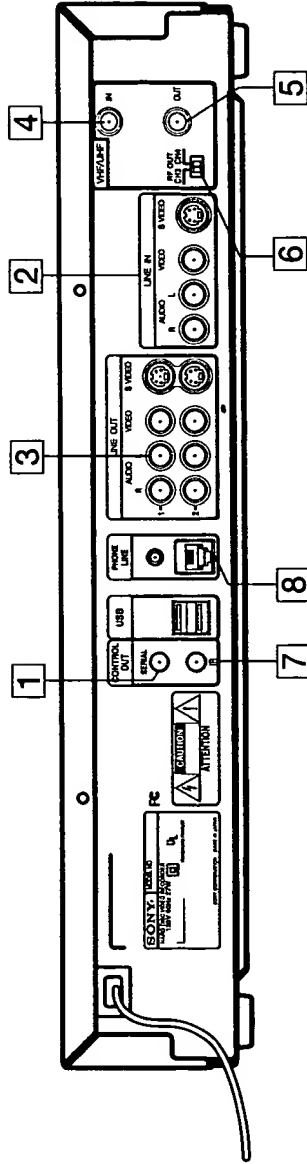
Select (chooses) the currently highlighted item in a menu.

**7 Navigation arrows**

Moves the highlighted area or cursor left, right, up, or down.

## Back Panel

This section provides a brief explanation of the jacks and switch on the back panel and where they are located. You can find detailed information about each jack and switch, and how it is used, on the page number indicated in parentheses.



### 1 Cntrl (control) Out Serial jack

Connect to your satellite set-top box so the SVR Recorder can change channels on your satellite set-top box (see page 35).

### 2 A/V Input jacks

- Connect the right (red) and left (white) jacks to the cable box or satellite receiver audio output jacks of the same color (see page 36).
- Connect the composite video (yellow) jack to the cable box or satellite receiver composite video output (see page 36).
- Connect the S-Video jack to the cable box or satellite receiver S-Video output jack if available. This connection provides a better picture than the composite video connection (see page 37).

### 3 A/V Output jacks

- Connect the right (red) and left (white) jacks to the TV, VCR and/or audio system audio input jacks of the same color (two sets available) (see page 37).
- Connect the composite video (yellow) jack to the TV and/or VCR composite video input (two jacks available) (see page 37).
- Connect the S-Video jack to the TV S-Video input jack if available. This connection provides a better picture than the composite video connection (see page 37).

### 4 RF In

Connect to your off-air antenna or cable service if you do not have a digital satellite receiver or cable box so the SVR Recorder can receive sound and pictures (see page 38).

### 5 RF Out

Connect to your TV if your TV does not have A/V inputs so you can view sound and pictures (see page 38).

### 6 Ch 3/4 switch

Set to the channel that does not broadcast a station in your area. Tune your TV to this channel to view sound and pictures from the SVR Recorder if you connected your TV using RF Out (see page 38).

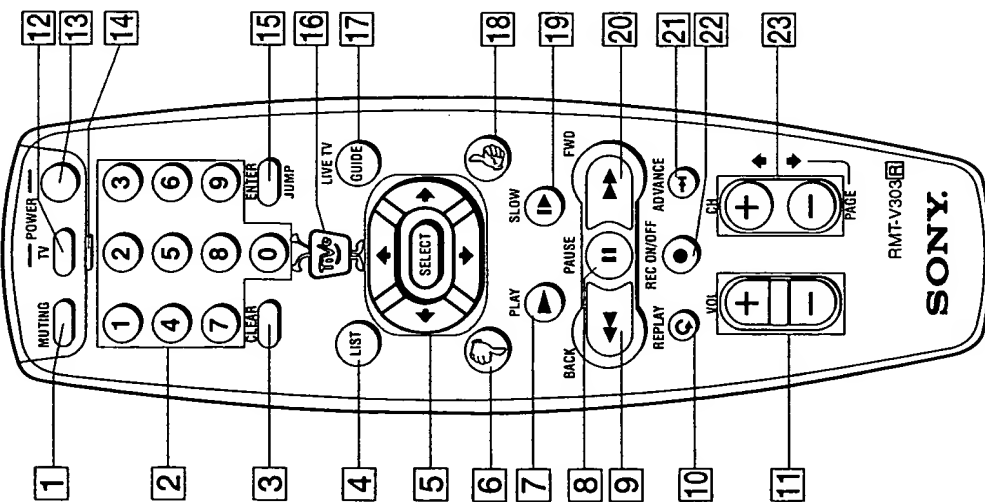
### 7 Cntrl (control) Out IR jack

Connect to your satellite or cable set-top box so the SVR Recorder can change channels on your satellite or cable set-top box (see page 35).

### 8 Phone Line jack

Connect to your phone line so the SVR Recorder can receive program and other information from the TiVo Service (see page 35).

Use the Remote Control to complete Guided Setup and activate your TiVo Service. For complete instructions on how to use the Remote Control, refer to the TiVo Viewer's Guide.



### 1 Muting button

Mutes the sound of your TV. See "Programming Your Remote Control" on page 41 to set up the Remote Control to operate your TV.

### 2 Number keys

Enter numbers for changing channels and entering setup information.

### 3 CLEAR button

Closes the Program Banner and Status Bar, and clears the text characters you enter in any text entry box.

### 4 LIST button

Opens the "Now Playing List" of recorded programs.

### 5 Navigation arrows and SELECT buttons

Moves the highlighted area or cursor left, right, up, or down, and chooses (selects) the currently highlighted item in a menu.

### 6 Thumbs Down button

Use to indicate that you don't like a program. You can apply up to three thumbs down for any program.

### 7 PLAY button

Plays a program at normal speed.

### 8 PAUSE button

Pauses playback. Once in pause mode, you can use the BACK and FWD (forward) buttons to reverse or advance frame-by-frame.

### 9 BACK button

Plays a program in reverse fast search mode. Shows a program in reverse frame-by-frame when in pause mode.

### 10 (Instant) REPLAY button

Replays the previous eight seconds of the current program.

### 11 VOL (volume) +/- buttons

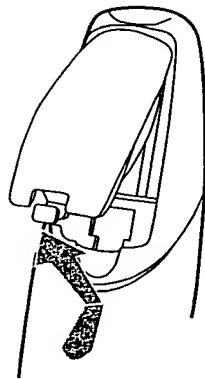
Controls the volume of your TV. See "Programming Your Remote Control" on page 51 to set up the Remote Control to operate your TV or audio system.

- 12 TV POWER button**  
Turns your TV or audio system on and off. See “Programming Your Remote Control” on page 41 to set up the Remote Control to operate your TV.
- 13 (Stand-by) POWER button**  
Puts your SVR Recorder into and out of stand-by mode. When in stand-by mode, the unit can record selected and suggested programs and connect to the TiVo Service as needed.
- 14 Remote Active LED**  
Flashes while the Remote Control is transmitting signals or being programmed.
- 15 ENTER/JUMP button**  
Sets the currently entered number as the channel to watch, or jumps back to the previously set channel.
- 16 TiVo button**  
Opens TiVo Central, which provides access to features and options.
- 17 LIVE TV/GUIDE button**  
Switches between live TV and program guide.
- 18 Thumbs Up button**  
Use to indicate that you like a program. You can apply up to three thumbs up for any program.
- 19 SLOW button**  
Plays a program in slow speed.
- 20 FWD (forward) button**  
Plays a program in fast search mode. Shows a program frame-by-frame when in pause mode.
- 21 ADVANCE button**  
Advances the viewing of a program either to the end of a recorded program or to the current time in LIVE TV.
- 22 REC (record) ON/OFF button**  
Starts or stops recording of the current program.
- 23 CH (channel) +/- or PAGE buttons**  
Changes the SVR Recorder’s program channel shown on your TV. Also pages up and down in channel and program listing guides.

## Installing Batteries

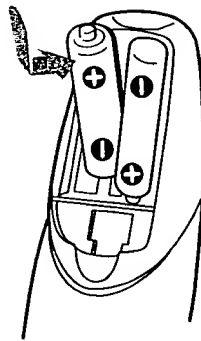
Before you can use the Remote Control, you must insert the supplied batteries. If you want to use this Remote Control to operate other audio/video equipment, such as a TV or stereo, you must program the Remote Control (see page 41).

### 1 Pull the latch and lift the cover to open the battery compartment.



### 2 Insert two size AA batteries (supplied).

Be sure to match the + and – marks on the batteries with the + and – marks inside the battery compartment.



### 3 Close the cover.

Insert the tabs on the cover into the gaps in the rear of the battery compartment. Then, lower the cover onto the Remote Control until you hear the latch click.

#### Notes

- When the batteries become weak, the Remote Active LED flashes. If the Remote Control does not work properly, the batteries may be weak.
- When replacing batteries, replace both batteries with new ones. Do not mix different types of batteries together.
- When you remove the batteries, any manufacturer codes you've programmed may be erased. To program the Remote Control again, see "Programming Your Remote Control" on page 41.

# Connection Examples

This section provides examples showing how to connect the SVR Recorder to your existing antenna, cable, satellite, or audio-visual system. Choose the example closest to your configuration and follow the steps in that section.

## Note

Your SVR Recorder is not designed for carrying heavy loads such as a TV. Structurally, the SVR Recorder is only capable of supporting the weight of one or two common consumer components such as VCRs, DVD players or AV Receivers (provided they have four good, broad, padded feet for distribution of the weight near the corners of the SVR Recorder).

**Example 1:** Antenna or cable, with a VCR, and splitting the signal (see page 16)

**Example 2:** Antenna or cable, with a VCR (see page 18)

**Example 3:** Antenna or cable, without a VCR (see page 20)

**Example 4:** Satellite set-top box with serial connection, and a VCR, using S-Video cables (see page 22)

**Example 5:** Satellite set-top box with IR input, and a VCR, using S-Video cables (see page 24)

**Example 6:** Satellite or cable box with IR input, and a VCR, using RF cables (see page 26)

**Example 7:** Satellite and antenna or cable, with a VCR (see page 28)

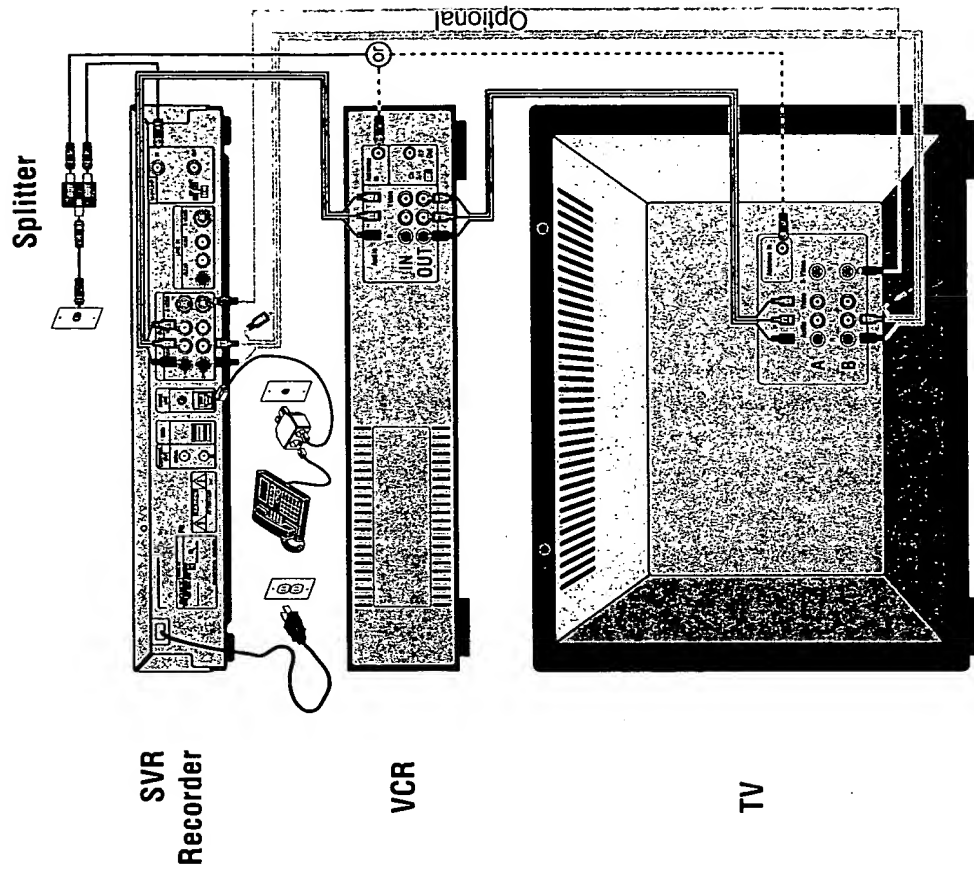
**Example 8:** Satellite and cable with boxes, with a VCR (see page 30)

If you have trouble or if your configuration isn't covered by one of these examples, see "Back Panel Connections Reference" on page 35.

If you have a more advanced system (perhaps including a stereo game system, laser disc player, or switch box), see "General Hints" on page 39.

If you have cable with a set-top box and if you want to split the signal, use the following procedure.

- 1 Attach the RF splitter to the RF Coaxial cable coming out of the wall, before it connects to the cable box.
- 2 Connect one of the RF Coaxial cables coming from the RF splitter to the RF In jack on the back of your set-top box.
- 3 Connect the set-top box's RF Out jack to the SVR Recorder's RF In jack using an RF Coaxial cable. This will let the SVR Recorder record your premium channels normally.
- 4 Attach the other RF Coaxial cable coming from the RF splitter to your TV or VCR's RF In. You won't be able to watch premium channels with this connection, but other channels will work fine if your TV or VCR is cable-ready (which most are).





- Make sure that all of your TV equipment is turned off, including unplugging your SVR Recorder.
- If your TV has only one audio jack instead of two, connect just the white audio cable, and leave the red audio cable disconnected.

Use this example. You have an antenna or cable without a set-top box, you have a VCR, and you want to split your signal to watch one program while you record another. You'll need to purchase an RF signal splitter or switch box and at least two extra RF cables at your local electronics store.

## 1 Connect the program source cable to the SVR Recorder using the splitter.

The program source cable is the cable that your cable company installed, or the one that's connected to your antenna.

If your TV or VCR can accept multiple inputs, use an RF signal splitter. Once connected, you can switch between watching your SVR Recorder and watching your VCR or TV by changing the "Input" or "Source" on your TV using the appropriate button on your TV's remote.

Attach your existing program source cable to the Input section of the RF splitter. Then connect the splitter to the RF In jack on the back of the SVR Recorder using an RF Coaxial cable.

## 2 Connect the other splitter output to your TV.

Use another RF Coaxial cable to connect the other output of the splitter directly to your TV.

Once connected, you can switch between watching TiVo and watching TV in bypass mode using your TV's "Input", "Source", or "TV/Video" button (on either your TV or the TV's remote).

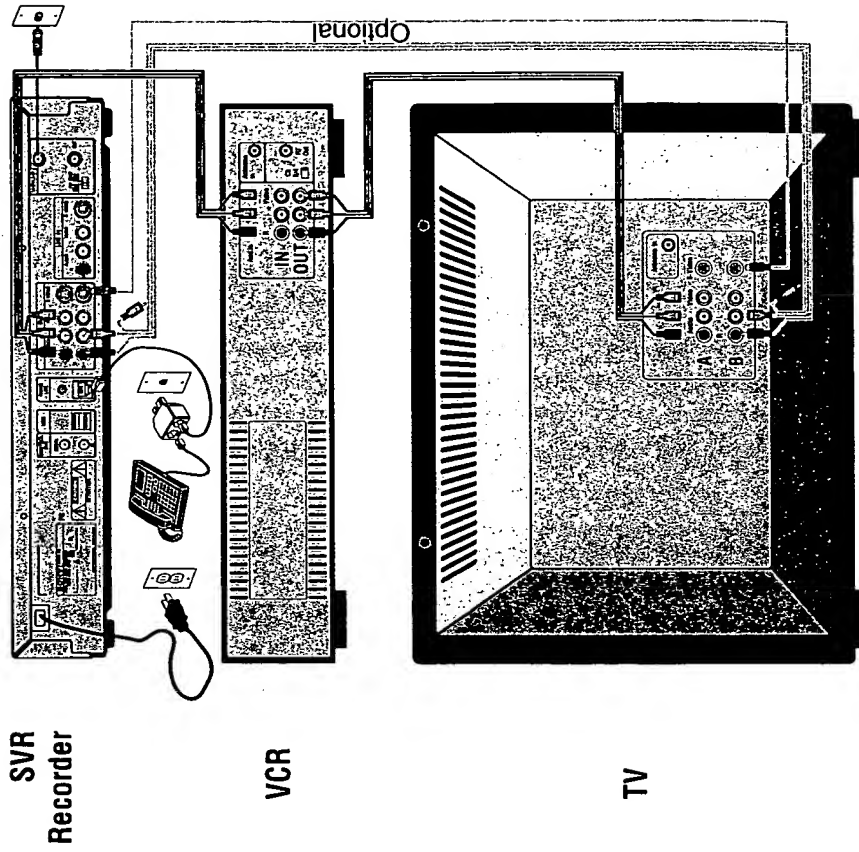
## 3 Continue.

Now continue with step 3 on page 32.

Not

Make sure that all of your TV equipment is turned off, including unplugging your SVR Recorder.

## Example 2: Antenna or cable, with a VCR



Use this example. You have an antenna or cable without a cable box, and you have a VCR, and you do not need to split your signal in order to watch one program while you record another.

## **1 Find your program source cable.**

The program source cable is the cable that your cable company installed, or the one that's connected to your antenna. This cable is probably already hooked up to your VCR or TV; if so, disconnect it.

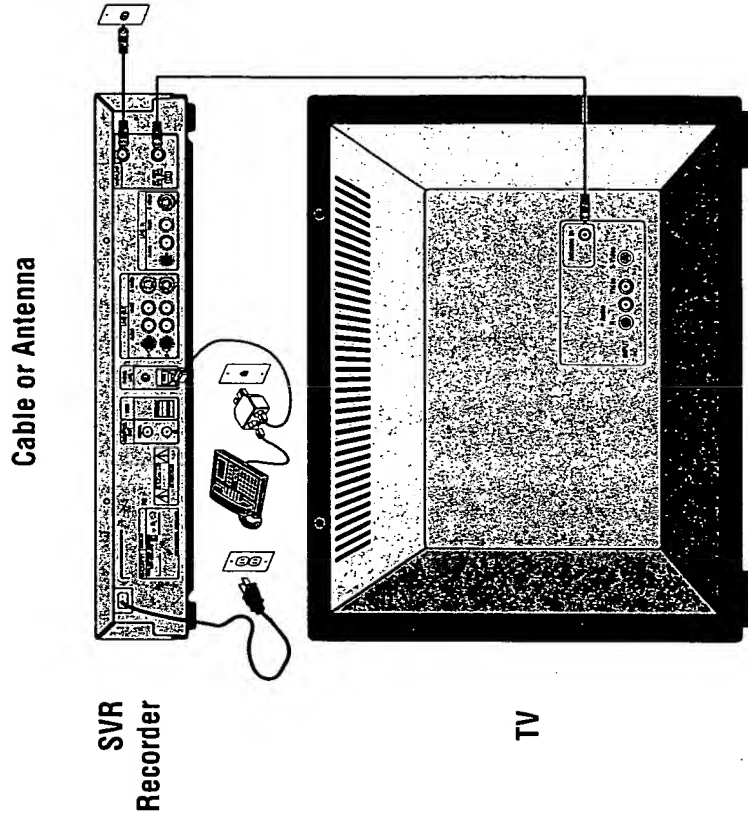
## **2 Connect your program source cable to the RF In jack on the back of the SVR Recorder.**

## **3 Continue.**

Now continue with step 3 on page 32.

Make sure that all of your TV equipment is turned off, including unplugging your SVR Recorder.

### Example 3: Antenna or cable, without a VCR



Use this example if you have an antenna or cable without a cable box, or you do not have a VCR.

## **1 Find your program source cable.**

The program source cable is the cable that your cable company installed, or the one that's connected to your antenna. This cable is probably already hooked up to your VCR or TV; if so, disconnect it.

## **2 Connect your program source cable to the RF In jack on the back of the SVR Recorder.**

## **3 Connect the SVR Recorder to your TV.**

If your TV has a composite video input, connect an Audio/Video cable from the SVR Recorder Output to your TV's Input. If not, connect the RF coaxial cable (supplied) from the RF Out jack on the back of the SVR Recorder to RF In on the back of your TV.

## **4 Continue.**

Now continue with step 4 on page 34.

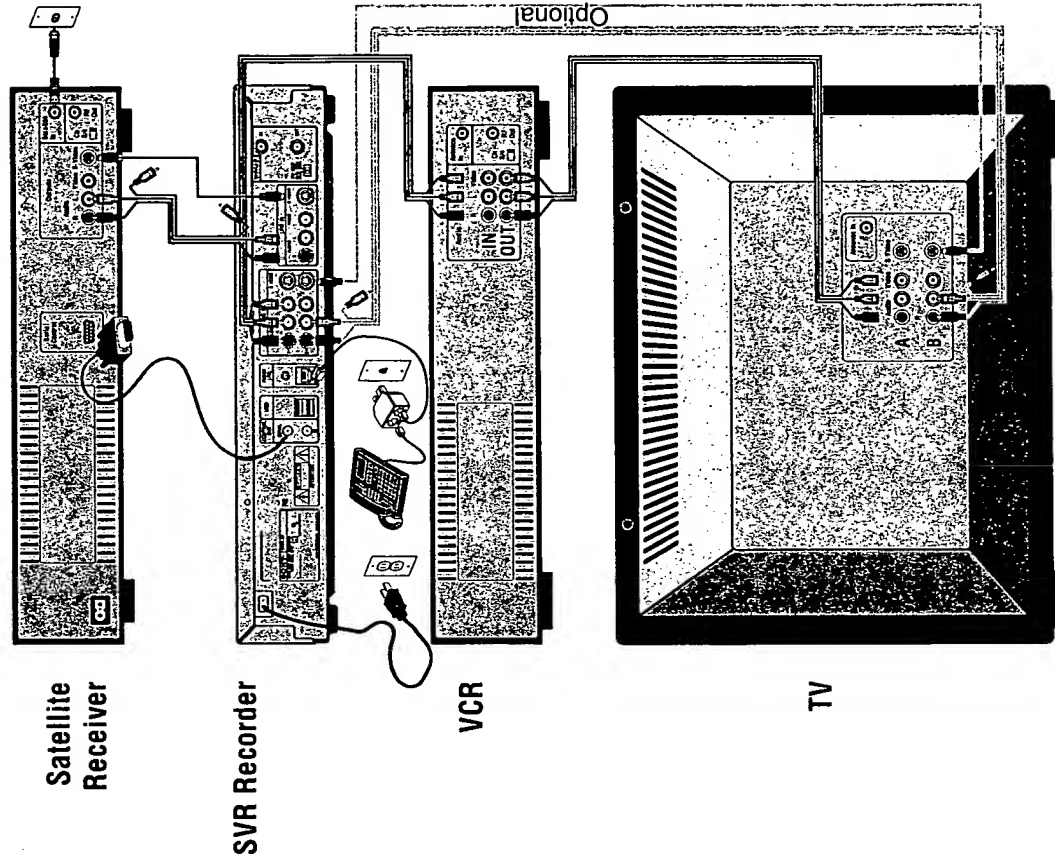
Not

- Make sure that all of your TV equipment is turned off, including unplugging your SVR Recorder.
- You may need to use the serial adapter (not included) or the RCA Home Control Cable (not included) to connect to your set-top box's Serial Control jack. If you have a Serial Control jack that doesn't work with any of the adapters, use the Ctrl Out IR jack and the IR Control cable instead.



\* Some RCA or Sony satellite receivers have a Home Control Cable connector. (similar to phone jack, but larger).

Example 4: Satellite set-top box with serial connection, and a VCR using S-Video cables



Use this example if you have a satellite set-top box with a serial connection, and your satellite set-top box uses S-video cables.

#### Note

A serial connection works better than IR, so use serial when possible.

## 1 Connect the SVR Recorder to your satellite set-top box.

Connect one end of the Serial Control cable (supplied) to the Cntrl Out Serial In jack on the back of the SVR Recorder.

Your satellite set-top box may have two jacks that look like Serial Control jacks. If so, use the one labeled "low speed data." You may need to use the 9 to 25 pin serial adapter to match your jacks, or the RCA Home Control cable (for some RCA boxes).

## 2 Connect your program source/video input to the SVR Recorder.

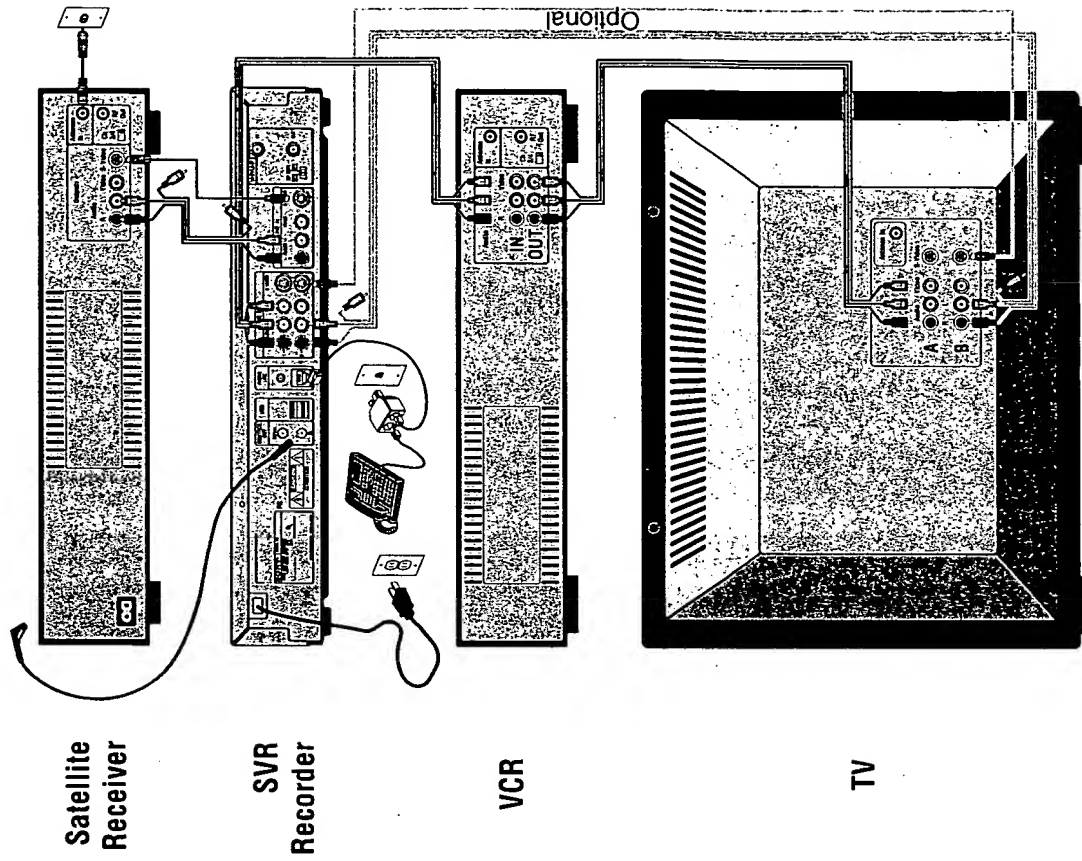
Disconnect any cables that you have connecting your satellite set-top box to your VCR and/or TV. Use the S-Video cable (supplied) to connect the S-Video Out of your satellite set-top box to the S-Video input on the back of the SVR Recorder. You must also use the left (white) and right (red) Audio/Video cables to connect the Audio Out on your satellite set-top box to Audio In on the back of the SVR Recorder, as illustrated here.

## 3 Continue.

Now continue with step 3 on page 32.

- Make sure that all of your TV equipment is turned off, including unplugging your SVR Recorder.
- You may need to purchase a second S-Video cable if one wasn't supplied with your satellite set-top box or VCR.
- Since your TV source comes from a box that can only display one channel at a time, it's not possible for you to split your signal and watch one channel on your TV while the SVR Recorder records a different channel.

**Example 5: Satellite set-top box with IR input, and a VCR, using S-Video cables**





Use this example if you have a satellite set-top box and VCR, no Serial Control jack, and your satellite set-top box uses S-Video cables.

## **1 Connect the SVR Recorder to your satellite box.**

Since you use a satellite set-top box to receive your television signal, the SVR Recorder needs to be able to change channels on your box in order to record shows and display live TV.

Connect the SVR Recorder to the infrared (IR) receiver of your satellite set-top box using the IR Control cable (supplied). Start by plugging the IR Control cable into the Cntrl Out IR jack on the back of the SVR Recorder. Next, locate the IR receiver on your satellite set-top box – it's usually a small dark red window or button on the front of the box.

Place the IR Emitter (from the IR Control cable) on top of the satellite set-top box, sticking out slightly. The IR Emitter has an adhesive strip so you can adhere it to the set-top box. If it is not possible to stick the IR Emitter directly onto the window, place it in front of or as close as possible to the window.

## **2 Connect your program source/video input to the SVR Recorder.**

Disconnect any cables that you have connecting your satellite set-top box to your VCR and/or TV. Use the S-Video cable (supplied) to connect the S-Video Out of your satellite set-top box to the S-Video input on the back of the SVR Recorder. You must also use the left (white) and right (red) Audio/Video cables to connect the Audio Out on your satellite set-top box to the Audio In on the back of the SVR Recorder, as illustrated here.

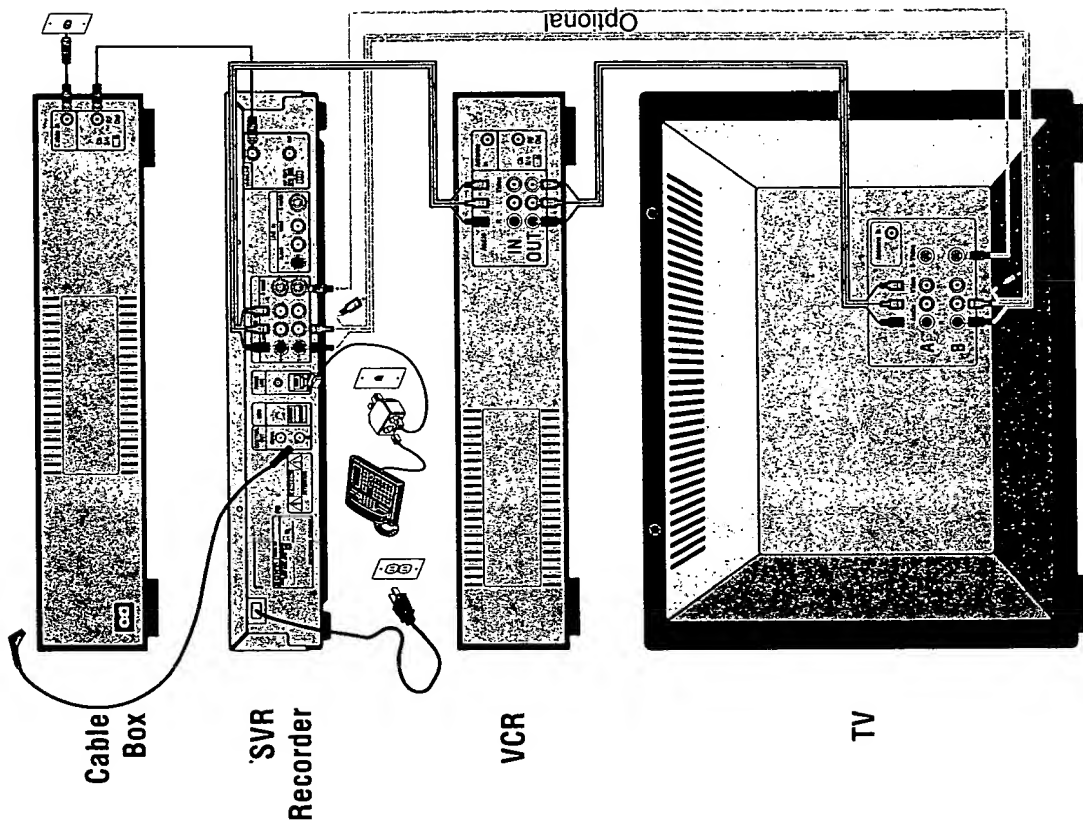
## **3 Continue.**

Now continue with step 3 on page 32.

Not

- Make sure all of your TV equipment is turned off, including unplugging your SVR Recorder.
- Most satellite set-top boxes have S-Video out or Composite out jacks. Check the back of your satellite set-top box carefully; if there are jacks other than RF Out, follow the steps in Example 4 on page 22.
- If you have a cable set-top box that you are only using because your TV and VCR are not cable-ready, and you don't watch premium channels, then you don't need your cable set-top box any more. The SVR Recorder is cable-ready. Follow Example 2 on page 18.

**Example 6: Satellite or cable box with IR input, and a VCR, using RF cables**



Use this example. If you have a cable or satellite set-top box, the satellite box has a serial input jack, and the cable or satellite box has no Composite Video and L/R audio output jacks.

## **1 Connect the SVR Recorder to your cable or satellite box.**

Since you use a cable set-top box or satellite set-top box to receive your television signal, the SVR Recorder needs to be able to change channels on your box in order to record shows and display live TV.

Connect the SVR Recorder to the infrared (IR) receiver of your box using the IR Control cable (supplied). Start by plugging the IR Control cable into the Cntrl Out IR jack on the back of the SVR Recorder. Next, locate the IR receiver on your box – it's a small dark red window or button on the box's front.

Place the IR Emitter (from the IR Control cable) on top of your set-top box, sticking out slightly. The IR Emitter has an adhesive strip so you can adhere it to the set-top box. Position the IR Emitter in front of or as close as possible to the window.

## **2 Connect your program source to the SVR Recorder.**

Find the RF coaxial cable coming from the RF Out jack of your satellite box or cable set-top box. This cable is probably already hooked up to your VCR or TV; if so, disconnect it. Now connect this cable to the RF In jack on the back of the SVR Recorder.

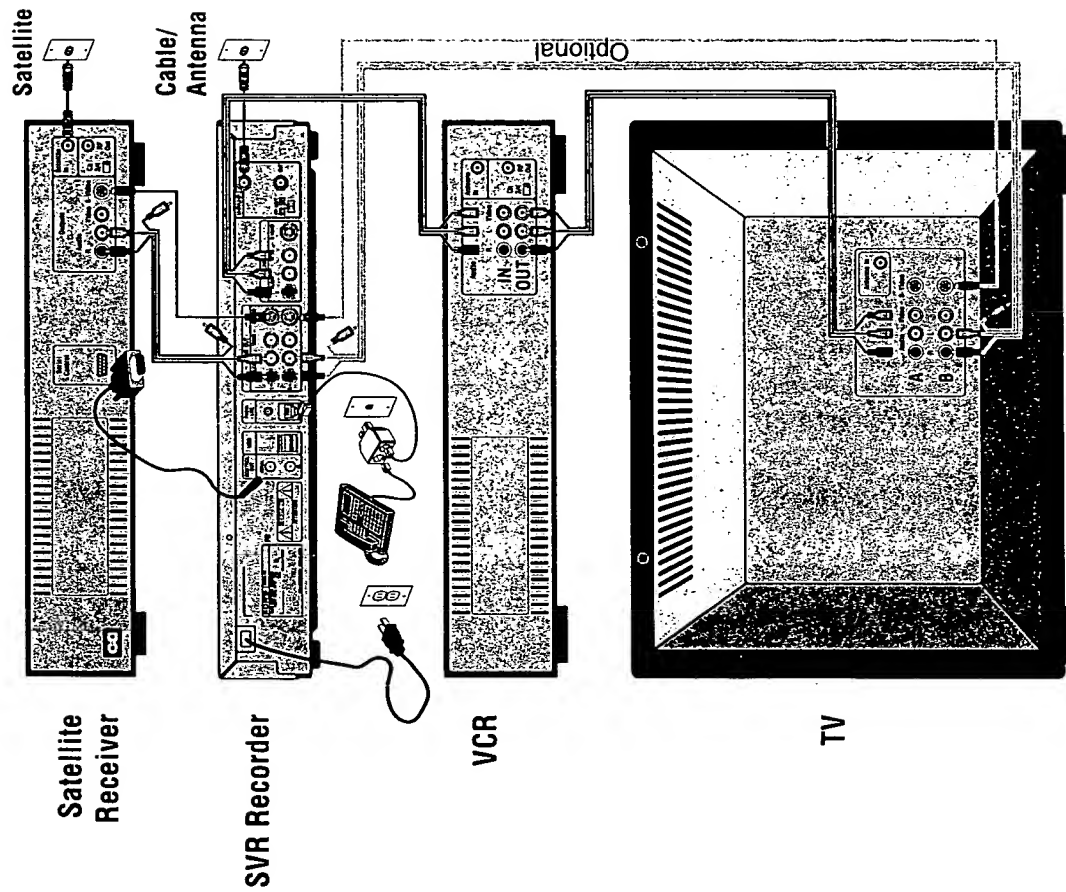
## **3 Continue.**

Now continue with step 3 on page 32.

- Make sure that all of your TV equipment is turned off, including unplugging your SVR Recorder.
- You may need to use the Serial adapter (not included) or the RCA Home Control cable (not included) to connect to your set-top box's Serial Control jack. If you have a Serial Control jack that doesn't work with any of the adapters, use the IR jack and the IR Control cable instead.



Example 7: Satellite and antenna or cable, with a VCR



## Notes

- Since you use a satellite set-top box to receive your television signal, the SVR Recorder needs to be able to change channels on your box in order to record shows and display live TV.
- A serial connection works better than IR, so use serial if possible.
- If your satellite set-top box has two jacks that look like Serial Control jacks, use the one labeled "low speed data." You may need to use the 9 to 25 pin serial adapter to match your box.

Use this example if you have a satellite set-top box and either an antenna or cable (no cable box), and a VCR.

## 1 Connect the SVR Recorder to your satellite box.

**Serial Connection** - If your satellite set-top box has a Serial In jack, you can connect the SVR Recorder to your box using the Serial Control cable (supplied). Otherwise, use the IR connection.

**IR Connection** - Start by plugging the IR Control cable into the Cntrl Out IR jack on the back of the SVR Recorder.

Next, locate the IR receiver on your satellite set-top box – it's usually a small dark red window or button on the front of the box. Place the IR Emitter (from the IR Control cable) on top of the satellite set-top box, sticking out slightly. The IR Emitter has an adhesive strip so you can adhere it to the set-top box. If it is not possible to stick the IR Emitter directly onto the window, place it in front of or as close as possible to the window.

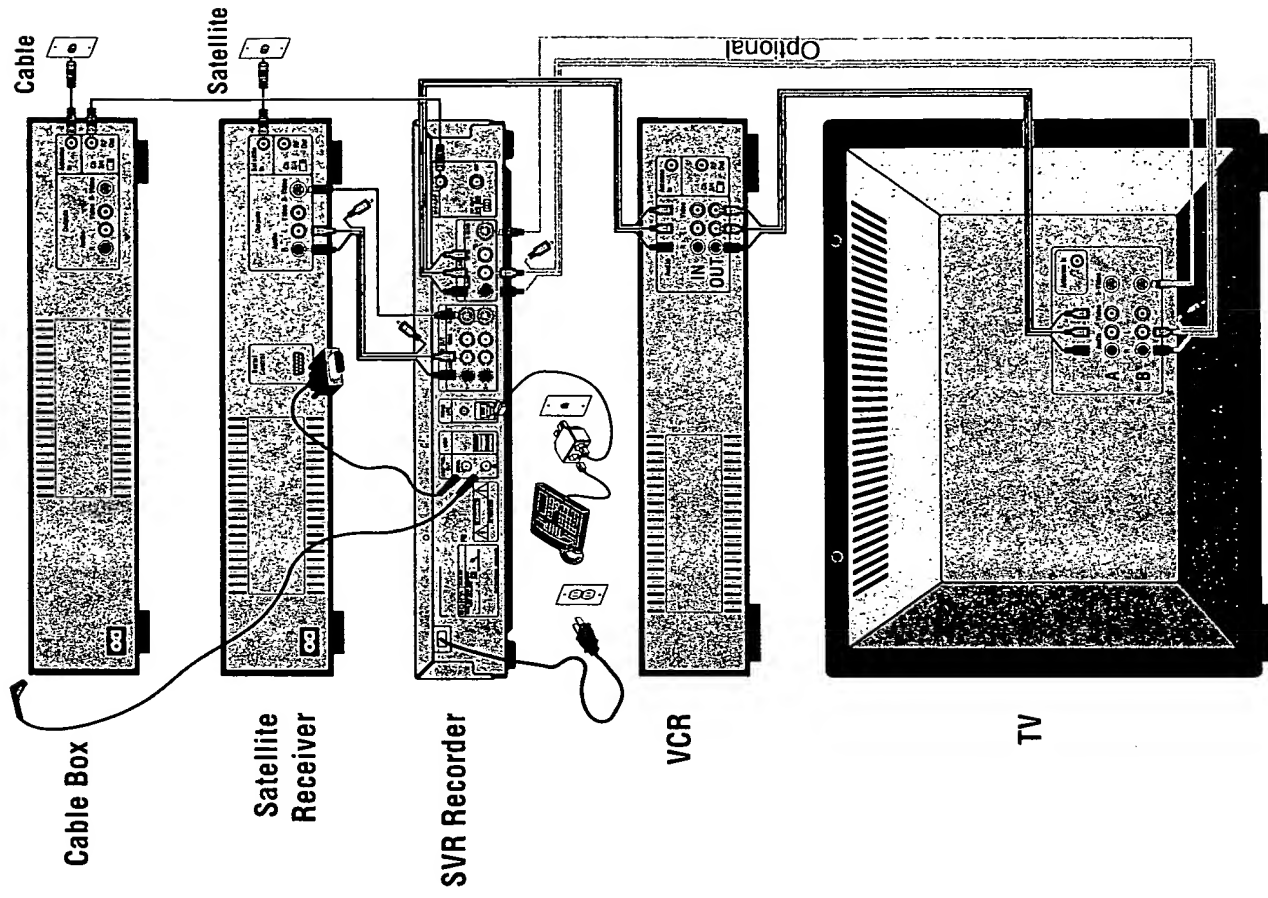
## 2 Connect your program source/video input to the SVR Recorder.

- a) Disconnect any satellite or antenna/cable connections to your VCR and/or TV. Connect the satellite box to the input of the SVR Recorder using the S-Video cable (preferred) and the left (white) and right (red) Audio/Video cables. If you don't have an S-Video output, use the Yellow Composite Video cable instead.
- b) Connect your coaxial antenna or cable to the RF In jack on the back of the SVR Recorder.

## 3 Continue.

Now continue with step 3 on page 32.

- Make sure that all of your TV equipment is turned off, including unplugging your SVR Recorder.
- You may need to use the Serial adapter (not included) or the RCA Home Control cable (not included) to connect to your set-top box's Serial Control jack. If you have a Serial Control jack that doesn't work with any of the adapters, use the IR jack and the IR Control cable instead.



Use this example if you have both a satellite set-top box and a cable set-top box.

- Since you use both a satellite and cable set-top box to receive your television signal, the SVR Recorder needs to be able to change channels on both of your set-top boxes in order to record shows and display live TV.

- If your satellite set-top box doesn't include a Serial In jack, then place the other end of the IR Control cable with the second IR Emitter on top of your satellite receiver, in front and as close as possible to the IR window.

## 1 Connect the SVR Recorder to your satellite box and your cable box.

**Serial Connection** - If your satellite set-top box has a Serial In jack, connect the SVR Recorder to it using the Serial Control cable (supplied). If your satellite set-top box has two jacks that look like Serial Control jacks, use the one labeled "low speed data." You may need to use the 9 to 25 pin Serial adapter to match your box.

**IR Connection** - Plug the IR Control cable into the Cntrl Out IR jack on the back of the SVR Recorder. Next, locate the IR receiver on your cable box – it's usually a small dark red window or button on the front of the box. Place the IR Emitter (from the IR Control cable) in front of the IR receiver, sticking out slightly. The IR Emitter has an adhesive strip so you can adhere it to the box. If it is not possible to stick the IR Emitter directly in front of the window, place it as close to the window as possible.

## 2 Connect your program source/video input to the SVR Recorder.

- Disconnect any satellite or cable connections to your VCR and/or TV.
- Connect the satellite box to the input of the SVR Recorder using the S-Video cable (preferred) and the left (white) and right (red) Audio/Video cables. If you don't have an S-Video output, use the Yellow Audio/Video cable instead.
- Connect your cable set-top box to the RF In jack on the back of the SVR Recorder using the RF Coaxial cable (supplied).

## 3 Continue.

Now continue with step 3 on page 32.

# Continuing Your Connection Steps

## Note

Your VCR is probably already hooked up to your TV. So, once you've connected the SVR Recorder to your VCR, you've also indirectly hooked up the SVR Recorder to your TV. The SVR Recorder will send its signal to your VCR, and in turn your VCR will send the SVR Recorder's signal to your TV.

Once you've completed steps 1 and 2 for your particular connection, continue here with step 3.

## 3 Connect the SVR Recorder to your TV and/or VCR.

If you don't have a VCR, skip to step 3c.

### 3a Video Output to VCR and TV.

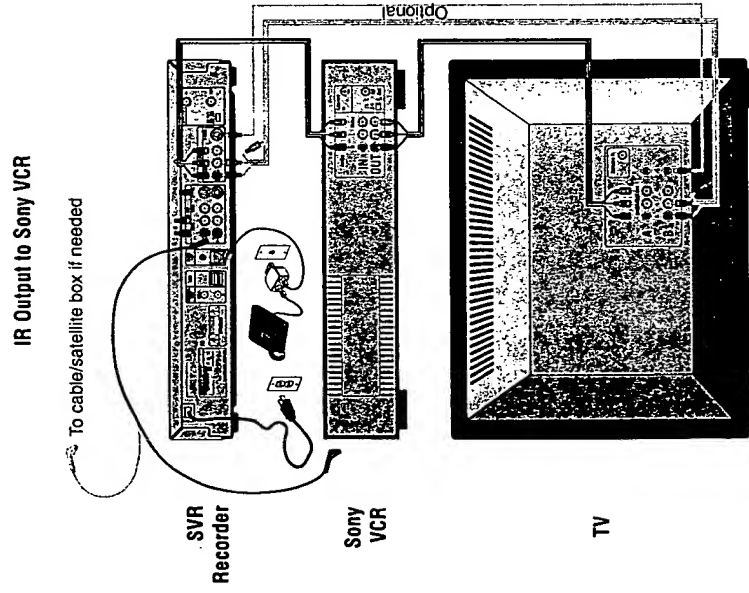
First, look at the back of your VCR and see what types of jacks are available. Choose the best you have from the following options, and connect the SVR Recorder output to your VCR input.

- S-Video cable, along with the Left/Right (white and red) Audio cable (best)
- Composite Video (yellow) and Left/Right Audio (white and red) (better)
- RF Out, using the RF Coaxial cable (good)

Next, connect your VCR output to your TV input, again using the best connection available (see Note).

If you are connecting using RF Coaxial cable, you need to select between output on channel 3 or 4 using the Ch 3/4 switch next to the RF Out jack on the back of the SVR Recorder. To get the best picture, select the channel that is not occupied by a local broadcast channel. For example, if there is a local broadcast station on channel 4, select channel 3. You will need to tune your VCR to this channel to receive the SVR Recorder.

Your VCR should also have a switch that controls its channel output. Make sure that both the SVR Recorder and any other equipment are all using the same channel – that is, if the SVR Recorder uses channel 3 for output, you must also set your VCR to use channel 3 for output, and then tune your TV to channel 3 to receive a signal.





- If you have a VCR that has S-Video inputs and outputs, and your TV also has an S-Video input, it's preferable to have the SVR Recorder send its signal to your VCR and have your VCR send its signal to your TV. You won't be able to connect the SVR Recorder directly to your TV since the SVR Recorder only has one S-Video Out jack.
- Even if you've connected through your VCR, you may want to directly connect the SVR Recorder to your VCR and TV. For example, if your VCR doesn't have S-Video jacks but your TV has an S-Video input, you probably will want to connect the SVR Recorder directly to your TV to take advantage of the better picture quality of S-Video cables. Also, if your TV has picture-in-picture capabilities, you could watch a videotape on your VCR while you're watching the SVR Recorder.
- If your TV has only one audio jack instead of two, connect just the white audio cable, and leave the red audio cable disconnected.

### 3b IR Output to VCR - Sony VCRs only.

If you own a Sony VCR, you can use the IR Control cable (supplied) to save programs to a videotape in the VCR using the "Save to my VCR function". (Once connected, refer to your TiVo Viewer's Guide for instructions on how to save programs to your VCR.)

- Plug the IR Control cable into the Cntrl Out IR jack on the back of the SVR Recorder. If you are using a cable or satellite set-top box, you may have already done this.
- Place one IR Emitter (from the IR Control cable) in front of the IR window on the Sony VCR. You can adhere the IR Emitter using its adhesive bottom.

### 3c Video Output directly to TV.

- If you already did step 3a, this step is optional.
- Look at the back of your TV and the SVR Recorder and see what types of jacks are available. Connect the SVR Recorder output to your TV input using the best possible connection from the following options:
  - S-Video cable, along with the Left/Right (white and red) Audio cable (best)
  - Composite Video (yellow) and Left/Right Audio cable (white and red) (better)
  - RF Output, using the black RF Coaxial cable (good)
- If you are connecting using RF Coaxial cable, you need to select between output on channel 3 or 4 using the small switch next to the RF Out jack on the back of the SVR Recorder. To get the best picture, select the channel that is not occupied by a local broadcast channel. For example, if there is a local broadcast station on channel 4, select channel 3. You will need to tune your VCR to this channel to receive the SVR Recorder.

## 4 Connect the SVR Recorder to your telephone line.

Connect the SVR Recorder to your home telephone line. Use the phone cord (supplied). If you do not have a spare telephone jack for the SVR Recorder, you can plug the phone splitter (supplied) into your telephone jack. Then plug your phone into one of the splitter's jacks and the SVR Recorder into the other.

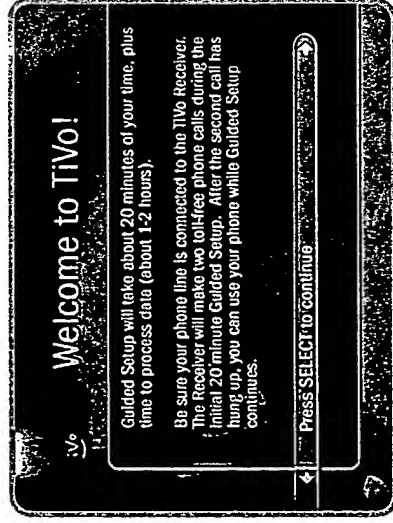
## 5 Plug in the SVR Recorder power.

Now you should have everything connected and ready to go. Check all the connections one more time, then turn on your TV equipment. To turn on the SVR Recorder, plug the power cord into the back of the SVR Recorder. After a few moments, you should see TiVo's **Welcome Screen**.

If you do not, you may need to change channels or change which input your TV uses. If you used RF Coaxial cable in step 3, make sure you're viewing the same channel (3 or 4) that you selected. If you're using S-Video or Audio/Video cables, you'll need to change your TV so that it displays the appropriate input. On some TVs, you need to use the "Input" button to switch inputs; other TVs might label this the "Select" or "Video" button. Other TVs require that you keep changing channels until the alternate input is displayed. If you have trouble, double-check your connections and look for help in Additional Information (see pages 45–50).

## 6 Guided Setup.

Once you see the **Welcome to TiVo!** screen, (see TiVo Viewer's Guide) to set up and activate the TiVo Service.



# Back Panel Connections Reference

This section describes the use of the connection jacks and switch on the back panel of the SVR Recorder. The cables are illustrated on page 8, and the back panel is illustrated on page 10. If your setup doesn't match any of the examples in this section, use this information for general reference.

## Phone Line

Connect the SVR Recorder to your phone line using the telephone cord (supplied). If you do not have a spare telephone jack for the SVR Recorder, use the phone splitter (supplied).

## Cntrl (control) Out Serial

If you have a satellite set-top box or cable set-top box and it features a Serial In jack (sometimes labeled "Low Speed Data"), you can connect the SVR Recorder to your box using the Serial Control cable (supplied), allowing the SVR Recorder to change channels and control your box. A serial connection works better than an IR, so use serial when possible.

## Cntrl (control) Out IR

If you have a satellite set-top box or cable set-top box that doesn't include a Serial In jack, connect the SVR Recorder to the IR sensor of your cable set-top box or satellite set-top box using the IR Control cable (supplied). Start by plugging the IR Control cable into the Cntrl Out IR jack on the back of the SVR Recorder. Next, locate the IR receiver on your cable or satellite set-top box – it's usually a small dark red window or button on the front of the box. Place the IR Emitter (from the IR Control cable) on top of the receiver, sticking out slightly. The IR Emitter has an adhesive strip so you can adhere it to the set-top box. If it is not possible to stick the IR Emitter directly onto the receiver, place it in front of or as close as possible to the receiver. Ignore this jack if you're using the Cntrl Out (Serial) jack.

You can also use the supplied IR Control cable to save programs to your Sony VCR. Plug the supplied IR Control cable into the Cntrl Out IR jack on the back of the SVR Recorder. Position the first IR Emitter in front of the IR receiver on your Sony VCR. You can secure the IR Emitter (from the IR Control cable) using the supplied adhesive strip. Optionally, position the second IR Emitter in front of the IR receiver on your satellite set-top box or cable set-top box so it is slightly extended.

Once this connection is made, refer to your TiVo Viewer's Guide for instructions on how to save programs to your VCR.

### **Audio R and L Inputs**

Use these jacks if you have a satellite set-top box, cable set-top box, or digital cable set-top box. Connect the left (white) and right (red) audio out jacks of your set-top box to the SVR Recorder's audio input using the Audio/Video cables (supplied). Note that you will use these jacks for audio if you're using either the yellow Video Input or S-Video Input. Ignore these jacks if you're using the RF In jack.

### **Composite Video Input**

Use this jack if your satellite set-top box, cable set-top box, or digital cable set-top box does not include an S-Video Output jack. Connect the Video Out of your set-top box to the SVR Recorder using the video connector (yellow) on the Audio/Video cables (supplied). Use this jack only if you can't use S-Video Input. Ignore this jack if you're using the RF In jack.

### **S-Video Input**

S-Video will result in a higher quality image than composite video, so use this jack if you have a satellite set-top box or cable set-top box that features an S-Video out jack. Connect the S-Video Out from your set-top box to the SVR Recorder using the S-Video cable (supplied).

### **Audio R and L Outputs (2 each)**

If your TV or stereo features audio input jacks, connect the left (white) and right (red) Audio Output jacks from the SVR Recorder to your TV or stereo using the Audio/Video cables (supplied). If you have both a TV and a VCR, you might use one set of Audio cables for the TV and the other cables for the VCR; see pages 15 through 31 for examples. Ignore these jacks if you're using the RF Out jack.

### **Composite Video Outputs (2)**

If your TV or VCR features a Composite video jack but doesn't have an S-Video input, connect the SVR Recorder to your TV or VCR's Video In using the yellow video connector on the Composite Audio/Video cables (supplied). If you have both a TV and a VCR, you might use one cable for the TV and the other cable for the VCR. Ignore this jack if you're using S-Video Output or the RF Out jack.

### **S-Video Output**

If your TV or VCR features an S-Video input jack, connect it to the SVR Recorder using a second S-Video cable (not supplied). S-Video is preferred over other connections since it provides the highest quality picture. Ignore this jack if you're using Composite Video Outputs or RF Out – but you should disconnect those other connections and use this one instead if your TV or VCR does feature an S-Video input jack.

### **RF In**

If you have cable or an antenna and don't have a satellite set-top box or cable set-top box, connect your cable or antenna to the SVR Recorder using your existing coaxial cable (the one coming out of the wall). Ignore this jack if you're using Audio/Video Input or S-Video Input. If you have a cable box that features both RF Out and S-Video output or Audio/Video output, choose S-Video or Audio/Video instead of RF.

### **RF Out**

If your TV has multiple inputs and you can use the SVR Recorder's S-Video Output or Audio/Video Output, do not use the RF Out jack. But if your TV only has RF In, connect the SVR Recorder to your TV's RF In using the RF Coaxial cable, and see "Ch 3/4 Switch" below. Use the Remote Control supplied with the SVR Recorder to change program channels shown on your TV.

### **Ch 3/4 Switch**

If you use RF Out, set the output to channel 3 or 4 using this switch. To get the best picture, select the channel that is not occupied by a local broadcast channel. For example, if there is a local broadcast station on channel 4, select channel 3 for the output on the SVR Recorder. You will need to tune your television to this channel (3 or 4) to receive a signal through the SVR Recorder.

### **USB (Universal Serial Bus.) For future use**

## General Hints

- Study the “Back Panel Connections Reference” section on page 35 to learn what jacks are available on your SVR Recorder.
- Make sure the SVR Recorder receives its signal from your TV source. Work out where your TV signal comes from (satellite, cable or antenna). If you have to go through a switch box or set-top box or stereo, test the output cable on your TV before taking that output and plugging it into the SVR Recorder’s input jacks.
- Decide where the SVR Recorder should send its signal. You’ll need to get the signal to your TV eventually, but you could choose to have the video signal go through a VCR or to a switch box or A/V receiver before it reaches the TV. If you want the SVR Recorder to be able to save shows to a VCR, you’ll also need to have the SVR Recorder’s output go to a VCR.
- You may have a lot of sources of video. In addition to the SVR Recorder and a VCR, you may have a video game player, a laser disc player, a DVD player, and a video camera. If so, consider using a switch box or an A/V receiver that has input jacks for your devices, along with an output to your TV and speakers. Then, that A/V receiver or switch box will let you choose what to display on your TV.
- If you’re having trouble, see Troubleshooting on pages 45–50. Also, try the Support section on the TiVo website (<http://www.tivo.com/>).

## Programming Your Remote Control

You can set your Remote Control to control your TV's power, muting, and volume by using the "Remote Control Setup" option on the **Messages & Setup** screen. Or you can set your Remote Control to control the volume on your stereo if you have it connected to your TV.

Once you've followed these steps to tell your Remote Control how to control your TV, you'll be able to put away your TV's remote and use the Remote Control from now on. You'll only need your VCR's remote for watching videotapes.

Follow these steps to set up your Remote Control using the on-screen code entry method. If this method doesn't work, try the Learning Mode Method (page 43) or Code Search Method (page 44) methods.

### 1 Start at TiVo Central.

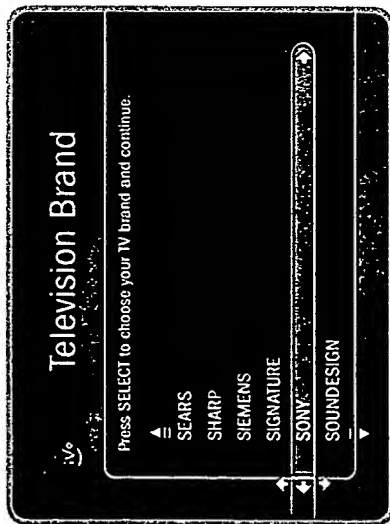
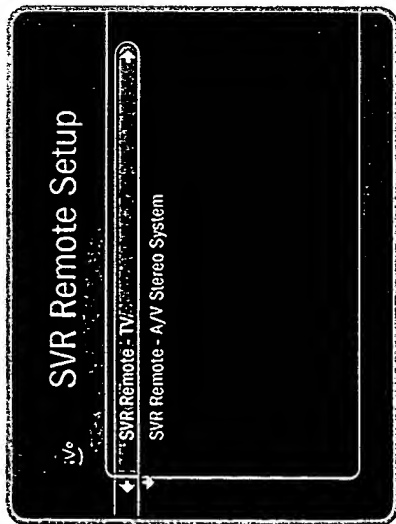
Press the TiVo button to go to TiVo Central.

### 2 Navigate to SVR Remote - TV.

Choose "Messages & Setup", then "SVR Remote Setup", then "SVR Remote - TV".

### 3 Identify your TV.

Use the CH (Channel) +/- buttons to scroll down the list of TV brands page by page, choose your TV brand from the list, and press SELECT. If you have been using a TV remote control other than the one that came with your TV, select your TV brand, not the brand of the remote.

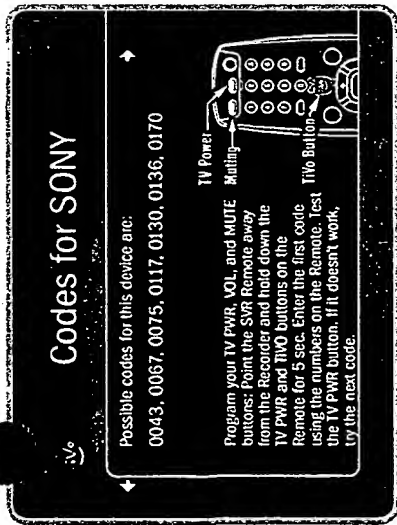




## 4 Enter the Remote Control code.

When you select your TV brand, you will see a screen with one or more four-digit codes for your TV.

- Cover the end of the Remote Control with your hand to shield the IR Emitter.
- On the Remote Control, press and hold the TiVo and TV POWER buttons simultaneously for about three seconds, until the remote's LED illuminates. Release the buttons and the LED will remain illuminated.
- Use the number keys on your Remote Control to enter the four-digit code you want to test (start with the first code in the list on the screen).
- After pressing the fourth digit of the code, the LED will flash three times, indicating that you entered a valid code.
- Test the code by pointing your Remote Control in the direction of the TV and pressing the TV POWER button. If this turns the TV off, you have found the correct code. Now you can use the Remote Control to turn your TV on and off, control volume, and mute the sound.
- If the Remote Control could not turn your TV off, try the next code listed for your TV.



### Note

If you have your stereo hooked up to your TV, you can program the Remote Control's VOL (volume) and MUTING buttons to send signals to your stereo rather than to your TV. Go to "Messages & Setup", then "SVR Remote Setup", then "SVR Remote - TV". Press the TiVo and VOL buttons to illuminate the LED before you enter the code.

- You can program the following keys with the Learning Remote method:  
TV POWER, VOL (volume) +/-, and MUTING.
- Do not attempt this method if there is bright fluorescent lighting or other IR interference.
- Unlike code entry and code search, you need to program each button individually in learning mode.
- If you have a stereo system connected to the SVR Recorder, you can program the POWER button on the Remote Control to turn on/off your stereo. To do so, use code 1975 instead of 0975 in step 1. You can program the POWER button to turn on/off both your TV and your stereo.
- To reset the Remote Control back to the manufacturer's settings, press and hold the TiVo and TV POWER buttons together for three seconds until the LED on the Remote Control remains lit. Enter code 0981 (or 1981) using the number keys on the Remote Control.

The Remote Control has the ability to "learn" codes from your TV (and/or audio system) remote. This method works for every remote controlled TV (or stereo).

## 1 Put the Remote Control in learning mode.

- Press the TiVo button and TV POWER simultaneously for 3 seconds until the LED on the Remote Control remains lit continuously.
- Using the number keys on the Remote Control, enter the code 0975. The Remote Control LED flashes three times. You have 30 seconds to complete the next step.

## 2 Position the two remotes.

Position the TV remote and the Remote Control head-to-head about two inches apart with their IR emitters facing each other. (The Remote Control's IR emitter is at the end that you point at the TV.)

## 3 Send the signal to the Remote Control.

- Press the button on the Remote Control that you want to teach. For example, TV POWER or MUTING. The Remote Control LED will flash rapidly to indicate that it is ready to be taught. You have 4 seconds to do the next step.
- Press the equivalent button on the TV remote. For example, if you pressed TV POWER on the Remote Control, press the power button on the TV remote.
- Press and hold the equivalent button on the TV remote until the Remote Control's LED flashes three times to indicate that it has learned the code, or repeat this step until the LED does flash three times.
- This step can be repeated as many times as needed.

## 4 Exit learning mode and test the code.

- Press the CLEAR button on the Remote Control to exit learning mode.
- Point the Remote Control at the TV and press the button you just taught. For example, if you've just taught the TV POWER button, it should turn on the TV.

## Note

- In this method, when you find the correct code, it will automatically program the TV POWER, VOL +/-, and MUTING buttons on the Remote Control.
- If you have a stereo system connected to the SVR Recorder, you can program the POWER button on the Remote Control to turn on and off both the stereo and your TV. To do so, use code 1999 instead of 0999 in step 1.
- To reset the Remote Control back to the manufacturer's settings, press and hold the TiVo and TV POWER buttons together for three seconds until the LED on the Remote Control remains lit. Enter code 0981 (or 1981) using the number keys on the Remote Control.

## Code Search Method

Another method of programming the Remote Control to operate your TV and/or stereo system is the code search method. The Remote Control has hundreds of available codes. The correct code for your TV might be available, yet not listed on the screen for your TV brand.

### 1 Put the Remote Control in code search mode.

- a) Press the TiVo button and TV POWER simultaneously for three seconds until the LED on the Remote Control remains lit continuously.
- b) Release the buttons and the LED remains illuminated.
- c) Using the number keys on the Remote Control, enter the code 0999.

### 2 Test the code.

- a) Point the Remote Control at the TV, press TV POWER and see if the TV turns off or on.
- b) If the TV does turn off or on, confirm that MUTE and VOL (volume) +/- also operate the TV. If they do, go to step 4 below. If they do not, continue with step 3.

### 3 Try another code.

Continue to cycle through each code by pressing CH+, then test the code by repeating step 2 above. Remember, there are hundreds of codes. If the LED goes out, you have reached the end of the codes.

### 4 Program the Remote Control with the correct code.

- a) When the code allows the Remote Control to operate the TV power, volume and muting, press ENTER to set the code and exit Code Search mode.
- b) You can also press CLEAR to exit Code Search mode without setting a new code.

## Troubleshooting

TiVo and Sony are dedicated to providing you with quality support and customer service. If you have any questions or difficulties, first refer to the troubleshooting section in the manuals. If you still need help, see below for the appropriate customer service department to contact:

Please go to <http://www.sel.sony.com/sel/service/conselec> and refer to the FAQ if you need assistance on the following areas:

- Connecting your SVR Recorder with your TV and other A/V equipment.
- Initial Guided Setup difficulties (e.g. phone calls failing).
- Programming the Remote Control to control your TV or A/V equipment.
- Changing channels.
- A system that does not function properly after restart.
- Questions about your Warranty.

Contact TiVo at 1-877-367-8486 if you need assistance on the following areas:

- Activating or using a feature of the TiVo Service.
- Getting correct channel lineup data or program guide data.
- Understanding an onscreen message from TiVo regarding your TiVo Service account.

You can also refer to the FAQ's listed in the web sites below.

TiVo: <http://www.tivo.com>

You can also call Sony at 1-877-585-Sony (7669)

When you call either TiVo or Sony, you will need to reference your model and serial number located on the inside of the back cover of this Installation Guide.

Symptom	Solution
<p><b>My SVR Recorder isn't making the setup phone calls.</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not use a wireless phone connection.</li> <li>• Verify that your phone line is working by connecting a phone to the phone cord and checking for a dial tone. Make sure the phone cord is connected to the SVR Recorder and the wall jack.</li> <li>• Try another local dial-in number from the <b>Dial In Numbers</b> screen. For information on how to change the local dial-in number and other phone dialing options, refer to the TiVo Viewer's Guide.</li> <li>• You may need to change your phone dialing options from the default. After making changes, make a test call (choose "Make Test Call" from the <b>Phone Connection</b> screen).             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you have voice mail or other non-standard dial tone, turn off "dial tone detection".</li> <li>• If you have call waiting, disable it by entering the correct prefix in "Call Waiting Prefix" (usually "*70").</li> <li>• If you use a dial prefix for outside lines, set "Dial Prefix" (for example, "9").</li> <li>• Your phone line may have low voltage. Try turning off "phone availability detection".</li> </ul> </li> <li>• If you have a caller ID box, try removing it from the line since some models interfere with the SVR Recorder modem's ability to make a call.</li> <li>• If you have a fax machine or computer modem connected to the same line, make sure they are not using the line.</li> <li>• It could be that you have too much line noise to make a connection. The SVR Recorder ships with a 50' phone cord. Try a shorter cord, or you can buy a line noise filter at your local electronics store.</li> <li>• If the recorder repeatedly reports a busy signal trying to connect, try choosing a different local dial-in number, or try making the call during off-peak hours.</li> </ul>

Symptom	Solution
<p>On the “Channels You Watch” screen, some or all of my lineup information is incorrect.</p>	<p>From within Guided Setup, go left to the <b>Cable Providers</b> and <b>Cable Lineups</b> screens and verify that you chose the correct cable/satellite provider and lineup. You may need to go through all of the selections to find the right one since cable providers are often changing their names and lineups.</p>
<p>My channels aren’t changing.</p>	<p><b>If you use cable with no set-top box:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Be sure that you are using the SVR Recorder’s Remote Control and that you hold it so that the TiVo button points toward the SVR Recorder.</li> <li>• When you press any button on the Remote Control, does the Remote Active LED flash? If the LED does not flash, check to make sure that the batteries are positioned correctly in the Remote Control and that the batteries are good. If the LED does flash, make sure the green receiving light on the SVR Recorder flashes yellow when you press any button on the Remote Control. If it does not, power cycle your SVR Recorder (unplug the AC power cord, wait 15 seconds, then reinsert the AC power cord). It may be necessary to do this several times.</li> </ul> <p><b>If you use cable with a set-top box:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the set-top box is turned on.</li> <li>• Make sure you are using the Remote Control and that you hold it so that the TiVo button points toward the SVR Recorder, not the cable box.</li> <li>• Is the IR Control cable plugged into the lower IR jack on the back of the SVR Recorder?</li> <li>• Is the IR Emitter positioned so that it covers the IR receiver on the cable box?</li> <li>• Did you select a working code from the list of codes for your cable box during Guided Setup? To verify, use the TiVo button to go to <b>TiVo Central</b> -&gt; <b>Messages &amp; Setup</b> -&gt; <b>Cable/Satellite Box</b> -&gt; <b>Control Cable Setup</b>. Once you find a code that changes your channels, press <b>SELECT</b> to choose that code.</li> </ul> <p>(continued on next page)</p>

**My channels aren't changing.  
(continued)**

**If you use a satellite set-top box with a Serial Control cable:**

- Make sure the set-top box is turned on.
- Is the Serial Control cable plugged into the upper serial jack on the back of the SVR Recorder?
- Make sure that the Serial Control cable is connected to the "low speed data" jack on the back of the satellite set-top box.
- Unplug the satellite set-top box from the wall, then plug it back in.

If you are using an RCA satellite set-top box, use your RCA set-top box's remote control to specify low speed data. To do this, press the MENU button on the RCA set-top box's remote -> **Options** -> **System Options** -> **Data Port** -> **Low Speed Data**.

**If you use a satellite set-top box with an IR Control cable:**

- Make sure the set-top box is turned on.
- Is the IR Control cable plugged into the lower IR jack on the back of the SVR Recorder, not the cable box.
- Is the IR Emitter positioned so that it covers the IR window on your satellite box?
- Did you select a working code from the list of codes for your satellite box during Guided Setup? To verify this, use the TiVo button to go to **TiVo Central** -> **Messages & Setup** -> **Cable/Satellite Box** -> **Control Cable Setup**. Once you find a code that changes your channels, press the SELECT button on the Remote Control to choose that code.

Symptom	Solution
<p><b>When I power on my TV, I see a blue screen with a frowning TiVo in the upper left corner of my screen.</b></p>	<p>Your SVR Recorder is having trouble tuning to the channel you are on. Follow these steps to restore the video:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you have a cable/satellite set-top box, make sure it is turned on.</li> <li>• Try changing channels. If you see the frowning TiVo on every channel, your video cable may have come loose. Check to make sure all the cable connections on the back of your SVR Recorder are secure.</li> <li>• Verify that you are receiving a video signal by temporarily connecting the video source directly to the TV.</li> <li>• Power cycle your SVR Recorder (unplug the AC power cord, wait 15 seconds, then reinsert the AC power cord).</li> <li>• Try swapping out your video cables to determine if one of your cables is bad.</li> <li>• Go to Messages and Setup and choose "Cable/Satellite Box," then choose "Connection to Recorder." Verify that the cable that is selected on this screen is the same cable you have used to connect your set-top box to the SVR Recorder. The "Video Status" on this screen should say "OK" when the correct input is selected.</li> </ul>
<p><b>I don't see my cable provider on the list in Guided Setup.</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you are in Guided Setup, use the LEFT ARROW to go to the <b>Zip Code</b> screen to verify that you entered the correct zip code.</li> <li>• Go through the first setup call again. See "First Setup Call" in Guided Setup.</li> <li>• Check all of the cable providers listed for your Zip Code. Make sure your cable company hasn't merged or changed its name.</li> </ul>



Symptom	Solution
<p><b>Audio/Video is out of sync.</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Try changing channels.</li> <li>• Press the PAUSE button on the Remote Control, move back a frame or two, then press PAUSE again to resume play.</li> <li>• Press the TiVo button to go to TiVo Central, then press the LIVE TV button to return to live television.</li> <li>• Power cycle your SVR Recorder (unplug the power cord, wait 15 seconds, then reinsert the power cord).</li> <li>• If you are using your stereo, it must be hooked up between the SVR Recorder and your TV to avoid an audio/video delay.</li> </ul>

## Inputs and outputs

- Video In
  - S-Video 4-pin mini DIN (1)
  - Composite Video RCA (1)
- Video Out
  - S-Video 4-pin mini DIN (2)
  - Composite Video RCA (2)
- Audio Line In
  - Stereo L/R RCA (1 pair)
- Audio Line Out
  - Stereo L/R RCA (2 pairs)
- RF In
  - F-connector Female (1)
- RF Out
  - F-connector Female (1)
- Telephone
  - RJ-11 female, 2 wire (1)
- Control Out
  - 3.5 mm mini jack sockets (2)

## General

- Power requirements
  - 120 V AC, 60 Hz
- Power consumption
  - 29 W
- Operating temperature
  - 21°C to 45°C (70°F to 113°F)
- Operating Humidity
  - 5% to 80%
- Dimensions
  - Approx. 430 × 326 × 77 mm (w/h/d)
  - (Approx. 17 1/4 × 3 7/8 × 13 1/8 inches) including projecting parts and controls
- Mass
  - Approx. 4.5 kg (9 lb 1 oz)

## Supplied accessories

- Remote Control (1)
- Size AA (R6) batteries (2)
- Audio/Video cables (1)
- IR Control cable (two IR emitters) (2)
- Serial Control cable (1)
- S-Video cable (1)
- Phone cord (1)
- Phone splitter (1)

# FCC Regulations and Information

This device complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules. The FCC Part 68 label is located on the back of this product. This label contains the FCC number for this equipment and the Ringer Equivalence Number (REN). If requested, this information must be provided to your telephone company.

Your SVR Recorder has been registered by the Federal Communication Commission (FCC) as not being harmful to the telephone network when connected directly to the telephone lines. In order to fully comply with the Rules of the FCC, the following instructions should be read carefully and followed completely where applicable:

- 1 The Federal Communication Commission (FCC) has established Rules which permit this device to be directly connected to the telephone network. Standardized jacks are used for these connections. This equipment should not be used on party lines or coin phones.
- 2 If this device is malfunctioning, it may also be causing harm to the telephone network; this device should be disconnected until the source of the problem can be determined and until repair has been made. If this is not done, the telephone company may temporarily disconnect service.
- 3 The telephone company may make changes in its technical operations and procedures; if such changes affect the compatibility or use of this device, the telephone company is required to give adequate notice of the changes. You will be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC.
- 4 If the telephone company requests information on what equipment is connected to their lines, inform them of:
  - a. The telephone number to which this unit is connected.
  - b. The ringer equivalence number.
  - c. The USOC jack required.
  - d. The FCC Registration Number.
- 5 Items (b) and (d) are indicated on the label. The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is used to determine how many devices can be connected to your telephone line. In most areas, the sum of the RENs of all devices on any one line should not exceed five (5). If too many devices are attached, they may not ring properly.

## Service Requirements

In the event of equipment malfunction, all repairs should be performed by Sony or an authorized agent. It is the responsibility of users requiring service to report the need for service to our company or to one of our authorized agents. For service, call 1-877-585-SONY (7669).

### Declaration of Conformity

Trade Name: Sony  
Model No.: SVR-3000  
Responsible Party: Sony Electronics Inc.  
Address: 1 Sony Drive, Park Ridge, NJ  
07656 USA  
Telephone No.: 201-930-6972

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## Radio Interference Information

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause interference to radio or television reception (which you can determine by turning the equipment off and on), you are encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna (the antenna for radio or television that is receiving the interference)
- Change the position of the SVR Recorder with respect to the radio or television equipment that is receiving the interference
- Move the SVR Recorder away from the equipment that is receiving the interference
- Plug the SVR Recorder into a different outlet so that the SVR Recorder and the equipment receiving the interference are on different branch circuits

Shielded I/O cable and cords must be used for this equipment to comply with the relevant FCC regulations. Changes or modifications not expressly approved in writing by Sony Electronics, Inc., void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

If these measures do not eliminate the interference, you should consult your SVR Recorder dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for additional suggestions. In addition, you may find the following booklet prepared by the Federal Communications Commission helpful: "How to Identify and Resolve Radio-TV Interference Problems." This booklet is available from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 20402 Stock No. 004-000-00345-4.

# IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

- 1** Read these instructions.
- 2** Keep these instructions.
- 3** Heed all warnings.
- 4** Follow all instructions.
- 5** Do not use this apparatus near water.
- 6** Clean only with dry cloth.
- 7** Do not block any ventilation openings. Install in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- 8** Do not install near any heat sources such as radiators, heat resistors, stoves, or other apparatus (including amplifiers) that produce heat.
- 9** Do not defeat the safety purpose of the polarized or grounding-type plug. A polarized plug has two blades with one wider than the other. A grounding type plug has two blades and a third grounding prong. The wide blade or the third prong are provided for your safety. If the provided plug does not fit into your outlet, consult an electrician for replacement of the obsolete outlet.
- 10** Protect the power cord from being walked on or pinched particularly at plugs, convenience receptacles, and the point where they exit from the apparatus.
- 11** Only use attachments/ accessories specified by the manufacturer.
- 12** Use only with the cart, stand, tripod, bracket, or table specified by the manufacturer, or sold with the apparatus. When a cart is used, use caution when moving the cart/apparatus combination to avoid injury from tip-over.
- 13** Unplug this apparatus during lightning storms or when unused for long periods of time.
- 14** Refer all servicing to qualified service personnel. Servicing is required when the apparatus has been damaged in any way, such as power-supply cord or plug is damaged, liquid has been spilled or objects have fallen into the apparatus, the apparatus has been exposed to rain or moisture, does not operate normally, or has been dropped.

# SONY.

## LIMITED WARRANTY

Sony Electronics Inc. ("Sony") warrants this Product (including any accessories) against defects in material or workmanship as follows:

1. **LABOR:** For a period of 90 days from the date of purchase. If this Product is determined to be defective, Sony will repair or replace the Product, at its option, at no charge, or pay the labor charges to any Sony authorized service facility. After the Warranty Period, you must pay for the labor charges.

2. **PARTS:** In addition, Sony will supply, at no charge, new or rebuilt replacements in exchange for defective parts for a period of one (1) year. After 90 days from the date of purchase, labor for removal and installation is available from Sony authorized service facilities or a Sony Service Center at your expense.

To obtain warranty service, you must take the Product, or deliver the Product freight prepaid, in either its original packaging or packaging affording an equal degree of protection to any authorized Sony service facility.

This warranty does not cover customer, instruction, installation, set up adjustments, or signal reception problems.

This warranty does not cover cosmetic damage, or damage due to acts of God, accident, misuse, abuse, negligence, commercial use, or modification of, or to any part of the Product, including the antenna. This warranty does not cover damage due to improper operation or maintenance, connection to improper voltage supply, or attempted repair by anyone other than a facility authorized by Sony to service the Product. This warranty is valid only in the United States.

Proof of purchase in the form of a bill of sale or receipted invoice which is evidence that the unit is within the warranty period must be presented to obtain warranty service.

This warranty is invalid if the factory-applied serial number has been altered or removed from the Product.

---

REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT AS PROVIDED UNDER THIS WARRANTY IS THE EXCLUSIVE REMEDY OF THE CONSUMER. SONY SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES FOR BREACH OF ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY ON THIS ACCESSORY. EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT PROHIBITED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ON THIS ACCESSORY IS LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE DURATION OF THIS WARRANTY.

---

Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, or allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitations or exclusions may not apply to you. In addition, if you enter into a service contract with the Sony Partnership within 90 days of the date of sale, the limitation on how long an implied warranty lasts does not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may have other rights which vary from state to state.

For your convenience, Sony Electronics Inc. has established telephone numbers for frequently asked questions.

To locate the servicer or dealer nearest you, or for service assistance or resolution of a service problem, or for product information or operation, call:

**Sony Direct Response Center**

1-877-585-SONY (7669)

or write to:

Sony Direct Response Center

12451 Gateway Blvd.

Fort Myers, FL 33913

For an accessory or an accessory or part not available from your authorized dealer, call:

1-(800)-488-7669

Refer to this Installation Guide (specifically the Troubleshooting section) for questions about your Warranty, connecting the SVR Recorder, initial Guided Setup difficulties (e.g. phone calls failing), programming the Remote Control, changing channels, or if your system does not function properly after restart.

If you still have questions, contact Sony at:  
**<http://www.sel.sony.com/sel/service/conselec>**

Refer to The TiVo Viewer's Guide for questions about TiVo Service activation, getting correct channel lineups or program guide data, or on-screen messages from TiVo regarding your Service account. If you still have questions, contact TiVo at:  
**<http://www.tivo.com>**

The PDF of this service manual is not designed to be printed from cover to cover. The pages vary in size, and must therefore be printed in sections based on page dimensions.

## NON-SCHEMATIC PAGES

Data that does NOT INCLUDE schematic diagrams are formatted to 8.5 x 11 inches and can be printed on standard letter-size and/or A4-sized paper.

## SCHEMATIC DIAGRAMS

The schematic diagram pages are provided in two ways, full size and tiled. The full-sized schematic diagrams are formatted on paper sizes between 8.5" x 11" and 18" x 30" depending upon each individual diagram size. Those diagrams that are LARGER than 11" x 17" in full-size mode have been tiled for your convenience and can be printed on standard 11" x 17" (tabloid-size) paper, and reassembled.

### TO PRINT FULL SIZE SCHEMATIC DIAGRAMS


If you have access to a large paper plotter or printer capable of outputting the full-sized diagrams, output as follows:

- 1) Note the page size(s) of the schematics you want to output as indicated in the middle window at the bottom of the viewing screen.
- 2) Go to the File menu and select Print Set-up. Choose the printer name and driver for your large format printer. Confirm that the printer settings are set to output the indicated page size or larger.
- 3) Close the Print Set Up screen and return to the File menu. Select "Print..." Input the page number of the schematic(s) you want to print in the print range window. Choose OK.

### TO PRINT TILED VERSION OF SCHEMATICS



Schematic pages that are larger than 11" x 17" full-size are provided in a 11" x 17" printable tiled format near the end of the document. These can be printed to tabloid-sized paper and assembled to full-size for easy viewing.


If you have access to a printer capable of outputting the tabloid size (11" x 17") paper, then output the tiled version of the diagram as follows:

- 1) Note the page number(s) of the schematics you want to output as indicated in the middle window at the bottom of the viewing screen.
- 2) Go to the File menu and select Print Set-up. Choose the printer name and driver for your printer. Confirm that the plotter settings are set to output 11" x 17", or tabloid size paper in landscape (  ) mode.
- 3) Close the Print Set Up screen and return to the File menu. Select "Print..." Input the page number of the schematic(s) you want to print in the print range window. Choose OK.

### TO PRINT SPECIFIC SECTIONS OF A SCHEMATIC

To print just a particular section of a PDF, rather than a full page, access the Graphics Select tool in the Acrobat Reader tool bar.

- 1) To view the Graphics Select Tool, press and HOLD the mouse button over the Text Select Tool which looks like: . This tool will expand to reveal to additional tools. Choose the Graphics Select tool by placing the cursor over the button on of the far right that looks like: .
- 2) After selecting the Graphics Select Tool, place your cursor in the document window and the cursor will change to a plus (+) symbol. Click and drag the cursor over the area you want to print. When you release the mouse button, a marquee (or dotted lined box) will be displayed outlining the area you selected.
- 3) With the marquee in place, go to the file menu and select the "Print..." option. When the print window appears, choose the option under the section called "Print Range" which says "Selected Graphic".

Select OK and the output will print only the area that you outlined with the marquee. 



## ON-SCREEN SEARCH OPTION

All of the text within the service manual PDF is content searchable. This means that you can enter any text, word, phrase or reference number that appears in the manual, and the PDF software will search, find and move the cursor to the location where you requested text first appears. This feature can be particularly useful in locating components on a specific schematic or printed wire circuit board (PWB) diagrams.

Follow these steps to effectively locate a component on a schematic diagram:

- 1) Locate the schematic you want to search by clicking on the corresponding bookmark on the left side of the screen. The view on the right of the screen will then jump to the desired schematic page.
- 2) Magnify the diagram to at least 400% before conducting a component search. This will enable you to easily view the reference number when it is highlighted on screen. To do this, click on the magnifying glass button on the tool bar at the top of the screen. Move the cursor over the diagram and RIGHT click you mouse. Select the 400% magnification option on the pop-up menu. Click on the button with the icon of the open hand to deactivate the magnification tool
- 3) Search the diagram (or the entire manual) by clicking on the binocular button tool at the top of the screen. The "Find" window will appear and allow you to type in your desired text. Type in a reference designator, such as R502, and click on the "Find" button. If the component is not on the diagram, but is listed anywhere else in the manual, the cursor will jump to the first location the text is found in the file. To find another instance of that same text, click on the binocular button again and select "Find Again."

# SERVICE MANUAL

# SVR-3000

RMT-V303

US Model

## CORRECTION- 1

SUBJECT: ELECTRICAL PARTS BATTERY COVER P/N

Correct the service manual as shown.  
File this Correction with the service manual.

 : Corrected Item

Section 4: Electrical Parts List (Page 54)

### INCORRECT

### CORRECT

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES	REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES
	TBD	BATTERY COVER (FOR RMT-V303)			9-885-030-45	BATTERY COVER (FOR RMT-V303)	

*Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.*

DIGITAL NETWORK RECORDER

# SONY®

## ● SERVICE MANUAL

SVR-3000 RMT-V303

US Model

## CORRECTION- 2

SUBJECT: IC600 ADDED TO ELECTRICAL PARTS LIST

Correct the service manual as shown.  
File this Correction with the service manual.

☛ : Corrected Item

Section 4: Electrical Parts List (Page 46)

## INCORRECT

## CORRECT

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES
		Needs to be added	

REF. NO.	PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	VALUES
☛ IC600	6-702-191-01	IC BCM7020RKPB1-P21	

*Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.*

DIGITAL NETWORK RECORDER

SONY®

# SERVICE MANUAL

# SVR-3000

RMT-V303

*US Model*

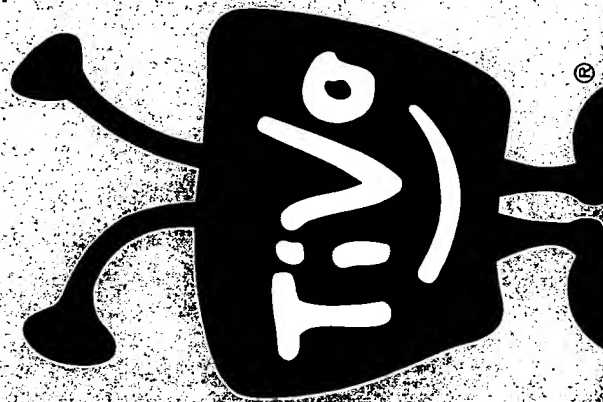
**ORIGINAL MANUAL ISSUE DATE: 12/2002**

ALL REVISIONS AND UPDATES TO THE ORIGINAL MANUAL ARE APPENDED TO THE END OF THE PDF FILE.

REVISION DATE	REVISION TYPE	SUBJECT
12/2002	No revisions or updates are applicable at this time.	
12/2002	Correction-1	Added P/N for Battery Cover (Replaced Page 54)
1/2003	Correction-2	IC600 added to Electrical Parts List

*Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.*

DIGITAL NETWORK RECORDER  
**SONY**®



How to activate and use your TiVo® Service

---

Welcome to TiVo®!

---

© 2002 by TiVo Inc. Reproduction in whole or in part without written permission is prohibited. All rights reserved. Printed in the USA.

The TiVo logo, TiVo, TiVo Central, and TiVoolution  
are registered trademarks of TiVo Inc.

TiVo, TV Your Way; Ipreview; WishList;  
the Instant Replay logo; the Jump logo; Season Pass;  
Overtime Scheduler; the Thumbs Down logo and text;  
the Thumbs Up logo and text are trademarks

of TiVo Inc., 2160 Gold Street, P.O. Box 2160, Alviso, CA 95002-2160.

All other trademarks are the properties of their respective owners.

## ►► Welcome to the TiVo<sup>®</sup>!

It's a revolution in television. We've pioneered an exciting new category that will forever change the way you watch TV. With a new TiVo Digital Video Recorder in your living room, you'll quickly see how easy it is to watch what you want, when you want.

### **Never miss your favorite show again.**

TiVo automatically records every episode of your favorite series, all season long, even if the network schedule changes. It can even skip reruns.

### **No more interruptions.**

Pause live TV for as long as 30 minutes—any channel, any time. You can also rewind, instant replay, and slow-motion live or recorded TV. Wow!

### **No videotapes required.**

Because it's all-digital, TiVo saves all your programs in one place so they're ready-to-watch anytime. You can even start watching a show from the beginning while it's still recording.

### **Watch more of what you like, less of what you don't.**

Because the TiVo service is "smart," it automatically finds and records shows that feature your favorite actor, team, hobby, etc., so you'll always catch the good stuff—even if you never knew it was on.

At last, TV fits into your busy life, not the other way around.



TiVo, TV your way.<sup>™</sup>



## ▶▶ Table of Contents


Using This Guide .....	vi
▶ <b>Chapter 1: Guided Setup</b> .....	<b>1</b>
Activating the TiVo Service .....	2
Basic Steps .....	3
▶ <b>Chapter 2: The Basics in 5 Short Tours</b> .....	<b>9</b>
Tour One: Play with Live TV .....	10
Tour Two: The TiVo Live Guide .....	12
Tour Three: Find and Record Your Favorite Programs .....	14
Tour Four: Find New Programs .....	16
Tour Five: Now Playing .....	18
Cool Things You Can Do .....	20
▶ <b>Chapter 3: Live TV</b> .....	<b>21</b>
Watching Live TV .....	22
Status Bar .....	23
Controlling Live TV .....	24
Recording a Live Program .....	25
The TiVo Live Guide .....	26
Channel Banner .....	28
▶ <b>Chapter 4: Playing and Recording Programs</b> .....	<b>29</b>
TiVo Central .....	30
Now Playing .....	31
Season Pass .....	34

Recording Options .....	35
Search by Title .....	37
WishList .....	38
TiVo Suggestions .....	45
Record by Time or Channel .....	46
Season Pass Manager .....	49
To Do List .....	50
<b>► Chapter 5: Messages &amp; Setup .....</b>	<b>51</b>
TiVo Messages .....	52
My Preferences .....	53
Recorder & Phone Setup .....	62
System Information .....	66
Troubleshooting .....	67
Restart or Reset System .....	68
Standby .....	69
<b>► Chapter 6: Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>71</b>
Customer Support .....	72
Troubleshooting .....	73
<b>► Chapter 7: Privacy and Service .....</b>	<b>95</b>
TiVo Privacy Policy .....	97
Digital Video Recorder—TiVo Service Agreement .....	103
<b>► Appendix A: Linux Information .....</b>	<b>109</b>
<b>► Index.....</b>	<b>117</b>

# Guided Setup

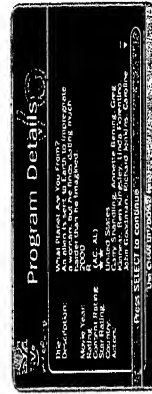
Activating the TiVo Service  
Basic Steps

2  
3

 You will see important and helpful notes and tips in this side column.



This is a Program Information screen. It has a description of the program and a list of actions you can select.



On a Program Information screen, press INFO (or DISPLAY if you don't have an INFO button on your remote) to see the Program Details screen.

## ▶▶ Using This Guide

### ▶ Getting Started

1. Activate the TiVo service (see page 2 for more on activating).
2. Connect your recorder using the *Start Here* booklet and *Installation Guide*.
3. Complete Guided Setup following the steps provided in Chapter 1 of this guide.

When you've finished these three steps, you're ready to use the TiVo service. Take the tours in Chapter 2 of this guide to check out the basic features. Read Chapters 3, 4, and 5 to become more familiar with the service's capabilities or to answer specific questions.

**Basic terms.** These are terms used in this guide when we talk about the rest of the service:


**Live TV:** If you're watching a program as it's being broadcast, you're watching live TV. With TiVo, you can also watch recorded programs or watch "behind" live TV (for example: if you pause live TV, then come back later and watch from the paused spot).

**Icons:** These are graphic symbols used in the TiVo service to provide information and options you can select. You'll find a glossary of icons on the inside back cover.

**Program information screen:** When you select a program (either a future showing or a recording in Now Playing) from a list, you will see this type of screen. With it you can select actions and view a description of the program.

### ▶ Service Updates

A few features described in this manual (such as "Skip to Tick," the Program Details screen, and using an asterisk (\*) in a WishList™ search) may not be available when you first start your recorder. If not, they'll arrive as part of your first TiVo service update. TiVo subscribers automatically receive service updates. Details about recent service updates are available at [www.tivo.com/support](http://www.tivo.com/support). Updates happen automatically. You don't need to do a thing!

 Your TiVo service number is a 15-digit number found on the label on the back of your recorder.

## ▶▶ Activating the TiVo Service

To activate your TiVo service, visit the TiVo website at [www.tivo.com/activate/](http://www.tivo.com/activate/) or call 1-877-367-8486. When you activate, you will register the TiVo service number of your recorder and choose a billing option.

The TiVo service includes the program information shown in the TiVo Live Guide and used by Season Pass™ recordings, WishList searches, and Search by Title, as well as TiVoLive Magazine, Showcases, and Service Updates.

If you do not activate within about a week of completing Guided Setup, your recorder will have limited functionality. The recorder was designed to be used exclusively with the TiVo service. The TiVo service is required for proper operation of the recorder. No functionality is represented, warranted, or should be expected without a subscription to the TiVo service.

Activate now! Don't miss a single day of using the TiVo service.

## ►► Basic Steps

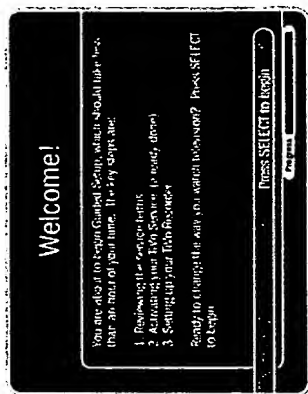
After you connect your recorder to your TV and activate the TiVo service, you will need to complete Guided Setup, which takes about 1 hour. (For more information about connecting your recorder, see the *Start Here* booklet and the *Installation Guide*.)


- **Guided Setup is easy.** The Guided Setup screens step you through the process. If you get stuck, look for tips and troubleshooting in this chapter. (You may not see all the screens described here, or you may see them in a different order, depending on your equipment.)

If you make a mistake during Guided Setup, simply press LEFT arrow to go back and fix it. You can also change your setup information later in Messages & Setup. (See Chapter 5 for details.)

- **Guided Setup is intelligent.** In Guided Setup, you tell your recorder your program source (antenna, cable, or satellite) and equipment setup. Then you will only have to complete the steps that apply to your particular setup.
- **Guided Setup requires two phone calls.** Try to complete Guided Setup when you don't need the phone for an hour or so.


After completing Guided Setup, you can watch live TV and use TiVo service features to control live TV. You will have to wait a few hours while the recorder organizes information before you can set up your Season Pass recordings and search for programs (see page 8 for details).

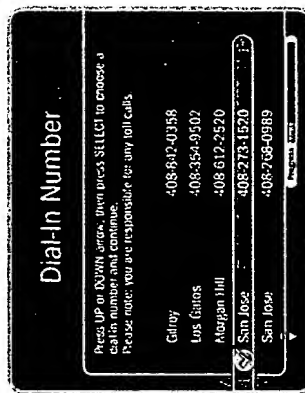
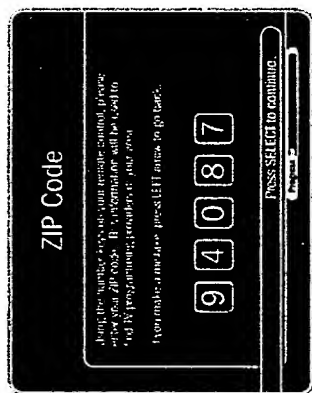


 If you can't find the help you need in this chapter, please visit online

TiVo Customer Support at

[www.tivo.com/support](http://www.tivo.com/support) or call us. (Refer to the *Installation Guide* for Customer Support contact information.)

 If you need to use the phone during either of the setup phone calls, pick up your telephone, then hang it up and wait a few seconds. The recorder will hang up, and the next time you pick the phone up there will be a dial tone. You will need to re-initiate the phone calls later.



### ► Tips and Troubleshooting

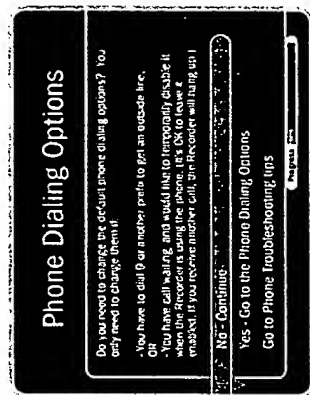
**Zip Code.** Antenna users: The TiVo service uses the channel lineup of a nearby cable service to determine which channels you receive. If there is no cable company that serves your zip code, enter the zip code of a nearby community that has cable service.

**Phone Dialing Options.** If your phone system requires special dialing options, choose “Yes.” (For example: do you dial “9” to get an outside line?) Most people won’t need to change the settings. If you’re not sure, or if you need help with specific dialing options, see page 63 for information about each option.

**Setup Call.** This toll-free call takes a few minutes to retrieve the dial-in numbers for your area code and the list of cable or satellite providers for your zip code. After hanging up, the recorder will take 5 to 15 minutes to organize the information. If the call doesn’t succeed, see pages 73 to 74 for troubleshooting steps.

**Dial-In Number.** The recorder will use the dial-in number you choose for its daily calls to the TiVo service. The list may be too long to fit on one screen. To see more phone numbers, press the DOWN arrow or CHAN DOWN.

Note: TiVo uses a standard telephone line to provide the TiVo service and is available as a local call in most areas. In some areas, however, local and long distance toll charges may apply. You are responsible for any such telephone charges.



**Dialing Format.** Choose how you want the recorder to dial the dial-in number. (For example: should the dial-in number be preceded by your area code and should a "1" precede the area code?) In some areas, local numbers must be dialed using the area code.

**Satellite Provider.** If you subscribe to additional local channels for your city or a nearby city from DIRECTV, choose the DIRECTV option followed by the city name from which you get your local channels (e.g., DIRECTV-Boston).

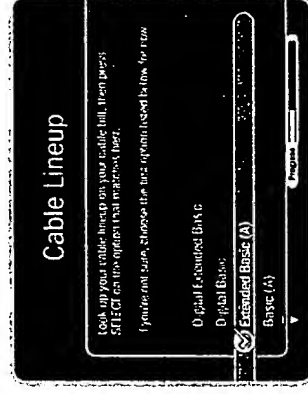
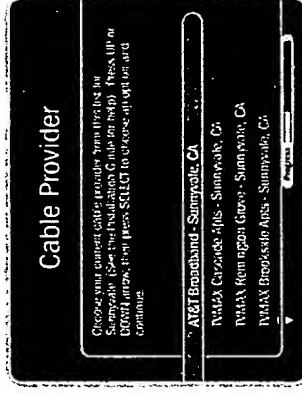
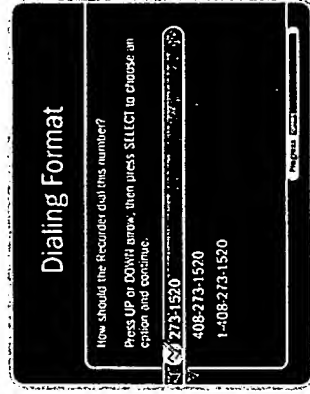
**Cable Providers.** Cable companies may have entries with very similar names, and it may be difficult to know which is yours. Check your channel lineup card (received during cable

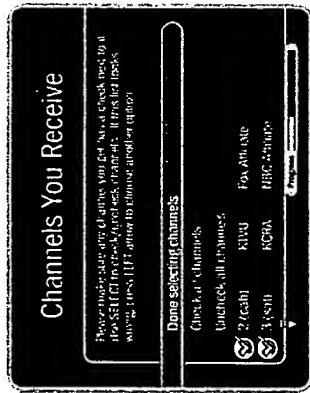
installation) or your cable bill. If you aren't sure, make your best guess. Later in Guided Setup, you can check your guess on the Channels You Receive screen (see page 6). If you still don't see your provider, go back and verify that you entered the correct zip code.

**Cable Lineups.** A lineup is the type of subscription you purchased from your cable company. Lineups usually have names like "Basic" or "Extended Basic." Your cable bill may have this information. If you still aren't sure, make your best guess. Later in Guided Setup, you can check your guess on the Channels You Receive screen (see page 6).

"Rebuild" is a term TiVo uses to refer to a revised lineup. Usually you would be informed by your cable company that your lineup has been revised.

If you have a cable A/B system, you can pick only A or B to watch with your recorder. Check your *Installation Guide* for information about splitting your signal in order to watch the other channels.





Use the **CHAN UP/DOWN** button as a shortcut to go up or down a whole screen at a time.

**Channels You Receive.** First, if you had to make a guess about your provider or lineup, verify that the channel numbers match the networks on this list. (For example, if you had the lineup to the left, is channel 2 actually KTVU?) If you aren't sure, refer to the channel guide or quick-reference card from your cable or satellite company.

Next, add or remove check marks—so that the list reflects the channels you actually subscribe to—by highlighting a channel and pressing **SELECT**. (Some types of satellite boxes will get stuck on channels you don't receive if they are selected here, so be sure to de-select the channels you don't receive.)

You can also customize this channel list to reflect your viewing preferences. If you never watch a particular channel, and don't plan to set up recordings or let TiVo search for programs on it, remove the check mark next to that channel.

The TiVo service will search for programs on the check marked channels only. Also, the **CHAN UP/DOWN** button skips channels that don't have a check mark in this list.

Finally, highlight **Done Selecting Channels** and press **SELECT** to continue. If you change your mind, you can easily make changes after you finish Guided Setup. (See page 59.)

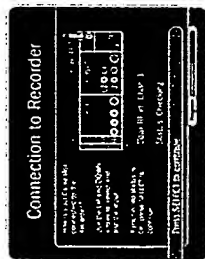
**Connection to Recorder Screens.** These screens ask what type of video cable you used to connect your cable or satellite box to your recorder. Choose your configuration from the three choices described on page 7 (Hint: the first one is the most common).

**Channel Changing.** Your recorder needs to send a signal to the cable or satellite box to change channels. It can do this through an IR (infrared) or serial connection. Make sure that the connection described on this screen matches what you have used to connect your cable or satellite box to your recorder. For help choosing and setting up a connection, see your *Start Here* booklet and *Installation Guide*. After Guided Setup, if your channels don't change, see troubleshooting steps on page 76.



# Basic Steps

**Satellite only  
or cable with a box  
only:**

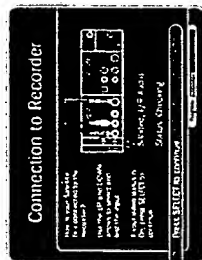


\* Use the UP/DOWN arrows until the picture of the recorder matches the cable connection you used to connect your satellite or cable box. When the video status below the picture says "Video OK," press **SELECT** to continue. If the video status says "No Video," double-check that the video cable is firmly connected to the recorder and that you have selected the correct type of video cable.

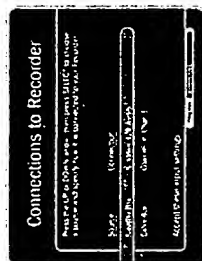
**Satellite & antenna  
or satellite & cable with-  
out a box:**



1. Use the UP/DOWN arrows to highlight "Satellite Box" and press **SELECT**.

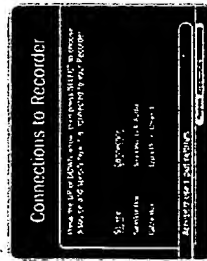


2. Follow the directions at the top of this page (marked with \*).

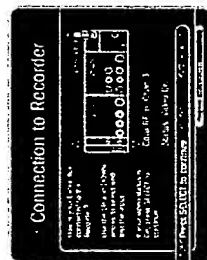


3. Use the DOWN arrow to highlight "Accept these input settings" and press **SELECT**.

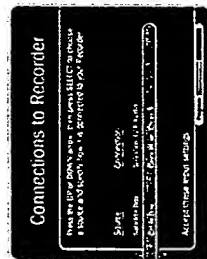
**Satellite & cable with a box:**



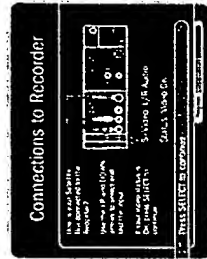
1. Highlight "Satellite Box" and press **SELECT**.



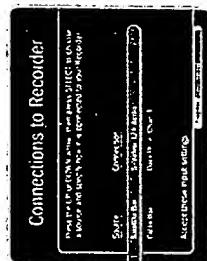
2. Follow the directions at the top of this page (marked with \*).



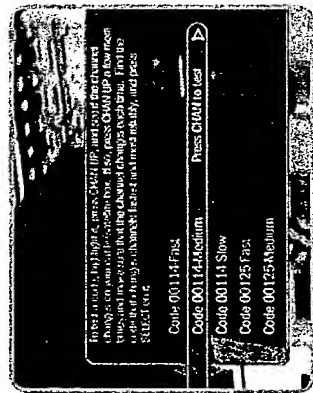
3. Highlight "Cable Box" and press **SELECT**.



4. Follow the directions at the top of this page (marked with \*).



5. Highlight "Accept these input settings" and press **SELECT**.



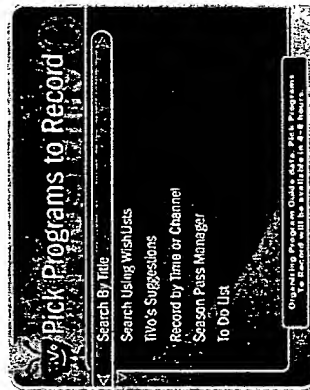
**IR Code List.** If you use an IR connection, the recorder will need to send a code to your cable or satellite box in order to change channels. You will need to test these codes to see which works best with your connection. Each code has a slow, medium, and fast version. First, test the slow codes by highlighting them and pressing the CHAN UP/DOWN button slowly several times. When you find a slow code that changes channels every time, try a faster speed for that code. (Slow may take longer, but fast may be too fast for your cable or satellite box.) You want to find the code with the fastest speed that changes the channel every time. When you find it, press SELECT to choose that code. If channels don't change at all, see page 76 for troubleshooting steps.



**Program Call.** During this call, the TiVo service downloads all your program information—which includes program titles, times, channels, and descriptions—for up to the next two weeks. If the call doesn't succeed, see pages 73 to 74 for troubleshooting steps. If you need to use the phone, pick up your telephone, then hang it up and wait a few seconds. The recorder will hang up. You will need to re-initiate the program call later.

**Congratulations!** Once you have activated your TiVo service and completed Guided Setup, you'll see the Congratulations! screen. If you have not yet activated your TiVo service, you will be reminded to do so at this time.

You can immediately begin watching live TV and using your recorder's features to control live TV (pause, instant replay, slow motion). The recorder works behind the scenes for about four to eight hours to organize program information for the first time. During this process, you will have to wait to search for programs, set up recordings, and view information in the TiVo Live Guide. A message at the bottom of the Pick Programs to Record screen will warn you if you are not able to search for programs yet. If the message appears, try again after a few hours.



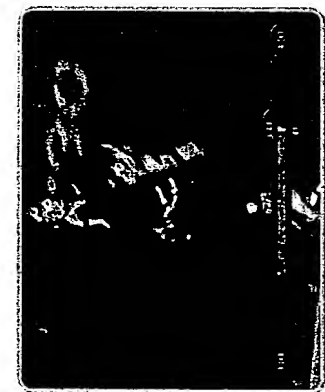
Press the TiVo button on your remote control to go to TiVo Central<sup>®</sup> to begin enjoying the TiVo service. For help getting started, check out the tours in Chapter 2 of this guide.

---

# The Basics in 5 Short Tours

Tour One: Play with Live TV	10
Tour Two: The TiVo Live Guide	12
Tour Three: Find and Record Your Favorite Programs	14
Tour Four: Find New Programs	16
Tour Five: Now Playing	18
Cool Things You Can Do	20

---



## ▶▶ Tour One: Play with Live TV

In this tour, you'll take a look at how you can control live TV. So turn on your TV and grab your TiVo remote!

- ⏸ First, press the PAUSE button—the program you're watching pauses. Now you can stand up and stretch, or go to the kitchen and get a snack. You can pause live TV for up to 30 minutes!
- ▶ But for now, press PLAY and the program resumes.
- ◀◀ Next, press BACK—the program rewinds. Press BACK a second time—it goes faster! A third time—faster still! Both the FWD and BACK buttons have three speeds. Press BACK a fourth time (or press PLAY at any time) to return to normal speed.
- ⏮ + ▶▶ Press PAUSE once more, then immediately press FWD—frame-by-frame forward! Press BACK—frame-by-frame back. When your show is paused, FWD and BACK let you go frame by frame. Press PLAY to resume watching at normal speed.
- ⏮ Try out the INSTANT REPLAY button. INSTANT REPLAY jumps you back 8 seconds—useful for when you miss a great sports play or a bit of dialog, or for when you fast forward too far.
- ▶▶ Press INSTANT REPLAY again, then immediately press SLOW. You get your own slow-motion replay!
- ▶▶ Finally, try the ADVANCE button. Presto! You're caught up to live TV.

## ► **Status Bar**

Press PAUSE to make the status bar visible. It shows a one-hour period. The green segment is the portion of the current hour that has been saved by your recorder.

Look for the white line. It marks the part of the program you are currently watching. If the white line is anywhere back in the green segment you are "behind" real time (which is way better than being behind the times!).

Now press CHAN UP. When you change channels, the saved programming from the old channel is cleared, and the recorder starts to save what is showing on the new channel.

## ► **Channel Banner**

Press INFO (or DISPLAY if your remote does not have an INFO button) to see the channel banner. (You can also press RIGHT arrow.) It's only there for a few seconds, but you can bring it back by pressing INFO (or DISPLAY) again. While the banner is visible, press RIGHT arrow to switch from a small, to medium, to large banner. Note that each version has a different amount of information.

Keep pressing RIGHT arrow until you see the largest version of the channel banner. Notice the small icons on the right side. Each symbol represents a useful feature, like recording or Parental Controls. Press the UP and DOWN arrows to highlight different icons. Pressing SELECT while an icon is highlighted will take you to that feature. (For more on using these icons, see page 28.)

Finally, press the CLEAR button—the channel banner disappears. (CLEAR gets rid of things that aren't part of the program you're watching.)

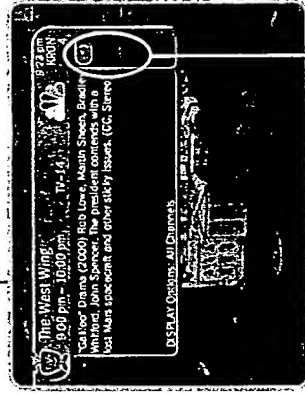
Now go have fun playing with live TV, then come back for the next tour!



status bar

This white line tells you where you are.

channel banner



selectable icons

## ►► Tour Two: The TiVo Live Guide


Your recorder's program guide, the TiVo Live Guide, lets you see what's on, change channels, schedule recordings, and more—all while you're watching live TV. Press the GUIDE button to see the TiVo Live Guide.

On the left side of the TiVo Live Guide, there is a list of channels and their current programs. The channel you're watching is highlighted with a blue bar, and a description of the current program appears at the top of the grid. On the right side is a list of upcoming programs on the highlighted channel.

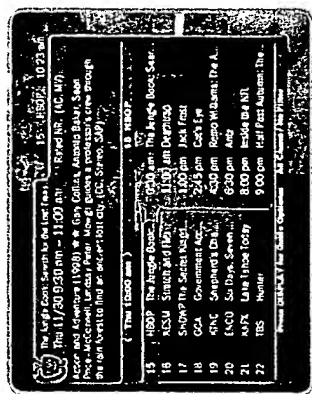
### ► Choose a Program to Watch


See something you'd like to watch? Press the UP and DOWN arrows to move the highlight bar over it. (Notice that the description at the top and list of upcoming programs on the right side change.) Then press SELECT on the highlighted channel—the channel changes and the program guide disappears. Press the GUIDE button again to bring the guide back. (Remember, whenever you change channels, programming saved from the old channel is cleared, and the recorder starts to save what is showing on the new channel.)

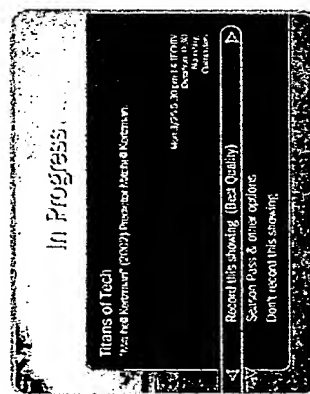
### ► Record a Program

You can always record the program you're watching by pressing the RECORD (  ) button on your remote control. You can also use the TiVo Live Guide to record current or future programs. (See page 25 for more on recording from live TV.)

Highlight any program you see in the TiVo Live Guide and press RECORD. A transparent screen with recording choices appears. Choose an option or press LEFT arrow to go back to the TiVo Live Guide.



 When you record from live TV, you can record both the saved portion (up to the last half hour) and the rest of the program. See page 25 for details.



### ► Looking Ahead

While you're in the left side of TiVo Live Guide, press the FWD ( ►► ) button to move the displayed time 30 minutes ahead. Try it. To go back in time, press BACK ( ◀◀ ).

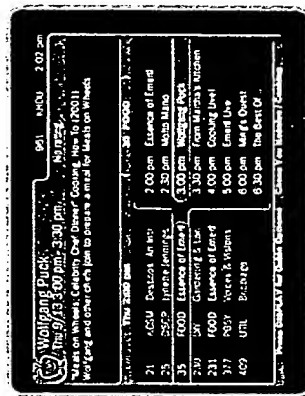
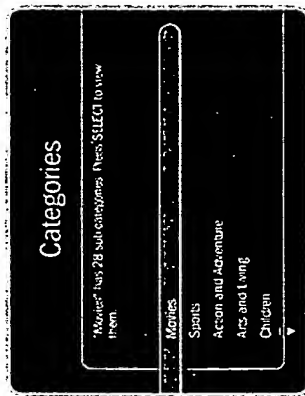
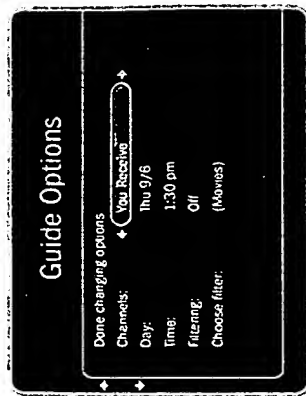
You can also quickly change the day and time the guide shows by changing the Guide Options. To see Guide Options, press GUIDE to display the TiVo Live Guide, then press INFO (or DISPLAY, if your remote control does not have an INFO button). To change the day, use DOWN arrow to highlight the day, then press RIGHT arrow once to choose tomorrow. Press SELECT. "Done changing options" becomes highlighted. Press SELECT again and *voilà!*, the TiVo Live Guide appears with tomorrow's program schedule. You know what this means: no more setting the VCR!

### ► Filter the TiVo Live Guide

The TiVo Live Guide can also find specific kinds of shows for you. Display Guide Options by bringing up the guide and pressing DISPLAY. (If your remote doesn't have a DISPLAY button, press ENTER.) Then highlight "Choose Filter." Press SELECT and a list of categories appears. Select "Arts and Living" and then select the subcategory "Cooking." The Guide Options screen appears again and "Filtering" should now be "On." Select "Done changing options."

This time when the TiVo Live Guide appears, it only shows you channels airing cooking shows in the next six hours. It has grayed out programs that are not about cooking. To see all the channels again, go to Guide Options (press GUIDE, then DISPLAY or ENTER). Highlight "Filtering," and press LEFT arrow to turn it "Off." Then press SELECT.

Take some time to play around in the TiVo Live Guide (and set up some recordings, while you're at it). See you in a little bit for the next tour!



## ▶▶ Tour Three: Find and Record Your Favorite Programs

You can always record the program you're watching by pressing the RECORD button on your remote control. The TiVo service also provides many ways to quickly search large numbers of TV programs, find your favorites, and schedule recordings in advance. What's more, if a program is part of a series, you can get a Season Pass to the series. A Season Pass automatically records every episode of the series that airs on the selected channel, even if the time slot changes.

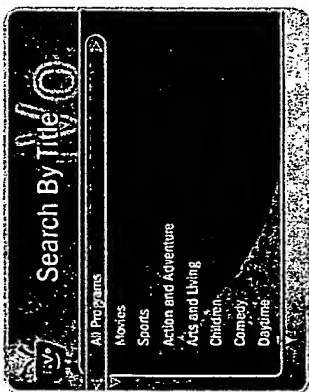
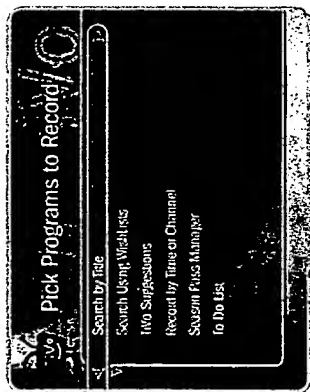
### ▶ Search by Title

In this tour, you'll find a program (*The Simpsons*) by searching for its title. Press the TiVo button to see TiVo Central. Press the DOWN arrow to highlight Pick Programs to Record and press SELECT. The Pick Programs to Record screen appears.

As you can see, TiVo gives you many ways to find programs. Since you know the program's title, highlight "Search by Title" and press SELECT. The next screen is a categories screen. It lets you limit your search to any of several categories—but for now, choose "All Programs," then press SELECT.

The next screen has a grid of letters. Notice the white box around the letter A. Use the RIGHT, LEFT, UP, and DOWN arrows to move the box among the letters. Now move it to S, then press SELECT.

A list of programs that begin with "S" appears on the right side of the screen. Move the white box to the letter I and press SELECT again. The list changes. The TiVo service has searched through all available programs (usually, those airing in the next two weeks) to find those that begin with SI, then listed those programs.



 If you just finished Guided Setup and you go to Pick Programs to

Record, you will see a message at the bottom of the screen stating that the recorder is still indexing data. The recorder should be done indexing within 4 to 8 hours of finishing Guided Setup.



Keep on entering letters until you see "Simpsons, The" in the list on the right. (Notice, the list alphabetizes without "A" or "The.") If you make a mistake entering text, select DEL (on the screen) or press BACK on the remote control. To clear all text, use CLR on the screen or press the CLEAR button. (SP enters a space.)

To get to the list of programs, press RIGHT arrow until you move off the grid of letters. Press the UP or DOWN arrow to highlight "Simpsons, The" and press SELECT.

A Program Information screen appears. This kind of screen appears when you select a program title from a list and lets you choose to record the episode, view upcoming episodes, or get a Season Pass.

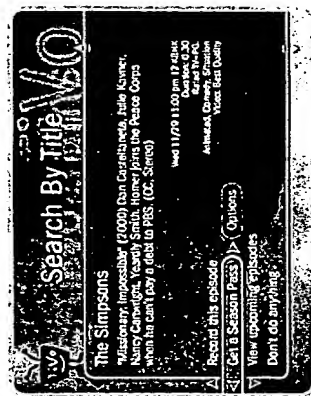
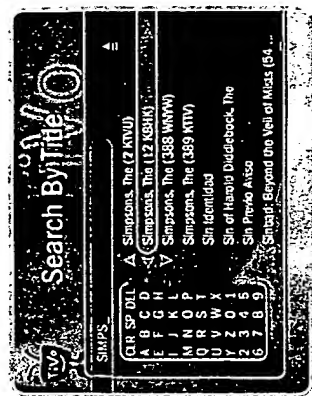
## ► Get a Season Pass


On the Program Information screen for *The Simpsons*, highlight "Get a Season Pass," and press SELECT. A confirmation screen appears to make sure the recorder is doing what you want. Press SELECT again—and after a short pause you have a Season Pass to *The Simpsons*!

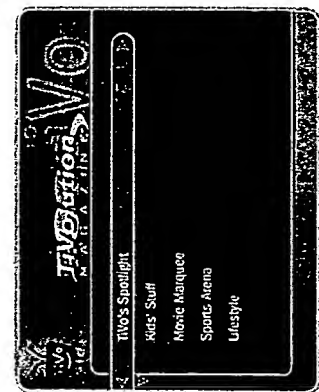
You should now be on the Search by Title screen again. Press LEFT arrow to return to Pick Programs to Record, then select the To Do List. You can see all your scheduled recordings here.

In the To Do List, notice the upcoming episodes of *The Simpsons* are marked with two check marks (✓✓), indicating they are part of a Season Pass. If you don't want to keep this Season Pass, highlight it and press CLEAR.

Set up some more Season Pass recordings now, or go on to the next tour to learn how TiVo helps you find new shows you might like—sort of like your own "smart" TV assistant.



 If you schedule a lot of Season Pass recordings, it's a good idea to set priorities for them. You do this with the Season Pass Manager; see page 49 for more information.



## ▶▶ Tour Four: Find New Programs

TiVo helps you find what you want to watch—both exciting new shows and old favorites you might have forgotten.

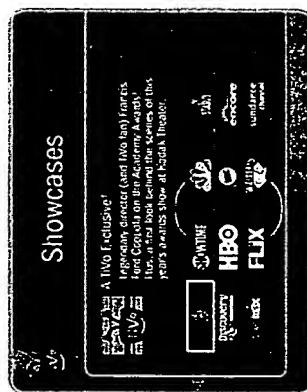
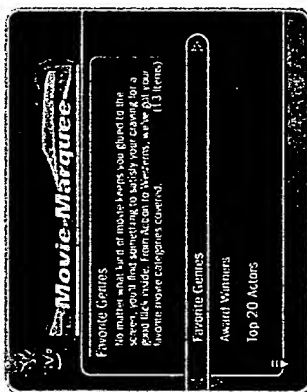
### ▶ TiVoolution Magazine

You'll always find something fun and different in TiVoolution Magazine, a guide to the best upcoming shows on television. You'll find premieres, specials, and offbeat gems, making it easy for you to schedule recordings. New content is delivered fresh to your recorder during the daily phone call.


To find TiVoolution Magazine, press the TiVo button to go to TiVo Central. Use the DOWN arrow to highlight TiVoolution Magazine, then press SELECT. Once you're inside, use the arrow buttons and SELECT to explore the selections. Once you get to a list of programs, select a title to see the Program Information screen. If you get the channel the program airs on, you can set up a recording here—it's that easy!

### ▶ Showcases

Showcases lists the best programs offered by television's biggest networks. The programs in Showcases are grouped in theme packages, giving you "one-stop shopping" convenience when browsing for programs to record. Packages include hit movies, exciting miniseries, hot specials, popular series, and shows featuring TV's biggest stars. Showcases is updated during your recorder's daily phone call. You can set up recordings in Showcases, much the same as in TiVoolution Magazine.



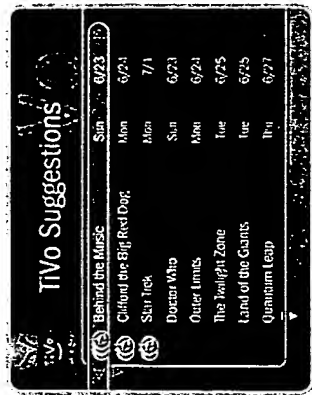
## ► TiVo Suggestions


TiVo Suggestions is a personalized list of shows selected to match your preferences. How is this magic possible? Any time you watch programs, live or pre-recorded, or browse programs with the TiVo Live Guide, you can rate them by pressing the THUMBS UP™ and THUMBS DOWN™ buttons (  ). You can give a program up to three Thumbs Up or three Thumbs Down.

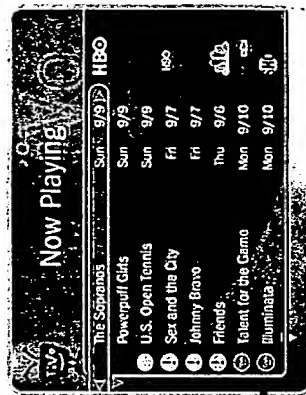
Over time, the more shows you rate, the better TiVo Suggestions will be at finding programs you like. The suggestions are listed under TiVo Suggestions in order of how closely they match your preferences.

Try it out: Press GUIDE to bring up the TiVo Live Guide. Highlight a few programs and rate them by pressing the THUMBS UP or THUMBS DOWN buttons. Then go to TiVo Central, then Pick Programs to Record, then TiVo Suggestions. Suggested programs based on your ratings appear in TiVo Suggestions. (If you don't see programs yet, come back later—it may take a few hours the first time.) You can press SELECT on a suggestion, then set up a recording.

As an added bonus, when the recorder has empty space, it may automatically record some of TiVo Suggestions. You will find them at the bottom of Now Playing, below programs you requested. TiVo Suggestions never replace shows you request or prevent them from being recorded. TiVo Suggestions are also always the first programs deleted to make room for recordings you request.



 Your personal TV preferences are just that: personal. See the TiVo Privacy Policy in Chapter 7, and the Federal Trade Commission (FTC) White Paper available at [www.tivo.com/privacy](http://www.tivo.com/privacy) for more information.




This icon indicates that the program was recorded as a Suggestion.

## ►► Tour Five: Now Playing

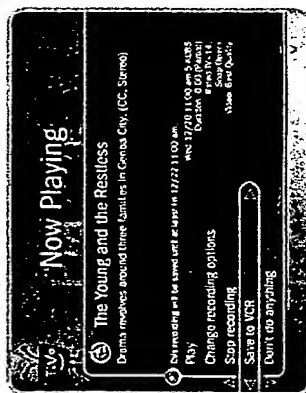
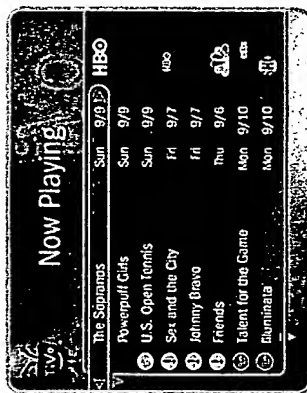
Your recorder can record many hours of programming (enough to fill a slew of video tapes!). Fortunately, it also labels and organizes all those saved programs. Unlike using a VCR, Now Playing gives you instant access to all recorded programs—no need to spend time searching for an episode on that tape you thought you used.

To go to Now Playing, just press the TiVo button twice. Your new recorder may already contain some entertaining short programs. A network logo to the right of the show tells you which network brings you the program.

 An icon like this one to the left of the program's title tells you the recording's current status (see the inside back cover for a glossary of these icons).

Programs you request will appear in Now Playing the moment recording begins. The most recently recorded shows appear at the top of the list. You can watch any title in Now Playing—even one that is still being recorded—by highlighting it, then pressing the PLAY button.

Try it. Highlight a program in Now Playing and press PLAY. OK, now for the cool part: Watch the program for at least 5 minutes, then press LEFT arrow to go back to Now Playing. Select the program again—the Program Information screen will now say “Resume Playing,” instead of “Play.” Select “Resume Playing,” and return to the program from the point you left it!

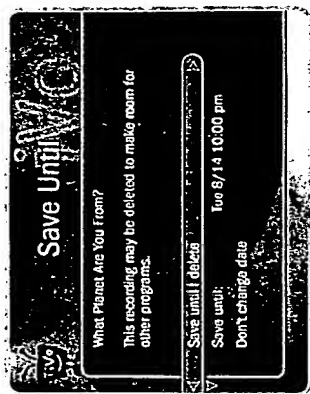


► **Save Until...**

By default, programs you record are saved until space is needed (this usually means for about two days). The oldest ones may be deleted to make room for new recordings you've scheduled. However, you always have the option to save a program for as long as you want.

To change how long a program in Now Playing will be saved, highlight it and press SELECT or RIGHT arrow. The Program Information screen appears. Select "Save Until..." On the next screen you can choose "Until I delete" or use the arrow buttons to highlight and change the date displayed. When you are done, press SELECT.

Feel free to watch some programs from Now Playing—but come back for the end of this chapter! There are still more cool things you may want to learn.



2


When you set up recordings, you can also specify how long you want to keep them by setting the Keep Until Recording Option. For more on this option, see page 36.

## ►► Cool Things You Can Do

**Never be late for your favorite programs:** Working late? Stuck in traffic? Don't worry! If you've set up a recording or a Season Pass, the program will be waiting for you in Now Playing. You can even start watching from the beginning as the program is recorded.

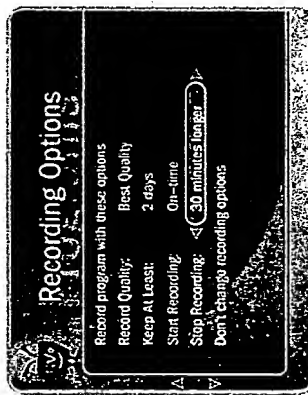
**Make your television wishes come true with a WishList:** Have a favorite actor? A favorite hobby or interest? How about a favorite sports team? If they're on TV, chances are a WishList will find them. For details see pages 38 through 44.

**Looking for good movies? Kids' shows? Science fiction?** With Search by Title, you can browse all the upcoming programs in a particular category and find shows you didn't know were on. For details see page 37.

**See a good preview, record the show:** If you're watching live TV and a promotion comes on for an upcoming program, you may see an IPreview™ icon like this one:  Pressing THUMBS UP while the icon is visible automatically sets up a recording for the upcoming program. You don't have to remember when it's on—it will be recorded! (If you did not schedule a recording when you saw the icon, rewind until it's visible again.)

**Use the Overtime Scheduler™ (and don't miss overtime!):** Programs sometimes start before they're supposed to, and often end later than scheduled. By using recording options, you can "pad" your recordings to account for variations by using the Overtime Scheduler. For details see page 36.

**Use the CLEAR button:** The CLEAR button hides the status bar, TiVo Live Guide, channel banner, and anything else that is not part of the program. It clears the text entered using the letter grid. And if you highlight a program's title in a list, pressing CLEAR deletes the program.

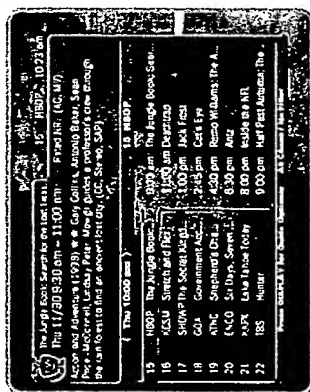


---

# Live TV

Watching Live TV	22
Status Bar	23
Controlling Live TV	24
Recording a Live Program	25
The TiVo Live Guide	26
Channel Banner	28

---



You can use your recorder's remote to control the power, volume, mute,

and TV input settings on your TV. For information on setting this up, see the *Installation Guide* that came with your recorder.

## ▶▶ Watching Live TV

When you're watching programming as it's broadcast, you're watching live TV. To go to live TV from the TiVo screens, press the LIVE TV button on your remote control. If you've used the pause, rewind, slow, or instant replay features and are "behind" live TV, press ADVANCE to catch up.

### ▶ Changing Channels

There are several ways to change channels:

- **TiVo Live Guide.** Tired of channel surfing? Choose something to watch with the TiVo Live Guide. To see the guide, press the GUIDE button. Then use the UP and DOWN arrows to highlight a program in the list. To change the channel, press SELECT. (See page 26 for more on the TiVo Live Guide.)
- **Number pad.** To go to a specific channel, use the numbers on your remote control, then press ENTER/LAST. (If you don't press ENTER/LAST, the channel changes automatically after a few seconds.) To clear the number before the channel changes, press CLEAR.
- **ENTER/LAST.** To jump back to the previous channel, press ENTER/LAST.
- **CHAN UP/DOWN.** Of course, you can also still use the CHAN UP/DOWN button on your remote control. (CHAN UP/DOWN skips channels that are not on the channel list selected in Guide Options. For more information on channel lists, see page 27.)



## ►► Status Bar

When you press **PLAY**, **PAUSE**, **FWD**, or **BACK**, the status bar appears on the lower part of your screen. In live TV, the status bar represents one hour and the white tick marks are 15 minutes apart. In recorded programs, the bar shows the program's length. The white tick marks are 15, 30, or 60 minutes apart, depending on the length of the program.

The green segment represents the part of the program saved by the recorder. The recorder automatically saves up to 30 minutes of live TV. You can move backward and forward through the saved portion of a program. (For more information, see page 24.)

In live TV, the right edge of the green segment represents the current time. A white vertical line shows where you are in the recording. If the white line is anywhere back in the green segment, you are behind live TV. If you are behind live TV, you can press the **ADVANCE** button to catch up.

Status Bar for live TV.



White line indicates where you are now.

Tick marks (15 min. apart)

This symbol shows you are catching up with live TV and the current time.

Status Bar for a two-hour recorded program.



This shows that the **BACK** button has been pressed twice.

This recorded program is two hours long.









The **CLEAR** button hides the status bar, the TiVo Live Guide, the channel banner, and anything else that is not part of the program.



You can only rewind live TV 30 minutes or to the point where you last changed the channel (whichever is less). When you change the channel, you skip ahead to the current time on the new channel and start saving on that channel. If you are behind live TV and watching something you still want to see, you should not change the channel.

## ▶▶ Controlling Live TV

Part of the fun of watching live TV with TiVo is using its pause, instant replay, and slow motion features. You can also use these features during recorded programs.

-  **RECORD:** Records a program when you're watching TV or browsing the TiVo Live Guide.
-  **PLAY:** Plays a program at normal speed. Shows the Status Bar for three seconds.
-  **PAUSE:** Pauses a live program for up to 30 minutes and a recorded program for as long as you want. To resume playing, press PAUSE again (or press PLAY).
-  **BACK:** Rewinds a program. Press BACK once, twice, or three times to go backward fast, faster, or fastest. Press it a fourth time to return to normal speed.
-  **FWD:** Fast forwards a program. Press FWD once, twice, or three times to go forward fast, faster, or fastest. Press it a fourth time to return to normal speed.
- Frame Forward or Back.** Press PAUSE, then press the FWD or BACK button. The image moves forward or backward one frame at a time.
-  **INSTANT REPLAY:** Instantly shows the last eight seconds of the program again.
-  **ADVANCE:** (a) In live TV, catches up to the live broadcast. (b) When you are fast forwarding in a recorded program, press ADVANCE to instantly jump ahead to the next tick mark. When you are rewinding, press ADVANCE to jump back to the previous tick mark. (c) In a recorded program, press ADVANCE once to jump to the end of the recording, press again to jump to the beginning.
-  **SLOW:** Plays the program in slow motion.

When you fast forward too far, press



INSTANT REPLAY to rewind eight

seconds. Press it again if you really

missed the mark.

## ▶▶ Recording a Live Program

### ▶ Starting a Recording

To start recording a program while you are watching it, press the RECORD button. On the transparent screen that appears, select "Record this showing (Best Quality)." As soon as the recording starts, the program will appear in Now Playing.

If you select "Season Pass & other options," a Program Information screen appears with more actions you can take, including getting a Season Pass and changing Recording Options (see page 34 for more on Season Pass recordings and page 35 for more on Recording Options).

### ▶ Recording the Saved Portion

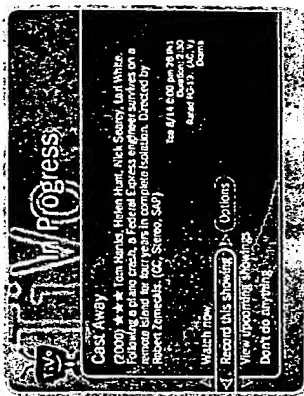
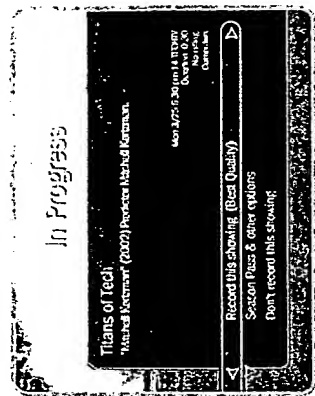
Up to 30 minutes of programming from the current channel is always being saved, even when you are not recording a program. When you change channels, the recorder clears what it has saved and starts saving programming again on the new channel. (So, if the saved portion is important to you, record it or don't change channels.)


To record the saved portion—in addition to the rest of the program—you must choose "Record this showing (Best Quality)." If you choose to change the Video Recording Quality (by selecting "Season Pass & other options") the saved portion of the program won't be recorded.

### ▶ Stopping a Recording

Two ways to stop a recording are:

- Select the title in Now Playing, then select "Stop Recording," or
- Press the RECORD button in live TV, then choose "Stop the current recording."



 You can also record any program—even one in progress—by highlighting it in the Tivo Live Guide, then pressing RECORD.

## ▶▶ The TiVo Live Guide

The TiVo Live Guide is the TiVo service program guide. It shows you current and upcoming programs airing up to two weeks into the future. You can also quickly set up recordings, rate any program with a Thumbs Up or Thumbs Down, and customize the channels and types of programs shown in the guide. Plus, the TiVo Live Guide is a transparent screen, so you won't miss anything while you browse.

### ▶ What's on Live TV?

To display the guide, go to live TV, then press the GUIDE button. To hide the guide, press GUIDE again or press CLEAR.

**Left side.** On its left side, the guide has a list of channels and the programs that are currently airing on them. If you want to watch a program in the list, highlight it, then press SELECT. This changes the channel.

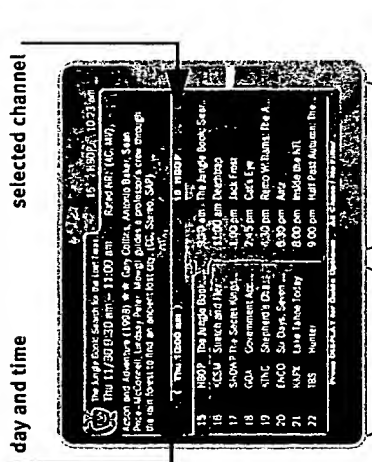
**Right side.** The right side has a list of what's coming up on the highlighted channel.

### ▶ Moving Around the Guide

- Press the UP and DOWN arrows to highlight channels or programs.
- Press CHAN UP/DOWN to quickly move up or down one page at a time.
- Use LEFT and RIGHT arrow to move between the left and right sides.

### ▶ Recording a Program

To record a program, highlight it, then press RECORD. On the transparent screen that appears, select "Record this showing (Best Quality)" or "Season Pass & other options" for more choices. (See page 25 for more on recording from live TV.)



The left side shows a list of all programs during this time on the channel you have highlighted.



While the highlight is on the left side, you can press the FWD and BACK buttons to change the time in half-hour increments.

While the highlight is on the right side, you can press the FWD and BACK buttons to change the channel selected.

### ► Customizing the TiVo Live Guide

The TiVo Live Guide has options that let you quickly change what programs and channels the guide shows. To see Guide Options, press GUIDE to display the TiVo Live Guide, then press INFO (or DISPLAY, if you don't have an INFO button on your remote). The available options are Channels, Day, Time, Filtering (on/off), and Choose filter.

**Channels.** Choosing a list here selects the channels displayed by the TiVo Live Guide.

Also, the CHAN UP/DOWN button skips to channels that are on the chosen list. (For details on how to customize these channel lists, see page 59.) The three channel lists are:

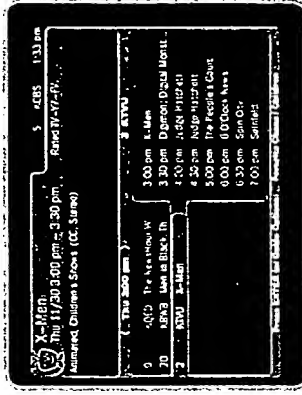
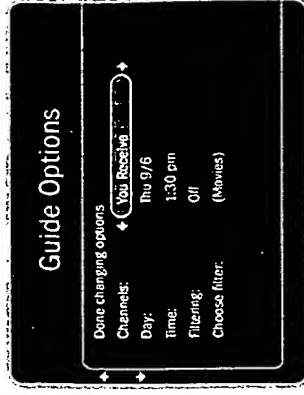
- **[Channels] You Receive.** This is the default list. It displays only the channels you have chosen in the Channels You Receive channel list.
- **Favorites.** Use this list to save time when browsing the TiVo Live Guide.
- **All.** This list displays all of your cable or satellite provider's channels, even channels you don't subscribe to.

**Day and Time.** Sets the guide to show what's on at a particular day and time.

**Filtering.** Turns filtering on or off. (Choosing a filter is explained below.) When you want to see all channels and programs in the guide, turn filtering off.

**Choose filter.** Press SELECT on this option. In the list that appears, use the UP and DOWN arrows to highlight a category, then press SELECT. Choose a subcategory. In the TiVo Live Guide, only channels with programs in that subcategory will appear.

**To change a guide option:** Highlight the option, and then press LEFT or RIGHT arrow to change the selection displayed. Save your changes by pressing SELECT or GUIDE. To cancel your changes, press CLEAR.

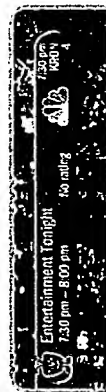


When filtering is on, the guide will only show channels that have a program in that category within six hours of the day and time selected. Programs that don't fit your category are grayed out.

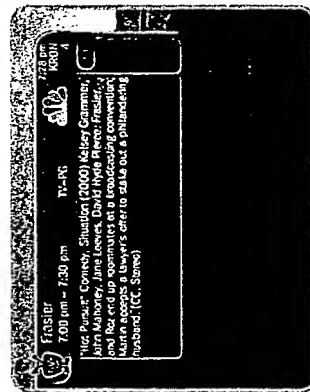
Pressing RIGHT arrow switches among channel banner styles, from small...



...to medium



...to large



## ▶▶ Channel Banner

The channel banner appears at the top of the screen when you change channels or press the INFO button or RIGHT arrow on your remote while watching live TV. (If you don't have an INFO button, you can press DISPLAY.) This also works when you're watching a program in Now Playing. The channel banner will disappear after a few seconds. You can hide the channel banner before it disappears by pressing CLEAR or LEFT arrow.

There are three versions of the channel banner: small (with the current time and channel), medium (adds the title, running time and ratings), and large (adds a program description and icons). Press RIGHT arrow to switch among them.

**Channel banner icons.** The large channel banner has three selectable icons. Each icon controls a different feature. To use an icon, use the UP/DOWN arrows to highlight it, then press SELECT.

Select to record a program (or stop a current recording). If a recording is in progress, the icon appears bright.



Select to go to Parental Controls.



If Parental Controls are off, the lock appears unlocked and dim.

If they are on, it appears locked and bright (pictured here).

If they have been turned off temporarily, it appears unlocked and bright.

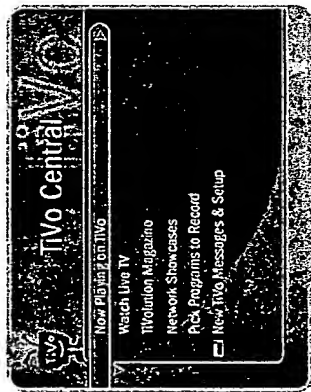
Select to read TiVo Messages. If the symbol is bright, you have new messages from the TiVo service.



# Playing and Recording Programs

TiVo Central	30
Now Playing	31
Season Pass	34
Recording Options	35
Search by Title	37
WishList	38
TiVo Suggestions	45
Record by Time or Channel	46
Season Pass Manager	49
To Do List	50

## ▶▶ TiVo Central



Almost everything you do with the TiVo service will start in TiVo Central; you can set up recordings, watch programs, read messages from the TiVo service, and access special showcases featuring entertaining and informative video. To get to TiVo Central, press the TiVo button on your remote control.

Occasionally, you will notice special icons beside some of the options in TiVo Central. These icons will let you know that you have received something new from the TiVo service:



When you see this icon, you know you have TiVo Messages to read.



This icon appears next to selections that contains special video content.



Chose the selection next to this icon to watch a special preview or visit a Showcase.

From TiVo Central, you can go to Now Playing to watch recorded (or recording!) programs, and you can go to Pick Programs to Record to set up your recordings.



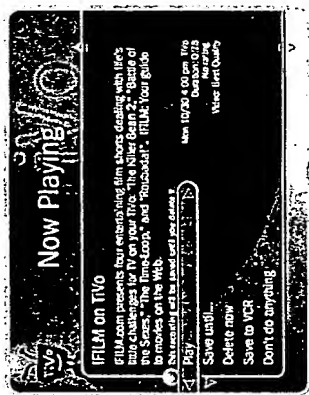
## ►► Now Playing

To go to Now Playing, press the TiVo button on your remote control twice. All the programs saved on your recorder are in Now Playing (no more searching through unlabeled videotapes!). As soon as a recording begins, it appears at the top of the list. You can watch any title in Now Playing, even one that is still being recorded.

To watch a program in Now Playing, highlight it and press **PLAY**. If you have watched part of the program already, it resumes from the point you stopped watching.

To see more actions you can take, highlight a title, then press **SELECT** or **RIGHT** arrow. A Program Information screen appears and lets you select from the actions below:

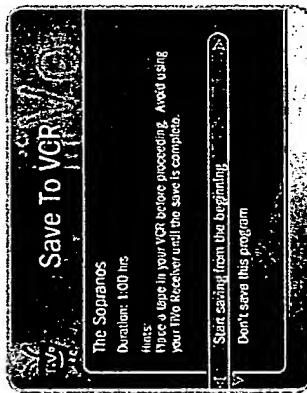
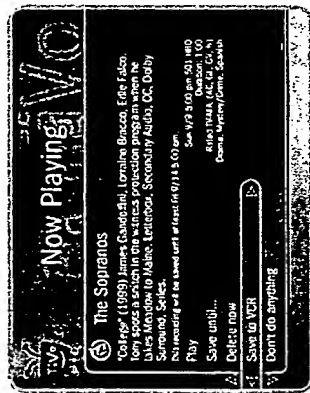
- **Play or Resume playing.**
- **Save until...** To change the date when the program may be deleted, highlight the date, then press **RIGHT** or **LEFT** arrow until the date you want appears. Press **SELECT** to return to the Program Information screen.
- **Stop recording**
- **Delete now**
- **Save to VCR.** If you have a VCR, you can save a program from Now Playing to a videotape. (See page 32 for more on using this feature.)



4

As recordings appear in Now Playing, a colored icon to the left of each title reflects how long each program will be saved and whether or not it was recorded automatically. See the back cover for a key to these icons.

The VCR will also record the channel banner, status bar, and any icons that may appear on the screen if you press buttons on the remote.



### ► Save to VCR

If you have a VCR, you can save a program from Now Playing to a videotape. Transfers to a VCR happen in real time. For example, if a program is two hours long, it will take two hours to save it. You will not be able to watch live TV or recordings while saving.

Most of the buttons on your remote that control live TV work as usual during Save to VCR. Keep in mind that the VCR will record the video exactly as it is played. (This means you can fast forward through the boring parts!)



If you press a button on your remote that would actually interrupt the transfer to VCR—for example, if you press GUIDE, the TiVo button, or PAUSE—a videotape icon appears as a warning.

### Preparing to Save to VCR:

1. Set up your VCR. Be sure you have connected your TiVo recorder's video and audio to your VCR's video and audio. (See your *Start Here* booklet and *Installation Guide* for details on how to connect your TiVo recorder to a VCR.)
2. Be sure your VCR is set to record input from your TiVo recorder, not some other video source. (See your VCR's instructions for how to set the input.)
3. Make sure you have a videotape in the VCR.

### Using Save to VCR:

1. Go to Now Playing, highlight the show you want to save, then press SELECT.
2. Using the arrow buttons, highlight "Save to VCR," then press SELECT.
3. Select "Start saving from the beginning."

4. A title screen appears for ten seconds. When you see it, press your VCR's record button.

5. When the program is over, press stop on your VCR.

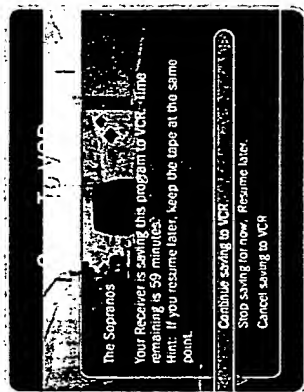
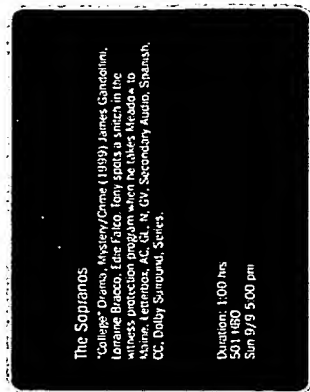
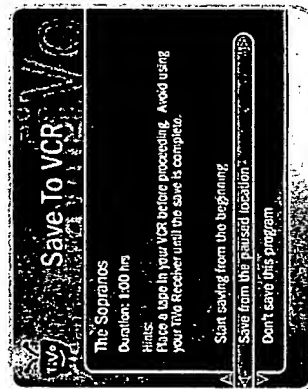
### Stopping or Canceling Save to VCR:

You can stop or interrupt the transfer by going to live TV or to the TiVo menus. You can also resume saving later. To stop or interrupt Save to VCR:

1. Press a button (for example, the TiVo button) that would interrupt Save to VCR. The videotape icon appears.
2. While the icon is visible, press the same button again.
3. A confirmation screen appears. On the confirmation screen, choose either "Stop saving for now. Resume later" or "Cancel saving to VCR."
4. Press stop on your VCR as well.

To resume saving the program (unless you chose to cancel):

1. Go to Now Playing, select the program, and choose "Save to VCR" on the Program Information screen.
2. Choose "Save from the paused location." A countdown screen appears.
3. To ensure that your VCR has time to begin recording, press record on your VCR before the countdown gets to "1."



## ▶▶ Season Pass

A Season Pass records every episode of a series that airs on a certain channel—even if the date or time slot changes! It is completely automatic and very easy to set up. Just select a program (from the TiVo Live Guide, Search by Title, View upcoming, etc.) and choose “Get a Season Pass.” There are two other types of recordings that repeat automatically:

- **Manual Repeating Recording:** Records on a specific channel at a specific time, just as you would with a VCR. See page 48 for more information.
- **Auto-recording WishList search:** Records all programs a WishList finds. See page 43.

These three types of repeating recordings also have the following in common:

- **No duplicates within 28 days.** If you watch or delete a particular episode or showing, it will not be recorded automatically again for 28 days. This prevents Now Playing from filling up with shows you probably don’t want. If you want to record duplicates, go to Recording Options, Show Type, and select “All (with duplicates).” You can also schedule a single duplicate recording for a particular program.
- **Parental Controls.** If Parental Controls are on when you schedule a repeating recording, the recorder checks its current program information to see if any upcoming program violates a Parental Control. If a program does, the recorder requires the current password to continue. See page 53 for more information.
- **Keep at Most=5.** By default, five episodes of a repeating recording program are kept in Now Playing. (You can change this setting; for more information, see page 35.)
- **Resolving conflicts.** The TiVo service resolves scheduling conflicts between repeating recordings by comparing recording priorities. You can change recording priorities with the Season Pass Manager. (See page 49 for more details).



An exception to the 28-day rule may occur if the program wasn’t watched but was automatically deleted from Now Playing to make room for another recording you requested—or if the program information describes it incorrectly.

## ▶▶ Recording Options

When you set up a recording, you can set Recording Options. You can also change them later by selecting the program in the To Do List or the Season Pass Manager, then choosing "Options."

### ▶ Setting Recording Options

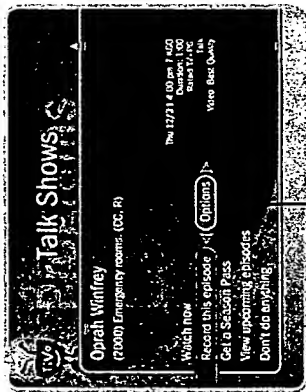
The Program Information screen that appears when you select a program includes choices to "Record this episode" and "Get a Season Pass."

When one of these recording actions is highlighted, "Options" appears to its right. To see the current Recording Options, use the arrow buttons to highlight "Options," then press SELECT.

To set your Recording Options:

1. On the Recording Options screen, use the UP/DOWN arrows to highlight an option.
2. Use RIGHT and LEFT arrow to change the setting.
3. When you are done, press SELECT or highlight "Record with these options."
4. Press SELECT again to schedule the recording with the new options.

To cancel your changes, press LEFT arrow, or highlight "Don't change recording options" and press SELECT.



Recording Options



Recording Options: one-time recording



Recording Options: repeating recording

### Recording Options include:

**Record Quality.** The choices for Video Recording Quality are Basic, Medium, High, and Best. The default setting is Best, (Best looks great, but keep in mind that it takes up more space). These settings are described on page 60. (This option is not available once a recording starts.)

**Keep At Most.** This option sets the maximum number of episodes to be saved—useful for keeping only the most recent nightly news or only a few of your kids' daily programs. The default setting is 5. (This option is available only for a repeating recording.)

**Show Type.** The choices are "Repeats & first run," "First run only," which records only new episodes, and "All (with duplicates)."


**Keep Until.** You can change this setting from "Space needed" (the default setting) to "Until I delete." (This option is available only for a repeating recording.)

**Keep At Least.** You can set the minimum amount of time the recorder keeps a recording. The default setting is "Until Space Needed."

### The Overtime Scheduler consists of these two options:

**Start Recording.** You can choose to start recording up to ten minutes before a program begins. The default setting is "On-time." (This option is not available once recording starts.)

**Stop Recording.** You can set a recording to continue—for a few minutes or up to three hours—after it's scheduled to end. For example, you can extend a recording of a sports event and be sure to catch the whole game—even if it goes into overtime. The default setting is "On-time."

 Are two of your favorite programs on at the same time? If you use

Recording Options, you can create two

Season Pass recordings for the same

time. Set the first one to record only First

Run episodes; set the second to record

every episode. Use the Season Pass

Manager (described on page 49) to give

the first one higher priority than the

second. Voilà! As long as the program

information is correct, when reruns of the

first program air, your recorder will ignore

them and record episodes of the second

program.

## ►► Search by Title

Search by Title, located in Pick Programs to Record, finds programs, even if you just know the first part of the title.

### To find a specific program:

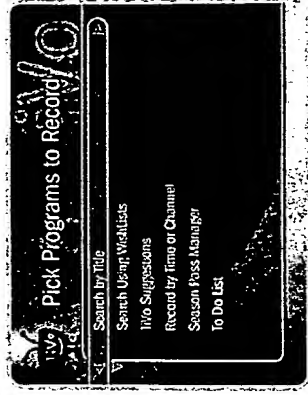
1. If you wish, you can first narrow the search with a category and subcategory.
2. The next screen has a grid with numbers and letters. Spell out the title by using the arrow buttons to move, then pressing SELECT on each letter you want. (Skip "a," "an," or "the.") As you select letters, an alphabetical list of programs appears on the right. Keep selecting letters until you see your program.

You can use your remote control for some functions too. The CLEAR button on the remote erases everything; BACK erases one letter at a time; FWD inserts a space.

3. When you see your program, press RIGHT arrow until the highlight is in the list. To move the highlight within the list, press the UP and DOWN arrows. You can also press CHAN UP/DOWN to move quickly up or down the list one screen at a time.
4. Press SELECT when the title you want is highlighted. The Program Information screen will appear. Then you can view upcoming episodes, set up a Season Pass, or record an individual showing.

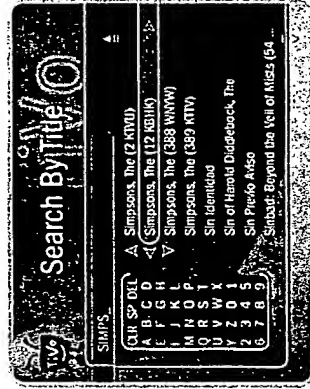
**To browse a category of upcoming programs:** Choose a category and subcategory. Numbers come before letters, so to start from the top, enter a zero.

TiVo Central ► Pick Programs to Record ► Search by Title



If you only know one word in the title, use a Title WishList to find the program. See page 41 for more information.

Replace hyphens (-), slashes (/) and periods (.) with spaces. For example, use 20 20 to search for the title "20/20." Any other marks, such as apostrophes ('), asterisks (\*), ampersands (&) and dollar signs (\$) are ignored. For example, you would use 6 OCLOCK NEWS to search for the title "6 O'Clock News."



## ►► WishList

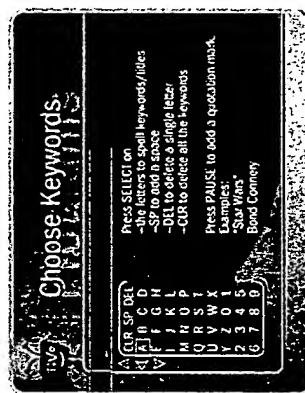
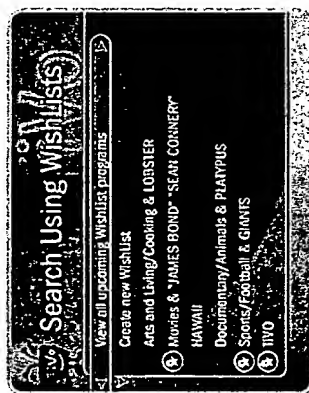
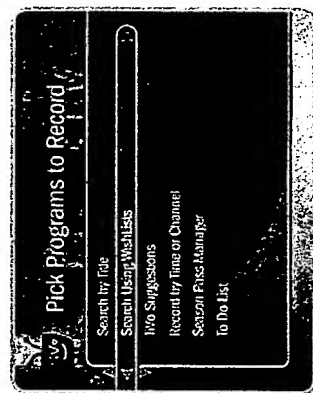
A WishList is a powerful search feature that finds upcoming programs. It keeps on searching automatically for as long as you keep the WishList.

For example, you could create a Category Only WishList for the category "Movies" and subcategory "Action/Adventure." You could then use it occasionally to look at a list of all action/adventure movies airing in the next two weeks. The list would be constantly updated by your recorder's daily calls for more program information.

You could search for something more specific by creating an Actor WishList for Sean Connery, and then include the category "Movies," and subcategory "Action." This WishList would only find action movies starring Sean Connery.

With a Keyword WishList, you can look for something very specific. For example, the Keyword WishList *GIANTS* with category "Football" would find Giants football (but not baseball) games for you.

Here's another example: You could make a Keyword WishList to find the 1986 remake of the science fiction classic *The Fly*, starring Geena Davis. Not only does this WishList find a specific program—it finds the specific version! The keyword entry would look like this: "*GEENA DAVIS*" *FLY*. (Using quotation marks in a Keyword WishList makes sure that the WishList only finds programs that match the exact phrase you have entered. This means that you will find *The Fly*, starring Geena Davis and not a documentary about flies narrated by Davis Geena!) You could also find this movie by making a Keyword WishList for the movie's title and year. In that case, the keyword entry might look like this: "*THE FLY*" 1986.





After you make a WishList, you can periodically view what it finds by selecting “View all upcoming WishList programs,” or selecting an individual WishList, then selecting “View upcoming programs.” Then you can schedule recordings for the programs or episodes you want. (See page 43 for more details.)

## ► Can a WishList Do More Than Search?

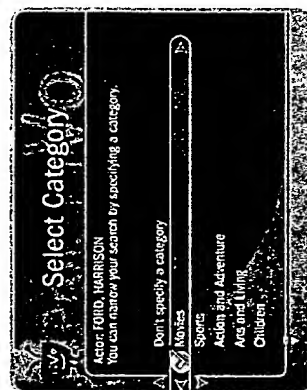
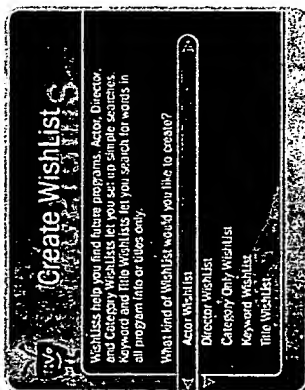
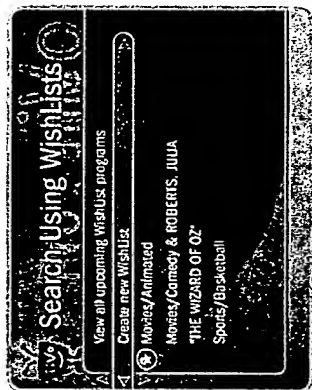
You can set a WishList to auto-record, and it will record every program the WishList finds. For example, with the Sean Connery Actor WishList, you would automatically collect Sean Connery action movies in Now Playing.

Some WishList searches are better suited to browsing than to auto-recording. For example, you could create a Category Only WishList for the category “Documentary.” This WishList would find every upcoming documentary. You could then occasionally browse the WishList and choose the upcoming documentaries you want to record.

The more specific a WishList is, the better suited it is to auto-recording. For example, an auto-recording Keyword WishList with the keywords *LAKERS* and *KINGS*, and category “Sports/Basketball” would only record basketball games with both of these teams—a great way to ensure that you enjoy this season’s rivalry. (For more on auto-recording WishList, see page 43.)



If you set up an auto-recording WishList for sports, consider using the OverTime Scheduler (described on page 35) to make sure you don't miss the most exciting part of the game!



### ► Creating a WishList

From Search Using WishLists, select "Create new WishList." Next, select the type of WishList: Actor, Director, Category Only, Keyword, or Title. For most WishList searches, you use the grid of letters on the next screen to spell out what you're looking for. As the last step, you'll then be able to select a category and subcategory to narrow your search. For example, if you want movies with Harrison Ford, but not documentaries or talk shows, select "Movies." To search every category, select "Don't specify a category."

**Category Only WishList:** Use the UP and DOWN buttons to highlight a category, then press SELECT or RIGHT arrow. A subcategories list appears. Highlight a subcategory, then press SELECT or RIGHT arrow. To search all subcategories, you can also select "Don't specify a subcategory."

**Actor or Director WishList:** Spell the person's last name first by using the arrow keys to move the selection box around the grid and pressing SELECT to enter a highlighted letter. As you select letters, a list of names appears to the right of the keypad.



If you see the person's name, press RIGHT arrow until you move the highlight to a name in the list. Use the UP or DOWN arrow to highlight the name you want and press SELECT.


To search for a name that is not on the list, enter the name in the format: *LAST NAME, FIRST NAME*. You must match the spelling of the name exactly, and you must use a comma (available in the grid under the letter *W*).

#### ► **A Keyword or Title WishList**

You can create a Keyword or Title WishList with one keyword or with several. For a Keyword WishList, the TiVo service checks for your keywords in the program or episode title, description, actor, director, year, and category information. A Title WishList works very similarly, but the TiVo service only searches program and episode titles.

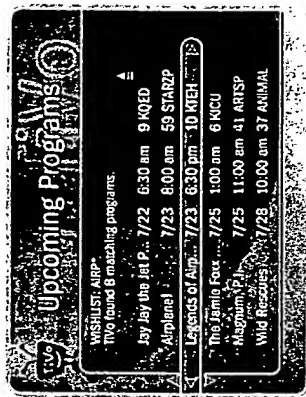
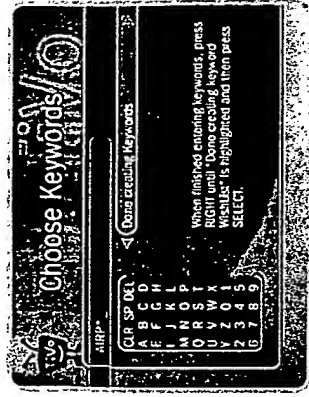
Spell your keyword(s) by using the arrow buttons to move around, then pressing select to enter highlighted letters on the grid. You can enter as many characters as will fit on the screen. When you have finished, use RIGHT arrow to highlight "Done creating keywords," then press SELECT or RIGHT arrow.

#### **Using \* in WishList Searches**

To search for similar words in a Keyword or Title WishList, use the asterisk (\*) as a special symbol that replaces the endings of words. For example, the keyword *AIRP\** would find shows containing "airport," "airplane," "airplanes," as well as the movie "Airplane!" To enter an asterisk, press the SLOW (  ) button as you are spelling out your keyword or title.

The asterisk can be helpful when you're looking for a range of similar words, as in the example above, or if you're just not sure how something is spelled. Pop quiz: is it "irresistable" or "irresistible?" Use the keyword *IRRESIST\** and don't worry about it! Two things to note about using the asterisk:

- It can only be used at the end of a keyword; it cannot be used to omit letters at the beginning or in the middle of a word. (For example, *AIR\*NE* or *\*PLANE* would not work.)



- When using this symbol, be as specific as possible. For example, do not use keywords like *TH\**. There will not be enough room to show all the results of a keyword that is too general.

#### Tips for entering keywords

- To specify an exact phrase in a Keyword or Title WishList, surround a set of words with quotation marks (to enter quotation marks, press PAUSE ( " ) ). For example, the keyword *PAUL SIMON* might also turn up a documentary about Simon Bolivar with a director whose name is Paul. Use "*PAUL SIMON*" to be certain you find programs that only feature Paul Simon.
- If you enter more than one keyword in a Keyword or Title WishList, they only find programs that match all of your keywords (for example, "*GEENA DAVIS*" *FLY*).
- If you want to include an exact phrase and additional keywords, there should be a space between the final quotation mark and the beginning of the next word. You can place a space character by selecting SP on the grid of letters or by pressing FWD ( ►► ).
- Replace hyphens ( - ), slashes ( / ) and periods ( . ) with spaces. For example, you would use the keyword phrase *20 20* to search for the title "*20/20*." For an Actor WishList for Catherine Zeta-Jones, use *ZETA JONES, CATHERINE*. You can place a space character by selecting SP on the grid of letters or by pressing FWD ( ►► ).
- Any other marks, such as apostrophes ( ' ) and ampersands ( & ), are ignored. For example, you would use the keyword phrase *6 OCLOCK NEWS* to search for the title "*6 O'Clock News*." (Note that commas ( , ) are also ignored, except in an actor or director WishList, where they are essential.)
- For dollar signs ( \$ ) substitute the letter S. For example, to find "\$100,000 Pyramid," use *S100000*. (In Search by Title, skip the dollar signs to find these titles.)

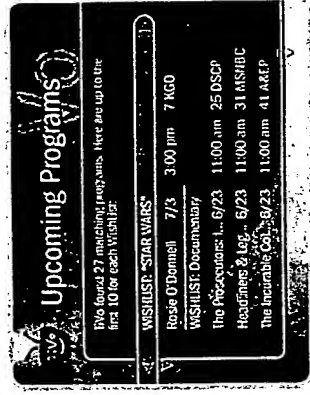
► **Browsing, Recording, and Editing a WishList**

**To browse all WishList searches:** Select "View all upcoming WishList programs." This selection displays a list of up to 10 upcoming programs from each of your WishList searches—and up to 200 programs total. The list is divided to display programs found by each WishList. To record a program, select its title; you will see the Program Information screen, where you can select "Record this episode" and other actions.

**To browse an individual WishList:** Highlight the WishList and press SELECT. Select "View upcoming programs," which searches through current program information and creates a list of up to 200 unique upcoming programs that match this WishList. This list displays the first airing of an episode or program.

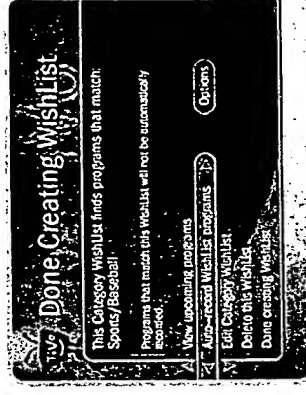
To see all the showings of upcoming episodes (up to two weeks into the future), select the title of the program in the "Upcoming programs" list generated by your WishList. Then select "View upcoming episodes" on the Program Information screen that appears. A comprehensive list appears, including several episodes with showings on different channels and different time slots. The Program Information screen also includes an option for recording a particular program.

**Auto-recording WishList.** When you create a WishList or select it, you can choose the action, "Auto-record WishList programs." This means every program the WishList finds will be automatically recorded. (See page 34 for more on repeating recordings.)



As you browse the upcoming program titles found by WishList searches, remember that the **CHAN UP/DOWN** button pages quickly through lists.

4



Each auto-recording WishList and its upcoming recordings are marked with a star (★). If you want to be sure that all the matches your auto-recording WishList finds are recorded, give the auto-recording WishList a high priority in the Season Pass Manager. (See page 49 for details.)

**To edit a WishList.** Select the WishList, then select Edit WishList. You can change your WishList—for example, to correct a misspelling or to add a category if you did not add one when you created the WishList.


## ►► TiVo Suggestions

The TiVo service tries to make sure there is always something interesting on for you to watch. When you aren't using it, your recorder is sifting through upcoming programs to find things you might like. How does it know what you will like? It makes predictions based on ratings you have given to programs using the THUMBS UP and THUMBS DOWN buttons, and on Thumbs Up given automatically to programs you chose to record.

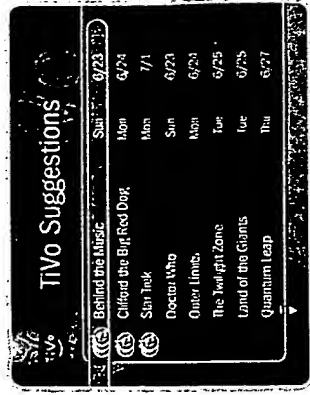
The more you record and use the THUMBS UP and THUMBS DOWN buttons, the better the suggestions become. You can rate shows while browsing TiVo Suggestions or while:


- Watching live TV or browsing through the TiVo Live Guide.
- Viewing a Program Information screen (for example, to schedule a recording).
- Looking through Showcases and TiVo!ution Magazine.

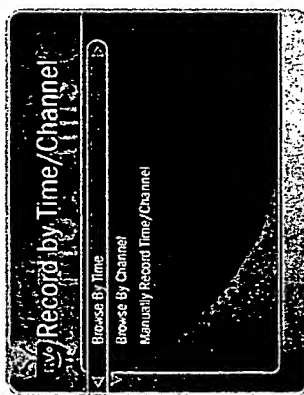
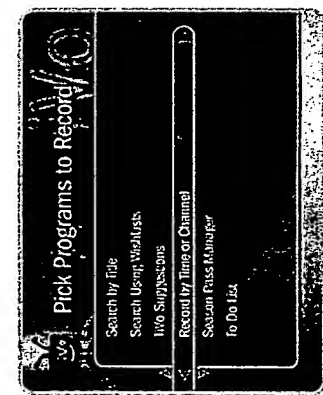
You can check TiVo Suggestions occasionally to see what TiVo has found for you. The list of programs is ranked, so shows you are more likely to enjoy are near the top. If you want to record a program, select it and the Program Information screen appears.

When there is empty space in Now Playing, the TiVo service may record a TiVo Suggestions for you. Suggestions are marked with a TiVo icon (  ). The recorder never deletes your programs in Now Playing in order to make room for a suggestion. Instead, suggestions are deleted to make room for recordings you schedule.

Your personal TV preferences are just that: personal. All that information is stored in the recorder, in your living room. See the TiVo Privacy Policy at [www.tivo.com/privacy](http://www.tivo.com/privacy) or in Chapter 7 for more information. If you would like to turn off automatic recording of suggestions, you have that option. (See page 61 for details.)



 If other members of your household are pressing THUMBS UP on shows you don't care for, and vice versa, you may find that TiVo Suggestions is making some suggestions that you like, and some that are more appropriate for other members of your household.



## ►► Record by Time or Channel

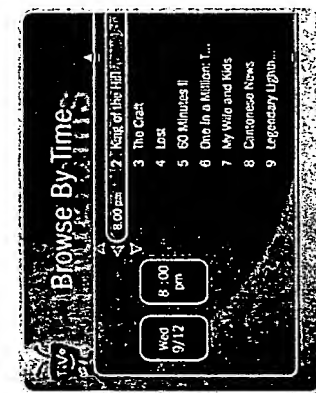
Three options are available under Record by Time/Channel: Browse by Time, Browse by Channel, and Manually Record Time/Channel.

### ► Browse by Time

Browse by Time lets you browse all programs on a particular day and time. With Browse by Time, you can filter the list to see only programs in a particular category. For example, you can browse all the movies airing on Saturday night.

#### To browse by time:

1. Use the arrow buttons to highlight a category (for example, "Movies") to narrow the list of programs, then press **SELECT**.
2. Press the **UP** and **DOWN** arrows to select the date you want to see, then press **RIGHT** arrow to move the highlight to the time column.
3. Press the **UP** and **DOWN** arrows to select a time.



4. Press **SELECT** to bring up the list of programs without leaving the time selector, or press **RIGHT** arrow to bring up the list of programs and move to the list at the same time.
5. When you find a program you want to record, highlight it and press **SELECT** to bring up the Program Information screen. Then you can view upcoming episodes, set up a Season Pass, or record an individual showing.

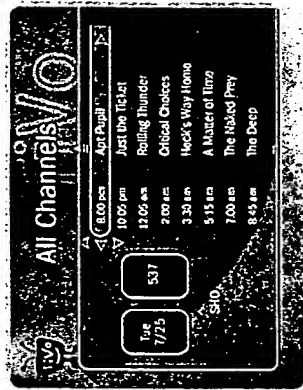
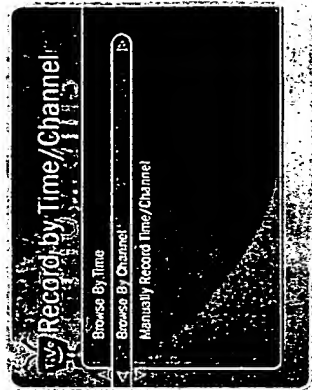


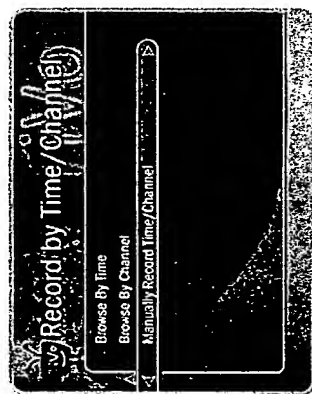
### ► Browse by Channel

Browse by Channel lets you browse through programs on a particular channel. You can start with all channels or just your favorites.

#### To browse by channel:

1. Highlight and select either "All Channels," which includes all the channels you receive, or "Favorite Channels," which includes just the channels you have selected as your favorites. (For information on customizing the list of Favorite Channels, see page 59.)
2. Press the UP and DOWN arrows to select the date you want to browse, then press RIGHT arrow to move the highlight to the channel column.
3. Press the UP and DOWN arrows to select a channel. (You can also use the numbers on the remote to type in a channel, then press ENTER/JUMP.)
4. Press SELECT to bring up the list of programs without leaving the channel selector, or press RIGHT arrow to bring up the list of programs and move to the list at the same time.
5. When you find a program you want to record, highlight it and press SELECT to bring up the Program Information screen. Then you can view upcoming episodes, set up a Season Pass, or record an individual showing.





**Here's a tip: Use a Manual**

**Repeating Recording to record things like the opening monologue of a late night talk show.**

### ► Manually Record Time/Channel

Manually Record Time/Channel lets you schedule a recording on a specific channel at a specific time (just as you would with a VCR). You can also create a manual repeating recording here by setting the recording to repeat every week, every day, or every weekday.

#### **To create a manual recording:**

1. Choose the recording type, using the UP and DOWN arrows to select "One Time," or "Repeating." Then press RIGHT arrow.
2. Choose the day(s) for the recording, using the UP and DOWN arrows to change the current selection. If you chose "Repeating," you can choose to repeat the recording on a specified day of the week (for example, "Every Tuesday") or several times a week (for example, "Every M - F" or "Every Day"). Then press RIGHT arrow.
3. Choose a channel using the UP and DOWN arrows (or by entering a number with the remote, then pressing ENTER). Press RIGHT arrow.
4. Set the hour, minute, and am/pm for the start and stop time, using the UP/DOWN arrows to change the current selection. Press RIGHT arrow to move to the next step, LEFT arrow to move back.
5. Schedule the recording by pressing SELECT. A confirmation screen appears. (The recording will be named with a "best guess" based on program guide listings for that time and channel. This will help you find your program later in the To Do List or in Now Playing.) When you're ready to schedule the recording, just press SELECT.

## ▶▶ Season Pass Manager

Say you have a Season Pass to *ER* and an auto-recording WishList for movies with Julia Roberts. What if a Julia Roberts movie happens to air at the same time as *ER*? The recorder will check the priorities in the Season Pass Manager to decide which program to record. If the Julia Roberts WishList has a higher priority than the *ER* Season Pass, the Julia Roberts movie will be recorded, and *ER* will not.

If you don't change priorities in the Season Pass Manager, repeating recordings are prioritized by the order they were set up: the first has highest priority, and so on.

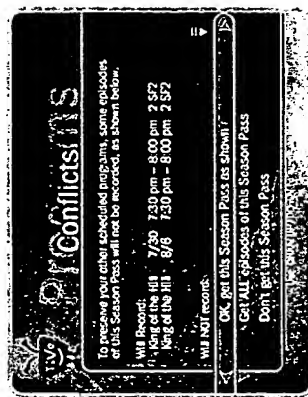
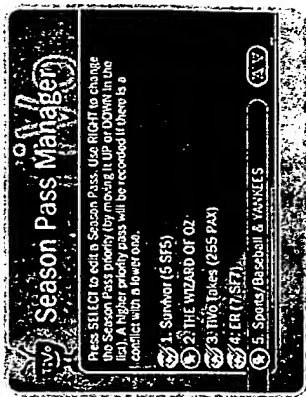
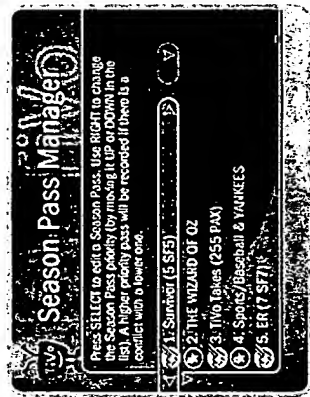
### To change the priority order:

1. Use the UP/DOWN arrows to highlight one of your repeating recordings.
2. Press RIGHT arrow to highlight the arrows to the right of the title.
3. Use the UP/DOWN arrows to move the selected title up or down in the list.

### ▶ Priorities and Resolving Conflicts

If a conflict occurs when you're setting up a new repeating recording, you'll be shown which programs are involved. You'll also be given options to resolve the conflict:

- Record only those programs that do not conflict with others previously scheduled to record. This gives the repeating recording the lowest priority.
- Record all programs requested. This gives the repeating recording the highest priority.



## ▶▶ To Do List

The To Do List shows all your scheduled recordings and lets you cancel or edit them. Individual recordings are marked with a single check mark (✓). Season Pass recordings and manual repeating recordings have a double check mark (✓✓), and WishList recordings have a star (★).

**To cancel a program or a repeating recording:** Highlight the title and press CLEAR.

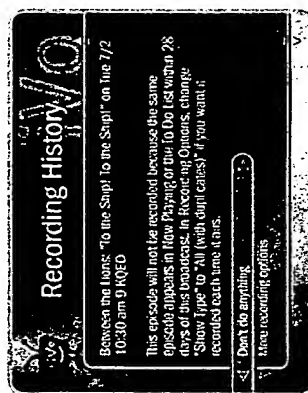
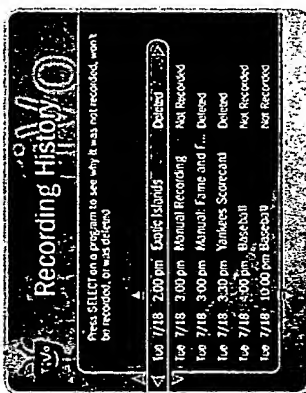
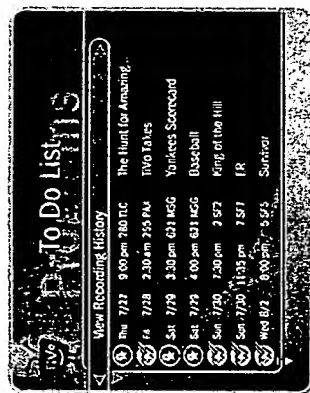
## ▶ View Recording History

This is an advanced feature in the To Do List for those who really want all the details. Selecting this option takes you to a list of three types of programs:

**Deleted:** To find programs that were deleted, press the UP arrow or CHAN UP. (You will find these programs listed above the point where the highlight bar starts off.) Selecting a title will take you to a screen that tells you how and when the program was deleted.

**Were not recorded:** To find programs that were not recorded, press the UP arrow or CHAN UP. (You will find these programs listed above the point where the highlight bar starts off.) Selecting a title will take you to a screen that tells why it was not recorded.

**Will not be recorded:** To find programs that will not be recorded, press DOWN arrow or CHAN DOWN. (You will find these programs listed below the point where the highlight bar starts off.) Selecting a title will take you to a screen that tells you why the program will not be recorded. You can then select "More recording options" on this screen, which will display the Program Information screen. You could choose "View upcoming episodes" to find an episode that doesn't conflict with anything else, or change Recording Options, which may allow the program to be recorded.



---

# Messages & Setup

TiVo Messages	52
My Preferences	53
Recorder & Phone Setup	62
System Information	66
Troubleshooting	67
Restart or Reset System	68
Standby	69

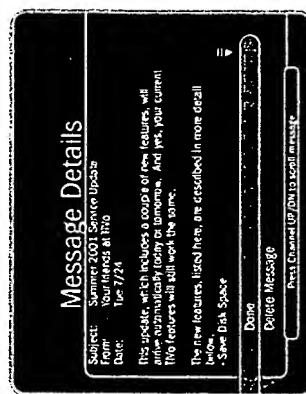
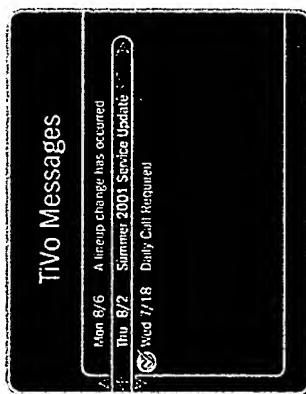
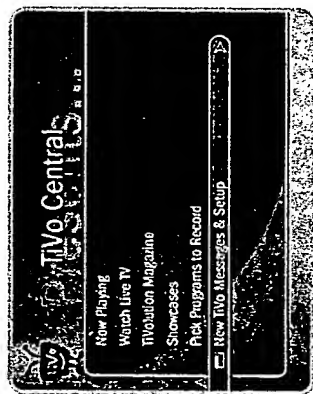
---

## ▶▶ TiVo Messages

Select TiVo Messages to read any messages from the TiVo service or internal alerts from your recorder. When you receive a new message, TiVo Central will show the option, "NEW TiVo Messages & Setup."

### To read the messages:

1. Go to TiVo Central, then select NEW TiVo Messages & Setup.
2. Select Read NEW TiVo Messages. A list of all of your messages appears. Messages you have already read are check marked.
3. Use the UP/DOWN arrows to highlight a message, then press SELECT to read it. CHAN UP/DOWN lets you page through a message if it doesn't fit on the screen.



## ►► My Preferences

With the selections in My Preferences, you can make the recorder work more to your liking: you can set Parental Controls and your default Record Quality, customize channel lists, turn on Save Disk Space, and set a number of other options.

### ► Parental Controls

Parental Controls allow you to set limits on movie and television ratings and to lock specific channels so that a password is required to view them. If you try to watch a program in Now Playing that violates a Parental Control, you will also be asked for the password. In addition, when Parental Controls are on, you must enter a password to delete a program that violates a Parental Control.

The padlock icon shows the current state of Parental Controls:



**Off.** No password or controls set. Padlock appears unlocked and dark.



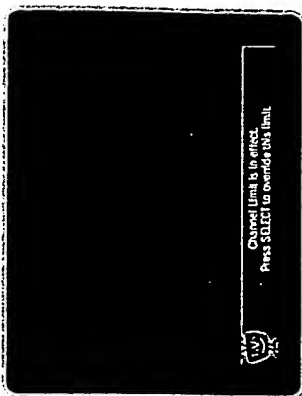
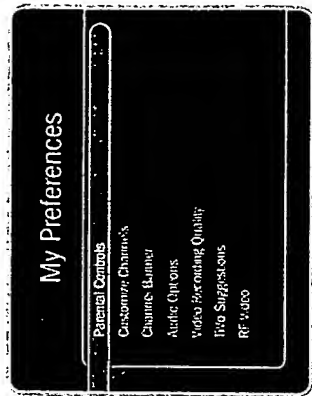
**On.** Password and controls set. Padlock appears locked and bright.

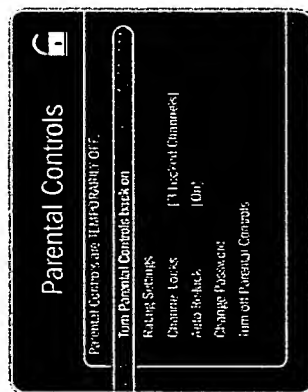
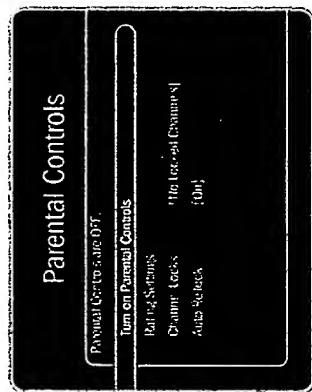


**Temporarily off.** Controls set but password was entered to temporarily turn off. Padlock appears unlocked and bright.

While Parental Controls are on, you can watch a locked program or channel by pressing SELECT, then entering the Parental Controls password. This temporarily turns off Parental Controls.

(The large version of the channel banner has a shortcut to Parental Controls; see page 28 for details.)





### To turn on Parental Controls and define a password ( )

1. Select "Turn on Parental Controls."
2. Use the number buttons on the remote control to enter a four-digit password.
3. Enter the same password again for confirmation.

### To temporarily turn off Parental Controls ( )

- Enter the password to watch a program or channel—Parental Controls are temporarily turned off, or
- Select "Temporarily turn off Parental Controls" on the Parental Controls screen, then enter your password.

When Parental Controls are temporarily turned off, any program or channel can be viewed, but the correct password is still required to change Parental Controls settings.

### To re-enable Parental Controls ( )

- On the Parental Controls screen, select "Re-enable Parental Controls," or
- Put the recorder in Standby, then take it out of Standby. To do this, press the POWER or STANDBY button on the front of your recorder; or select Messages & Setup, then Standby, and then press the TiVo or LIVE TV buttons.

### Auto Re-lock Option

When Parental Controls are temporarily turned off, they re-lock automatically after four hours if you don't use your remote. Parental Controls won't re-lock in the middle of a show. By default, the Auto Re-lock option is on.



## To turn off Auto Re-lock:

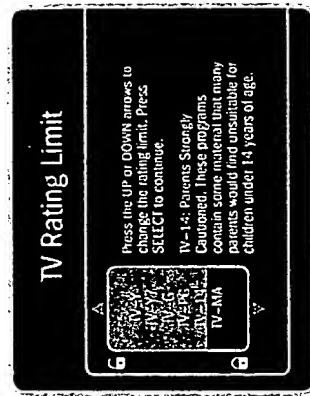
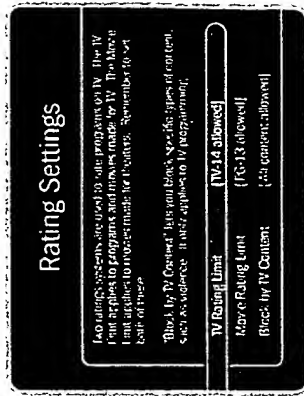
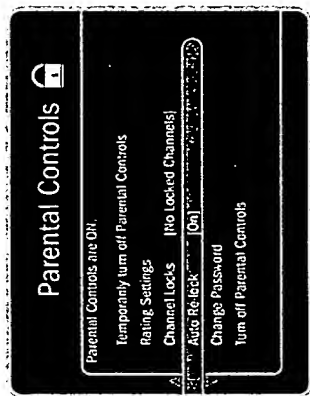
- To turn off Auto Re-lock, go to Messages & Setup, then My Preferences, then Parental Controls. Press the DOWN arrow to highlight "Auto Re-lock," then press SELECT. Enter your password, then highlight and select "Auto Re-lock off."

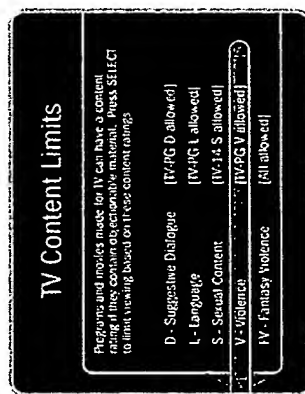
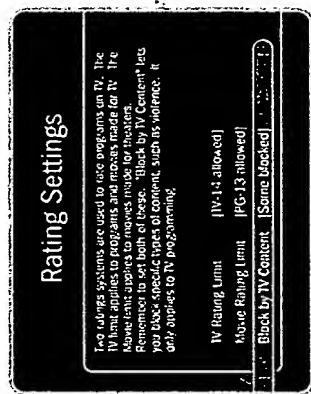
## Rating Settings for TV and Movies (TV-14)

Movies that are originally meant for release to theaters have a different rating system from programs that are made for TV. You can use Parental Controls to set limits for both rating systems (see page 57). There is also a rating system for TV content that allows you to set limits for specific types of content that may be objectionable—such as sexual content or violence.

## To set Rating Limits for TV and Movies:

- From Parental Controls, select "Rating Settings," then enter the password and press SELECT.
- Select the kind of limit you want to change: TV or Movies.
- The next screen contains a box listing all potential ratings. Ratings shaded in green are not locked; those in red are locked. Use the UP and DOWN arrows to move the red shading and adjust which ratings are locked. Your changes are saved automatically. When you are done, press RIGHT or LEFT arrow to return to Parental Controls.

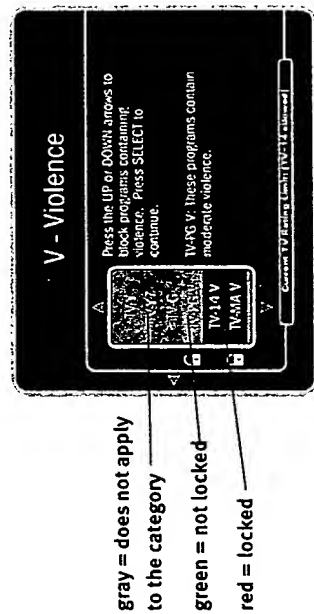




### To set Rating Limits for Specific TV Content:

1. From Parental Controls, select "Rating Settings," then enter the password and press SELECT.
2. Select Block by TV Content.
3. A list of categories appears on the next screen. Select a category (for example, V-Violence).
4. A box containing all the possible ratings appears. Ratings in green are not locked; ratings in red are locked. (Ratings in gray do not apply to the category. For example, a TV-Y program would not have V-Violence content so there is nothing to block.)

Use the UP and DOWN arrows to adjust which ratings are locked or unlocked. The display to the right of the box will change to tell you exactly what ratings level you are allowing. Your changes are saved automatically. To return to the Parental Controls screen, press SELECT or RIGHT arrow.



## Motion Picture Association of America ratings for movies

**G: General Audiences.** Most parents would find this material suitable for all ages.

**PG: Parental Guidance Suggested.** Parents may find portions of this material unsuitable for younger children.

**PG-13: Parents Strongly Cautioned.** This material contains portions many parents would find unsuitable for children under 13 years of age.

**R: Restricted.** This material is specifically designed to be viewed by adults and therefore may be unsuitable for children under 17.

**NC-17: Adult Content.** This material contains intense, disturbing, or graphically portrayed themes or content that are not suitable for viewing by children under 17.

**AO: Explicit Sexual Content.** This material contains explicit sexual content and is intended to be viewed by adults ONLY.

## ► Ratings for television movies and programs (including content ratings):

**TV-Y. All children.** This program is designed to be appropriate for all children. Whether animated or live action, the themes and elements in this program are specifically designed for a very young audience, including children from ages 2-6. This program is not expected to frighten younger children.

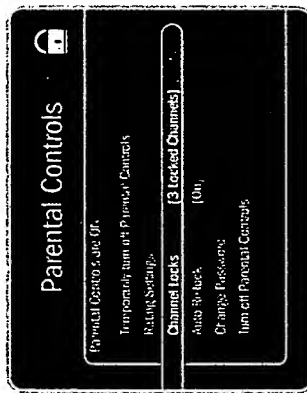
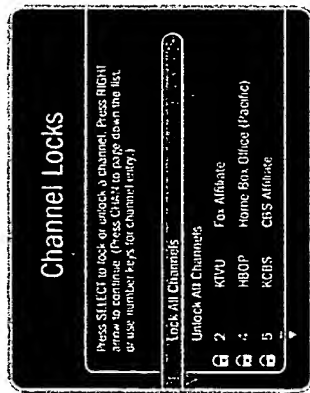
**TV-PG. Parental guidance suggested.** This program contains material that parents may find unsuitable for younger children. Many parents may want to watch it with their younger children. The theme itself may call for parental guidance and/or the program contains one or more of the following: moderate violence (V), some sexual situations (S), infrequent coarse language (L), or some suggestive dialogue (D).


**TV-Y7. Directed to older children.** This program is designed for children age 7 and above. Themes and elements in this program may include mild fantasy or comedic violence, or may frighten children under the age of 7. Programs where fantasy violence that may be more intense or more combative than other programs in the TV-Y7 category are designated TV-Y7-FV.

**TV-14. Parents strongly cautioned.** This program contains some material that parents would find unsuitable for children under 14 years of age. Parents are strongly urged to exercise greater care in monitoring this program and are cautioned against letting children under the age of 14 watch unattended. This program contains one or more of the following: intense violence (V), intense sexual situations (S), strong coarse language (L), or intensely suggestive dialogue (D).

**TV-G. General audience.** Most parents would find this program appropriate for all ages. Although this rating does not signify a program designed specifically for children, most parents may let younger children watch this program unattended. It contains little or no violence, sexual dialogue, or situations; and no strong language.

**TV-MA. Mature audiences only.** This program is specifically designed to be viewed by adults and therefore may be unsuitable for children under 17. This program contains one or more of the following: graphic violence (V), explicit sexual activity (S), or crude, indecent language (L).



 When you turn Parental Controls off, you don't need to know a password to turn them back on. You may prefer to temporarily turn off Parental Controls, so that another person in your household does not choose a new password.

### Channel Lock for Live TV (TV)

You can lock individual channels so that a password is required to view any program on those channels. To lock or unlock channels:

1. From the Parental Controls screen, select "Channel Lock," and then enter the password.
2. A channel list appears with a padlock icon to the left of any locked channels. Highlight a channel and press SELECT to add or remove a padlock icon. Use CHAN UP/DOWN to move through the list quickly. You can highlight a specific channel by entering its channel number with the number buttons on the remote.
3. When you are done, press RIGHT or LEFT to return to Parental Controls. Your changes are saved automatically.

### To change the Password (TV)

To change the password for Parental Controls, Parental Controls must be on.

1. Select "Change Password" on the Parental Controls screen.
2. Enter a new password.
3. Re-enter the new password.

### To turn off Parental Controls (TV)

1. Select "Turn off Parental Controls."
2. Enter the password and press SELECT.

When Parental Controls are turned off, the password is deleted and anyone can view any programs or watch any channels.

## ► Customize Channels

**What are channel lists for?** Features such as Search by Title and Search Using WishLists only look at programs available on channels selected in the Channels You Receive list. Your recorder also uses lists of channels to decide which channels the TiVo Live Guide displays and which channels to search in Browse By Channel.

There are three selections available in Customize Channels:

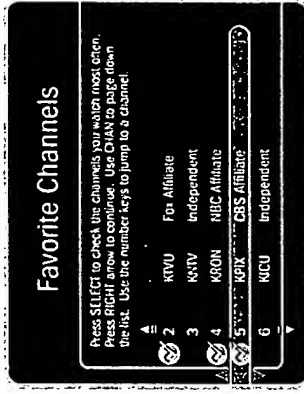
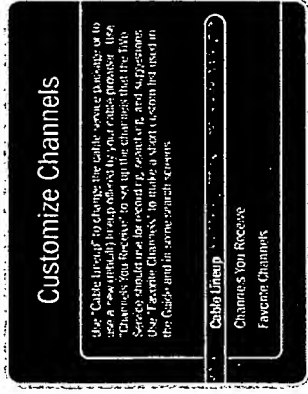
**Cable Lineup.** Select this if you have changed your subscription package or your channel lineup looks wrong in "Channels you Receive." On the next screen you'll be able to choose among available service packages based on your zip code.

**Channels You Receive.** The Channels You Receive list starts with all the channels included in your service package. It can be customized to include only channels you actually subscribe to and to reflect your viewing preferences (for example: if you never watch a channel and don't plan to set up any recordings on it, or let the TiVo service search for programs on it, you can de-select it here).


**Favorites.** The Favorites list is for channels you watch frequently. Include only a few channels in this list, so that you can quickly look at what's coming up on them.

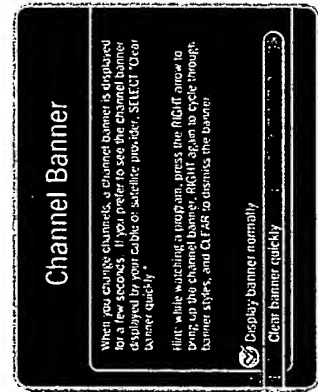
### To set up a custom channel list:

1. Select the Channels You Receive or Favorite Channels list. A check mark appears to the left of channels that are part of the selected list.
2. To remove or add a channel, highlight it and press SELECT. (You can speed through the list with the CHAN UP/DOWN. To go directly to a specific channel, press the number buttons, then press ENTER/JUMP.)



5

 In the event that there is a change to your cable or satellite subscription package, a TiVo message will let you know what the change is. You must then go to Customize Channels and make the Channels You Receive list reflect the change.



3. Your changes are saved automatically. Press LEFT or RIGHT arrow to return to the Customize Channels screen.

#### ▶ Channel Banner

Normally, when you change channels, a Channel Banner is displayed for a few seconds. If you want the channel banner to disappear quickly, select "Clear banner quickly."

#### ▶ Audio Options

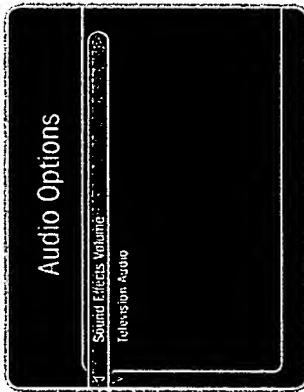
**Sound Effects Volume.** Allows you to change the volume or turn off your recorder's sound effects (the tones played when you press buttons on the remote control). The default setting is Medium.

**Television Audio.** This option lets you select the recorder's default audio output option. You can choose to have the default audio in stereo or mono, or have a secondary audio program (SAP) recorded when one is available.

Secondary audio programs are generally audio broadcasts in a language other than English. If you choose to record SAP and there is a secondary audio program, it will be recorded. The SAP may be in Spanish, French, Japanese or some other language.

#### ▶ Video Recording Quality

You can increase the time available for video recording on your recorder much the same as you can choose "standard play" (SP) or "extended play" (EP) when using a VCR to tape a program. The recorder, however, offers you four levels of Video Recording Quality instead of just two. The choice you make here will be used unless you change the Video Recording Quality (on the Recording Options screen) when you schedule the recording (for details, see page 35). Two different Video Recording Qualities cannot be used on one recording.



The recording quality choices available are Best, High, Medium, and Basic. The default is Best. Basic quality takes up about one-third the space of Best quality, so it gives you about three times the amount of space for programs. You may wish to experiment with different levels and then reset your default.

One hour of Best Quality equals about:	Suggested use:
3 hours of Basic Quality	News
2 hours of Medium Quality	Daytime Talk Shows, Animation
1.5 hours of High Quality	Dramas, Films
1 hour of Best Quality	Sports, Action Movies

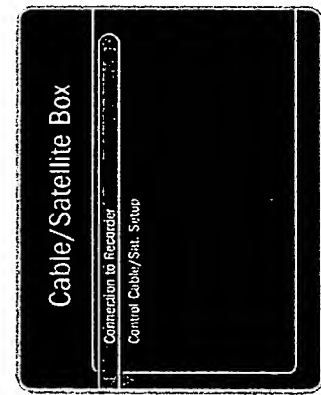
The recorder automatically uses Best Quality when displaying live TV. However, when it records a program, the recorder uses the Video Recording Quality you specified for that program. If that quality is not Best, you may notice the difference when recording starts.


#### ► TiVo Suggestions


You can turn off automatic recording of TiVo Suggestions. When automatic recording is on (the default), TiVo Suggestions may be recorded onto available space. Programs you have recorded or scheduled to record will never be deleted to make room for suggestions. Also, if space is needed to save programs you have scheduled to record, suggestions are the first things to be deleted. (For more information on TiVo Suggestions, see page 45.)

#### ► RF Video

If you use an RF coaxial cable as the input to your recorder, you may see static on some channels. You can use options on the RF Video screen to smooth the video, which will decrease the static and improve the picture on these channels. However, it will cause images on all channels carried to your recorder on an RF cable to lose some sharpness.



 If you change video sources, for example, by changing from cable to satellite service, you should repeat **Guided Setup** (go to **Messages & Setup**, then **Restart or Reset System**, then **Repeat Guided Setup**).

 Your recorder should NOT be used with a digital PBX phone system. Doing so may permanently damage your recorder's modem and will void your warranty. See your *Installation Guide* for more information.

## ►► Recorder & Phone Setup

### ► Cable/Satellite Box

Select **Cable/Satellite Box** if you want to change the connection of your cable or satellite box to the recorder—for example, if you decide to replace a Composite cable connection with an S-Video connection. You should also select this if you want to change the way your cable box is set up to interact with the recorder. For example, if you buy a new cable box, you can find the correct IR codes for changing channels on your new cable box with your TiVo remote here.

**Connection to Recorder.** Select this if you change the cables you use to connect your cable or satellite box to the recorder. The next screen you see depends on whether you have one or two video sources. For details on getting through these **Connection to Recorder** screens, see page 7.

**Cable Channel Changing, Satellite Channel Changing, or Channel Changing.** (The name of this selection changes depending on the video source to your recorder.) Use this selection if you change the type of control cable (IR or Serial) you use to change channels on your cable or satellite box, or if your cable or satellite box is replaced by another make or model.

### ► Phone Connection

The recorder makes a brief daily phone call to get updates to the TiVo service; program information for the TiVo Live Guide, Search by Title, WishList searches, and updates to TiVo Magazine and Showcases. The recorder usually uses the phone for less than ten minutes for a daily call. You may receive service updates to your recorder from time to time. In such cases, it may take longer, but this happens rarely (a few times a year).



On the Phone Connection screen you can see details, including the time of the last successful call and last call attempt, and the status of the last call. You also have the following options:

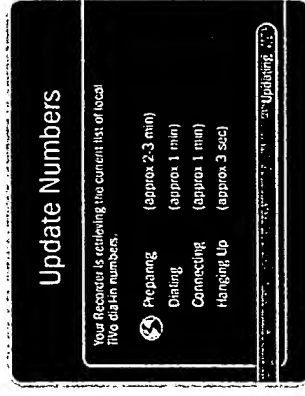
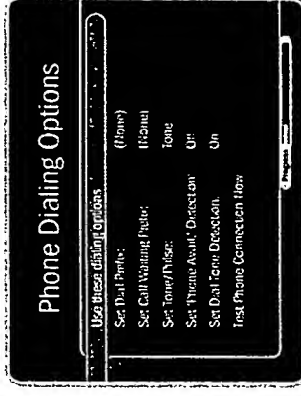
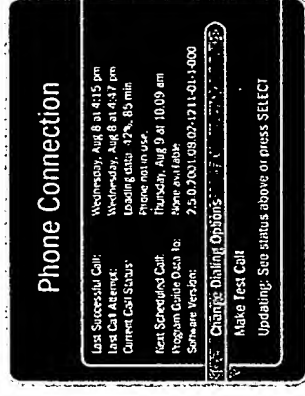
**Make Test Call.** When you select this, a test call to the TiVo service will start automatically. You may wish to use this option for troubleshooting or other unusual circumstances. Test calls usually only take a couple of minutes. When the call has finished, press SELECT to continue.

**Make Daily Call Now.** Under normal use, you do not need to make the daily call manually. However, for troubleshooting or other unusual circumstances, you may wish to use this option. After you start the call, the status indicator reads "Starting Up" and will change as it goes through several stages. You can watch live TV, set up recordings, and search for programs while the call is in progress.

**Change Dialing Options.** You can change the following settings (if you make a mistake while entering a change, use the BACK button to backspace):

**Set Dial-In Number.** Use this to change the number the recorder uses to make test calls and daily calls. To change it:

1. Select "Set Dial-In Number." The Area Code screen appears.
2. Use the number keypad on the remote to set the area code, then press SELECT. If you change the area code, or if the recorder has not made a daily call in the last twenty-four hours, the Update Numbers screen appears and the recorder calls the TiVo service to retrieve a list of local dial-in numbers. After the phone call, press SELECT. The Dial-In Number screen appears.
3. Use the UP/DOWN arrow to choose one of the listed phone numbers. The recorder will use this number for daily calls to the TiVo service. Then press SELECT.



If your area code has no access numbers, you can press LEFT arrow to return to the Area Code screen and try a nearby area code. Toll charges may apply and are your responsibility.

4. The Dialing Format screen appears after you have chosen a dial-in number. You should use this screen to tell the recorder which dialing format to use. For example: should the dial-in number be preceded by your area code and should a "1" precede the area code? In some areas, even local numbers must be dialed using the area code. Press SELECT to return to the Phone Dialing Options screen.

To test your new dial-in number, select "Test Phone Connection Now." The Test Phone Connection screen appears and a test phone call begins. When the call completes, you should see the message "Test Succeeded!" Press SELECT to return to Phone Dialing Options.

**Set Dial Prefix.** Use this option if the recorder must use a prefix to reach an outside line (for example, the recorder may need to dial "9" before it dials out). Use the number keys on the remote control to enter the prefix. Press the PAUSE button after you have entered the prefix. This will insert a comma, which will create a two second pause after the prefix is dialed.

**Set Call Waiting Prefix.** If you have call waiting, you may choose to disable it while the recorder is making a call, so that the recorder's phone call is not interrupted. If you do not disable it, the recorder may drop the call and allow the second call to ring through, depending on your phone system. The recorder will then try its call again later. The most common code that phone companies use to disable call waiting is \*70 (check with your phone company to find out how to disable call waiting in your area). Press the PAUSE button after you have entered the prefix. This will insert a comma, which will create a two second pause after the prefix is dialed.

**Set Tone/Pulse.** If your phone system uses pulse dialing, rather than tone dialing, you can change the setting to pulse here. (Today, most phone systems are tone.)

**Set "Phone Avail." Detection.** When Set 'Phone Avail.' Detection is on, the recorder can determine whether the phone line is in use by detecting voltage on the line. This allows it to avoid disrupting a call in progress (such as another modem call).

This setting is off by default. With 'Phone Avail.' Detection turned off, if you are on the phone when the recorder tries to call, you may hear a click on the line. If you have another modem call in progress (on your computer or other device), that call may be disrupted if the recorder attempts to call the TiVo service. If you have a standard dial tone, and 'Phone Avail.' Detection is off, turn on Dial Tone Detection (below).

If you are experiencing "Failed, Line unavailable" errors, or if the recorder is not making daily calls, you may have a low-voltage phone system that the recorder cannot detect. In this case, it's best to have 'Phone Avail.' Detection off.

**Set Dial Tone Detection.** This setting is on by default. If you leave it on, the recorder will check for a dial tone before it starts dialing. However, if you have a non-standard dial tone, or a stuttering dial tone (as some voice messaging systems have), the recorder will be unable to detect the dial tone and will not make its daily call.

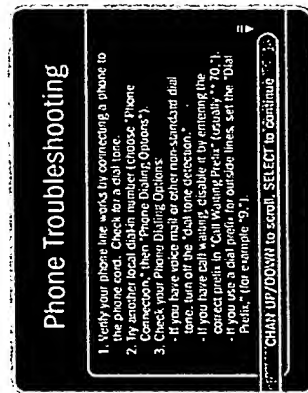
**Restore previous options.** The recorder must make a successful test phone call before it will accept changes to Phone Dialing Options. If you want to restore your previous dialing options and continue past this screen without making a test phone call, select "Restore previous options."

## ► Phone Troubleshooting

This screen provides tips that may help you troubleshoot problems with your phone calls.



**With Dial Tone Detection and 'Phone Avail.' Detection both turned off, if you happen to be talking on the phone when the recorder tries to call you will hear the modem dial and try to communicate with the TiVo service.**



## ▶▶ System Information

The System Information screen provides general information about your recorder, including its Service Number, manufacturer, model number, software version used, storage capacity, and information about recent service calls. You'll need some of this information if you call Customer Support. You can use the CHAN UP/DOWN button to see the rest of the information on the screen.



## ▶▶ Troubleshooting

### ▶ Parental Controls Troubleshooting

This screen provides a brief description of how to use Parental Controls. Use CHAN UP/DOWN to see all of the text on the screen. (For details on Parental Controls, see page 53.)

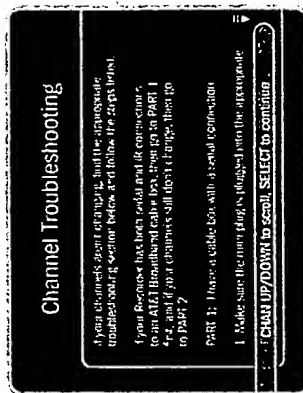
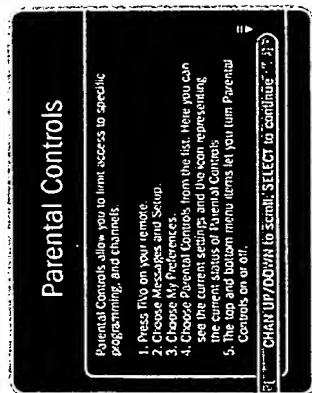
### ▶ Phone Troubleshooting

This screen provides tips to help you troubleshoot problems with your phone connection. Use CHAN UP/DOWN to see all of the text on the screen.

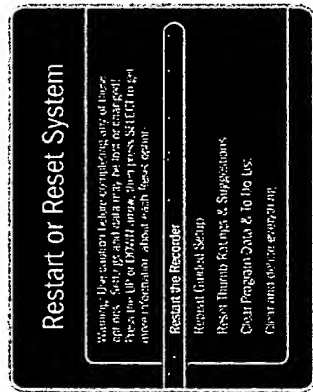
### ▶ Channel Troubleshooting

This screen provides tips to help you troubleshoot channel changing problems if you are using a satellite or cable box.

- The tips at the top of the screen are for cable or satellite boxes that attach to the recorder through a serial connection.
- You may have to use CHAN UP/DOWN to see the second set of tips, which deal with cable or satellite boxes using IR (infrared) connections to the recorder. You can also find tips in Chapter 6 and additional troubleshooting at [www.tivo.com/support](http://www.tivo.com/support).



## ▶▶ Restart or Reset System



You may need to restart the recorder as a routine troubleshooting step. The other options on this screen erase information and restore original factory settings. Selecting a reset option brings you to a warning screen. To continue press THUMBS DOWN three times, then press ENTER.

**Restart the Recorder.** Shuts down the recorder and starts it up again. It will not affect recorded programs, Season Pass recordings, WishList searches, or TiVo Suggestions.

**Repeat Guided Setup.** You will have to repeat Guided Setup if you move or if you change your cable or satellite provider. Repeating Guided Setup will reset the Channels You Receive and Favorites channel lists to the factory settings. It will not affect recorded programs, Season Pass recordings, WishList searches, or TiVo Suggestions.

**Reset Thumb Ratings and Suggestions.** Removes all Thumbs Up and Thumbs Down ratings and deletes the list of TiVo Suggestions under Pick Programs to Record. It does not delete TiVo Suggestions that have been recorded and are in the Now Playing List.

**Clear Program Data and To Do List.** Clears all program information, cancels all Season Pass recordings and everything in the To Do List, and removes all Thumbs Up and Thumbs Down ratings. It does not delete programs in the Now Playing List. The recorder acquires new program information during the next daily call. Completing this process may take over an hour.

**Clear and delete everything.** Clears all Season Pass recordings, WishList searches, Thumbs Up and Thumbs Down ratings, TiVo Suggestions, Now Playing List recordings, program information, the To Do List and setup information, including the Channels You Receive and Favorite Channels lists. It also clears the current password and resets Parental Controls to the factory specified default. Completing this process may take over an hour.

TiVo Central ▶ Messages & Setup ▶ Restart or Reset System

## ►► Standby

You can put your recorder in Standby mode by selecting Standby in Messages & Setup. To return to normal mode from Standby, press either the TiVo button on the or LIVE TV button. (On some remotes, there is a POWER button that puts the recorder in Standby mode and takes it back out.)

### In Standby mode:

- Your TV shows a black screen and the lights on the front of the recorder go out.
- Programs that are being recorded or are scheduled to record will still be recorded. (If a program is being recorded, the red light will turn on.)
- The recorder will still make a daily phone call. (If the recorder is making a phone call, the yellow light will turn on.)
- If you temporarily turned off Parental Controls, Standby mode re-enables them. (See page 53 for more on Parental Controls.)
- The recorder will continue to save a portion of live TV—up to 30 minutes of programming.
- If live TV was paused when Standby was selected, the recorder will remain paused for up to 30 minutes.
- If the TiVo Live Guide was set to display a category filter, filtering will be turned off.







---

# Troubleshooting

Customer Support

72

Troubleshooting

73

---

## ►► Customer Support

When you have a question:

1. **Use this chapter.** It contains troubleshooting on the following topics:
  - Questions About the Recorder's Phone Calls ..... 73
  - Questions about Channels ..... 76
  - Questions About Live TV ..... 81
  - Questions About Recording Programs ..... 82
  - Questions About Conflicts ..... 86
  - Questions About Parental Controls ..... 89
  - Questions About Audio/Video ..... 90
  - Questions About the TiVo Service ..... 93
2. **Use online support.** Go to the Customer Support section of [www.tivo.com/support](http://www.tivo.com/support). You'll find online customer support on a number of topics, including setting up IR control and troubleshooting your phone connection.
3. **Use the troubleshooting screens on your recorder.** On your recorder, go to TiVo Central, then Messages & Setup, then Troubleshooting. You will find troubleshooting screens for Parental Controls, your phone connection, and your channels.
4. **Call Customer Support.** Refer to the *Installation Guide* for Customer Support contact information, and give us a call.

## ►► Questions About the Recorder's Phone Calls

### ► Why does the recorder have to be connected to a phone line?

- The recorder needs to be connected to the phone line so that it can make an automatic daily call to the TiVo service. This call downloads program information, which tells the recorder when programs are scheduled to air and on what channel. The call may also download additional information from the TiVo service, such as Showcases, TiVo!ution Magazine, and service updates (if any).

In addition, the phone call sends anonymous viewing information back to TiVo—that is, anonymous information about viewing choices, which do not identify you as an individual or household. TiVo has no way to access any of your personally identifiable viewing information from your recorder without your prior consent. Without your consent, the TiVo service has no way of knowing what shows you—as an individual or household—have watched, recorded, or rated with Thumbs Up or Thumbs Down.

### ► Do I need to keep the phone connected all the time?

- Unless it is an inconvenience, we recommend that you leave the phone line connected. The TiVo service will not interfere with your other needs for the phone line, and daily calls will keep the recorder's program information fully up to date.

However, the recorder does not need to be connected all the time. After Guided Setup, you can connect the phone line once or twice a week. After you connect the recorder, you must manually start a daily call. To start a daily call, from TiVo Central, select Messages & Setup, then Phone Connection, then select "Make Daily Call Now."

### ► My recorder is not making the setup or daily call to the TiVo service.

- First, verify that your phone line is working by connecting a phone to it, then listening for a dial tone. Make sure the phone cord is connected to both the recorder and the

phone jack. If the phone line is working, continue with the troubleshooting here. If it is not working, contact your telephone service.

- The following tips require changing your Phone Dialing Options. To change Phone Dialing Options, go to TiVo Central, then select Messages & Setup, then Recorder & Phone Setup, then Phone Connection, then Change Dialing Options.

After you change a Phone Dialing Option, the recorder will make a test call to verify whether or not your problem was solved.

- Try another local dial-in number. Select "Set Dial-In Number." Confirm your area code, then select a new number from the list of available numbers for your area.
- If you have voice mail or use another non-standard dial tone, turn off "Dial Tone Detection." (Select "Set Dial Tone Detection," then select "Off.")
- If you dial a prefix for outside lines, be sure it is entered on the Phone Dialing Options screen. To enter or change a prefix, select "Set Dial Prefix," then follow instructions on the screen. For example, if you must dial 9 to reach an outside line, select "Set Dial Prefix," then press "9" then PAUSE. (This enters a 9, followed by a comma. The comma inserts a pause.)
- If you have call waiting, be sure that it is disabled during the daily phone call. (Select "Set Call Waiting Prefix," then enter the correct prefix, usually "\*70." You would enter "\*70," by pressing CLEAR then "7" then "0" then PAUSE.)
- Your phone line may have low voltage. Set 'Phone Avail.' Detection to "Off." (Select "Set Phone Avail. Detection," then select "Off.") If you have a cordless telephone, fax machine, or computer modem connected to the same line, try turning 'Phone Avail.' Detection off, as well. When 'Phone Avail.' Detection is

off, you may hear a click on the line when the recorder tries to call. This is the sound of the recorder picking up the line to see if it is free.

- If you use a wireless phone connection, connect the recorder to a standard wall jack and test whether the wireless modem jack is the source of the problem.
- If you have a caller ID box, try removing it from the line, since some models interfere with the recorder's ability to make a call.
- It could be that you have too much line noise due to the length of the phone cord. Try a shorter cord, or you can buy a line noise filter at your local electronics store.

► **What if I need to use the phone while the recorder is making its daily call?**

- You can interrupt the phone call. To do this, pick up the phone, then hang it up. Wait several seconds. Then when you pick it up again, there should be a dial tone. Repeat this process if necessary.

► **What if my phone line is busy when the recorder tries to make a daily call?**

- The recorder will continue to attempt to call several times a day until it is successful. You can check the status of the phone calls on the Phone Connection screen (from TiVo Central, select Messages & Setup, then Recorder & Phone Setup, then Phone Connection). The status of the most recent call is displayed near the top of the screen.

► **Am I charged for the daily call to the TiVo service?**

- TiVo uses a standard telephone line to provide the TiVo service (including the daily call and software updates) and is available as a local call in most areas. In some areas, however, local and long distance toll charges may apply. Telephone costs are not included in the TiVo service subscription, and you are responsible for any such telephone charges.

## ►► Questions about Channels

### ► Can I watch one channel while recording from another?

- Yes. If you have cable without a cable box or antenna you can split the signal with an RF splitter. See your *Installation Guide* for instructions. (You will not have TiVo functionality on the channels you watch using an RF cable that goes directly to your TV.) Also, you can always watch any program stored in Now Playing while the recorder is recording a program.

### ► I can't get the channel to change.

#### **If you use cable with no cable box:**

- Be sure that you are using the TiVo remote and that you hold it so that the TiVo button points toward the recorder.
- Press any button on the remote. Does the red light above the TiVo button flash? If not, make sure that the batteries are positioned correctly in the remote. If they are, try a new set of batteries.

If the red light does flash, does the green light on the front of the recorder change to yellow when you press any button on the remote? If it does not, restart your recorder by unplugging it, waiting 15 seconds, then plugging it back in.

#### **If you use cable with a cable box:**

- Make sure the cable box is turned on.
- Make sure you are using the TiVo remote control, and that you hold it so that the TiVo button points toward the recorder, not a cable or satellite box.

**I can't get the channel to change (continued).**

- Refer to the *Start Here* booklet to verify that the IR Control cable is positioned correctly.
- Press the TiVo button to go to TiVo Central, then select Messages & Setup, then Cable/Satellite Box, then Control Cable Setup. Verify the IR code you chose during Guided Setup. See page 8 for help choosing an IR code.
- If the installation instructions required you to connect a serial control cable, check that the Serial Control cable is plugged into the upper serial jack on the back of the recorder.
- Unplug the cable box from the wall, then plug it back in.

**If you use a satellite receiver with an IR Control cable:**

- Make sure the satellite receiver is turned on.
- Refer to the *Start Here* booklet to verify that the IR Control cable is positioned correctly.
- Press the TiVo button to go to TiVo Central, then select Messages & Setup, then Cable/Satellite Box, then Control Cable Setup. Verify the IR code you chose during Guided Setup. See page 8 for help choosing an IR code.
- Unplug the satellite box from the wall, then plug it back in.

**If you use a satellite receiver with a serial control cable:**

- You may have incorrectly specified the type of program guide for your DIRECTV satellite receiver. There are two types of program guides: MPG (Master Program Guide) and APG (Advanced Program Guide). First, unplug the power cord for the

**I can't get the channel to change (continued).**

satellite receiver and plug it back in. Next, go to TiVo Central, then Message & Setup, then Recorder & Phone Setup, then Cable/Satellite Box, then Control Cable/Sat. Setup and select "Satellite Box." On the Connection to Satellite screen, if you originally selected Serial-MPG, change your selection to Serial-APG. (If you originally selected Serial-APG, change it to Serial-MPG.) You can also check the manual for your satellite receiver (as well as the satellite receiver's system setup screen) for information on the type of program guide it uses.

**► When I turn on my TV, I see a blue screen with a TiVo logo.**

- Your recorder is having trouble tuning to the channel you are on. Follow these steps to restore the video:
  - Try changing channels. If the blue screen appears on just a few channels, you may be tuned to a channel to which you do not subscribe, or you may be experiencing a weak signal on a channel to which you do subscribe. If you do not subscribe to the channel, you should take it off the "Channels You Receive" list. (For more information, see page 59.) If you do subscribe to the channel, wait 24 hours to see if the signal improves, or call your cable or satellite provider.
  - If you have a satellite or cable box, go to Messages & Setup, Cable/Satellite Box, Connection to Recorder. Verify that you chose the same cable on this screen that you used to connect your satellite or cable box to the recorder.
  - If the blue screen appears on every channel, and you have a cable or satellite box, make sure it is turned on.
  - You may be experiencing a temporary cable or satellite outage; check with your cable or satellite provider.



- Your video cable may have come loose. Make sure all the cable connections on the back of your recorder are secure.
- Verify that you are receiving a video signal by temporarily connecting the video source directly to the TV. If you still do not see any video, there may be a problem with your cable, satellite or antenna equipment.
- Restart your recorder. (From TiVo Central, select Messages & Setup, then Restart or Reset System, then Restart the Recorder. On the Restart the Recorder screen, press THUMBS DOWN three times, then press ENTER. You will see the Welcome screen, and the system will restart within about 45 seconds. You can also restart the recorder by unplugging it, waiting 15 seconds, then plugging it back in.)
- The cables you are using to connect your recorder to your TV or other equipment may be damaged or defective. Try exchanging the cables connected to the recorder with other cables that you know are working properly.

► **I can't go to one of my channels.**

- You may be using a channel list that does not include the channel you want. Use the numbers on the remote control to enter the channel number, then press ENTER/JUMP. For more information on using a channel list, see page 59.
- The channel you want may be showing a program that exceeds a limit set with Parental Controls. In this case, you will see only a black screen with a notice that a limit has been exceeded. You will be able to tune to the channel if you use the Parental Controls password. (For more information on Parental Controls, see page 53.) If your cable or satellite box has a feature like Parental Controls, you may have to use the satellite or cable box's remote to disable it as well.

► **I can't find all the channels I receive in the Channels You Receive list.**

- Have you changed your satellite or cable provider, or changed your subscription package? If you have, you should repeat Guided Setup to specify your current cable or satellite provider and lineup. From TiVo Central, select Messages & Setup, then Restart or Reset System, then Repeat Guided Setup. Press THUMBS DOWN three times, and then press ENTER. You may need to check all of the available selections to find the right one since cable providers often change their lineups. For complete instructions on Guided Setup, see Chapter 1 of this guide.
- If you have not changed your cable or satellite provider, go to Messages & Setup, then My Preferences, then Customize Channels, then Channel Lineups. Look at your cable or satellite bill, or make your best guess at what your lineup is called. Select it here, then check the Channels You Receive list. If the channels are incorrect, try another Cable Lineup. If that does not work, refer to the *Installation Guide* for Customer Support contact information, and call TiVo Customer Support.

## ▶▶ Questions About Live TV

### ▶ Can I watch a program while it is being recorded?

- Yes, you can watch a program as it is being recorded; you can even start watching from the beginning while the rest of the program is recorded! You can also watch any program stored in Now Playing while another program is being recorded.

### ▶ The Channel Banner always says "To be announced."

- Your recorder probably does not have full program information. For details, see the question "I can't find my program in Search by Title or Search Using WishLists, even though I know it's on," on page 82.

### ▶ There aren't any shows listed in the TiVo Live Guide.

- Your recorder may not have program information. See "I can't find my program in Search by Title or Search Using WishLists, even though I know it's on," on page 82.
- If category filtering of the TiVo Live Guide is turned on, but no upcoming programs in the next six hours match both your filter and your Favorite Channels list, no programs will appear in the TiVo Live Guide. To view programs in the TiVo Live Guide again, use the TiVo Live Guide's Guide Options to turn off filtering. (See page 27.)

### ▶ I can't find my program in the TiVo Live Guide, even though I know it's on.

- You can choose a channel list or filter to use with the Live Guide. Not all programs or channels will be displayed if you have chosen to use a filter or the "Favorites" channel list. Press GUIDE to display the Live Guide, then DISPLAY (or ENTER) to choose "Channels You Receive" or to turn off filters. You can also add and remove channels on the "Channels You Receive" and "Favorites" channel lists. (See page 59.)
- Occasionally the program information provided by the networks includes errors. We would like to hear of any inaccuracies you discover so that we can work with our providers to correct them.

## ►► Questions About Recording Programs

- I can't find my program in Search by Title or Search Using WishLists, etc., even though I know it's on.
  - The recorder uses the Channels You Receive list to search for programs in all the features under Pick Programs to Record. To check if you've selected the program's channel, go to Messages & Setup, then My Preferences, then Customize Channels, then Channels You Receive. Does the channel have a check mark next to it? To give it one, highlight the channel and press SELECT. (For instructions on personalizing this list, see page 59.)
  - Look on the Phone Connection screen (from TiVo Central, select Messages & Setup, then Recorder & Phone Setup, then Phone Connection) for the time of the last successful daily call for program information. If it was more than 36 hours ago, your recorder may be having trouble calling the TiVo service. Select "Make Test Call" to test the current phone settings. If the test call does not succeed, see the troubleshooting chapter in the *Installation Guide* for phone troubleshooting. Once you have made a successful test call, start a daily call by selecting "Make Daily Call Now." If your daily call is successful, new program information will be downloaded and organized, and become available to search in about 1 to 5 hours.
  - Is your TiVo service account up to date? Check your account status on the System Information screen (from TiVo Central, select Messages & Setup, then System Information). If your account is suspended or closed and you wish to re-activate it, refer to the *Installation Guide* for Customer Support contact information and call TiVo Customer Support.
  - Occasionally the program information provided by the networks includes errors. We would like to hear of any inaccuracies you discover so that we can work with our providers to correct them.

► **I cannot use features in Pick Programs to Record. The recorder says it is organizing program information.**

- Your recorder may not have all its program information yet. The first time you go through Guided Setup, the recorder downloads program information from the TiVo service. The recorder then indexes this information in the background over the next 4-8 hours. As the program information gets indexed, more of it becomes available. After 8 hours, full information (for up to 2 weeks from the time of the last successful daily call) is available for you to use. Wait a few hours, then try to find your program again.
- If the recorder loses power while it is indexing program information, the indexing process will stop until the recorder makes a successful daily call to the TiVo service, and then will start again. If your recorder lost power while it was indexing program information, you can get it to start indexing again by plugging it in and then starting a call to the TiVo service. To start a call to the TiVo service, go to TiVo Central, then select Messages & Setup, then Recorder & Phone Setup, then Phone Connection, then Make Daily Call Now.

► **What happens if a sports event I have scheduled to record goes into overtime?**

- The TiVo service cannot predict whether a sporting event might go into overtime, but we provide a feature that lets you add from one extra minute to three hours at the end of a recording just in case. We call the feature the Overtime Scheduler. The Overtime Scheduler has two options: "Start Recording" and "Stop Recording." Both are available on the Recording Options screen. You can even use the Overtime Scheduler to change the scheduled end of a recording while the program is being recorded. You can use the Overtime Scheduler with any kind of program, not just sports. For more information on Recording Options, see page 35.

If you are watching a program while it's being recorded, you can record an overtime segment in a couple of ways. One way is to go into Now Playing, select the recording, then select "Change recording options." On the Recording Options screen that appears, select "Stop recording." Use RIGHT arrow to increase the length of the recording by anywhere from one minute to 3 hours. Alternatively, you could choose to press the RECORD button after the regularly scheduled part of the program has finished.

► **Is there a way to record a program that will not be aired for weeks or months?**

- You can create an auto-recording WishList for programs that are not yet listed in the TiVo Live Guide. See page 43 for details on WishLists.
- If you know the date, time, and channel on which the program will air, you can create a manual recording to record it. You can create manual recordings by going to TiVo Central, then selecting Pick Programs to Record, then Record by Time or Channel, then Manually Record Time/Channel. (See page 48 for details.)

► **How do I set the clock so that my shows are recorded on time?**

- If you are missing the beginning or end of a show, it usually means that the broadcaster is not starting or stopping the show on time. You can use the Overtime Scheduler, described on page 36, to compensate for this.
- The TiVo service will re-sync your recorder's clock during every daily service call. If you set your time zone and Daylight Savings Time correctly in Guided Setup, you never have to worry! If you move to a new time zone, you can change your recorder's time settings by repeating Guided Setup. To start a daily call at any time, go to TiVo Central and choose Messages & Setup, then Recorder & Phone Setup, then Phone Connection, then "Make Daily Call Now."

► **How do I record a Pay Per View event?**

- From live TV, catch up to the present broadcast by pressing the ADVANCE button. Then, order the program from your cable or satellite provider as you normally would—by using your satellite or cable box remote, or by calling your cable/satellite provider. (If the program violates a Parental Control limit—or a feature like Parental Controls on your cable or satellite box—make sure to disable both TiVo Parental Controls and your satellite or cable box's Parental Controls.) To record the program, search for it in Browse by Time. If there are no listings for Pay Per View events, record the showing with the Manually Record Time/Channel option under TiVo Central, then Pick Programs to Record, then Record Time/Channel.

► **Why wasn't my program recorded?**

- Check Recording History for an explanation of why the program did not record. Recording History is the first selection in the To Do List (from TiVo Central, select Pick Programs to Record, then To Do List, then View Recording History). Here are some reasons why a program may not be available in Now Playing:
  - The program may have been canceled by the network.
  - If you had two Season Pass recordings that were on at the same time, only the Season Pass with the higher priority would be recorded. Priorities and the Season Pass Manager are described on page 49.
  - The program may have been deleted from Now Playing by someone else.
  - There may have been a conflict when requesting another program, and the proposed resolution was to delete the missing program earlier than planned. If you accepted that resolution, the program would have been deleted.

## ►► Questions About Conflicts

### ► Can I record multiple programs simultaneously?

- No. You can watch any program in Now Playing while another is recording. However, you can only record one program at a time on your recorder, because it does not contain the necessary hardware to record two programs at once. The DIRECTV Receiver with TiVo has two tuners and can record two programs at the same time.

### ► How can I record a program (or programs) when there is a conflict?

- The recorder gives each repeating recording a priority. You can resolve some conflicts in favor of preferred programs by using the Season Pass Manager to change priorities. (See page 49.)
- If you encounter a conflict for a single episode, use “View upcoming episodes” to see if the program or episode you want will air at a different time.
- You can sometimes resolve recording conflicts by changing the “Stop Time” or “Start Time” Recording Options. (See page 35 for more about Recording Options.) For example, if you set a program to start recording one minute early, it may conflict with a recording that airs right before it. To resolve such a conflict, change the “Start Time” back to “On Time” on the Recording Options screen.
- If a single episode of a repeating recording conflicts with another program, you can select that episode in the To Do List and change it independently of the rest of the repeating recording.



## ►► Questions About Now Playing

- Can I recover a recorded program that was deleted?
  - No. There is no way to bring back a program that has been deleted from Now Playing. You can choose to save programs longer, though. See page 31 for details.
- Can I copy or archive programs to a Zip drive or any other computer storage media?
  - The recorder does not copy or archive recordings to any device other than a VCR.
- I haven't scheduled enough programs to fill my recorder, but when I try to schedule more programs, the recorder says there isn't room.
  - The TiVo service includes smart scheduling features that track not only how much space you currently have on your recorder, but also how much space will be needed in the future to record all of the programs you have scheduled. If your recorder will be full at some point in the future, the TiVo service informs you and suggests options—such as allowing some programs to be deleted early—that will allow you to schedule additional recordings. With the TiVo service, you always have the final say over what gets recorded and how long it is kept.
  - In addition, the amount of recording space the recorder needs varies from channel to channel and from show to show. In general, the more action you see on your screen, such as in fast-moving sports or action movies, the more recording space is required. Weaker video signals may also require more space. The amount of space required for each show you record affects the total hours of recording capacity in your recorder.

► **How can I fit more programs in Now Playing?**

- To make space, delete some programs in Now Playing. You delete a program by highlighting its title, then pressing CLEAR.
- Lowering the default recording quality will allow you to fit more programs in Now Playing. See page 60 for details.
- Set up Season Pass recordings with the Recording Option “First-run only.” You’ll only collect new episodes. You’ll also be less likely to run out of space in Now Playing and less likely to encounter conflicts.

► **What does it mean when my recorder says programs will be deleted earlier than planned?**

- By default, all programs are kept until space is needed. After that, programs you have not set to save longer may be deleted to make room for other recordings you request. The TiVo service includes smart scheduling features that keep track of when programs become available to be deleted, and of how much free space will be available at any given time in the future. If space will not be available to record a program you request, the TiVo service gives you the option of deleting some programs early to make more room. However, you always have the final say on how long the recorder keeps programs. You can delete a program at any time and can always change how long it is saved by changing the “Save until...” option. To see “Save Until...,” select the program in Now Playing.

## ►► Questions About Parental Controls

### ► My Parental Controls are not working.

- For Parental Controls to work, they must be on (and must not be temporarily turned off). When you enter your password to watch a program that violates Parental Controls, they are temporarily turned off. You can re-enable them on the Parental Controls screen (from TiVo Central, select Messages & Setup, then My Preferences, then Parental Controls), or by putting your recorder in Standby mode and then taking it out of Standby. You can put your recorder in Standby mode by going to TiVo Central and selecting Messages & Setup, then Standby. To return to normal mode from Standby, press either the TiVo button the or LIVE TV button. (On some remotes, there is a POWER button that puts the recorder in Standby mode and takes it back out.)

### ► I disabled Parental Controls, but I still can't tune to the channel I want.

- If your cable or satellite box has a feature like Parental Controls, make sure you have disabled them with the satellite or cable box's remote.
- You may be using a channel list that does not include the channel you want. Use the number buttons on the remote control to enter the channel number, then press the ENTER/JUMP button. For more information on using a channel list see page 59.

## ►► Questions About Audio/Video

### ► The audio and video are out of sync.

- The audio and video may re-sync if you change channels.
- You may be able to re-sync audio and video by pressing the INSTANT REPLAY button on the remote control.
- Audio and video should re-sync if you press the TiVo button to go to TiVo Central, then press the LIVE TV button to return to live television.
- You can also try restarting your recorder. From TiVo Central, select Messages & Setup, then Restart or Reset System, then Restart the Recorder. On the Restart the Recorder screen, press the THUMBS DOWN button three times, then press ENTER. You will see the Welcome screen and the system will restart within about 45 seconds.

### ► My recorder was working, but now the picture does not move

- Try restarting your recorder. From TiVo Central, select Messages & Setup, then Restart or Reset System, then Restart the Recorder. On the Restart the Recorder screen, press the THUMBS DOWN button three times, then press ENTER. You will see the Welcome screen and the system will restart within about 45 seconds. You can also restart the recorder by unplugging it, waiting 15 seconds, then plugging it back in.

### ► I don't get a picture now, even though I have been able to get one in the past.

- Someone in your household may have placed the recorder in Standby mode. To return to normal mode from Standby, press either the TiVo button or the LIVE TV button. (On some remotes, there is a POWER button that puts the recorder in Standby mode and takes it back out.)

- Your TV may not be set to the correct input. Most TVs have an input button that says either "TV/Video," "Input," or "Source." It may be on the TV or on the TV remote control. Look at your TV and TV remote and try changing the input for your TV.
- If you have your recorder connected to a VCR, the VCR may not be set to the correct input. Most VCRs have an input button that says either "TV/Video," "Input," or "Source." It may be on the VCR or on the VCR remote control. Look at your VCR and VCR remote and try changing the input for your VCR.
- Check to make sure all of the appropriate cables are firmly connected to your recorder, television and other audio/video equipment. For help with your cable connections, see the *Start Here* booklet and the *Installation Guide*.

► **I can't select an alternate audio track.**

- Secondary audio programs (SAP) are not available for all programs. If you set the SAP as the default audio, programs that have SAP will use it. Only one audio track is saved with recorded programs. If SAP is the default audio and a program you are recording has an SAP, the SAP will be the recorded program's only audio. You can set the default audio on the Television Audio screen (from TiVo Central, select Messages & Setup, then My Preferences, then Audio Options, then Television Audio).
- Recorded programs, such as those in Now Playing, always have only one audio track, the one they were recorded with.
- You cannot change the audio track if you are watching a live program, but are not caught up to live TV. Catch up to live TV by pressing the ADVANCE button. Changing the audio program will clear the saved part of the program you are watching, so you will only be able to rewind live TV to the point where you changed the audio program.

► **Programs are playing in the wrong language.**

- You may have selected the secondary audio program (SAP) as the default audio on the Television Audio screen. Most programs with SAP use it to broadcast in an alternate language. To turn off the SAP, reselect the main audio program on the Television Audio screen (from TiVo Central, select Messages & Setup, then My Preferences, then Audio Options, then Television Audio).

► **My audio system is set up to play in stereo, but it is only playing mono.**

- Make sure that "Main Audio Program (stereo)" is selected on the Television Audio screen (from TiVo Central, select Messages & Setup, then My Preferences, then Audio Options, then Television Audio).

## ►► Questions About the TiVo Service

### ► Will my recorder still work without the TiVo service?

- Without the TiVo service, your recorder will have extremely limited functionality. The recorder was designed to be used exclusively with the TiVo service. The TiVo service is required for proper operation of the recorder. No functionality is represented, warranted or should be expected without a subscription to the TiVo service. The recorder uses the program information provided by the TiVo service to record the programs you request, to provide Season Pass functionality, to power the TiVo Live Guide, to allow you to search for programs by name, and so on. The TiVo service may also provide you with new Showcases, TiVoolution Magazine, and service updates (if any).

### ► What happens if my recorder loses power temporarily?

- Everything is saved—including your Now Playing programs—regardless of the length of time the recorder is without power. The only thing you will miss is a recording that was scheduled to occur during the time the power was out.

### ► Will the TiVo service collect information about my viewing habits?

- TiVo has designed its system and instituted policies to ensure that TiVo is unable to access any of your personally identifiable viewing information without your prior consent. TiVo does collect anonymous viewing information; that is, information about viewing choices made while using your recorder, which does not identify you as an individual or household. In other words, there is no contact information associated with the viewing information that could identify the viewing information as coming from you or your household. If you don't want even your anonymous viewing information used in any way, you may simply call and tell us, and we will stop collecting it. (Refer to the *Installation Guide* for Customer Support contact

information.) For more information on the TiVo Privacy Policy, see Chapter 7 or go to [www.tivo.com/privacy](http://www.tivo.com/privacy).

► **How is information from the TiVo service delivered to my recorder?**

- The recorder automatically makes a daily phone call to the TiVo service. This call downloads program information and other data. Information is also occasionally delivered by a special TiVo program that is broadcast late at night and recorded when it does not conflict with any of your previously scheduled recordings.



---

# Privacy and Service

TiVo Privacy Policy

97

Digital Video Recorder—TiVo Service Agreement

103

---

TiVo Inc. ("TiVo") is committed to protecting the privacy of your personal information. The TiVo Privacy Policy, which applies to your use of the TiVo service, is published on the World Wide Web at <http://www.tivo.com/privacy>. We have printed it here for your convenience, but we encourage you to check the website or call us for a copy of the current Privacy Policy.

Use of your Digital Video Recorder (DVR) with the TiVo service will signify your acceptance of these privacy policies. Thank you for being a TiVo customer and letting us serve you!

#### ► Summary of the TiVo Privacy Policy

TiVo knows how important personal privacy is to you, so we have designed our system and established strict policies to help protect the privacy of your Personally Identifiable Viewing Information. In summary, we want you to know that:

- The TiVo DVR collects certain types of information from its users, including Anonymous Viewing Information, Diagnostic Information, Commerce Information, and Service Information.
- TiVo has no way to access any of your Personally Identifiable Viewing Information from your DVR without your prior consent. Absent your consent, the TiVo service has no way of knowing what shows you—as an individual or household—have watched, recorded, or rated with "Thumbs Up" or "Thumbs Down."

- TiVo does collect Anonymous Viewing Information; that is, information about viewing choices made while using your DVR, but that does not identify you as an individual or household. In other words, there is no personally identifiable information associated with the viewing information that could identify the viewing information as coming from you or your household. TiVo also collects Diagnostic Information from a small number of randomly sampled DVRs for quality control purposes. If you don't want even your Anonymous Viewing Information or Diagnostic Information used in any way, simply tell us by calling our toll free number (1-877-367-8486).
- If you affirmatively elect to engage in a commercial transaction using the TiVo service, such as by responding to an advertisement on the TiVo service, TiVo will collect and disclose your Commerce Information to the commerce partner fulfilling the transaction.
- TiVo intends to make available new services in the future. These services will be governed by the privacy policies of the respective service providers.

## ►► TiVo Privacy Policy

Please read this Privacy Policy carefully. It provides important information on how your privacy is protected when using the TiVo service.

In order to provide you with a better, more satisfying television experience, TiVo Inc. ("TiVo") collects and uses certain types of information, as described in this Privacy Policy. The Subscriber Information (defined below) you provide to the TiVo Digital Video Recorder ("DVR") in your house and to us at TiVo enables your DVR to select programs you want it to record and to suggest programs you might enjoy.

By using your DVR and TiVo service, you consent to: (a) the provisions of this Privacy Policy and (b) the privacy preferences explained in Section 4.1. This Privacy Policy explains our commitments to your privacy in the following areas:

- 1 **Our Subscriber Information Definitions.** In discussing the kind of information TiVo collects, it is important to distinguish between anonymous information and other information that specifically identifies you or your household. Too often, people refer to "personal information" or "personally identifiable information" without really making clear what they mean. TiVo has developed the following definitions to help clarify this important issue. We use "Subscriber Information" as a general term that refers to any information relating to you or your use of the TiVo service. The following are more specific types of Subscriber Information.

- 1.1 **"Account Information"** means information about your TiVo service account, including your Contact Information (defined below) and other information linked to your Contact Information such as the model and Service Number of your DVR, your zip code, software version used, your TV programming source (cable, satellite or an antenna), the type of cable hook-up (digital or analog) and level of service (basic or premium), privacy preferences, and the cable or satellite box model that you use. You provide us with this information when you register as a subscriber to the TiVo service and subsequently set up your DVR to receive the TiVo service in your home. This basic Service Information is sent to TiVo on an ongoing basis to enable TiVo to provide the TiVo service to your DVR. Account Information also includes information we may receive about you in a communication from you or a third party with us. Account Information does not include any Personally Identifiable Viewing Information, or Anonymous Viewing Information, as defined below.

a **"Contact Information"** means information that allows someone to identify or contact you, including, for example: your name, address, telephone number, and e-mail address. Contact Information is a subset of Account Information and is thus linked to your DVR's Service Number.

b **"Service Information"** means information necessary for TiVo to provide service to your DVR. Examples of Service Information include your software version number, your TV programming source, level of service, and the success status of the last attempted service call (i.e., daily call). This information is always transmitted to TiVo during a service call.

**1.2 "Personally Identifiable Viewing Information"** means information about the viewing choices that you and those in your household make while using your DVR, if that information is linked to or associated with your Account Information. The DVR stores your viewing information so that it may recommend viewing choices and personalize your viewing experience. We have worked very hard to design our system to ensure that no Personally Identifiable Viewing Information may be sent to TiVo without your express consent. You may choose to consent to TiVo's collection of Personally Identifiable Viewing Information by changing your privacy preferences as provided in Section 4.1.

**1.3 "Anonymous Viewing Information"** means information about viewing choices that you and those in your household make while using your DVR, but is not associated with or linked to any other information TiVo has about your account. Your DVR sends Anonymous Viewing Information to TiVo on an ongoing basis. This information allows TiVo to know that a subscriber from a particular zip code watched certain programming but we are unable to associate those viewing choices with you. You may request that TiVo block the collection of Anonymous Viewing Information from your DVR as described in Section 4.1.

**1.4 "Diagnostic Information"** means a log file containing detailed information about the operation of a DVR, such as memory consumption, user interface response time, disk space, enclosure temperature, and enclosure fan speed. TiVo collects Diagnostic Information Logs for a small number of randomly sampled DVRs for quality control and technical troubleshooting purposes. Diagnostic Information Logs contain your DVR's Service Number and are thus associated with your Account Information. You may request that

TiVo block the collection of Diagnostic Information Logs from your DVR as described in Section 4.1.

**1.5 "Commerce Information"** means personally identifiable information that enables a commerce partner to fulfill your request to participate in a promotion or transaction. From time to time, TiVo may present special offers and/or enable you to purchase goods and services from TiVo, or third party advertisers or promoters. You would be informed of such offers on screen while using the TiVo service. Should you decide to take advantage of such an offer or engage in a transaction, TiVo will collect and communicate your relevant Contact Information and your interest in a specific offer or transaction to the commerce partner sponsoring the promotion or transaction. In addition to fulfilling your request, that commerce partner may also use your Commerce Information to send you other information in which you might be interested consistent with its own privacy policies. This information is collected and disclosed by TiVo only upon your affirmative response to an offer.

## 2 Use of Subscriber Information

**2.1 Account Information.** We use your Account Information to establish and service your TiVo account, bill you for TiVo services, offer you new services when they are available, and other legitimate business purposes. For example, we use your name, address, email address, and phone number to create your account with TiVo, to communicate with you regarding new services, and to exclude you from offers for services you may already have. We use your credit card information to bill you for TiVo services. We use your Service Information to service your account and provide the necessary resources to your DVR. Knowing your zip code, programming source, and information about your cable or satellite box model

allows us to determine which programming information (e.g., times and channels of programs) to send to your DVR.

We use your Account Information to communicate with you about upcoming features in the TiVo service or promotions that might interest you. You may opt not to receive communications in the future as explained in Section 4.1. We also use your Account Information in aggregate form (i.e., excluding any Contact Information) to generate demographic profiles of our subscribers as a whole to assist us to, for example, identify future subscribers to the TiVo service or other services.

**2.2 Personally Identifiable Viewing Information.** Your DVR uses your viewing information to tune, schedule, record, and recommend programs for you. The DVR may also use this viewing information to select advertisements or other promotions for you that you may be interested in. TiVo does not collect your Personally Identifiable Viewing Information without your consent. Absent your consent, no "tag" is added to the anonymous viewing files transmitted from DVRs to TiVo that would enable TiVo to identify the DVR from which it came.

If you expressly choose to allow TiVo to collect your Personally Identifiable Viewing Information, TiVo may use this information for surveys, audience measurement, and other legitimate business purposes.

**2.3 Anonymous Viewing Information.** We use Anonymous Viewing Information to develop reports and analyses about what programs, advertisements, and types of programming our subscribers (as a whole or in subgroups) watch or skip, or for other programming or advertising research. For example, we use Anonymous Viewing Information to develop inferences that people who watch show X

also watch show Y. We also use Anonymous Viewing Information to help with the investigation of technical issues with our systems.

### 3 Disclosure of Subscriber Information

**3.1 Generally.** We disclose aggregated Account Information and aggregated Anonymous Viewing Information and any reports or analyses derived therefrom, to third parties including advertisers, broadcasters, consumer and market research companies and other organizations.

**3.2 Manufacturing and Service Provider Partners.** In certain instances we will disclose to our hardware manufacturing partners and service provider partners (for example DIRECTV) the Account Information of subscribers who use a DVR made by that manufacturing partner or receive a service from that service provider partner. However, TiVo contractually binds our manufacturing and service provider partners to comply with the provisions of this Privacy Policy; our manufacturing and service provider partners are legally liable for misuse of Subscriber Information.

**3.3 Contractors and Third Party Service Providers.** We use contractors to help with some of our operations. Some of these contractors will have access to our databases of Subscriber Information on a temporary basis for specific tasks. TiVo also uses third parties to help with certain aspects of its operations, which may require disclosure of your Subscriber Information to them. For example, TiVo may use a third party to communicate with you (via telephone, email, or letter) about your account or upcoming features or services, to mail rebate checks, to process and collect payment for your TiVo service via your credit card, to generate demographic profiles based on Subscriber Information of current TiVo subscribers, and to perform other work that we may need to

outsourced. TiVo contractually binds these contractors and third parties to use your Subscriber Information only as necessary to perform the services they are asked to perform; such contractors and third parties are legally liable for misuse of Subscriber Information.

**3.4 The "Corporate Family."** Although TiVo currently does not have a parent company, any subsidiaries (other than TiVo International, Inc. and TiVo UK Ltd., which provides TiVo service in the United Kingdom), joint ventures, or other companies under a common control (collectively, "affiliates"), it may in the future. TiVo may share some or all of your Subscriber Information with these affiliates, in which case TiVo will require its affiliates to honor this Privacy Policy. If TiVo Inc. is acquired by another company, that company will possess the Subscriber Information collected by TiVo and it will assume the rights and obligations regarding your Subscriber Information as described in this Privacy Policy.

**3.5 Commerce Partners.** When you elect to participate in a special offer or engage in a transaction with TiVo or a third party advertiser or promoter, TiVo will collect and disclose your Commerce Information to the commerce partner sponsoring and/or fulfilling the promotion. In addition to fulfilling your request, that commerce partner may also use your Commerce Information to send you other information in which you might be interested consistent with its own privacy policies. This information is disclosed only upon your affirmative response to an offer.

**3.6 Factors Beyond our Control.** Your privacy is very important to us. Due to factors beyond our control, however, we cannot fully ensure that your Subscriber Information will not be disclosed to third parties. For example, we may be legally obligated to disclose Subscriber Information to the government or third parties under

certain circumstances, or third parties may circumvent our security measures to unlawfully intercept or access your Subscriber Information.

#### 4 Your Choices Regarding Subscriber Information

**4.1 Limits on TiVo's Collection, Use, and Disclosure of Subscriber Information.** The default privacy preferences, to which you hereby consent if you do not request a change to your settings, do not allow TiVo to collect Personally Identifiable Viewing Information, but do allow TiVo to collect, use, and disclose Anonymous Viewing Information and Diagnostic Information logs, in addition to Account Information, in manners consistent with this Privacy Policy. Commerce Information is collected, used, and disclosed only upon your affirmative response to an offer.

You may choose to change your privacy preferences to allow TiVo to collect Personally Identifiable Viewing Information. Even though Anonymous Viewing Information does not include any Account Information whatsoever, you may request that TiVo block the collection of such information from your DVR. You may also request that TiVo limit the collection of Diagnostic Information Logs from your DVR. You may further opt not to receive communications that we send to you based on your Account Information. If you make this choice, you understand that we will not be able to inform you about any upcoming features, improvements, or promotions regarding your TiVo service. In all cases, however, we will collect and use your Account Information (including Service Information) to enable us to provide your DVR with the TiVo service.

If you would like to change your privacy preferences, you must either (a) send TiVo a signed written request, (b) call us at 1-877-367-8486 to request a change.

**4.2 Review and Update of Account Information.** We believe you have a right to know the Account Information collected and stored by TiVo and to update or change any Account Information you believe is incorrect. You may make a request by telephone, mail, or via the web (when available) to review your Account Information and we will mail you a printout of your Account Information. If you request that certain Account Information be changed, we will make the changes to the extent commercially practicable. In addition, we will take commercially reasonable steps to propagate those changes to third parties with whom we may have shared your Account Information pursuant to this Privacy Policy.

**4.3 How to Delete Information.** Should you decide to discontinue your TiVo service, you may make that request by telephone or mail and we will suspend billing for the TiVo service. After you discontinue the TiVo service, TiVo will maintain your Account Information only as long as necessary for business purposes. In addition, although we delete your Account Information from our "live" database, your Account Information may remain in our archives and records until it is routinely destroyed.

**5 Comment Regarding Children.** TiVo feels strongly about protecting the privacy of children and encourages parents to be involved in the television viewing of their minor children by, for example, limiting the types of content minor children can watch.

**6 Separate Rules for the TiVo Website.** We have a separate privacy policy that covers general browsing activities on our website. However, if you register for TiVo service on the Web, or log in to your account preferences page (when available) to make changes to

your account or request services, this Privacy Policy will apply to the Subscriber Information you provide to us in those instances.

**7 Security of Subscriber Information.** When you contact us by email or phone regarding your account, we ask you for certain Account Information—in order to verify your identity—before accepting requests to make changes to the account. We take these steps to ensure that only you or a household member who knows your Account Information will be able to access or change your Subscriber Information.

TiVo uses industry-standard methods such as encryption to secure the communication of viewing information from your DVR to TiVo. In addition, TiVo uses industry-standard methods of securing its databases of Subscriber Information, including the use of firewalls. Except as provided elsewhere in this Privacy Policy, TiVo limits access to Subscriber Information databases to those persons in the TiVo organization who have a business need for such access, including servicing your account, informing you of service news and special TiVo offers, or aggregating Account Information or Anonymous Viewing Information for the purpose of conducting research, and targeting new subscribers. However, you should know that no company, including TiVo, can fully eliminate security risks associated with Subscriber Information.

## 8 General

**8.1 Future Features, Services, and Amendments to this Privacy Policy.** We may upgrade the TiVo service to provide you with new features on an ongoing basis and plan to continue to do so. We may also make available new services in the future. New services will be governed by the privacy policies of the respective

service provider. To the extent that any new features or services may require amendments to this Privacy Policy to describe the treatment of Subscriber Information, these amendments are effective upon notice to you. In the event that we were to make a substantial and material change to our treatment of Subscriber Information, such as a change in the way that we collect, use, or disclose Personally Identifiable Viewing Information, we will notify you of such planned change and offer you the opportunity to alter your privacy preferences.

**8.2 Technical Problems.** Even though TiVo has taken significant steps to ensure that your Subscriber Information is never collected, used, or disclosed by TiVo except as set forth by this Privacy Policy, technical mistakes are possible. If such a mistake takes place, we will take commercially reasonable steps to correct it.

**8.3 Contact TiVo.** Our intention is to be diligent in protecting your privacy by strictly following our Privacy Policy. If you would like to make suggestions or find out more about our privacy practices, please call us at 1-877-367-8486 or send us a letter.

Our mailing address is TiVo Inc., 2160 Gold Street, P.O. Box 2160, Alviso, CA 95002-2160.

**8.4 Entire Agreement.** The term "including" in this Privacy Policy shall mean "including without limitation." This Privacy Policy supplements and is incorporated into the TiVo Service Agreement. This Privacy Policy constitutes the entire agreement, and replaces and supersedes all prior agreements, between you and TiVo concerning the subject matter discussed in this Privacy Policy. Use of your DVR with TiVo service will signify your acceptance of this Privacy Policy.



## ▶▶ Digital Video Recorder—TiVo Service Agreement

Welcome to TiVo! Congratulations on your subscription to the TiVo Service. This agreement explains the terms and conditions that will apply to your use of the TiVo Service and constitutes a legally binding agreement between you and TiVo Inc. ("TiVo"). By using the TiVo Service, you agree to all the terms and conditions in this agreement ("Agreement").

### ▶ The TiVo Service and the Privacy Policy

1. **Terms of Service.** The TiVo logo on your TiVo digital video recorder ("DVR") means that it can receive the TiVo Service offered and provided by TiVo for personal, non-commercial use on a subscription basis. Your activation and continued use of the TiVo Service is subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement. TiVo may at its discretion change the terms of this Agreement. Such changes shall be effective upon notification by TiVo. We encourage you to check [http://www.tivo.com/svc\\_agreement.asp](http://www.tivo.com/svc_agreement.asp) or call us for a copy of the current Service Agreement. If you are dissatisfied with any changes to this Agreement, you may cancel your subscription as provided in Section 13 ("Termination of Service").

2. **The TiVo Service.** The basic TiVo service consists of program guide information and the following features: (a) Season Pass—automatically finds and records every episode of a series all season long; (b) WishList—finds and records programs that feature your favorite actor, director, team or even topic; (c) Smart Recording—automatically detects program line-up changes for your cable/satellite provider and adjusts recording times so you don't have to worry about the details; (d) TiVo Suggestions—TiVo can be

programmed to suggest and auto-record programs that may match your interests; and (e) Parental Controls—Lock channels or set ratings limits based on content. Collectively, these features are referred to as the "Basic TiVo Service." The "TiVo Service" means the Basic TiVo Service, and any additional features and functionality that TiVo may, at its discretion and from time to time offer.

3. **Changes to Your TiVo Service.** TiVo may, at its discretion and from time to time change, add or remove features and functionality of the TiVo Service or the TiVo DVR (when the TiVo DVR accesses TiVo's servers) without notice. If you are dissatisfied with any such changes to the TiVo Service, you may immediately cancel your subscription as provided in Section 13 ("Termination of Service"). TiVo reserves the right to discontinue one, some or all of the features of the TiVo Service you receive at any time in its discretion. TiVo may, at its discretion, discontinue the provision of software updates to certain TiVo DVRs. This means that while other TiVo DVRs may receive continued software updates and functionality, TiVo is not required to provide such updates to your TiVo DVR. Additionally, the TiVo Service may not be the same on each TiVo DVR; a given DVR may support different features and functionality, and TiVo is under no obligation to provide all features and functionality to all TiVo DVRs.

4. **TiVo's Privacy Policy.** You must provide us with accurate and complete information when you activate your TiVo Service. TiVo reserves the right to terminate your account if you give TiVo inaccurate or incomplete information. TiVo respects the privacy of your Subscriber Information (as defined in TiVo's Privacy Policy)

and will not disclose any of your Subscriber Information except as permitted in TiVo's Privacy Policy. A copy of TiVo's Privacy Policy is included in the product manual and the latest version can always be found via our website at [www.tivo.com](http://www.tivo.com). Please read it carefully before using your subscription for the TiVo Service. By using the TiVo Service, you agree to the terms and conditions of our Privacy Policy and affirm that you understand the options TiVo provides you with regard to your Subscriber Information. TiVo will notify you of any substantial and material changes to the Privacy Policy and the latest Privacy Policy can always be accessed through our website at [www.tivo.com](http://www.tivo.com).

5. **We Don't Control the Nature of Television!** The TiVo Service gives you the ability to see and record televised programs over which TiVo exercises no editorial or programming control ("Third Party Content"). You understand that (a) TiVo does not guarantee the access to or recording of any particular program, (b) programming is not under TiVo's control, (c) cable/satellite providers may make program line-up changes too quickly for your TiVo DVR to adjust recording times, (d) TiVo is not responsible for and has no editorial control over any Third Party Content, and (e) TiVo has no control over the distribution of programs. You also understand that the Third Party Content is the copyrighted material of the third party that supplies it, is protected by copyright and other applicable laws, and may not be reproduced, published, broadcast, rewritten, or redistributed without the written permission of the third party that supplied it, except to the extent allowed under the "fair use" provisions of the U.S. copyright laws or comparable provisions of foreign laws. You agree that TiVo will have no liability to you, or anyone else who uses your account, with regard to any Third Party Content.

### ▶ **Subscribing to and Using the TiVo Service**

6. **Eligible Subscribers.** You must be at least 18 years of age to assume the responsibilities of this Agreement. Minors may use the TiVo Service only if one of their parents or legal guardians assumes the responsibilities of this Agreement and thereby assumes full responsibility for the minor's use of the TiVo Service.
7. **Subscription Fees.** You agree to pay your subscription fee in advance. Your subscription fee will cover the Basic TiVo Service received via a product authorized by TiVo to enable the TiVo Service. You have a choice of subscription options that may change over time. You may switch options at the end of each period. If for any reason you need to reactivate your subscription, you will be charged a reactivation fee. If you are signing up for Basic TiVo Service under a promotional subscription fee, some additional restrictions may apply. Whatever your subscription option, your subscription fee does not include any services, features or functionality other than the Basic TiVo Service.
8. **Telephone Access and Possible Charges.** The TiVo Service is accessed through a standard telephone line and is available as a local call in most areas. In some areas, local and long-distance toll charges may apply. You are responsible for any telephone charges incurred as a result of using or accessing the TiVo Service and acknowledge and agree that you shall be solely responsible for all disputes with any telephone company related to the same.
9. **Payment Authorization.** If you choose a subscription option with recurring payments, you agree that TiVo may automatically charge the subscription fee to your credit or charge card at the beginning of each period. Your TiVo Service access will not be established until

TiVo has verified that the credit card information you provide us for payment is accurate and that your credit card is in good standing. TiVo may, as necessary, extend the expiration date of your credit card in order to ensure continued service. TiVo may, at its discretion, change the TiVo Service fees from time to time, and charge fees (which TiVo may also change) for features and functionalities that are not a part of the Basic TiVo Service. TiVo will notify you 30 days in advance of any fee changes or new fees; you may obtain the fees currently in effect at any time by contacting TiVo Customer Service toll-free at 1-877-367-8486. TiVo reserves the right to suspend or terminate your TiVo Service without notice upon rejection of any credit card charges or if your card issuer (or its agent or affiliate) seeks return of payments previously made to TiVo when TiVo believes you are liable for the charges. You agree to pay a late charge on all amounts due which remain unpaid for 30 days. The late charge will equal 1.5% of the past due amount, or the highest rate allowed by law, per month until paid. Such rights are in addition to and not in lieu of any other legal right or remedies available to TiVo. TiVo reserves the right to refer your account to a third party for collection in the event of an ongoing default.

10. **Using the TiVo Service.** You may access and use the TiVo Service only with a product authorized to receive the TiVo Service and you agree not to tamper with or otherwise modify the TiVo DVR. The TiVo Service is provided for your personal use and may not be resold, in whole or in part, or otherwise commercially exploited. Except as expressly provided in this Agreement, you may not transfer the TiVo Service. By using the TiVo Service, you agree to receive all software updates and upgrades that TiVo sends to your TiVo DVR. If your TiVo DVR accesses the TiVo Service (regardless of your payment or subscription status), you acknowledge and agree

that you are a user of the TiVo Service and are bound by the terms of this Agreement.

11. **Advertising and Promotions.** The TiVo Service is in part advertiser supported. The hard disk drive of your DVR contains reserved space in addition to the advertised recording capacity. TiVo reserves the right to send content (including advertising and promotional material) to such reserved portions of your DVR's hard disk drive as part of the TiVo service. In order to send such content, you agree that TiVo may tune your TiVo DVR to a particular channel at a particular time.
12. **Definition of Product Lifetime Subscription.** A "Product Lifetime Subscription" to the Basic TiVo Service covers the life of the DVR you buy - not the life of the subscriber. The Product Lifetime Subscription accompanies the product in case of ownership transfer. The subscription remains in effect if the DVR needs to be repaired or replaced due to a malfunction (see manufacturer or retailer warranty details) or even if you upgrade your DVR to increase storage capacity (though such upgrades, if not performed by a TiVo-authorized third party, will void the warranty on your DVR and constitute a breach of this Agreement). Because a Product Lifetime Subscription is linked to a particular DVR, it cannot be transferred to any other DVR (unless the DVR is replaced due to a malfunction covered by the manufacturer's or retailer's warranty). Each DVR purchased requires its own TiVo Service subscription and activation. Of course, hardware products don't last forever and their lifespan will vary. TiVo makes no warranties or representations as to the expected lifetime of the DVR (aside from the manufacturer's or retailer's warranty).

13. **Termination of Service.** You may terminate your account, this Agreement, and your right to use the TiVo Service, at any time and for any reason or no reason, by contacting TiVo Customer Service toll-free at 1-877-367-8486. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement, TiVo retains the absolute right to immediately suspend or terminate your account, and terminate this Agreement, if the charges to your credit card for the fees described in Section 7 ("Subscription Fees") and Section 9 ("Payment Authorization") are refused for any reason, if you breach any provision in this Agreement, if you misuse the TiVo Service, and/or if you alter the DVR or use the TiVo Service in such a manner as to infringe upon the intellectual property rights of TiVo or any third party. In addition, TiVo reserves the right to terminate your account and this Agreement for any other reason if TiVo gives you at least 30 days advance notice. Upon any such termination of your account, you will remain obligated to pay all outstanding fees and charges relating to your use of the TiVo Service before termination. Unused subscription fees are nonrefundable.

► **Ownership, Open Source Software, Disclaimers and Liability Limitations**

14. **Title to Software and Intellectual Property.** You may need to use certain software programs to use or have full access to certain features of the TiVo Service. You received certain software with the purchase of the TiVo DVR and other software programs may be provided to you by TiVo from time to time, which you are obligated to accept. Your use of such software is subject to the terms of this Agreement. TiVo retains title to and ownership of all the TiVo software and certain intellectual property rights in the TiVo DVR. TiVo also retains ownership of all TiVo copyrights and trademarks.

In the case of third party software delivered by TiVo to the TiVo DVR, the applicable third party retains title to and ownership of its software, copyrights and trademarks. Any attempt to disassemble, decompile, create derivative works of, reverse engineer, modify, sublicense, distribute or use for other purposes either the DVR or software of this system is strictly prohibited, except as expressly set forth in Section 15 ("Open Source Software").

15. **Open Source Software.** Certain components of the TiVo software are subject to the GNU General Public License or other so-called open source licenses ("Open-Source Software"). Open Source Software is not subject to the restrictions in the last sentence of Section 14 ("Title to Software and Intellectual Property"), and is subject to the GNU General Public License ("GPL") or other license terms, as applicable. In compliance with the terms of the GPL, TiVo makes its modifications to Open Source Software that TiVo uses, modifies and distributes pursuant to the GPL available to the public in source code form at [www.tivo.com/linux](http://www.tivo.com/linux). You are free to use, modify and distribute Open Source Software that is subject to the GPL so long as you comply with the terms of the GPL (available in your user documentation or at [www.gnu.org/copyleft/gpl.html](http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/gpl.html)).
16. **Indemnity.** YOU AGREE TO DEFEND, INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS TIVO FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, PROCEEDINGS, INJURIES, LIABILITIES, LOSSES, COSTS AND EXPENSES (INCLUDING REASONABLE ATTORNEYS' FEES), INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, CLAIMS ALLEGING NEGLIGENCE, COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT AND/OR TRADEMARK INFRINGEMENT AGAINST TIVO OR THE TIVO SERVICE, RELATING TO OR ARISING OUT OF YOUR BREACH OF ANY

TERM OF THIS AGREEMENT, YOUR MISUSE OF THE TIVO SERVICE, OR YOUR UNAUTHORIZED MODIFICATION OR ALTERATION OF THE DVR OR RELATED SOFTWARE (OTHER THAN AS EXPRESSLY SET FORTH IN SECTION 15 ("OPEN SOURCE SOFTWARE"))).

17. **Warranty Disclaimer.** YOU UNDERSTAND AND AGREE THAT THE TIVO SERVICE IS PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE" BASIS. TIVO MAKES NO WARRANTY THAT THE TIVO SERVICE WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS OR THAT USE OF THE TIVO SERVICE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED, TIMELY, SECURE, OR ERROR-FREE; NOR DOES TIVO MAKE ANY WARRANTY AS TO THE ACCURACY OR RELIABILITY OF ANY INFORMATION OBTAINED THROUGH THE TIVO SERVICE (INCLUDING THIRD PARTY CONTENT), THAT ANY DEFECTS IN THE TIVO SERVICE WILL BE CORRECTED OR THAT THE DVR OR TIVO SERVICE WILL BE COMPATIBLE WITH ANY OTHER SPECIFIC HARDWARE OR SERVICE. TIVO AND ITS SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, WHETHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR STATUTORY, REGARDING THE TIVO SERVICE OR TIVO SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF TITLE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. Because some jurisdictions do not permit the exclusion of implied warranties, this disclaimer may not apply to you.
18. **Limitations of TiVo's Liability.** IN NO EVENT WILL TIVO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY LOST PROFITS, USE OF SUBSCRIBER

INFORMATION, LOSS OF DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, OR OTHER INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING FROM OR RELATING TO YOUR USE OF THE TIVO SERVICE OR USE OF THE TIVO SERVICE THROUGH YOUR ACCOUNT BY ANYONE ELSE, EVEN IF TIVO HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. IN NO CASE WILL TIVO'S TOTAL CUMULATIVE LIABILITY TO YOU AND ANYONE WHO USES THE TIVO SERVICE THROUGH YOUR ACCOUNT, FOR ANY AND ALL CLAIMS UNDER ANY THEORY OF LAW, EXCEED THE AGGREGATE AMOUNT YOU PAID TO TIVO IN THE PRECEDING TWELVE MONTHS. YOU UNDERSTAND THAT THESE LIMITATIONS OF TIVO'S AND TIVO'S SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY ARE A FUNDAMENTAL PART OF THIS AGREEMENT. Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you. Additionally, this provision is not intended to limit TiVo's liability in the event of TiVo's willful or intentional misconduct. Moreover, if TiVo mistakenly or wrongfully overcharges your account, this section does not limit TiVo's obligation to refund such mistakenly or wrongfully overcharged amounts.

#### ► Legal Stuff

19. **Miscellaneous.** This Agreement will be governed by the laws of the State of California as such laws apply to agreements between California residents performed entirely within California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods does not apply to this Agreement. If any provision of this Agreement is invalid or unenforceable under applicable law, such provision will

be deemed modified to the extent necessary to render such provision valid and enforceable and the other provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect. The official text of this Agreement or notice submitted hereunder shall be in English. In the event any dispute concerning the construction or meaning of this Agreement, reference shall be made only to this Agreement as written in English and not to any translation into another language. This document represents the entire agreement governing your use of the TiVo Service and supersedes any prior or contemporaneous written or oral statements by TiVo or its representatives or resellers. TiVo's failure to enforce any of the terms of this Agreement shall not constitute a waiver or relinquishment of TiVo's right to do so at any time. Sections 7 ("Subscription Fees"), 8 ("Telephone Access and Possible Charges"), 9 ("Payment Authorization"), 10 ("Using the TiVo Service"), 14 ("Title to Software and Intellectual Property"), 15 ("Open Source Software"), 16 ("Indemnity"), 17 ("Warranty Disclaimer"), 18 ("Limitations of TiVo's Liability"), and 19 ("Miscellaneous") shall survive any termination or expiration of this Agreement.

BY USING THE TIVO SERVICE, I REPRESENT THAT I HAVE READ AND UNDERSTOOD THIS ENTIRE AGREEMENT AND I AGREE TO ALL THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT AS STATED ABOVE.

---

# Linux Information

Linux Source Notice

GNU General Public License

---

## Linux Source Notice

TiVo Digital Video Recorders (DVRs) are powered by the Linux operating system. The machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code is available for the cost of distribution. Please visit [www.tivo.com/linux](http://www.tivo.com/linux) for more information.

## GNU General Public License

Version 2, June 1991

Copyright (C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc.

59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

### Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users. This General Public License applies to most of the Free Software Foundation's software and to any other program whose authors commit to using it. (Some other Free Software Foundation software is covered by the GNU Library General Public License instead.) You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it.



For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that you have. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with two steps: (1) copyright the software, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the software.

Also, for each author's protection and ours, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free software. If the software is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations.

Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We wish to avoid the danger that redistributors of a free program will individually obtain patent licenses, in effect making the program proprietary. To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

## GNU GENERAL PUBLIC LICENSE

Terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification.

0. This License applies to any program or other work which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it may be distributed under the terms of this General Public License. The "Program", below, refers to any such program or work, and a "work based on the Program" means either the Program or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Program or a portion of it, either verbatim or

with modifications and/or translated into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) Each licensee is addressed as "you".

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running the Program is not restricted, and the output from the Program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Program (independent of having been made by running the Program). Whether that is true depends on what the Program does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program a copy of this License along with the Program.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

a) You must cause the modified files to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.

b) You must cause any work that you distribute or publish, that in whole or in part contains or is derived from the Program or any part thereof, to be licensed as a whole at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.

c) If the modified program normally reads commands interactively when run, you must cause it, when started running for such interactive use in the most ordinary way, to print or display an announcement including an appropriate copyright notice and a notice that there is no warranty (or else, saying that you provide a warranty) and that users may redistribute the program under these conditions, and telling the user how to view a copy of this License. (Exception: if the Program itself is interactive but does not normally print such an announcement, your work based on the Program is not required to print an announcement.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Program, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License, and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Program, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Program.

In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Program with the Program (or with a work based on the Program) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may copy and distribute the Program (or a work based on it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you also do one of the following:

- a) Accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,
- b) Accompany it with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give any third party, for a charge no more than your cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code, to be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,

- c) Accompany it with the information you received as to the offer to distribute corresponding source code. (This alternative is allowed only for noncommercial distribution and only if you received the program in object code or executable form with such an offer, in accord with Subsection b above.)

The source code for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For an executable work, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the executable. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

If distribution of executable or object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place counts as distribution of the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

4. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License.

However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

5. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Program or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Program (or any work based on the Program), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Program or works based on it.

6. Each time you redistribute the Program (or any work based on the Program), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute or modify the Program subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.

7. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues),

conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Program at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Program by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Program.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system, which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.

This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

8. If the distribution and/or use of the Program is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Program under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus

excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

9. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

10. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Program into other free programs whose distribution conditions are different, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

### **No Warranty**

11. Because the program is licensed free of charge, there is no warranty for the program, to the extent permitted by applicable law. except when otherwise stated in writing the copyright holders and/or other parties provide the program "as is" without warranty of any kind, either expressed or implied, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. The entire risk as to the quality and performance of the program is with you. Should the

program prove defective, you assume the cost of all necessary servicing, repair or correction.

12. In no event unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing will any copyright holder, or any other party who may modify and/or redistribute the program as permitted above, be liable to you for damages, including any general, special, incidental or consequential damages arising out of the use or inability to use the program (including but not limited to loss of data or data being rendered inaccurate or losses sustained by you or third parties or a failure of the program to operate with any other programs), even if such holder or other party has been advised of the possibility of such damages.

End of terms and conditions.

### **How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs**

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms.

To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

<one line to give the program's name and a brief idea of what it does.>

Copyright (C) <year> <name of author>

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

<signature of Ty Coon>, 1 April 1989

Ty Coon, President of Vice

This General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Library General Public License instead of this License.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

If the program is interactive, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode:

Gnomovision version 69, Copyright (C) year name of author

Gnomovision comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type `show w'.

This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it under certain conditions; type `show c' for details.

The hypothetical commands `show w' and `show c' should show the appropriate parts of the General Public License. Of course, the commands you use may be called something other than `show w' and `show c'; they could even be mouse-clicks or menu items--whatever suits your program.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the program, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the program `Gnomovision' (which makes passes at compilers) written by James Hacker.

Appendix A

---

# Index

---

- A**  
 Actor WishList. See WishList.  
 ADVANCE button 24  
 APG 78  
 audio  
   options in My Preferences 60  
   secondary audio program (SAP) 60  
   sound effects volume and 60  
   television audio options 60  
   troubleshooting 90  
 auto re-lock option for  
   Parental Controls 54  
 auto-recording WishList  
   repeating recording features and 34  
   setting up 43
- B**  
 BACK button 24  
 Browse by Channel 47  
 Browse by Time 46
- C**  
 cable lineup  
   changing 59  
   Guided Setup and 5  
 call waiting prefix 64  
 Category Only WishList. See WishList.  
 channel banner  
   icons and 28  
   setting display time 60  
   viewing 28  
 channels  
   changing your lineup 59  
   creating channel lists 59  
   Customize Channels 59  
   Guide Options and 27  
   locking channels. See Parental Controls.  
   troubleshooting 76-80  
 Channels You Receive  
   Customize Channels and 59  
   Guided Setup and 6  
   conflicts  
   priorities and 49  
   questions about 86  
 Customer Support 72  
 Customize Channels. See channels.
- D**  
 daily call  
   description 62  
   making 63  
   troubleshooting 73-75  
 dial prefix, setting 64  
 dial tone detection, setting 65  
 dial-in number  
   changing 63  
   Guided Setup and 4  
 dialing options 63-65  
 Director WishList. See WishList.
- F**  
 Favorite Channels  
   Customize Channels and 59
- G**  
 Gnu General Public License 109  
 Guide Options 27  
   (Channels) You Receive and 27  
   Channels 27  
   day and 27  
   Favorite (Channels) and 27  
   filtering and 27  
   time and 27  
 Guided Setup  
   cable lineup and 5  
   cable providers and 5  
   Channels You Receive and 6  
   dial-in number and 4  
   dialing format and 5  
   introduction to 3  
   phone dialing option. See dialing options.  
   repeating 68  
   satellite providers and 5  
   setup call and 4  
   tips and troubleshooting 4-8  
   zip code and 4
- See also Guide Options.  
 forward  
   fast forward 24  
   frame forward 24  
   FWD button 24



- I**  
icons  
See inside back cover.  
INFO button vi, 11, 13, 27, 28  
INSTANT REPLAY button 24
- L**  
Linux 109  
live TV  
definition of vi  
recording from 25  
troubleshooting 81
- M**  
Manual Repeating Recording  
repeating recording features and 34  
setting up 48  
Manual Season Pass. See Manual  
Repeating Recording.  
Manually Record Time/Channel 48  
MPG 78  
My Preferences 53-65  
channel banner and 60  
RF Video 61  
See also audio.  
See also Parental Controls.  
See also Video Recording Quality.  
TiVo Suggestions 61
- N**  
Network Showcases 16
- Now Playing 31-33  
See also Save to VCR.  
troubleshooting 87-88
- O**  
Overtime Scheduler. See Recording  
Options.
- P**  
Parental Controls 53-58  
Channel Lock 58  
repeating recordings and 34  
troubleshooting 89  
Parental Controls Auto Re-lock option 54  
PAUSE button 24  
Phone Avail. Detection 65  
phone calls, troubleshooting 73-75  
Phone Connection. See Recorder & Phone  
Setup.  
Pick Programs to Record  
See also Record by Time or Channel.  
See also Search By Title.  
See also Season Pass Manager.  
See also TiVo Suggestions.  
See also To Do List.  
See also WishList.  
troubleshooting 82-85  
PLAY button 24  
program guide 77  
Program Information screen,  
definition of vi
- R**  
Rating Settings  
MMPA definitions 57  
Movies and 55  
TV Content and 55  
TV Movies and 55  
TV ratings definitions 57  
RECORD button 24  
Record by Time or Channel 46  
Recorder & Phone Setup  
cable box and 62  
connections to Recorder and 62  
Phone Connection 62  
satellite box and 62  
Recording History 50  
Recording Options 35-36  
Keep At Least 36  
Keep At Most 36  
Keep Until 36  
Overtime Scheduler 36  
setting 35  
Show Type 36  
Start Recording 36  
Stop Recording 36  
repeating recordings 34  
restarting the Recorder 68  
RF Video, My Preferences and 61

## S

SAP (secondary audio program) 60  
 satellite receiver, with serial control 78  
 Save to VCR 32-33  
 Save Until... 31  
 Search By Title 37  
 Search Using WishLists. See WishList.  
 Season Pass 34  
 serial control cable 78  
 Showcases 16  
 SLOW button 24  
 sound effects volume 60  
 Standby 69  
 Start Recording. See Recording Options.  
 status bar 23  
 stereo 60  
 Stop Recording. See Recording Options.  
 Suggestions. See TiVo Suggestions.  
 System Information 66  
 System Reset 68

## T

Television Audio 60  
 television audio 60  
 Test Call 63  
 Thumb ratings. See TiVo Suggestions.  
 time  
   how the Recorder's clock is set 84  
   See also Guide Options  
 Title WishList. See WishList.  
 TiVo Live Guide 26

## W

WishList 38-44  
   Actor WishList 40  
   auto-recording WishLists 43  
   browsing 43  
   Category Only WishList 40  
   Director WishList 40  
   editing 43  
   keyword tips and 42  
   Title WishList 41  
   View all upcoming and 43

## V

VCR, saving programs to 32  
 video  
   See also Video Recording Quality  
   troubleshooting 90  
 Video Recording Quality  
   Recording Options and 36  
   setting default 60  
 View Recording History 50  
 volume, sound effects and 60

TiVo is dedicated to providing you with quality support and customer service. If you have any questions or difficulties, we want you to hear from us.

#### Troubleshooting

Check the Troubleshooting chapter of this document and of the *Installation Guide* that came with your Digital Video Recorder.

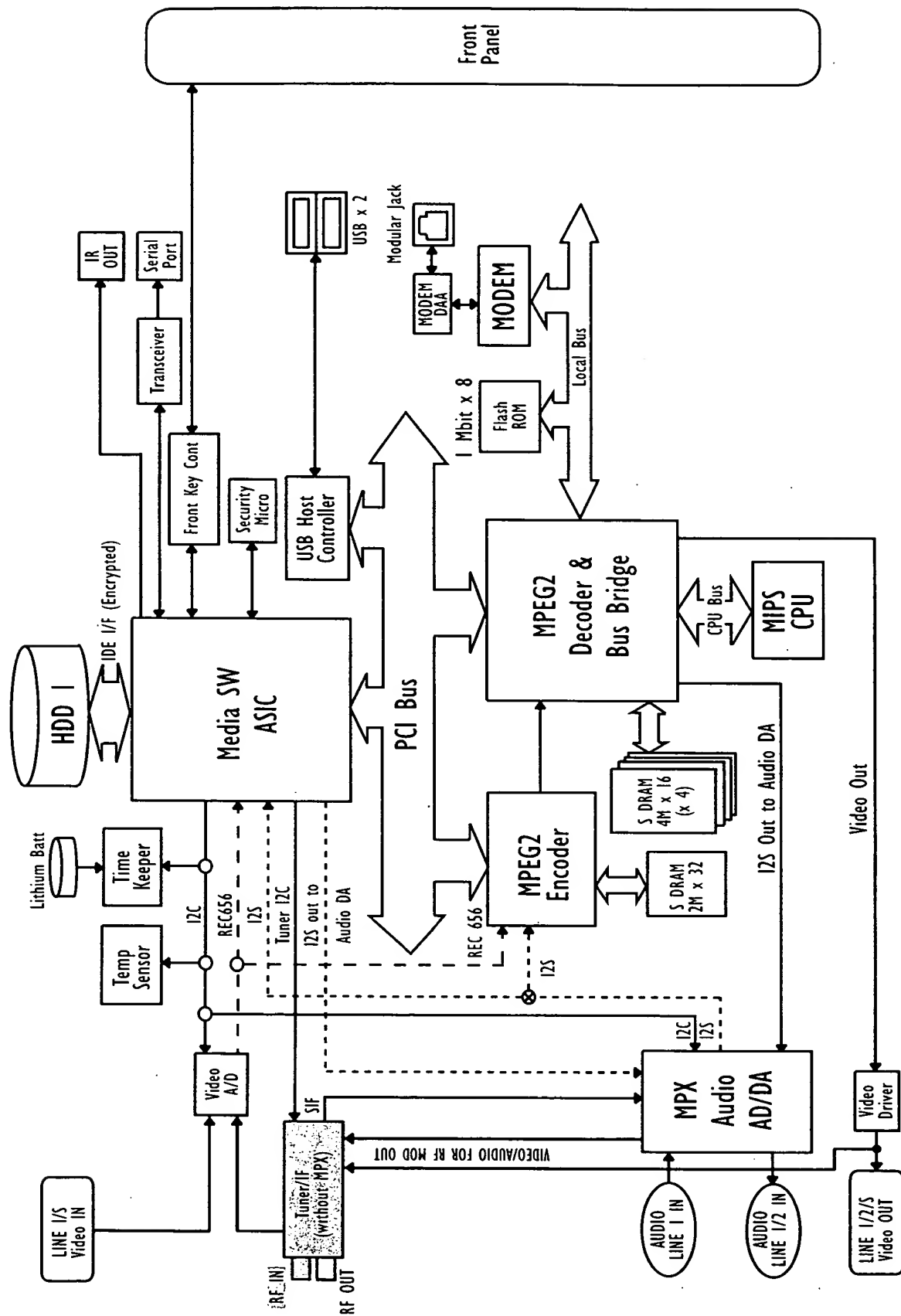
#### Online Customer Support

Check the TiVo website at [www.tivo.com/support](http://www.tivo.com/support). It contains Online Customer Support on a number of topics, including hookup and setup. You'll also find the latest information about TiVo there, including Service Updates, the TiVo Service Agreement, and the TiVo Privacy Policy.

#### Contact Customer Support

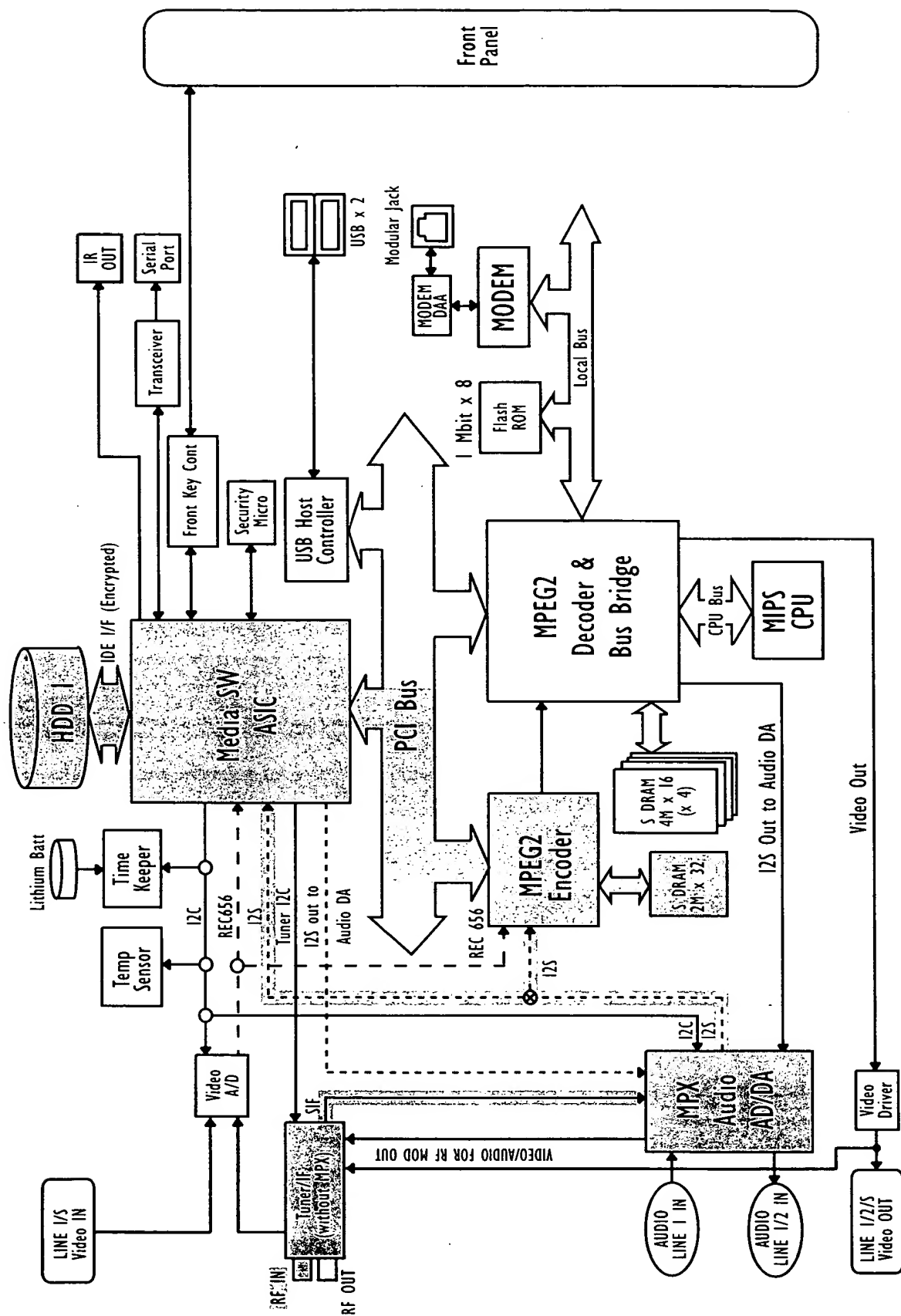
If you haven't found an answer in the Troubleshooting chapter of this document or in the Online Customer Support section of the TiVo website, you can find complete Customer Support contact information in the *Installation Guide*.

## 2-3. BLOCK DIAGRAM



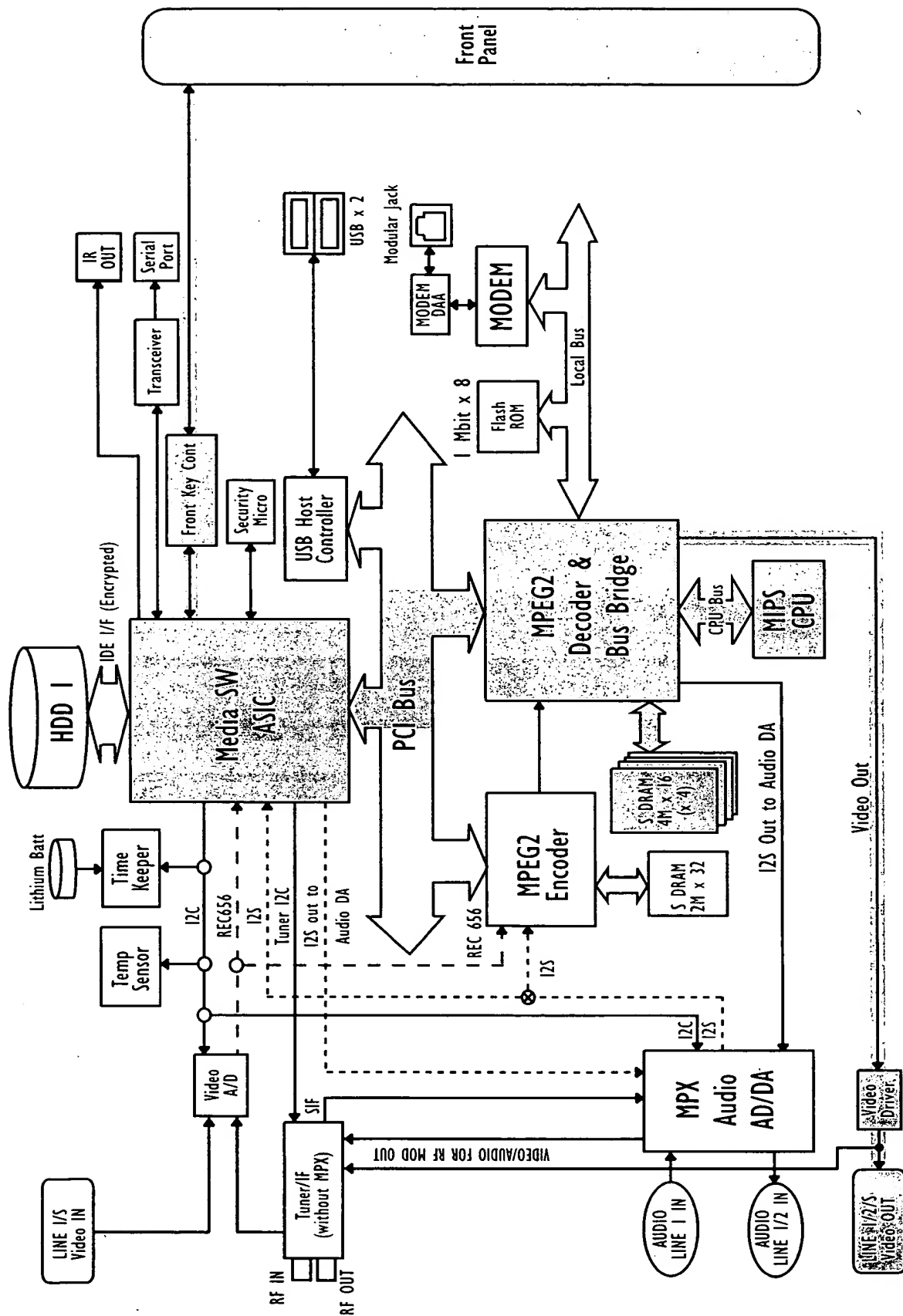
"a tuner for receiving a broadcast signal"

## 2-3. BLOCK DIAGRAM

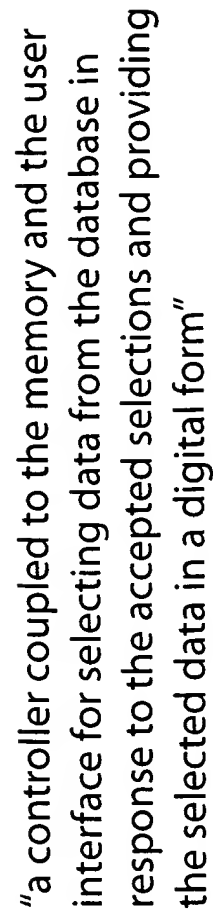


"a memory coupled to the tuner for storing data in the received broadcast signal in a database"

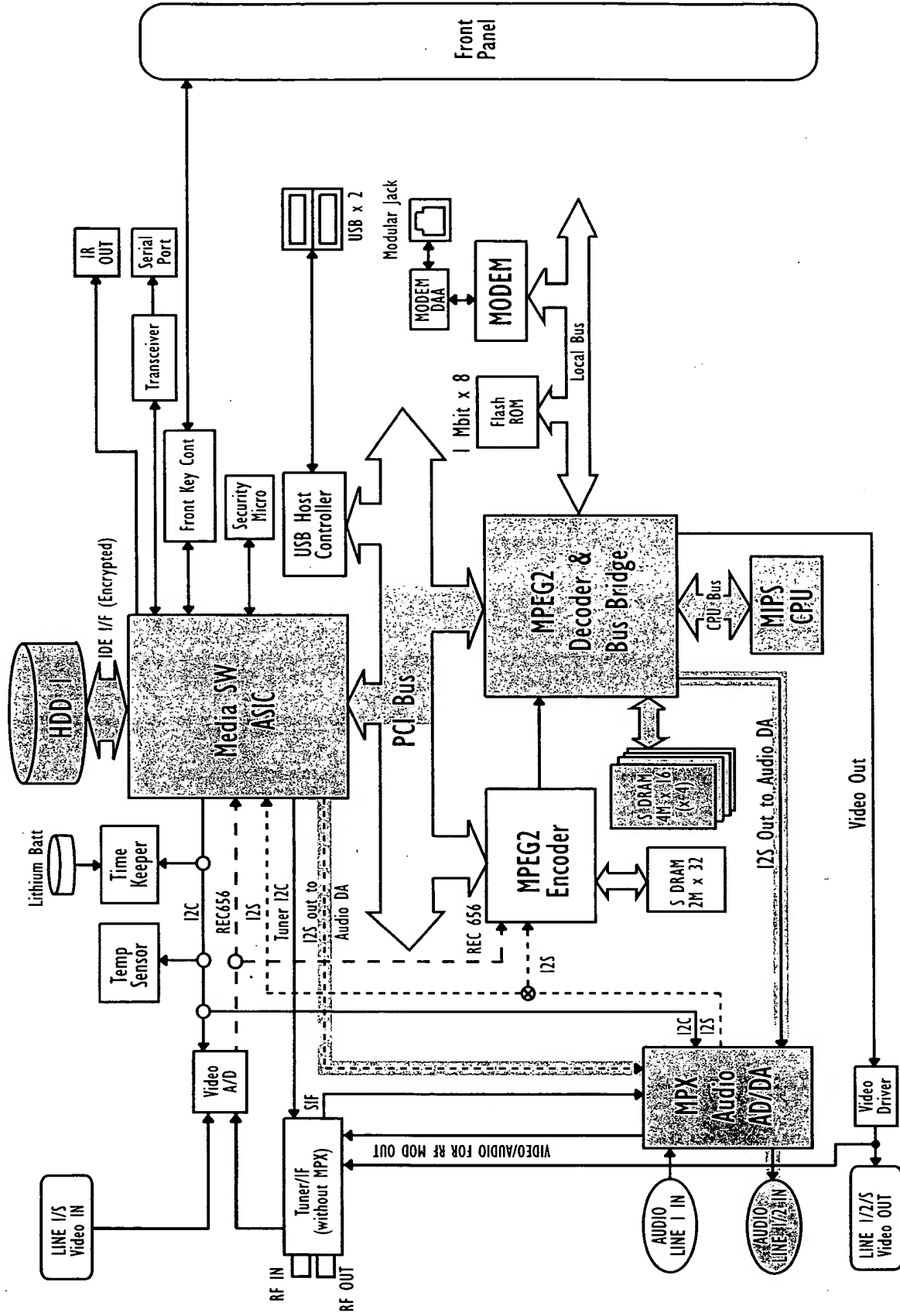
## 2-3. BLOCK DIAGRAM



"a user interface for providing a set of menus describing the database, and for accepting selections from the set of menus"



2-3. BLOCK DIAGRAM



"a speech producing sub-system coupled to the controller and the memory for converting the selected data from digital form to an analog signal"



FILED

JUN 15 2004

RICHARD W. WIEKING  
CLERK, U.S. DISTRICT COURT  
NORTHERN DISTRICT OF CALIFORNIA

IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT  
FOR THE NORTHERN DISTRICT OF CALIFORNIA

COMMAND AUDIO CORPORATION,

Plaintiff,

v.

SONY ELECTRONICS, INC.,

Defendant.

No. C 02-0599 MJJ

**ORDER GRANTING IN PART AND  
DENYING IN PART COMMAND  
AUDIO'S MOTION FOR PARTIAL  
SUMMARY JUDGMENT AND  
DENYING SONY'S MOTION FOR  
SUMMARY JUDGMENT**

Before the Court is a patent infringement action by Command Audio Corporation (Command Audio) against Sony Electronics, Inc. (Sony). Command Audio moves for partial summary judgment, pursuant to Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 56, that Sony willfully infringed the patents-at-issue. Sony moves for summary judgment that those patents are invalid for anticipation. Based on the submissions, arguments, and records herein, Command Audio's motion is GRANTED IN PART AND DENIED IN PART and Sony's motion is DENIED.

I. BACKGROUND

A. Tydeman and the Patents-At-Issue

In 1982, John Tydeman co-authored *Teletext and Videotex in the United States* (Tydeman), describing the current state and the future of teletext and videotex technology. Thirteen years later, on April 11, 1995, the Patent and Trademark Office (PTO) issued John O. Ryan (Ryan) United States Patent No. 5,406,626, titled "Radio Receiver for Information

1 Dissemination Using Subcarrier.” Although the ‘626 is not at issue here, Command Audio has  
2 asserted its continuation-in-part, United States Patent No. 5,590,195, titled “Information  
3 Dissemination Using Various Transmission Modes” and issued on December 31, 1996. After  
4 the PTO twice corrected the ‘195, claim 1 teaches:

5 A receiver to receive, store and playback data in a transmitted signal comprising:

6 a tuner for providing the data from the transmitted signal;

7 a memory coupled to the tuner for storing the provided data as a database;

8 a user interface for providing a set of menus describing the stored database,  
9 and for accepting selections from the set of menus;

10 a controller coupled to the memory and the interface for selecting for playback  
11 the stored data from the database in response to the accepted selections and  
12 providing the selected data in a digital form; and

13 a speech producing sub-system coupled to the memory for converting the  
14 selected data to an analog signal representing an original audio signal.

15 Claims 3, 5, 9, 14, 16, 17, and 30 respectively teach: “[t]he device of claim 1, wherein the tuner  
16 provides data from a television carrier”; “[t]he device of claim 3, wherein the tuner provides data  
17 from a Separate Audio Programming channel [(SAP)] of the television carrier”; “[t]he device  
18 of claim 1, wherein the received data is audio data that has been converted from analog form to  
19 digital form”; “[t]he device of claim 1, wherein the extracted data is in digital form, has been  
20 encrypted and compressed, and further comprising a decryptor for providing conditional access  
21 and decrypting the provided data”; “[t]he device of claim 14[,] wherein the decryptor is enabled  
22 by a key received by the tuner”; “[t]he device of claim 14, wherein the decryptor is enabled by  
23 a key device connected to the decryptor”; and “[t]he device of claim 1, wherein a speed of  
24 transmission of said data is variable.”

25 Command Audio also asserts a continuation of a continuation of a division of the ‘195,  
26 United States Patent No. 6,330,334, titled “Method and System for Information Dissemination  
27 Using Television Signals” and issued on December 11, 2001. Claim 30 of the ‘334 teaches:

28 A receiver comprising:

a television tuner;

a controller coupled to the television tuner and which provides audio from a  
signal received at the television tuner, wherein the audio is carried in an SAP

- 1 associated with television signals received at the tuner;
- 2 a memory coupled to the controller and which stores the audio;
- 3 a user interface coupled to the controller and which provides a menu; and
- 4 an audio output device coupled to the controller and which outputs the stored
- 5 audio in response to a selection from the menu, wherein the stored audio has a
- 6 designation associated with the menu.

7 Claims 31 and 34 respectively teach the receiver of claim 30 "wherein the audio is digitalized"

8 and "wherein the menu is included in a set of hierarchical menus." Claim 40 teaches:

9 A receiver comprising:

- 10 a television tuner;
- 11 a controller coupled to the television tuner and which provides audio from a
- 12 signal received at the television tuner;
- 13 a memory coupled to the controller and which stores the audio, wherein the
- 14 audio is stored as a database;
- 15 a user interface coupled to the controller and which provides a menu; and
- 16 an audio output device coupled to the controller and which outputs the stored
- 17 audio in response to a selection from the menu, wherein the stored audio has a
- 18 designation associated with the menu.

19 Claim 43 teaches "[t]he receiver of claim 40, wherein the menu is included in a set of

20 hierarchical menus." Claim 44 teaches:

21 A receiver comprising:

- 22 a television tuner;
- 23 a controller coupled to the television tuner and which provides audio from a
- 24 signal received at the television tuner, wherein the audio is carried in an audio or
- 25 video portion of television signals received at the tuner;
- 26 a memory coupled to the controller and which stores the audio;
- 27 a user interface coupled to the controller and which provides a menu; and
- 28 an audio output device coupled to the controller and which outputs the stored
- audio in response to a selection from the menu, wherein the stored audio has a
- designation associated with the menu.

And, claims 45, 47, and 48 respectively teach the receiver of claim 44, "wherein the audio is

digitized," "wherein the audio is stored as a database," and "wherein the menu is included in a

set of hierarchical menus."

1 Ryan did not list *Tydeman* as a reference in any information disclosure statement filed  
2 with the PTO during the prosecution of the '626, the '195, or the '334 and the patent examiner  
3 did not identify or consider *Tydeman* as prior art to those applications.

4 *B. Sony's Products and the Instant Litigation*

5 Sony makes and sells personal video recorders that store programming from television  
6 transmissions on internal memory for subsequent playback: the SVR-2000 Digital Network  
7 Recorder (SVR-2000), the SVR-3000 Digital Network Recorder with TiVo Service (SVR-3000),  
8 the SAT-T60 DirecTV Receiver with TiVo Service (SAT-T60), and the VAIO-brand personal  
9 computers with the GigaPocket software package (VAIOs). On November 29, 2000, Command  
10 Audio sent Sony copies of the '626, the '195, two other patents, and those patents' file histories,  
11 opining that Sony should be "very interested" in a license. Sony responded that it would conduct  
12 an investigation and requested a claim chart from Command Audio. Command Audio, in turn,  
13 asked Sony for an exemplar of the SAT-T60. Sony then advised Command Audio that a third  
14 party, TiVo Inc. (TiVo), is the entity most knowledgeable about the accused products and that  
15 TiVo is responsible for infringement related to those products. On December 13, 2001,  
16 Command Audio noticed Sony that the PTO issued the '334.

17 On February 1, 2002, Command Audio commenced this action against Sony. Sony,  
18 thereafter, received opinions of counsel that the '195 and the '334 are invalid. Around that time,  
19 Command Audio narrowed its allegations, focusing this litigation on claims 1, 3, 5, 9, 14, 16,  
20 17, and 30 of the '195 and claims 30, 31, 34, 40, 43, 44, 45, 47, and 48 of the '334. On  
21 December 2, 2003, Command Audio and Sony moved for summary judgment.

22 **II. LEGAL STANDARD**

23 The Court must render summary judgment "forthwith if the pleadings, depositions,  
24 answers to interrogatories, and admissions on file, together with the affidavits, if any, show that  
25 there is no genuine issue as to any material fact and that the moving party is entitled to a  
26 judgment as a matter of law." Fed. R. Civ. P. 56(c). A fact is material if it is relevant to an  
27 element of a claim or defense and the existence or the nonexistence of that fact might affect the  
28 outcome of the suit, as determined by the underlying substantive law. *Anderson v. Liberty*

1 *Lobby, Inc.*, 477 U.S. 242, 248 (1986). In this determination, the Court applies Federal Circuit  
2 law to patent issues and Ninth Circuit law to all other matters. *Midwest Indus., Inc. v. Karavan*  
3 *Trailers, Inc.*, 175 F.3d 1356, 1359 (Fed. Cir. 1999).

4 When both parties move for summary judgment, the Court evaluates the requests on their  
5 own, independently applying the summary judgment analysis to each motion. *Wenger Mfg., Inc.*  
6 *v. Coating Mach. Sys., Inc.*, 239 F.3d 1225, 1231 (Fed. Cir. 2001). In that framework, the  
7 moving party bears the initial burden of establishing that there is no genuine issue of material  
8 fact. *Celotex Corp. v. Catrett*, 477 U.S. 317, 323 (1986). Once the moving party has properly  
9 supported its motion for summary judgment, the burden shifts to the nonmoving party. The  
10 nonmoving party may not rest upon the mere allegations or denials of its pleading, but instead  
11 “must set forth specific facts showing that there is a genuine issue for trial.” Fed. R. Civ. P.  
12 56(e). The nonmoving party “must do more than simply show that there is some metaphysical  
13 doubt as to the material facts.” *Matsushita Elec. Indus. Co., Ltd. v. Zenith Radio Corp.*, 475 U.S.  
14 574, 586 (1987). “[T]here is no issue for trial unless there is sufficient evidence favoring the  
15 nonmoving party for a jury to return a verdict for that party. If the evidence is merely colorable  
16 or is not significantly probative summary judgment may be granted.” *Anderson*, 477 U.S. at 249  
17 (citations omitted). The Court’s ultimate inquiry is whether the specific facts set forth by the  
18 nonmoving party, coupled with the undisputed facts, are such that a reasonable jury might return  
19 a verdict in its favor. *Caterpillar Inc. v. Deere & Co.*, 224 F.3d 1374, 1379 (Fed. Cir. 2000);  
20 *T.W. Elec. Serv., Inc. v. Pacific Elec. Contractors Ass’n*, 809 F.2d 626, 631 (9th Cir. 1987).

21 The Court does not make findings of fact at summary judgment. *Anderson*, 477 U.S. at  
22 250. “The inquiry performed is the threshold inquiry of determining whether there is the need  
23 for a trial. . . .” *Id.* The Court, consequently, draws all inferences in the light most favorable to  
24 the nonmoving party and presumes that the nonmoving party’s evidence is true. *Caterpillar*, 224  
25 F.3d at 1379; *Eisenberg v. Insurance Co. of N. Am.*, 815 F.2d 1285, 1289 (9th Cir. 1987).

### 26 III. ANALYSIS

#### 27 A. *Infringement*

28 Command Audio is entitled to summary judgment that the SVR-2000 and the SVR-3000

1 infringe claims 30 and 44 of the '334, that the SAT-T60 infringes claims 44 and 45 of the '334;  
2 and that the VAIOS infringe claims 30, 34, 44, and 48 of the '334; it, however, is not entitled to  
3 summary judgment that the SVR-2000 and the SVR-3000 infringe claim 34 of the '334 or that  
4 the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, and the SAT-T60 infringe claim 48 of the '334. Patent  
5 infringement, generally, is the making, the using, the offering to sell, or the selling of any  
6 patented invention within the United States and without authority. 35 U.S.C. § 271(a). Literal  
7 infringement analysis requires the Court to construe the scope and meaning of the claims-at-issue  
8 and, on summary judgment, to compare the construed claims to the accused device, asking  
9 whether that device contains every claim limitation. *Wenger*, 239 F.3d at 1231.

10 1. *Claim Construction*

11 The parties contest the scope and meaning of the term "set of hierarchical menus," as used  
12 in claims 34 and 48 of the '334. To construe a term, the Court considers the claim language, the  
13 specification, and the prosecution history. *Markman v. Westview Instruments, Inc.*, 52 F.3d 967,  
14 979 (Fed. Cir. 1995) (*en banc*). The analytical focus begins and remains centered on the claim  
15 language with a "heavy presumption" in favor of the construction understood by persons skilled  
16 in the relevant art. *Texas Digital Sys., Inc. v. Telegenix, Inc.*, 308 F.3d 1193, 1201-02 (Fed. Cir.  
17 2002). The Court then reviews the specification and the prosecution history to determine  
18 whether either rebuts this presumption. *Id.* at 1204; *Vitronics Corp. v. Conceptronic, Inc.*, 90  
19 F.3d 1576, 1582 (Fed. Cir. 1996); *see also Markman*, 52 F.3d at 979-80 (holding that the  
20 specification and prosecution history cannot enlarge, diminish, or vary claim limitations).

21 Command Audio argues that a menu structure is "hierarchical" as long as it has  
22 submenus, citing *The Microsoft Press Computer Dictionary* (2d ed. 1994) ("A database in which  
23 records are grouped in such a way that their relationships form a branching, treelike structure"),  
24 *The American Heritage College Dictionary* (3d ed. 1997) ("A series in which each element is  
25 graded or ranked"), *The Random House Dictionary* (2d ed. 1987) ("any system of persons or  
26 things ranked above one another"), *Webster's Ninth New College Dictionary* (9th ed. 1986) ("a  
27 graded or ranked series"), and *Tydemar* ("A fundamental design characteristic of all first-  
28 generation teletext and videotex systems is the adherence to hierarchical menu searches, i.e.,

tree-structured databases.”). Sony, conversely, argues that “hierarchical” excludes structures wherein a component has more than one superordinate component, citing *The New IEEE Standard Dictionary of Electrical and Electronics Terms* (6th ed. 1996) (“A structure in which components are ranked into levels of subordination; each component has zero, one or more subordinates; and no component has more than one superordinate component.”). Sony also claims that the addition of the term “hierarchical” during the patent prosecution to avoid United States Patent No. 5,131,020, titled “Method of and System for Providing Continually Updated Traffic or Other Information to Telephonically and Other Communications-Linked Customers” and issued on July 14, 1992 (‘020), precludes Command Audio’s preferred construction.

The Court hereby adopts Sony’s definition as the ordinary meaning of the term “hierarchical.” The Court, preliminarily, finds the reference to the ‘020 ambiguous. Although the term “hierarchical” was added during prosecution to avoid prior art, the prosecution history does not clarify whether the patent examiner was rejecting (or even addressing) structures wherein one component has more than one superordinate. The definition from the *IEEE Dictionary*, nevertheless, controls because the patents-at-issue reside in the field of electrical engineering. See *Vanderlande Indus. Nederland BV v. International Trade Comm’n*, 366 F.3d 1311, 1321 (Fed. Cir. 2004) (“a general-usage dictionary cannot overcome credible art-specific evidence of the meaning or lack of meaning of a claim term.”). And, *Tydeman* cannot alter this ordinary meaning. See *Merck & Co., Inc. v. Teva Pharms USA, Inc.*, 347 F.3d 1367, 1372 (Fed. Cir. 2003) (“It is well established that evidence extrinsic to the patent documents cannot change the meaning of a term as used in the claim from the meaning with which it is used in the specification.”). The Court, thus, construes the term “a set of hierarchical menus” to mean a set of menus in which components are ranked into levels of subordination, each component has zero, one or more subordinates, and no component has more than one superordinate component.

## 2. Claim-Device Comparison

Command Audio moves for summary judgment that the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, and the VAIOS infringe claims 30, 34, 44, and 48 of the ‘334 and that the SAT-T60 infringes claims 44, 45, and 48 of the ‘334. In its responses to Command Audio’s requests for admissions, in its

1 papers regarding this motion, and in its answers to this Court's questions at oral argument, Sony  
2 admitted that the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, and the VAIOS infringe claim 30, that the VAIOS  
3 infringe claim 34, that the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, the SAT-T60, and the VAIOS infringe  
4 claim 44, that the SAT-T60 infringes claim 45, and that the VAIOS infringe claim 48.

5 The Court, however, finds that there are genuine issues of material fact whether the  
6 SVR-2000 and the SVR-3000 infringe claim 34 and whether the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, and  
7 the SAT-T60 infringe claim 48. Those claims require "a set of hierarchical menus." Command  
8 Audio does not contest that a user can directly access the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, and the  
9 SAT-T60's "now playing list menu" and "individual program menus" from numerous locations,  
10 meaning that they have more than one superordinate. These menu sets, thus, are not hierarchical,  
11 as construed by the Court. The parties, in fact, agreed at the hearing that summary judgment  
12 would be improper if this Court adopted the *IEEE Dictionary's* definition of the term  
13 "hierarchical." Perhaps, Command Audio will show the fact-finder at trial that these menus are  
14 hierarchical. At this point, though, there are genuine issues of material fact whether the  
15 SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, and the SAT-T60 use "a set of hierarchical menus." The Court  
16 grants Command Audio's motion that the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, and the VAIOS infringe  
17 claim 30, that the VAIOS infringe claim 34, that the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, the SAT-T60,  
18 and the VAIOS infringe claim 44, that the SAT-T60 infringes claim 45, and that the VAIOS  
19 infringe claim 48, but denies Command Audio's motion that the SVR-2000 and the SVR-3000  
20 infringe claim 34 or that the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, and the SAT-T60 infringe claim 48.

21 The Court additionally finds that there are genuine issues of material fact whether Sony's  
22 infringement was willful. A federal court may increase the damages awarded to the patentee (up  
23 to treble) for willful infringement. *See* 35 U.S.C. § 284. Infringement, however, is not willful  
24 if "the infringer, acting in good faith and upon due inquiry, had sound reason to believe that it  
25 had the right to act in the manner that was found to be infringing." *SRI Int'l., Inc. v. Advanced*  
26 *Tech. Labs., Inc.*, 127 F.3d 1462, 1464-65 (Fed. Cir. 1997). A willfulness determination  
27 specifically requires an examination of the totality of the circumstances, including: whether the  
28 infringer deliberately copied the ideas of another; when the infringer knew of the other's patent



1 protection; whether the infringer investigated the scope of the patent and formed a good-faith  
2 belief that it was invalid or that it was not infringed; if the infringer had knowledge of the patent  
3 rights, did he exercise due care to determine whether or not his conduct would result in an  
4 infringement; and, the infringer's behavior as a party to the litigation. *Bott v. Four Star Corp.*,  
5 807 F.2d 1567, 1572 (Fed. Cir. 1986), *overruled on other grounds by A.C. Aukerman Co. v. R.L.*  
6 *Chaides Const. Co.*, 960 F.2d 1020, 1038-1039 (Fed. Cir. 1992). "[W]illful action is  
7 quintessentially a question of fact, for it depends on findings of culpable intent and deliberate  
8 or negligent wrongdoing." *Biotec Biologische Naturverpackungen GmbH & Co. KG v. Biocorp,*  
9 *Inc.*, 249 F.3d 1341, 1356 (Fed. Cir. 2001) (quotation marks omitted).

10 Command Audio has not adduced evidence that Sony deliberately copied their ideas or  
11 that Sony has behaved in bad faith as a party to this litigation. Command Audio's willfulness  
12 allegations primarily are based on its notice (and subsequent communications) to Sony that the  
13 PTO issued the '626, the '195, and the '334. Command Audio fails to show any lack of care by  
14 Sony after that notice, beyond continuing to sell its products. On this record, the mere act of  
15 continuing to sell products is not, by itself, *per se* careless. And, upon close review and  
16 consideration, Sony's advice of counsel is not incompetent as a matter of law. *See Read Corp.*  
17 *v. Portec, Inc.*, 970 F.2d 816, 830 (Fed. Cir. 1992) ("That counsel's opinion turned out to be  
18 contrary to our judgment with respect to the [asserted] patent does not make his advice regarding  
19 that patent incompetent."); *Ortho Pharm.*, 959 F.2d at 944 (Fed. Cir. 1992) ("While an opinion  
20 of counsel letter is an important factor in determining the willfulness of infringement, its  
21 importance does not depend upon its legal correctness."). The fact-finder, nevertheless, certainly  
22 will be interested in Sony's delay obtaining that advice. *See Ortho Pharm. Corp. v. Smith*, 959  
23 F.2d 936, 944 (Fed. Cir. 1992). But, this delay -- in and of itself -- is insufficient to show  
24 willfulness as a matter of law. *See Biotec*, 249 F.3d at 1356. The fact-finder, further, likely will  
25 weigh TiVo's involvement and possible responsibility and the failure of Command Audio to  
26 notify Sony of the PTO's corrections to the '195. In sum, whether Sony's conduct, or lack  
27 thereof, was reasonable or whether a prudent person would have acted sooner or differently is  
28 a question for the fact-finder at trial. The Court, thus, denies Command Audio's motion for

1 summary judgment that Sony's infringement was willful.

2 *B. Anticipation*

3 The Court finds that there are genuine issues of material fact whether *Tydeman* anticipates  
4 the claims-at-issue. Although "[a] patent shall be presumed valid," 35 U.S.C. § 282, a patent  
5 claim is invalid if the alleged infringer demonstrates by clear and convincing evidence that prior  
6 art anticipated the patented invention. *Schumer v. Laboratory Computer Sys., Inc.*, 308 F.3d  
7 1304, 1315 (Fed. Cir. 2002). Anticipation means that "the invention was known or used by  
8 others in this country, or patented or described in a printed publication in this or a foreign  
9 country, before the invention thereof by the applicant for patent." 35 U.S.C. § 102(a). To  
10 anticipate, a reference "must disclose every element of the challenged claim and enable one  
11 skilled in the art to make the anticipating subject matter." *PPG Indus., Inc. v. Guardian Indus.*  
12 *Corp.*, 75 F.3d 1558, 1566 (Fed. Cir. 1996). "Moreover, a prior art reference may anticipate  
13 without disclosing a feature of the claimed invention if that missing characteristic is necessarily  
14 present, or inherent, in the single anticipating reference." *Schering Corp. v. Geneva Pharm.*, 339  
15 F.3d 1373, 1377 (Fed. Cir. 2003). Otherwise stated, "that which infringes, if later, would  
16 anticipate, if earlier." *Knapp v. Morss*, 150 U.S. 221, 228 (1893). A district court sometimes  
17 may grant summary judgment on anticipation, *Beckson Marine, Inc. v. NFM, Inc.*, 292 F.3d 718,  
18 723 (Fed. Cir. 2002), but the defense often raises complex fact issues that render summary  
19 judgment inappropriate. *Marion Merrell Dow, Inc. v. Geneva Pharms., Inc.*, 877 F. Supp. 531,  
20 534 (D. Colo. 1994); *see also Gillette Co. v. Warner-Lambert Co.*, 690 F. Supp. 115, 116 (D.  
21 Mass. 1988) (citation omitted) ("To begin with, summary judgment is usually inappropriate in  
22 patent infringement cases, which are usually dominated by factual issues. This is especially true  
23 when the issue of anticipation has been raised, since anticipation is a factual issue.").

24 The inventor of the '195 and the '334 acknowledged that "the tuner wasn't new. . . . The  
25 concept of memory wasn't new. The concept of a menu or database wasn't new. It's the  
26 specific combination of the elements to provide the specific function that I believe to be new and  
27 which is the basis of these patents. . . ." Sony presents evidence and expert declarations that  
28 some or all of the elements of the claims-at-issue can be found or are inherent in *Tydeman*: "This


1 discussion culminates in a description of what Tydeman labels an 'enhanced information  
2 retrieval terminal' (graphically depicted in Figure 9.3), which fully embodies the limitation of  
3 the asserted claims." Command Audio presents evidence and expert declarations to the opposite:  
4 "Nowhere in Tydeman is a device described which one skilled in the art would understand to  
5 include the specific combination of elements recited in the asserted claims. Tydeman provides  
6 only generalized lists of features that do not teach one skilled in the art to combine all the  
7 elements of any of the asserted patent claims." As demonstrated by this conflict, there are  
8 genuine issues of material fact whether *Tydeman* anticipates the asserted claims of the '195 and  
9 the '334. *Tydeman*, for example, arguably may teach (either directly or inherently) the claimed  
10 receivers, but summary judgment is improper on this record because the evidence is such that  
11 a reasonable jury could return a verdict for Command Audio that *Tydeman* does not anticipate  
12 the inventions disclosed by the '195 and the '334, particularly their specific use of hierarchical  
13 databases, SAP, hierarchical menus, digitization, and variable transmission speeds. The Court,  
14 thus, denies Sony's motion for summary judgment that *Tydeman* anticipates the claims-at-issue.

#### 15 IV. CONCLUSION

16 For the reasons set forth above, Command Audio's motion for partial summary judgment  
17 is GRANTED IN PART AND DENIED IN PART and Sony's motion for summary judgment  
18 is DENIED. The Court finds, as a matter of law, that the SVR-2000 and the SVR-3000 infringe  
19 claims 30 and 44 of the '334, that the SAT-T60 infringes claims 44 and 45 of the '334, and that  
20 the VAIOS infringe claims 30, 34, 44, and 48 of the '334.

21  
22 **IT IS SO ORDERED.**

23  
24  
25 Dated: 6/10/2004

26  
27  
28  
  
MARTIN J. JENKINS  
UNITED STATES DISTRICT JUDGE

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT  
FOR THE  
NORTHERN DISTRICT OF CALIFORNIA

Command Audio Corporation,  
Plaintiff,

v.

Sony Electronics, Inc.,  
Defendant.

---

Case Number: CV02-0599 MJJ

**CERTIFICATE OF SERVICE**

I, the undersigned, hereby certify that I am an employee in the Office of the Clerk, U.S. District Court, Northern District of California.

That on June 15, 2004, I SERVED a true and correct copy(ies) of the attached, by placing said copy(ies) in a postage paid envelope addressed to the person(s) hereinafter listed, by depositing said envelope in the U.S. Mail, or by placing said copy(ies) into an inter-office delivery receptacle located in the Clerk's office.

Matthew B. Lehr  
Latham and Watkins  
135 Commonwealth Drive  
Menlo Park, CA 94025

Stephen A. Martin  
Latham & Watkins LLP  
135 Commonwealth Drive  
Menlo Park, CA 94025-3656

Susan L. Baker Manning  
Bingham McCutchen LLP  
Three Embarcadero Center  
San Francisco, CA 94111-4067

Dated: June 15, 2004

Richard W. Wieking, Clerk

By: Monica Tutson, Deputy Clerk

FILED

JUN 15 2004

RICHARD W. WIEKING  
CLERK, U.S. DISTRICT COURT  
NORTHERN DISTRICT OF CALIFORNIA

IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT  
FOR THE NORTHERN DISTRICT OF CALIFORNIA

COMMAND AUDIO CORPORATION,

Plaintiff,

v.

SONY ELECTRONICS, INC.,

Defendant.

No. C 02-0599 MJJ

**ORDER GRANTING IN PART AND  
DENYING IN PART COMMAND  
AUDIO'S MOTION FOR PARTIAL  
SUMMARY JUDGMENT AND  
DENYING SONY'S MOTION FOR  
SUMMARY JUDGMENT**

Before the Court is a patent infringement action by Command Audio Corporation (Command Audio) against Sony Electronics, Inc. (Sony). Command Audio moves for partial summary judgment, pursuant to Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 56, that Sony willfully infringed the patents-at-issue. Sony moves for summary judgment that those patents are invalid for anticipation. Based on the submissions, arguments, and records herein, Command Audio's motion is GRANTED IN PART AND DENIED IN PART and Sony's motion is DENIED.

I. BACKGROUND

A. Tydeman and the Patents-At-Issue

In 1982, John Tydeman co-authored *Teletext and Videotex in the United States* (Tydeman), describing the current state and the future of teletext and videotex technology. Thirteen years later, on April 11, 1995, the Patent and Trademark Office (PTO) issued John O. Ryan (Ryan) United States Patent No. 5,406,626, titled "Radio Receiver for Information

1 Dissemination Using Subcarrier.” Although the ‘626 is not at issue here, Command Audio has  
2 asserted its continuation-in-part, United States Patent No. 5,590,195, titled “Information  
3 Dissemination Using Various Transmission Modes” and issued on December 31, 1996. After  
4 the PTO twice corrected the ‘195, claim 1 teaches:

5 A receiver to receive, store and playback data in a transmitted signal comprising:

6 a tuner for providing the data from the transmitted signal;

7 a memory coupled to the tuner for storing the provided data as a database;

8 a user interface for providing a set of menus describing the stored database,  
9 and for accepting selections from the set of menus;

10 a controller coupled to the memory and the interface for selecting for playback  
11 the stored data from the database in response to the accepted selections and  
12 providing the selected data in a digital form; and

13 a speech producing sub-system coupled to the memory for converting the  
14 selected data to an analog signal representing an original audio signal.

15 Claims 3, 5, 9, 14, 16, 17, and 30 respectively teach: “[t]he device of claim 1, wherein the tuner  
16 provides data from a television carrier”; “[t]he device of claim 3, wherein the tuner provides data  
17 from a Separate Audio Programming channel [(SAP)] of the television carrier”; “[t]he device  
18 of claim 1, wherein the received data is audio data that has been converted from analog form to  
19 digital form”; “[t]he device of claim 1, wherein the extracted data is in digital form, has been  
20 encrypted and compressed, and further comprising a decryptor for providing conditional access  
21 and decrypting the provided data”; “[t]he device of claim 14[,] wherein the decryptor is enabled  
22 by a key received by the tuner”; “[t]he device of claim 14, wherein the decryptor is enabled by  
23 a key device connected to the decryptor”; and “[t]he device of claim 1, wherein a speed of  
24 transmission of said data is variable.”

25 Command Audio also asserts a continuation of a continuation of a division of the ‘195,  
26 United States Patent No. 6,330,334, titled “Method and System for Information Dissemination  
27 Using Television Signals” and issued on December 11, 2001. Claim 30 of the ‘334 teaches:

28 A receiver comprising:

a television tuner;

a controller coupled to the television tuner and which provides audio from a  
signal received at the television tuner, wherein the audio is carried in an SAP

1 associated with television signals received at the tuner;

2 a memory coupled to the controller and which stores the audio;

3 a user interface coupled to the controller and which provides a menu; and

4 an audio output device coupled to the controller and which outputs the stored  
5 audio in response to a selection from the menu, wherein the stored audio has a  
6 designation associated with the menu.

7 Claims 31 and 34 respectively teach the receiver of claim 30 "wherein the audio is digitalized"  
8 and "wherein the menu is included in a set of hierarchical menus." Claim 40 teaches:

9 A receiver comprising:

10 a television tuner;

11 a controller coupled to the television tuner and which provides audio from a  
12 signal received at the television tuner;

13 a memory coupled to the controller and which stores the audio, wherein the  
14 audio is stored as a database;

15 a user interface coupled to the controller and which provides a menu; and

16 an audio output device coupled to the controller and which outputs the stored  
17 audio in response to a selection from the menu, wherein the stored audio has a  
18 designation associated with the menu.

19 Claim 43 teaches "[t]he receiver of claim 40, wherein the menu is included in a set of  
20 hierarchical menus." Claim 44 teaches:

21 A receiver comprising:

22 a television tuner;

23 a controller coupled to the television tuner and which provides audio from a  
24 signal received at the television tuner, wherein the audio is carried in an audio or  
25 video portion of television signals received at the tuner;

26 a memory coupled to the controller and which stores the audio;

27 a user interface coupled to the controller and which provides a menu; and

28 an audio output device coupled to the controller and which outputs the stored  
audio in response to a selection from the menu, wherein the stored audio has a  
designation associated with the menu.

And, claims 45, 47, and 48 respectively teach the receiver of claim 44, "wherein the audio is  
digitized," "wherein the audio is stored as a database," and "wherein the menu is included in a  
set of hierarchical menus."

1 Ryan did not list *Tydeman* as a reference in any information disclosure statement filed  
2 with the PTO during the prosecution of the '626, the '195, or the '334 and the patent examiner  
3 did not identify or consider *Tydeman* as prior art to those applications.

4 *B. Sony's Products and the Instant Litigation*

5 Sony makes and sells personal video recorders that store programming from television  
6 transmissions on internal memory for subsequent playback: the SVR-2000 Digital Network  
7 Recorder (SVR-2000), the SVR-3000 Digital Network Recorder with TiVo Service (SVR-3000),  
8 the SAT-T60 DirecTV Receiver with TiVo Service (SAT-T60), and the VAIO-brand personal  
9 computers with the GigaPocket software package (VAIOs). On November 29, 2000, Command  
10 Audio sent Sony copies of the '626, the '195, two other patents, and those patents' file histories,  
11 opining that Sony should be "very interested" in a license. Sony responded that it would conduct  
12 an investigation and requested a claim chart from Command Audio. Command Audio, in turn,  
13 asked Sony for an exemplar of the SAT-T60. Sony then advised Command Audio that a third  
14 party, TiVo Inc. (TiVo), is the entity most knowledgeable about the accused products and that  
15 TiVo is responsible for infringement related to those products. On December 13, 2001,  
16 Command Audio noticed Sony that the PTO issued the '334.

17 On February 1, 2002, Command Audio commenced this action against Sony. Sony,  
18 thereafter, received opinions of counsel that the '195 and the '334 are invalid. Around that time,  
19 Command Audio narrowed its allegations, focusing this litigation on claims 1, 3, 5, 9, 14, 16,  
20 17, and 30 of the '195 and claims 30, 31, 34, 40, 43, 44, 45, 47, and 48 of the '334. On  
21 December 2, 2003, Command Audio and Sony moved for summary judgment.

22 II. LEGAL STANDARD

23 The Court must render summary judgment "forthwith if the pleadings, depositions,  
24 answers to interrogatories, and admissions on file, together with the affidavits, if any, show that  
25 there is no genuine issue as to any material fact and that the moving party is entitled to a  
26 judgment as a matter of law." Fed. R. Civ. P. 56(c). A fact is material if it is relevant to an  
27 element of a claim or defense and the existence or the nonexistence of that fact might affect the  
28 outcome of the suit, as determined by the underlying substantive law. *Anderson v. Liberty*



1 *Lobby, Inc.*, 477 U.S. 242, 248 (1986). In this determination, the Court applies Federal Circuit  
2 law to patent issues and Ninth Circuit law to all other matters. *Midwest Indus., Inc. v. Karavan*  
3 *Trailers, Inc.*, 175 F.3d 1356, 1359 (Fed. Cir. 1999).

4 When both parties move for summary judgment, the Court evaluates the requests on their  
5 own, independently applying the summary judgment analysis to each motion. *Wenger Mfg., Inc.*  
6 *v. Coating Mach. Sys., Inc.*, 239 F.3d 1225, 1231 (Fed. Cir. 2001). In that framework, the  
7 moving party bears the initial burden of establishing that there is no genuine issue of material  
8 fact. *Celotex Corp. v. Catrett*, 477 U.S. 317, 323 (1986). Once the moving party has properly  
9 supported its motion for summary judgment, the burden shifts to the nonmoving party. The  
10 nonmoving party may not rest upon the mere allegations or denials of its pleading, but instead  
11 “must set forth specific facts showing that there is a genuine issue for trial.” Fed. R. Civ. P.  
12 56(e). The nonmoving party “must do more than simply show that there is some metaphysical  
13 doubt as to the material facts.” *Matsushita Elec. Indus. Co., Ltd. v. Zenith Radio Corp.*, 475 U.S.  
14 574, 586 (1987). “[T]here is no issue for trial unless there is sufficient evidence favoring the  
15 nonmoving party for a jury to return a verdict for that party. If the evidence is merely colorable  
16 or is not significantly probative summary judgment may be granted.” *Anderson*, 477 U.S. at 249  
17 (citations omitted). The Court’s ultimate inquiry is whether the specific facts set forth by the  
18 nonmoving party, coupled with the undisputed facts, are such that a reasonable jury might return  
19 a verdict in its favor. *Caterpillar Inc. v. Deere & Co.*, 224 F.3d 1374, 1379 (Fed. Cir. 2000);  
20 *T.W. Elec. Serv., Inc. v. Pacific Elec. Contractors Ass’n*, 809 F.2d 626, 631 (9th Cir. 1987).

21 The Court does not make findings of fact at summary judgment. *Anderson*, 477 U.S. at  
22 250. “The inquiry performed is the threshold inquiry of determining whether there is the need  
23 for a trial. . . .” *Id.* The Court, consequently, draws all inferences in the light most favorable to  
24 the nonmoving party and presumes that the nonmoving party’s evidence is true. *Caterpillar*, 224  
25 F.3d at 1379; *Eisenberg v. Insurance Co. of N. Am.*, 815 F.2d 1285, 1289 (9th Cir. 1987).

### 26 III. ANALYSIS

#### 27 A. *Infringement*

28 Command Audio is entitled to summary judgment that the SVR-2000 and the SVR-3000

1 infringe claims 30 and 44 of the '334, that the SAT-T60 infringes claims 44 and 45 of the '334,  
2 and that the VAIOS infringe claims 30, 34, 44, and 48 of the '334; it, however, is not entitled to  
3 summary judgment that the SVR-2000 and the SVR-3000 infringe claim 34 of the '334 or that  
4 the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, and the SAT-T60 infringe claim 48 of the '334. Patent  
5 infringement, generally, is the making, the using, the offering to sell, or the selling of any  
6 patented invention within the United States and without authority. 35 U.S.C. § 271(a). Literal  
7 infringement analysis requires the Court to construe the scope and meaning of the claims-at-issue  
8 and, on summary judgment, to compare the construed claims to the accused device, asking  
9 whether that device contains every claim limitation. *Wenger*, 239 F.3d at 1231.

10 1. *Claim Construction*

11 The parties contest the scope and meaning of the term "set of hierarchical menus," as used  
12 in claims 34 and 48 of the '334. To construe a term, the Court considers the claim language, the  
13 specification, and the prosecution history. *Markman v. Westview Instruments, Inc.*, 52 F.3d 967,  
14 979 (Fed. Cir. 1995) (*en banc*). The analytical focus begins and remains centered on the claim  
15 language with a "heavy presumption" in favor of the construction understood by persons skilled  
16 in the relevant art. *Texas Digital Sys., Inc. v. Telegenix, Inc.*, 308 F.3d 1193, 1201-02 (Fed. Cir.  
17 2002). The Court then reviews the specification and the prosecution history to determine  
18 whether either rebuts this presumption. *Id.* at 1204; *Vitronics Corp. v. Conceptronic, Inc.*, 90  
19 F.3d 1576, 1582 (Fed. Cir. 1996); *see also Markman*, 52 F.3d at 979-80 (holding that the  
20 specification and prosecution history cannot enlarge, diminish, or vary claim limitations).

21 Command Audio argues that a menu structure is "hierarchical" as long as it has  
22 submenus, citing *The Microsoft Press Computer Dictionary* (2d ed. 1994) ("A database in which  
23 records are grouped in such a way that their relationships form a branching, treelike structure"),  
24 *The American Heritage College Dictionary* (3d ed. 1997) ("A series in which each element is  
25 graded or ranked"), *The Random House Dictionary* (2d ed. 1987) ("any system of persons or  
26 things ranked above one another"), *Webster's Ninth New College Dictionary* (9th ed. 1986) ("a  
27 graded or ranked series"), and *Tydemar* ("A fundamental design characteristic of all first-  
28 generation teletext and videotex systems is the adherence to hierarchical menu searches, i.e.,

1 tree-structured databases.”). Sony, conversely, argues that “hierarchical” excludes structures  
2 wherein a component has more than one superordinate component, citing *The New IEEE*  
3 *Standard Dictionary of Electrical and Electronics Terms* (6th ed. 1996) (“A structure in which  
4 components are ranked into levels of subordination; each component has zero, one or more  
5 subordinates; and no component has more than one superordinate component.”). Sony also  
6 claims that the addition of the term “hierarchical” during the patent prosecution to avoid United  
7 States Patent No. 5,131,020, titled “Method of and System for Providing Continually Updated  
8 Traffic or Other Information to Telephonically and Other Communications-Linked Customers”  
9 and issued on July 14, 1992 (‘020), precludes Command Audio’s preferred construction.

10 The Court hereby adopts Sony’s definition as the ordinary meaning of the term  
11 “hierarchical.” The Court, preliminarily, finds the reference to the ‘020 ambiguous. Although  
12 the term “hierarchical” was added during prosecution to avoid prior art, the prosecution history  
13 does not clarify whether the patent examiner was rejecting (or even addressing) structures  
14 wherein one component has more than one superordinate. The definition from the *IEEE*  
15 *Dictionary*, nevertheless, controls because the patents-at-issue reside in the field of electrical  
16 engineering. See *Vanderlande Indus. Nederland BV v. International Trade Comm’n*, 366 F.3d  
17 1311, 1321 (Fed. Cir. 2004) (“a general-usage dictionary cannot overcome credible art-specific  
18 evidence of the meaning or lack of meaning of a claim term.”). And, *Tydeman* cannot alter this  
19 ordinary meaning. See *Merck & Co., Inc. v. Teva Pharms USA, Inc.*, 347 F.3d 1367, 1372 (Fed.  
20 Cir. 2003) (“It is well established that evidence extrinsic to the patent documents cannot change  
21 the meaning of a term as used in the claim from the meaning with which it is used in the  
22 specification.”). The Court, thus, construes the term “a set of hierarchical menus” to mean a set  
23 of menus in which components are ranked into levels of subordination, each component has  
24 zero, one or more subordinates, and no component has more than one superordinate component.

## 25 2. Claim-Device Comparison

26 Command Audio moves for summary judgment that the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, and  
27 the VAIOs infringe claims 30, 34, 44, and 48 of the ‘334 and that the SAT-T60 infringes claims  
28 44, 45, and 48 of the ‘334. In its responses to Command Audio’s requests for admissions, in its

1 papers regarding this motion, and in its answers to this Court's questions at oral argument, Sony  
2 admitted that the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, and the VAIOS infringe claim 30, that the VAIOS  
3 infringe claim 34, that the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, the SAT-T60, and the VAIOS infringe  
4 claim 44, that the SAT-T60 infringes claim 45, and that the VAIOS infringe claim 48.

5 The Court, however, finds that there are genuine issues of material fact whether the  
6 SVR-2000 and the SVR-3000 infringe claim 34 and whether the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, and  
7 the SAT-T60 infringe claim 48. Those claims require "a set of hierarchical menus." Command  
8 Audio does not contest that a user can directly access the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, and the  
9 SAT-T60's "now playing list menu" and "individual program menus" from numerous locations,  
10 meaning that they have more than one superordinate. These menu sets, thus, are not hierarchical,  
11 as construed by the Court. The parties, in fact, agreed at the hearing that summary judgment  
12 would be improper if this Court adopted the *IEEE Dictionary's* definition of the term  
13 "hierarchical." Perhaps, Command Audio will show the fact-finder at trial that these menus are  
14 hierarchical. At this point, though, there are genuine issues of material fact whether the  
15 SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, and the SAT-T60 use "a set of hierarchical menus." The Court  
16 grants Command Audio's motion that the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, and the VAIOS infringe  
17 claim 30, that the VAIOS infringe claim 34, that the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, the SAT-T60,  
18 and the VAIOS infringe claim 44, that the SAT-T60 infringes claim 45, and that the VAIOS  
19 infringe claim 48, but denies Command Audio's motion that the SVR-2000 and the SVR-3000  
20 infringe claim 34 or that the SVR-2000, the SVR-3000, and the SAT-T60 infringe claim 48.

21 The Court additionally finds that there are genuine issues of material fact whether Sony's  
22 infringement was willful. A federal court may increase the damages awarded to the patentee (up  
23 to treble) for willful infringement. *See* 35 U.S.C. § 284. Infringement, however, is not willful  
24 if "the infringer, acting in good faith and upon due inquiry, had sound reason to believe that it  
25 had the right to act in the manner that was found to be infringing." *SRI Int'l, Inc. v. Advanced*  
26 *Tech. Labs., Inc.*, 127 F.3d 1462, 1464-65 (Fed. Cir. 1997). A willfulness determination  
27 specifically requires an examination of the totality of the circumstances, including: whether the  
28 infringer deliberately copied the ideas of another; when the infringer knew of the other's patent

1 protection; whether the infringer investigated the scope of the patent and formed a good-faith  
2 belief that it was invalid or that it was not infringed; if the infringer had knowledge of the patent  
3 rights, did he exercise due care to determine whether or not his conduct would result in an  
4 infringement; and, the infringer's behavior as a party to the litigation. *Bott v. Four Star Corp.*,  
5 807 F.2d 1567, 1572 (Fed. Cir. 1986), *overruled on other grounds by A.C. Aukerman Co. v. R.L.*  
6 *Chaides Const. Co.*, 960 F.2d 1020, 1038-1039 (Fed. Cir. 1992). "[W]illful action is  
7 quintessentially a question of fact, for it depends on findings of culpable intent and deliberate  
8 or negligent wrongdoing." *Biotec Biologische Naturverpackungen GmbH & Co. KG v. Biocorp,*  
9 *Inc.*, 249 F.3d 1341, 1356 (Fed. Cir. 2001) (quotation marks omitted).

10 Command Audio has not adduced evidence that Sony deliberately copied their ideas or  
11 that Sony has behaved in bad faith as a party to this litigation. Command Audio's willfulness  
12 allegations primarily are based on its notice (and subsequent communications) to Sony that the  
13 PTO issued the '626, the '195, and the '334. Command Audio fails to show any lack of care by  
14 Sony after that notice, beyond continuing to sell its products. On this record, the mere act of  
15 continuing to sell products is not, by itself, *per se* careless. And, upon close review and  
16 consideration, Sony's advice of counsel is not incompetent as a matter of law. *See Read Corp.*  
17 *v. Portec, Inc.*, 970 F.2d 816, 830 (Fed. Cir. 1992) ("That counsel's opinion turned out to be  
18 contrary to our judgment with respect to the [asserted] patent does not make his advice regarding  
19 that patent incompetent."); *Ortho Pharm.*, 959 F.2d at 944 (Fed. Cir. 1992) ("While an opinion  
20 of counsel letter is an important factor in determining the willfulness of infringement, its  
21 importance does not depend upon its legal correctness."). The fact-finder, nevertheless, certainly  
22 will be interested in Sony's delay obtaining that advice. *See Ortho Pharm. Corp. v. Smith*, 959  
23 F.2d 936, 944 (Fed. Cir. 1992). But, this delay -- in and of itself -- is insufficient to show  
24 willfulness as a matter of law. *See Biotec*, 249 F.3d at 1356. The fact-finder, further, likely will  
25 weigh TiVo's involvement and possible responsibility and the failure of Command Audio to  
26 notify Sony of the PTO's corrections to the '195. In sum, whether Sony's conduct, or lack  
27 thereof, was reasonable or whether a prudent person would have acted sooner or differently is  
28 a question for the fact-finder at trial. The Court, thus, denies Command Audio's motion for

summary judgment that Sony's infringement was willful.

*B. Anticipation*

The Court finds that there are genuine issues of material fact whether *Tydeman* anticipates the claims-at-issue. Although "[a] patent shall be presumed valid," 35 U.S.C. § 282, a patent claim is invalid if the alleged infringer demonstrates by clear and convincing evidence that prior art anticipated the patented invention. *Schumer v. Laboratory Computer Sys., Inc.*, 308 F.3d 1304, 1315 (Fed. Cir. 2002). Anticipation means that "the invention was known or used by others in this country, or patented or described in a printed publication in this or a foreign country, before the invention thereof by the applicant for patent." 35 U.S.C. § 102(a). To anticipate, a reference "must disclose every element of the challenged claim and enable one skilled in the art to make the anticipating subject matter." *PPG Indus., Inc. v. Guardian Indus. Corp.*, 75 F.3d 1558, 1566 (Fed. Cir. 1996). "Moreover, a prior art reference may anticipate without disclosing a feature of the claimed invention if that missing characteristic is necessarily present, or inherent, in the single anticipating reference." *Schering Corp. v. Geneva Pharm.*, 339 F.3d 1373, 1377 (Fed. Cir. 2003). Otherwise stated, "that which infringes, if later, would anticipate, if earlier." *Knapp v. Morss*, 150 U.S. 221, 228 (1893). A district court sometimes may grant summary judgment on anticipation, *Beckson Marine, Inc. v. NFM, Inc.*, 292 F.3d 718, 723 (Fed. Cir. 2002), but the defense often raises complex fact issues that render summary judgment inappropriate. *Marion Merrell Dow, Inc. v. Geneva Pharms., Inc.*, 877 F. Supp. 531, 534 (D. Colo. 1994); *see also Gillette Co. v. Warner-Lambert Co.*, 690 F. Supp. 115, 116 (D. Mass. 1988) (citation omitted) ("To begin with, summary judgment is usually inappropriate in patent infringement cases, which are usually dominated by factual issues. This is especially true when the issue of anticipation has been raised, since anticipation is a factual issue.").

The inventor of the '195 and the '334 acknowledged that "the tuner wasn't new. . . . The concept of memory wasn't new. The concept of a menu or database wasn't new. It's the specific combination of the elements to provide the specific function that I believe to be new and which is the basis of these patents. . . ." Sony presents evidence and expert declarations that some or all of the elements of the claims-at-issue can be found or are inherent in *Tydeman*: "This

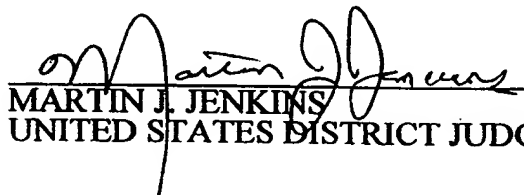
1 discussion culminates in a description of what Tydeman labels an 'enhanced information  
2 retrieval terminal' (graphically depicted in Figure 9.3), which fully embodies the limitation of  
3 the asserted claims." Command Audio presents evidence and expert declarations to the opposite:  
4 "Nowhere in Tydeman is a device described which one skilled in the art would understand to  
5 include the specific combination of elements recited in the asserted claims. Tydeman provides  
6 only generalized lists of features that do not teach one skilled in the art to combine all the  
7 elements of any of the asserted patent claims." As demonstrated by this conflict, there are  
8 genuine issues of material fact whether *Tydeman* anticipates the asserted claims of the '195 and  
9 the '334. *Tydeman*, for example, arguably may teach (either directly or inherently) the claimed  
10 receivers, but summary judgment is improper on this record because the evidence is such that  
11 a reasonable jury could return a verdict for Command Audio that *Tydeman* does not anticipate  
12 the inventions disclosed by the '195 and the '334, particularly their specific use of hierarchical  
13 databases, SAP, hierarchical menus, digitization, and variable transmission speeds. The Court,  
14 thus, denies Sony's motion for summary judgment that *Tydeman* anticipates the claims-at-issue.

#### 15 IV. CONCLUSION

16 For the reasons set forth above, Command Audio's motion for partial summary judgment  
17 is GRANTED IN PART AND DENIED IN PART and Sony's motion for summary judgment  
18 is DENIED. The Court finds, as a matter of law, that the SVR-2000 and the SVR-3000 infringe  
19 claims 30 and 44 of the '334, that the SAT-T60 infringes claims 44 and 45 of the '334, and that  
20 the VAIOS infringe claims 30, 34, 44, and 48 of the '334.

21  
22 **IT IS SO ORDERED.**

23  
24  
25 Dated: 6/10/2004

26  
27  
28  
  
MARTIN J. JENKINS  
UNITED STATES DISTRICT JUDGE

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT  
FOR THE  
NORTHERN DISTRICT OF CALIFORNIA

Command Audio Corporation,

Plaintiff,

v.

Sony Electronics, Inc.,

Defendant.

---

Case Number: CV02-0599 MJJ

**CERTIFICATE OF SERVICE**

I, the undersigned, hereby certify that I am an employee in the Office of the Clerk, U.S. District Court, Northern District of California.

That on June 15, 2004, I SERVED a true and correct copy(ies) of the attached, by placing said copy(ies) in a postage paid envelope addressed to the person(s) hereinafter listed, by depositing said envelope in the U.S. Mail, or by placing said copy(ies) into an inter-office delivery receptacle located in the Clerk's office.

Matthew B. Lehr  
Latham and Watkins  
135 Commonwealth Drive  
Menlo Park, CA 94025

Stephen A. Martin  
Latham & Watkins LLP  
135 Commonwealth Drive  
Menlo Park, CA 94025-3656

Susan L. Baker Manning  
Bingham McCutchen LLP  
Three Embarcadero Center  
San Francisco, CA 94111-4067

Dated: June 15, 2004

Richard W. Wicking, Clerk

By: Monica Tutson, Deputy Clerk



**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**

Washington, D. C. 20549

**FORM 10-K**

**Annual Report Pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934  
for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2004**

Commission file number 000-27141

**TIVO INC.**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

**Delaware**

(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

**77-0463167**

(IRS Employer Identification No.)

**2160 Gold Street, PO Box 2160, Alviso, CA**

(Address of principal executive offices)

**95002**

(Zip Code)

**(408) 519-9100**

(Registrant's telephone number including area code)

**Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:  
NONE**

**Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act:  
COMMON STOCK, \$.001 PAR VALUE PER SHARE**

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendments to this Form 10-K. ☒

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is an accelerated filer (as defined in Exchange Act Rule 12b-2). Yes ☒ No ☐

As of July 31, 2003, the aggregate market value of the voting stock held by non-affiliates of the registrant, based upon the closing sales price for the registrant's common stock, as reported in the Nasdaq National Market System, was \$481.6 million.

On April 1, 2004, the Registrant had 80,065,722 outstanding shares of common stock.

**DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE**

Parts of Registrant's Proxy Statement for the Annual Meeting of Stockholders to be held on August 4, 2004 are incorporated by reference into Part III of this Annual Report on Form 10-K (The Report of the Compensation Committee, the Report of the Audit Committee and the Comparative Stock Performance graph of the Registrant's Proxy Statement are expressly not incorporated by reference herein.)

**Extend and Protect Our Intellectual Property.** The value of the TiVo service is derived largely from the technology we have developed. Our intellectual property has allowed us to become a leading service provider in the category and is the fundamental reason that many of our customers and consumer electronics manufacturers choose us. We intend to continue to design, develop, and implement innovative technology solutions that leverage and enhance the TiVo service offering. We have adopted a proactive patent and trademark strategy designed to protect and extend our technology and intellectual property.

**Promote and Leverage the TiVo Brand.** We believe the strength of the TiVo brand is an advantage in attracting subscribers, consumer electronics manufacturers, advertisers, and other customers. In the past, we have dedicated substantial resources to promoting our brand through multiple advertising and marketing channels, participation in trade shows, sponsoring events, merchandising, and by leveraging strategic relationships. We believe the TiVo brand is strongly established within the DVR category.

**Invest in Subscription Growth.** For the fiscal year ending January 31, 2005, we plan to increase significantly our investment in subscription acquisition activities with a focus on growing TiVo Service subscriptions. We anticipate the majority of this investment will be in connection with the 2004 holiday shopping season. We believe this investment can create incremental revenue, profits, and cash flow and put us on a long-term growth trajectory towards creating sustainable profitability.

## **Our Technology**

The TiVo service relies on three key components: the TiVo client software platform, the TiVo service infrastructure, and the TiVo-enabled DVR hardware design. Each of these components serves a vital function in the TiVo service.

**TiVo Client Software.** The TiVo client software runs on TiVo-enabled DVRs. It consists of all operational software required for a TiVo-enabled DVR to deliver the TiVo service properly and reliably. TiVo client software is based on the open-source Linux operating system, but the bulk of the software is proprietary to TiVo. The software includes system components such as a media-oriented file system, a high-performance transactional database, an integrated security system, and application components such as media management, and user interface. We have enhanced the client software to support multiple services and applications, such as digital music and photos. The TiVo client software manages interaction with the TiVo service infrastructure. After the initial set-up of the TiVo service, the TiVo-enabled DVR will automatically connect to the TiVo service infrastructure over a dial-up or broadband connection to download the program guide data, client software upgrades, Showcases, and other content.

**TiVo Service Infrastructure.** The TiVo service infrastructure enables the ongoing operation of the TiVo service, managing the distribution of proprietary services and specialized content such as program guide data, Showcases, and TiVo client software upgrades. It interfaces with our billing and customer support systems for service authorization and bug tracking. In addition, the TiVo service infrastructure collects anonymous viewing behavior data uploaded from TiVo-enabled DVRs for use in our audience measurement efforts. We believe the TiVo service infrastructure technology is scalable, robust, and reliable. The infrastructure has also been designed to take advantage of the networks of service provider customers, for example, by utilizing DIRECTV's satellite bandwidth to deliver data to DIRECTV receivers with TiVo service. The TiVo service infrastructure is extensible to support future initiatives such as e-commerce and lead generation, and authorization and billing for premium services.

**DVR Hardware Design.** The TiVo-enabled DVR hardware design is a specification developed by us for set-top boxes containing a hard disk drive, a CPU and memory, MPEG-2 digital video chips, a modem, and other components. We license this technology to consumer electronics manufacturers for them to modify and use in the production of DVRs that enable the TiVo service. We also provide the design to the contract manufacturer that produces TiVo-branded DVRs. The DVR hardware design has been integrated into a variety of products including DVD players, DVD recorders, DIRECTV receivers, and TiVo service DVRs. The DVR hardware design includes a modular front-end that allows the basic platform to be used for digital and analog broadcast, digital and analog cable, and satellite applications. In addition, the design includes USB ports to allow connection to broadband networks and external devices to enable future services.

## **Significant Relationships**

**DIRECTV.** DIRECTV is the largest provider of satellite television in the U.S. We have had a longstanding relationship with DIRECTV in which DIRECTV assists us in marketing and delivering the TiVo service to its customer base. This relationship began in 1999 and was expanded in September of 2000 with the release of the first integrated DIRECTV DVR with TiVo. As of January 31, 2004, we had acquired approximately 676,000 subscriptions through this relationship. Currently, one of DIRECTV's officers is a member of our Board of Directors.

From 1999 thru October of 2002, we incurred upfront acquisition costs, recognized monthly recurring per subscriber revenues in a range from \$4.15 to \$9.95, and incurred recurring service costs for these subscribers. We agreed to pay DIRECTV a share of the revenues we collect from TiVo service subscriptions with standalone DVRs who subscribe to the DIRECTV service prior to June 30, 2003.

During 2002, we modified our agreements with the goal of giving DIRECTV the ability and economic incentive to drive volume growth. Under our new agreement, DIRECTV pays us a recurring monthly per-household fee for access to the technology needed to offer its customers the TiVo service. We incur limited recurring expenses and, on a marginal basis, limited or no acquisition costs for these subscriptions.

In January 2004, the average DIRECTV revenue per subscription, excluding advertising and audience research revenues, was approximately \$1.62. We expect the average monthly subscription revenue per DIRECTV subscription to decline in the future as the mix of DIRECTV subscriptions shifts to the rapidly growing number of additions of new DIRECTV subscriptions, which involve no acquisition costs, lower recurring expenses, and lower subscription fees.

Our current agreement with DIRECTV does not expire until February 2007. Afterwards, while DIRECTV will have the option to continue to service the existing DIRECTV receivers with TiVo without further payment to us, it will not be able to add new DIRECTV receivers with TiVo unless DIRECTV elects to either purchase a royalty-bearing technology license from us or renew or replace our current agreement.

We also recognize revenue from DIRECTV for engineering professional services work on integrated DIRECTV satellite receivers with TiVo service and the related service infrastructure. We are currently providing DIRECTV with engineering professional services related to a new integrated DIRECTV satellite receiver with TiVo service that supports high definition television service, as well as engineering professional services related to hardware and service cost improvements and feature enhancements for existing platforms and customers.

**Hardware Manufacturers.** Several companies, including Toshiba, Pioneer, Sony, Philips, Thomson Multimedia, and Hughes, have manufactured and distributed TiVo-enabled DVRs. Each manufacturer is responsible for the manufacturing and distribution of its branded DVRs. We are solely responsible for the activation of the TiVo service on a manufacturer's DVR if the purchaser of the DVR decides to purchase a subscription to the TiVo service. A TiVo-enabled DVR without a subscription to the TiVo service has minimal functionality and can be used to pause, rewind, and fast-forward through live or recorded shows.

We also engage a contract manufacturer to build TiVo-enabled DVRs. We distribute the TiVo-enabled DVRs, selling them both directly to consumers and to major retailers who offer these products to consumers. The table below shows the breakdown of DVRs compatible with the TiVo service that were manufactured during the fiscal years ended January 31, 2004, 2003, and 2002.

TiVo-enabled DVRs Manufactured by:	Fiscal Year Ended January 31,		
	2004	2003	2002
Consumer Electronics Manufacturers	61%	41%	100%
Contract Manufacturer for TiVo	31%	54%	0%
Licensing and Engineering			
Professional Services Customer	8%	5%	0%
<b>Total Manufactured TiVo-enabled DVRs</b>	<b>100%</b>	<b>100%</b>	<b>100%</b>

## Sales and Marketing

**The TiVo Service.** We market the TiVo service in two ways. First, we sell directly to consumers who have purchased a TiVo-enabled DVR. We sell the TiVo service either for a monthly subscription rate of \$12.95, or for a single payment of \$299 for the lifetime of the DVR. Second, we market our service through our relationship with DIRECTV. DIRECTV pays us a per-household monthly fee for the ability to offer our service to their customers. DIRECTV makes all pricing decisions regarding the service it sells to its own customer base.

---

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**  
Washington, D.C. 20549

---

**FORM 10-Q**

---

(Mark One)

☒ **QUARTERLY REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES  
EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the quarterly period ended October 31, 2005.

OR

☐ **TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES  
EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the transition period from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_

Commission file number 000-27141

---

**TIVO INC.**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

---

**Delaware**  
(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)

**77-0463167**  
(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification No.)

**2160 Gold Street, P.O. Box 2160, Alviso, CA 95002**  
(Address of principal executive offices including zip code)

**(408) 519-9100**  
(Registrant's telephone number, including area code)

---

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant: (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports) and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. YES ☒ NO ☐.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is an accelerated filer (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). YES ☒ NO ☐.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). YES ☐ NO ☒.

The number of shares outstanding of the registrant's common stock, \$0.001 par value, was 85,125,642 as of November 28, 2005.

---

On February 5, 2002, Sony Corporation notified TiVo that Command Audio Corporation had filed a complaint against Sony Electronics, Inc. on February 2, 2002 in the U.S. District Court for the Northern District of California. The complaint alleges that, in connection with its sale of digital video recorders and other products, Sony infringes upon two patents owned by Command Audio, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,590,195 ("Information Dissemination Using Various Transmission Modes") and 6,330,334 ("Method and System for Information Dissemination Using Television Signals"). The complaint seeks injunctive relief, compensatory and treble damages and Command Audio's costs and expenses, including reasonable attorneys' fees. Under the terms of the Company's agreement with Sony governing the distribution of certain digital video recorders that enable the TiVo service, TiVo is required to indemnify Sony against any and all claims, damages, liabilities, costs and expenses relating to claims that its technology infringes upon intellectual property rights owned by third parties. On June 15, 2004, the Court denied Sony's motion for summary judgment of invalidity and granted in part and denied in part Command Audio's motion for summary judgment of infringement. The court found that certain Sony products, including Sony's accused products that enable the TiVo service, literally infringed certain claims of the '334 patent but did not rule on the validity or enforceability of the patents. A trial limited to certain of Sony's allegations that the patents-in-suit are unenforceable was conducted in October 2004. On January 7, 2005, the Court issued a Findings of Fact and Conclusions of Law ruling that the patents-in-suit are not unenforceable based on the allegations presented in the October 2004 trial. On May 12, 2005, the Court granted Sony's motion for partial summary judgment regarding damages. The Court found that Command Audio may not recover any royalties or other damages for sales of allegedly infringing products by Sony that occurred prior to December 4, 2001, the date on which the United States Patent and Trademark Office issued a certificate of correction for the '195 patent. Trial of the remaining issues, including infringement of certain asserted patent claims, validity of all the asserted patent claims and Sony's remaining allegations regarding the enforceability of the patents, has been suspended by the Court, in light of discussions between Sony and Command Audio concerning a possible negotiated resolution of the matter. Under the terms of our agreement with Sony governing the distribution of certain DVRs that enable the TiVo service, we are required to indemnify Sony against any and all claims, damages, liabilities, costs, and expense relating to claims that our technology infringes upon intellectual property rights owned by third parties. The Company believes Sony has meritorious defenses against this lawsuit; however, due to its indemnification obligations, the Company is incurring expenses in connection with this litigation. Since February 2002, the Company has incurred \$5.8 million in legal expenses. The outcome of this matter and the extent of TiVo's potential exposure associated with it are not presently determinable. If Sony were to lose this lawsuit, the Company's business could be harmed.

On January 5, 2004, TiVo filed a complaint against EchoStar Communications Corporation in the U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of Texas alleging willful and deliberate infringement of U.S. Patent No. 6,233,389, entitled "Multimedia Time Warping System." On January 15, 2004, the Company amended its complaint to add EchoStar DBS Corporation, EchoStar Technologies Corporation, and Echosphere Limited Liability Corporation as additional defendants. The Company alleges that it is the owner of this patent, and further alleges that the defendants have willfully and deliberately infringed this patent by making, selling, offering to sell and/or selling digital video recording devices, digital video recording device software, and/or personal television services in the United States. On March 9, 2005, the Court denied motions to dismiss and transfer the Company's patent infringement case against EchoStar Communications Corporation and its affiliates. On August 18, 2005, the Court issued a claim construction order. Trial is currently scheduled to commence in March 2006, in Marshall, Texas. The Company seeks unspecified monetary damages as well as an injunction against the defendants' further infringement of the patent. The Company is incurring material expenses in this litigation.

On April 29, 2005, EchoStar Technologies Corporation filed a complaint against TiVo and Humax USA, Inc. in the U.S. District Court for the Eastern District of Texas alleging infringement of U.S. Patent Nos. 5,774,186 ("Interruption Tolerant Video Program Viewing"), 6,529,685 B2 ("Multimedia Direct Access Storage Device and Formatting Method"), 6,208,804 B1 ("Multimedia Direct Access Storage Device and Formatting Method") and 6,173,112 B1 ("Method and System for Recording In-Progress Broadcast Programs"). The complaint alleges that EchoStar Technologies Corporation is the owner by assignment of the patents allegedly infringed. The complaint further alleges that the TiVo and Humax have infringed, contributorily infringed and/or actively induced infringement of the patents by making, using, selling or importing digital video recording devices, digital video recording device software and/or personal television services in the United States that allegedly infringe the patents, and that such infringement is willful and ongoing. Under the terms of the Company's agreement with Humax governing the distribution of certain DVRs that enable the TiVo service, the Company is required to indemnify Humax against any claims, damages, liabilities, costs, and expenses relating to claims that the Company's technology infringes upon intellectual property rights owned by third parties. On May 10, 2005, Humax formally notified TiVo of the claims against it in this lawsuit as required by Humax's agreement with TiVo. On July 1, 2005, the defendants filed their answer and counterclaims. The Company intends to defend this action vigorously; however, it could be forced to incur material expenses in connection with this lawsuit and/or as a result of its indemnification obligations and, in the event there is an adverse outcome, the Company's business could be harmed.

## Explorer® 8300™ Series Digital Video Recorders Offer Standard, HD, and Multi-Room™ Capabilities

### Description

The **Explorer® 8300™ DVR** provides subscribers with the latest enhancements in cable television viewing.

The **Explorer 8300HD™ DVR** provides HD subscribers with the latest HD DVR features.

The **Explorer 8300 Multi-Room™ DVR** provides subscribers access to recorded programs in multiple rooms throughout the home on standard Explorer set-tops.



### 8300 DVR Family Features

The Explorer 8300 DVR is a standard definition, two-tuner digital video recorder (DVR) that provides the DVR services your subscribers want:

- Record one program while watching another
- Watch two programs at the same time, using the picture-in-picture (PIP) capability of the Explorer 8300 DVR
- Record programs without a VCR
- Supports expanded storage through an optional external Serial ATA (SATA) hard drive
- Easily access video/audio inputs and the USB port from the front panel, and access the Coaxial Digital Audio Output connector on the back panel

### 8300HD DVR Additional Features

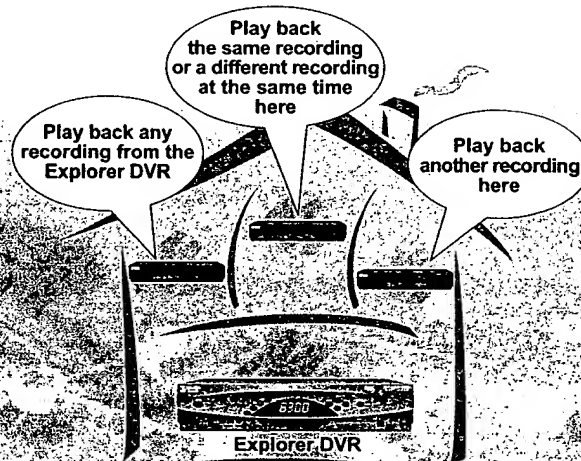
The Explorer 8300HD DVR provides the same features as the standard definition 8300 DVR and more:

- Connect to the set-top through the YPbPr, HDMI™, or optional 1394 connectors to an HDTV
- Stretch and zoom the video picture to maximize its viewable area on the HDTV display
- Select the resolution (scan rate) best suited for the HDTV (480i, 480p, 720p, or 1080i)
- Utilize the optical Digital Audio Output connector to easily connect to higher-end audio equipment

### 8300 Multi-Room DVR Additional Features

The Explorer 8300MR™ DVR delivers all the convenience and control of a two-tuner DVR—to as many as four televisions using existing wiring in the home and digital set-tops you may already have.

- Access the list of recorded shows stored on the Explorer 8300 MR DVR server and its optional SATA hard drive
- Playback, pause, rewind, and/or fast-forward any recording at any time on set-tops in other rooms



# Explorer 8300 Series Digital Video Recorders

## Offer Standard, HD, and Multi-Room Capabilities



### Specifications

#### 8300 and 8300MR-DVR Specifications

Base SD Model Features	Description
DVR with 80 GB Hard Drive  (Larger hard drives are available. Contact your North American marketing manager for more information.)	The 80 GB model allows up to 50 hours* of SD programs to be recorded and stored using DVR functions Gives subscribers complete control over watching, pausing, rewinding, replaying, and fast forwarding live programs using the remote control  <i>*The total program hours that can be stored depends upon the format and data rate of the programming source.</i>
DAVIC Reverse Path Data Transmitter	Allows IP-based, real-time, two-way communication between the Explorer 8300 Series DVR and the cable service provider's headend Supports interactive services such as xOD (anything-On-Demand), VOD (video-on-demand), and SVOD (subscription VOD)
Optional DOCSIS® 1.0 cable modem	The internal DOCSIS 1.0 cable modem implements the Baseline Privacy Interface and DOCSIS SNMP MIBs. The upstream transmitter can send QPSK and 16-QAM bursts to any headend CMTS that implements DOCSIS 1.0 or DOCSIS 1.1 specifications.
MPEG-2 MP@ML Standard Definition Digital Video Decompression	Allows decompression and presentation of audio and video Delivers up to 720 x 480i video resolution
Dual Analog and Digital Service Tuners (True Picture-In-Picture)	Allows both analog and MPEG-2 digital channels to be tuned and displayed Allows two programs to be displayed simultaneously using the PIP function
Dual Analog Encoders	Allows two analog SD programs to be recorded and displayed simultaneously
Dolby® Digital Audio and MPEG-1 Audio Support	Supports digital audio decoding of two-channel MPEG-1 Layers I & II and Dolby Digital with up to 5.1 channels of multi-channel surround sound. Also downmixes multi-channel Dolby Digital programs to surround-compatible left/right outputs.
PowerKEY® Conditional Access System	Provides digital security using an RSA encryption algorithm that mathematically matches pairs of keys Encrypts all recordings on an internal hard disk drive or on an optionally attached external SATA hard disk drive Allows upgrades using a network download
PowerTV® Operating System with HTML Client Engine	Offers a stable operating system and open Application Programming Interfaces (APIs) to support native applications and third-party middleware applications
Enhanced Graphics Engine	Displays up to 65,000 colors simultaneously Enables high-resolution 640 x 480 IPG graphics while simultaneously scaling MPEG-2 video
Powerful 32-bit RISC Processors	Features two 250-MHz (500 MIPs total) processors to perform tasks and launch applications quickly

# Explorer 8300 Series Digital Video Recorders

## Offer Standard, HD, and Multi-Room Capabilities



Base SD Model Features, continued	Description
Over 96 MB Total Memory	Flash: 512 KB Applications DRAM: 64 MB Media DRAM: 16 MB MPEG encoding: 16 MB of DRAM NVM: 8 KB
64 and 256 ITU J.83 Annex B QAM Support	Supports open standards for QAM delivery and demodulation
Both Internal Security Microprocessor and Smart Card Slot	Provides hardware-assisted conditional access options with capability to upgrade the security, if ever needed
Macrovision® Copy Protection Support (licensing fee required to activate)	Activation allows cable service providers to add another layer of copy protection software, called Macrovision, that restricts unauthorized subscribers from making analog copies of digital transmissions, such as VOD and SVOD
BTSC/SAP Decoder	Provides stereo sound on analog channels through the baseband left and right audio outputs
BTSC Encoder	Provides stereo sound on the RF coaxial output
Coaxial Digital Audio Output	Supports coaxial interconnection with surround sound receivers (includes the encoding of analog audio)
Baseband Audio/Video Outputs	Offers a baseband audio/video connection to a VCR or TV
RF Cable Out	Offers a composite audio/video connection to a VCR or TV
Front Composite Audio/Video Inputs (will require a software enhancement download when available)	Supports interconnection to home consumer devices, such as VCRs, camcorders, or digital cameras for video and audio pass-through to the TV
Provision for Name Branding	Allows you to brand the Explorer 8300 series DVR with your company name and logo
External SATA Connector	External Serial ATA (SATA) connector provides a high-bandwidth connection to an External SATA hard disk drive for expanded storage space for recorded programs
Optional Dual IEEE 1394 Digital Outputs with Digital Transmission Content Protection (DTCP) (will require a software enhancement download when available)	Optional dual IEEE 1394 outputs with DTCP will provide a 400-Mbps interconnection to digital display devices (HDTVs)
Universal Serial Bus (USB) Port (will require a software enhancement download when available)	Front panel USB port for easy-to-access connection with home consumer devices such as USB keyboards



# Explorer 8300 Series Digital Video Recorders

## Offer Standard, HD, and Multi-Room Capabilities



### 8300HD and 8300HD Multi-Room DVR Specifications

Additional HD Model Features	Description
DVR with a 80 GB or 160 GB Hard Drive (Larger hard drives are available. Contact your North American marketing manager for more information.)	The 160 GB model allows up to 90 hours* of SD programs or up to 20 hours* of HD programs to be recorded and stored using DVR functions. Gives subscribers complete control over watching, pausing, rewinding, replaying, and fast forwarding live programs using the remote control.  <i>*The total program hours that can be stored depends upon the format and data rate of the programming source.</i>
Analog Component HDTV Outputs	Provides YPbPr outputs for quick and easy connection to most HDTV sets
YPbPr and Audio Left/Right Cable Kit	Provides connection from the HD analog video and audio outputs to the HDTV set
Optical Digital Audio Output	Supports optical interconnection with surround sound receivers (includes the encoding of analog audio)
MPEG-2 MP@HL High Definition Digital Video Decompression	Allows decompression and presentation of audio and video Delivers the following video resolutions: 1920 x 1080i    720 x 480p 1280 x 720p    720 x 480i
HDMI 1.0 Digital Audio/Video Output with HDCP Copy Protection	The High Definition Multimedia Interface (HDMI) provides uncompressed digital video and audio quality in a simple, user-friendly connector. HDMI, combined with HDCP (High-Bandwidth Digital Content Protection) provides the optimal, secure connection to an HDTV set that supports the HDMI with HDCP interface. HDMI is backward compatible with the DVI 1.0 with HDCP video interfaces on earlier versions of HDTVs.
Over 112 MB Total Memory	Flash: 512 KB Applications DRAM: 64 MB Media DRAM: 32 MB MPEG encoding: 16 MB of DRAM NVM: 8 KB
Optional Application Memory	Applications DRAM: 128MB

### 8300 Series Dimensions

Dimensions (all 8300 models)	Description
Product Dimensions (WxDxH)	15.60 in. x 11.20 in. x 3.25 in. (39.7 cm x 28.5 cm x 8.3 cm)
Product Weight	8.3 lbs (3.8 kg)
Carton Dimensions (WxDxH)	18.00 in. x 14.00 in. x 6.12 in. (45.8 cm x 35.6 cm x 15.6 cm)
Weight Including Packaging	11.6 lbs (5.3 kg)

### 8300 Series Placement and Temperature Range

Placement	
Placement Requirement	Locate the 8300 with at least two inches of open space above and on each side to provide adequate cooling.
Temperature Range	
Room Temperature Range (Operating)	The 8300 should be installed in an environment where the air temperature surrounding the unit is between 40°F to 105°F (5C to 40C).

# Explorer 8300 Series Digital Video Recorders

## Offer Standard, HD, and Multi-Room Capabilities



### Ordering Information

Contact your Sales Representative for product availability in your area.

Part Number	Description	Availability
4003980	Explorer 8300 DVR with 80GB Hard Drive	Now
4007951	Explorer 8300 DVR with 80GB Hard Drive and Dual IEEE 1394 Ports	Now
4006190	Explorer 8300HD DVR with 160GB Hard Drive and HDMI	Discontinued*
4006781	Explorer 8300HD DVR with 160GB Hard Drive, HDMI, and Dual IEEE 1394 Ports	Now
4007317	Explorer 8300 Multi-Room DVR with 80GB Hard Drive	Now
4007950	Explorer 8300 Multi-Room DVR with 80GB Hard Drive and Dual IEEE 1394 Ports	Now
4003610	Explorer 8300HD Multi-Room DVR with 160GB Hard Drive and HDMI	Discontinued*
4006775	Explorer 8300HD Multi-Room DVR with 160GB Hard Drive, HDMI, and Dual IEEE 1394 Ports	Now
4008560	Explorer 8300 with 80GB Hard Drive and DOCSIS	Now
4008561	Explorer 8300HD with 160GB Hard Drive, HDMI, and DOCSIS	Discontinued*
4009287	Explorer 8300HD with 160GB Hard Drive, HDMI, DOCSIS, and Dual IEEE 1394 Ports	Now
4010581	Explorer 8300HD Multi-Room DVR with 160GB Hard Drive, HDMI, DOCSIS, and Dual IEEE-1394 Ports	Fourth Quarter, 2005
4011815	Explorer 8300HD DVR with 160GB Hard Drive, HDMI, DOCSIS, 128MB Application Memory, and Dual IEEE-1394 Ports	Fourth Quarter, 2005
4011816	Explorer 8300HD Multi-Room DVR with 160GB Hard Drive, HDMI, DOCSIS, 128MB Application Memory, and Dual IEEE-1394 Ports	Fourth Quarter, 2005

\*As required by US Code of Federal Regulations, Title 47, §76.640 ([www.gpoaccess.gov](http://www.gpoaccess.gov)), these models are not produced or available after June 30, 2005.

### Accessories

Part Number	Description
4006369	AllTouch® 8550 Universal Remote Control
1002048	HDMI to HDMI Cable
1002056	HDMI to DVI Cable (for use in connecting the HDMI port to older, DVI equipped HDTVs)
4004725	4-Port Splitter Isolation Module (SIM) for MR-DVR installations. For more information, refer to datasheet part number 7001717
4008261	Passive Isolation Module (IM) for MR-DVR installations. For more information, refer to datasheet part number 7007588
4011635	Inline Single Port Isolation Module for MR-DVR installations
749790	RGB adaptor and cables (for adapting Explorer HD set-tops to HDTV sets that are equipped with only RGB-type inputs) For more information refer to datasheet part number 752184.
4000633	Scientific-Atlanta Resident Application (SARA) DVR Software Installation CD (only order one CD for each headend)

### Software

Part Number	Description
4000633	Scientific-Atlanta Resident Application (SARA) DVR Software Installation CD (only order one CD for each headend)
752351	DVR Software License (line item on Explorer 8300 DVR Purchase Order)



AllTouch, Explorer, PowerKEY, PowerTV, Scientific-Atlanta, and the Scientific-Atlanta logo are registered trademarks of Scientific-Atlanta, Inc.

2000, 8300, 8300HD, 8300MR, and Multi-Room are trademarks of Scientific-Atlanta, Inc.

DOCSIS is a registered trademark of Cable Television Laboratories, Inc

Dolby is a registered trademark of Dolby Laboratories.

HDMI, the HDMI logo, and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.

Macrovision is a registered trademark of Macrovision Corp.

Specifications and product availability are subject to change without notice.

© 2005 Scientific-Atlanta, Inc. All rights reserved.

Scientific-Atlanta, Inc.

1-800-722-2009 or 770-236-6900

[www.scientificatlanta.com](http://www.scientificatlanta.com)

Part Number 7004920 Rev D

October 2005



### Description

The Explorer® 8000™ Home Entertainment Server with Digital Video Recording (DVR) and Picture-in-Picture (PIP) functionality gives consumers more control, convenience, and choice in their TV viewing experience while giving cable service providers the capability to increase revenue streams, profitability, and reduce subscriber churn.

### Consumer Features

- Control live TV — If the phone rings during your favorite live show, just press Pause on the AllTouch® 8400™ remote control. The show will stay paused for up to one hour. Press Play to resume the show whenever you are ready.
- Use Instant Replay whenever you want — If you missed the winning score, just press Instant Replay to see what you missed.
- Broaden your choices — Now you can record one program and change channels to watch another program at the same time. In fact, you can record two programs airing simultaneously. And while recording the two programs, you can select a third, pre-recorded program to watch at the same time.
- Pre-set the 8000 to record all episodes of a TV program for you — Simply select the program from the Interactive Program Guide (IPG) and select the Record All Episodes option.
- Create your own personalized video library of favorite TV shows — Store up to 50\* hours of programs and play them back at any time.
- Display two programs on the screen simultaneously — Using the PIP remote control button, view two live programs, or one live and one recorded program simultaneously, regardless of the make or brand of your TV.

### Cable Operator Benefits

- Build additional monthly revenue streams with new DVR, video-on-demand (VOD), and PIP services.
- Use VOD and DVR as complimentary services to offer more compelling content than satellite offerings.
- Reduce churn by providing more of the services that consumers really want.
- Derive greater profitability with the 8000 platform, which is scalable to support future applications development and continued growth.
- Reduce installation and service costs with the 8000's consumer-friendly, self-install, Plug and Play operation.

\*The total program hours storable depends upon the format of the programming source.

# Explorer 8000 Home Entertainment Server



## Hardware Specifications

Features	Benefits
DVR with 80-GB Hard Drive	Allows up to 50* hours of video programs to be recorded and stored using DVR functions Gives subscribers complete control over watching, pausing, rewinding, replaying, and fast forwarding live programs using the remote control and 80-GB hard drive
DAVIC Reverse Path Data Transmitter	Allows IP-based, real-time, two-way communication between the Explorer 8000 Home Entertainment Server and the headend Supports interactive services such as <i>anything</i> -on-demand (xOD), VOD, and subscription VOD (SVOD)
MPEG-2 MP@ML Standard Definition Digital Video Decompression	Allows decompression and presentation of audio and video Delivers 640 x 480 video resolution
Dual Analog and Digital Service Tuners (True Picture-In-Picture)	Allows both analog and MPEG-2 digital channels to be tuned and displayed Allows two programs to be displayed simultaneously using the picture-in-picture function
Dual MPEG Encoder	Allows up to two different analog programs to be digitally encoded onto the hard disk drive simultaneously
AC-3® Digital Audio and MPEG-1 Audio Support	Supports leading digital audio standards
Dual Analog Encoders	Allows two analog SD programs to be recorded and displayed simultaneously
Composite Audio/Video Outputs	Connects to video and the left and right audio inputs of a TV (standard definition)
PowerKEY® Conditional Access System	Provides digital security using an RSA encryption algorithm that mathematically matches pairs of keys Encrypts all recordings on an internal 80-GB hard disk drive
PowerTV® Operating System with HTML Client Engine	Offers a more stable operating system and open Application Programming Interfaces (APIs) to support native applications and third-party middleware applications Allows upgrades using a network download
Enhanced Graphics Engine	Displays up to 65,000 colors simultaneously Enables high-resolution 640 x 480 IPG graphics while simultaneously scaling MPEG-2 video
Powerful 32-bit RISC Processors	Features two 164 MHz (328 MIPS total) processors to perform tasks and applications quickly
Over 48 MB Total Memory	Flash: 8 MB Applications DRAM: 16 MB Media DRAM: 8 MB MPEG encoding: 16 MB of DRAM NVM: 8 KB
64 and 256 ITU J.83 Annex B QAM Support	Supports open standards for QAM delivery and demodulation
Both Internal Security Microprocessor and Smart Card Slot	Provide hardware-assisted conditional access options with capability to upgrade the security, if ever needed
Macrovision® Copy Protection Support (licensing fee required to activate)	Activation allows cable operators to add another layer of copy protection software, called Macrovision, that restricts unauthorized subscribers from making analog copies of digital transmissions, such as VOD and SVOD
BTSC/SAP Decoder	Provides stereo sound on analog channels through the baseband left and right audio outputs
S/PDIF Digital Audio Output	Supports interconnection with surround sound receivers
Provision for Name Branding	Allows you to brand the Explorer 8000 Home Entertainment Server with your company name and logo

\*The total program hours storable depends upon the format of the programming source.

# Explorer 8000 Home Entertainment Server



## Hardware Specifications – CONTINUED

Features	Benefits
Universal Serial Bus (USB) Ports (Optional back panel port will require optional software enhancement by downloading software when available)	Provides one standard, front panel USB port for easy-to-access connection with home consumer devices such as USB keyboards
	Provides one optional back panel USB port for connecting additional USB devices
Second Composite Audio/Video Outputs (will require software enhancement by downloading software when available)	Offers a second connection, labeled "OUT 2 (VCR)," for connection to a VCR
Composite Audio/Video Inputs (will require software enhancement by downloading software when available)	Supports interconnection to home consumer devices, such as VCRs, camcorders, or digital cameras for video pass-through to the TV
Optional Dual IEEE 1394 Digital Outputs with 5C Copy Protection (will require software enhancement by downloading software when available)	Provides optional dual IEEE 1394 outputs with 5C copy protection that provide a 400-Mbps interconnection each to home consumer devices such as digital televisions (see part number 736360 in <b>Ordering Information</b> )

## Ordering Information

Product	Part Number
Explorer 8000 Home Entertainment Server	736360
DVR Software License (line item on Explorer 8000 Purchase Order)	752351
Explorer 8000 Home Entertainment Server without IEEE 1394 Ports	4004570
AllTouch 8400 Remote Control	745684 Rev B
Scientific-Atlanta Resident Application (SARA) DVR Software Installation CD	4000633



Specifications and product availability are subject to change without notice.

Explorer, PowerKEY, AllTouch, Scientific-Atlanta, and the Scientific-Atlanta logo are registered trademarks of Scientific-Atlanta, Inc.

8000 and 8400 are trademarks of Scientific-Atlanta Inc.

PowerTV is a registered trademark of PowerTV, Inc.

AC-3 is a registered trademark of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corp.

Macrovision is a registered trademark of Macrovision Corp.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

© 2003 Scientific-Atlanta, Inc. All rights reserved.

Scientific-Atlanta, Inc.  
1-800-722-2009 or 770-236-6900  
www.scientificatlanta.com

Part Number 745538 Rev E  
August 2003

# Explorer® 8000HD™ Home Entertainment Server

## Description

Scientific-Atlanta's Explorer® 8000HD™ Home Entertainment Server will combine three compelling video services into one integrated set-top: high-definition (HD) programming, digital video recorder (DVR), and HD on-demand content. This combination will allow cable service providers to grow their subscriber base, increase customer satisfaction, and boost existing revenue streams. Consumers will get a rich home entertainment experience with eye-popping HD picture clarity; the movie theater experience of surround sound; personalized recording with DVR control and convenience; and access to HD on-demand content. Please see your Scientific-Atlanta sales representative regarding product availability.

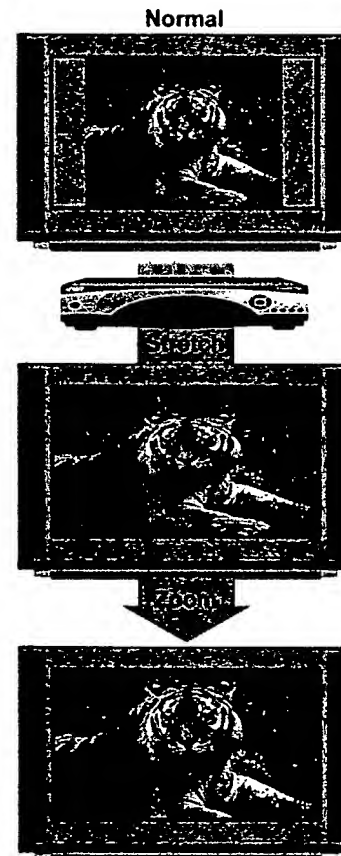


## Cable Service Provider Benefits

- Build additional monthly revenue streams with new HD-DVR, video-on-demand (VOD), and picture-in-picture (PIP) services.
- Use VOD and DVR as complimentary services to offer more compelling content than satellite offerings.
- Reduce churn by providing more of the services that consumers really want.
- Derive greater profitability with the Explorer platform, which is scalable to support future applications development and continued growth.
- Reduce installation and service costs with the Explorer 8000HD server's consumer-friendly, self-install, Plug and Play operation.

## Consumer Benefits

- Benefit from Dual-Tuner Functionality – You will be able to record one program while you are watching another program simultaneously. You will be able to record two programs at the same time that you play back a third.
- Control live TV – If the phone rings during your favorite live show, just press the Pause button on the AllTouch® 8400™ Remote Control. The show will stay paused for up to one hour. Press Play to resume the show whenever you are ready.
- Use Instant Replay whenever you want – If you missed the winning score, just press the Instant Replay button to see what you missed.



The Explorer 8000HD Entertainment Server will make it easy to maximize the screen image for non-HD channels. For a widescreen HDTV, set click "stretch" or "zoom" from the Quick Settings menu on the Explorer 8000HD server.



# Explorer 8000HD Home Entertainment Server



## Consumer Benefits, Continued

- Pre-set the Explorer 8000HD server to record all episodes of a TV program for you – Simply select the program in the Interactive Program Guide and select the “Record All Episodes” option.
- Create your own personalized video library of favorite TV shows – Play back your shows at any time.
- Display two programs on-screen simultaneously – Using the PIP remote control button, view two live programs, or one live and one recorded program simultaneously, regardless of the brand of your TV.

## Features

The 8000HD will offer the following features:

- Decodes all 18 ATSC digital video formats, including the 6 high-definition (HD) digital formats for HDTV.
- Outputs video to the HDTV display in four resolutions: 480i, 480P, 720P, or 1080i. These resolutions, or scan rates, allow consumers to select the scan rate best suited for their HDTV set.
- Decodes all standard-definition digital formats and all analog video services as well.
- Allows consumers to stretch and zoom the video picture to maximize its viewable area on the HDTV display.

To meet the demands of existing and future network configurations, the 8000HD will offer power, capacity, and compatibility. The Explorer 8000HD Home Entertainment Server will have a reverse-path DAVIC transmitter capable of 1.544 Mbps for two-way communications capability to support such applications as the Interactive Program Guide and VOD. The 40 MB of application and program memory, along with dual 166 MHz RISC microprocessors, will manage multiple program tasks and applications with speed and power.

## Specifications

Feature	Description
DVR with 80 GB or 160 GB Hard Drive	The 160 GB model will allow up to 20 hours* of HD programs or up to 90 hours* of SD programs to be recorded and stored using DVR functions (*The total program hours that can be stored depends upon the format and data rate of the programming source.)
	Will give subscribers complete control over watching, pausing, rewinding, replaying, and fast forwarding live HD programs using the remote control
Analog Component HDTV Outputs	Will provide YPbPr outputs for quick and easy connection to most HDTV sets
DAVIC Reverse Path Data Transmitter	Will allow IP-based, real-time, two-way communication between the Explorer 8000HD Home Entertainment Server and the cable service provider's headend
	Will support interactive services such as xOD (anything-On-Demand), VOD, and subscription VOD (SVOD)
MPEG-2 MP@ML Standard Definition Digital Video Decompression	Will allow decompression and presentation of audio and video
	Will deliver 640 x 480 video resolution
Dual Analog and Digital Service Tuners (True Picture-In-Picture)	Will allow both analog and MPEG-2 digital channels to be tuned and displayed
	Will allow two programs to be displayed simultaneously using the PIP function
Dual Analog Encoders	Will allow two analog SD programs to be recorded and displayed simultaneously
Dolby Digital® Audio and MPEG-1 Audio Support	Will support leading digital audio standards
PowerKEY® Conditional Access System	Will provide digital security using an RSA encryption algorithm that mathematically matches pairs of keys
	Will encrypt all recordings on an internal hard disk drive
	Will allow upgrades using a network download



# Explorer 8000HD Home Entertainment Server



## Specifications, Continued

Feature	Description
PowerTV® Operating System with HTML Client Engine	Will offer a stable operating system and open Application Programming Interfaces (APIs) to support native applications and third-party middleware applications
Enhanced Graphics Engine	Will display up to 65,000 colors simultaneously
	Will enable high-resolution 640 x 480 IPG graphics while simultaneously scaling MPEG-2 video
Powerful 32-bit RISC Processors	Will feature two 166-MHz (332 MIPs total) processors to perform tasks and launch applications quickly
Over 64 MB Total Memory	Flash: 8 MB Applications DRAM: 32 MB Media DRAM: 32 MB MPEG encoding: 16 MB of DRAM NVM: 8 KB
64 and 256 ITU J.83 Annex B QAM Support	Will support open standards for QAM delivery and demodulation
Both Internal Security Microprocessor and Smart Card Slot	Will provide hardware-assisted conditional access options with capability to upgrade the security, if ever needed
Macrovision® Copy Protection Support (licensing fee required to activate)	Activation will allow cable service providers to add another layer of copy protection software, called Macrovision, that restricts unauthorized subscribers from making analog copies of digital transmissions, such as VOD and SVOD
BTSC/SAP Decoder	Will provide stereo sound on analog channels through the baseband left and right audio outputs
S/PDIF Coaxial Digital Audio Output	Will support coaxial interconnection with surround sound receivers and encodes analog audio
S/PDIF Optical Digital Audio Output	Will support optical interconnection with surround sound receivers and encodes analog audio
YPbPr and Audio Left/Right Cable Kit	Will provide connection from the HD analog video and audio outputs to the HDTV set
Provision for Name Branding	Will allow you to brand the Explorer 8000HD Home Entertainment Server with your company name and logo
Composite Audio/Video Inputs (will require a software enhancement download when available)	Will support interconnection to home consumer devices, such as VCRs, camcorders, or digital cameras for video and audio pass-through to the TV
VCR Composite Audio/Video Outputs (will require a software enhancement download when available)	Will offer a composite audio/video connection to a VCR for archiving content from the hard disk drive
Optional DVI 1.0 Digital HDTV Output with HDCP Copy Protection (will require a software enhancement download when available)	Optional DVI 1.0 port with HDCP (High-Bandwidth Digital Content Protection) will support digital connection to an HDTV set supporting the DVI interface
	HDCP will provide a copy protection interface between the 8000HD and the HDTV set
Optional Dual IEEE 1394 Digital Outputs with 5C Copy Protection (will require a software enhancement download when available)	Optional dual IEEE 1394 outputs with 5C copy protection will provide a 400-Mbps interconnection each to home consumer devices such as digital televisions (see part number 749970 in <b>Ordering Information</b> )
Universal Serial Bus (USB) Ports (will require a software enhancement download when available)	One standard, front panel USB port for easy-to-access connection with home consumer devices such as USB keyboards
	One optional back panel USB port for connecting additional USB devices

## Subscriber Products



### Ordering Information

Contact your Sales Representative for product availability in your area.

Part Number	Description
4004564	Explorer 8000HD Home Entertainment Server with 160GB Hard Drive and DVI
749970	Explorer 8000HD Home Entertainment Server with 160GB Hard Drive, DVI, and Dual IEEE 1394 Ports
4005536	Explorer 8000HD Home Entertainment Server with 80GB Hard Drive and DVI
4005534	Explorer 8000HD Home Entertainment Server with 80GB Hard Drive, DVI, and Dual IEEE 1394 Ports
4004878	DVR Software License (line item on Explorer 8000HD Purchase Order)
745684	AllTouch 8400 Remote Control
4005400	Scientific-Atlanta Resident Application (SARA) DVR Software Installation CD ( <b>only order one CD for each headend</b> )



Specifications and product availability are subject to change without notice.  
AllTouch, Explorer, PowerKEY, Scientific Atlanta, and the Scientific Atlanta logo are registered trademarks of Scientific Atlanta, Inc.  
8000HD and 8400 are trademarks of Scientific Atlanta, Inc.  
PowerTV is a registered trademark of PowerTV, Inc.  
Dolby is a registered trademark of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corp.  
Macrovision is a registered trademark of Macrovision Corp.  
All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

© 2003 Scientific Atlanta, Inc. All rights reserved.

Scientific Atlanta, Inc.  
1-800-722-2009 or 770-236-6900  
[www.scientificatlanta.com](http://www.scientificatlanta.com)

Part Number 4004400 Rev C  
November 2003

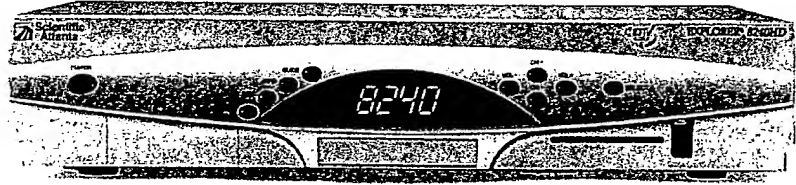
## Explorer® 8240™ Digital-Only DVR for Standard, HD, and Multi-Room™ Capabilities

### Description

The Explorer® 8240™ DVR provides subscribers with the latest enhancements in cable television viewing.

The Explorer 8240HD™ DVR provides HD subscribers with the latest HD DVR features.

The Explorer 8240HD™ Multi-Room™ DVR provides subscribers access to recorded programs in multiple rooms throughout the home on standard Explorer set-tops.



### 8240 DVR Series Features

The Explorer 8240 DVR is a standard definition, digital-only, two-tuner digital video recorder (DVR) that provides the DVR services your subscribers want:

- Record one program while watching another
- Watch two programs at the same time, using the picture-in-picture (PIP) capability of the Explorer 8240 DVR
- Record programs without a VCR
- Supports expanded storage through an optional external Serial ATA (eSATA) hard drive
- Coaxial Digital Audio Output supports connection to Home Theater Surround Sound

### 8240HD DVR Additional Features

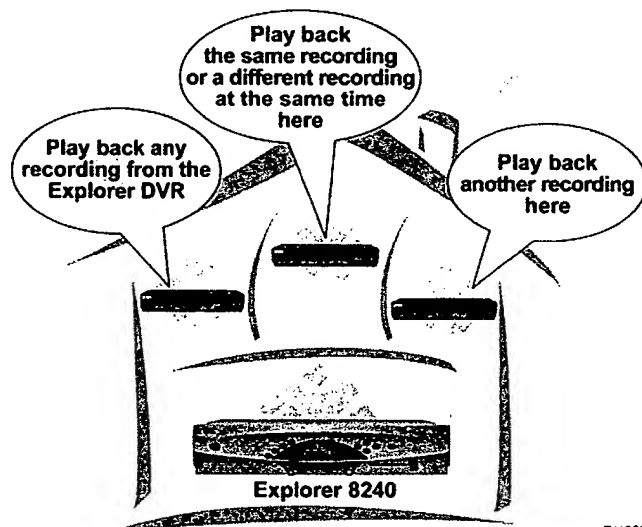
The Explorer 8240HD DVR provides the same features as the standard definition 8240 DVR and more:

- Connect to the set-top through the YPbPr, HDMI™, or 1394 connectors
- Stretch and zoom the video picture to maximize its viewable area on the HDTV display
- Select the resolution (scan rate) best suited for the HDTV (480i, 480p, 720p, or 1080i)
- Utilize the optical Digital Audio Output connector to easily connect to higher-end audio equipment

### 8240HD Multi-Room DVR Additional Features

The Explorer 8240HD Multi-Room DVR delivers all the convenience and control of a two-tuner DVR—to as many as four televisions using existing wiring in the home and digital set-tops you already have:

- Access the list of recorded shows stored on the Explorer 8240HD Multi-Room DVR server and its optional eSATA hard drive
- Playback, pause, rewind, and/or fast-forward any recording at any time on set-tops in other rooms



# Explorer® 8240™ Digital-Only DVR for Standard, HD, and Multi-Room™ Capabilities

## Specifications

### 8240 DVR Specifications

Base SD Model Features	Description
DVR with 80 GB Hard Drive  (Larger hard drives are available. Contact your North American marketing manager for more information.)	The 80 GB model allows up to 50 hours* of SD programs to be recorded and stored using DVR functions Gives subscribers complete control over watching, pausing, rewinding, replaying, and fast forwarding live programs using the remote control  <i>*The total program hours that can be stored depends upon the format and data rate of the programming source.</i>
DAVIC Reverse Path Data Transmitter	Allows IP-based, real-time, two-way communication between the Explorer 8240 Series DVR and the cable service provider's headend Supports interactive services such as xOD (anything-On-Demand), VOD (video-on-demand), and SVOD (subscription VOD)
MPEG-2 MP@ML Standard Definition Digital Video Decompression	Allows decompression and presentation of audio and video Delivers up to 720 x 480i video resolution
Dual Digital Service Tuners (True Picture-In-Picture)	Allows MPEG-2 digital channels to be tuned and displayed Allows two programs to be displayed simultaneously using the PIP function
Dolby® Digital Audio and MPEG-1 Audio Support	Supports digital audio decoding of two-channel MPEG-1 Layers I & II and Dolby Digital with up to 5.1 channels of multi-channel surround sound. Also downmix multi-channel Dolby Digital programs to surround-compatible left/right outputs.
PowerKEY® Conditional Access System	Provides digital security using an RSA encryption algorithm that mathematically matches pairs of keys Encrypts all recordings on an internal hard disk drive or on an optionally attached external SATA hard disk drive Allows upgrades using a network download
PowerTV® Operating System with HTML Client Engine	Offers a stable operating system and open Application Programming Interfaces (APIs) to support native applications and third-party middleware applications
Enhanced Graphics Engine	Displays up to 65,000 colors simultaneously Enables high-resolution 640 x 480 IPG graphics while simultaneously scaling MPEG-2 video
Powerful 32-bit RISC Processors	Features two 250-MHz (500 MIPs total) processors to perform tasks and launch applications quickly
Over 96 MB Total Memory	Flash: 512 KB Applications DRAM: 64 MB Media DRAM: 16 MB MPEG encoding: 16 MB of DRAM NVM: 8 KB
64 and 256 ITU J.83 Annex B QAM Support	Supports open standards for QAM delivery and demodulation
Both Internal Security Microprocessor and Smart Card Slot	Provides hardware-assisted conditional access options with capability to upgrade the security, if ever needed

# Explorer® 8240™ [ ] Digital-Only DVR for Standard, HD, and Multi-Room™ Capabilities

Base SD Model Features, continued	Description
Macrovision® Copy Protection Support (licensing fee required to activate)	Activation allows cable service providers to add another layer of copy protection software, called Macrovision, that restricts unauthorized subscribers from making analog copies of digital transmissions, such as VOD and SVOD
BTSC Encoder	Provides stereo sound on the RF coaxial output
Coaxial Digital Audio Output	Supports coaxial interconnection with surround sound receivers
Baseband Audio/Video Outputs	Offers a baseband audio/video connection to a VCR or TV
RF Cable Out	Offers a composite audio/video connection to a VCR or TV
Provision for Name Branding	Allows you to brand the Explorer 8240 series DVR with your company name and logo
External SATA Connector	External Serial ATA (eSATA) connector provides a high-bandwidth connection to an External SATA hard disk drive for expanded storage space for recorded programs
Universal Serial Bus (USB) Port (will require a software enhancement download when available)	Front panel USB port for easy-to-access connection with home consumer devices such as USB keyboards
Optional DOCSIS® 1.0 cable modem	The internal DOCSIS 1.0 cable modem implements the Baseline Privacy Interface and DOCSIS SNMP MIBs. The upstream transmitter is able to send QPSK and 16-QAM bursts to any headend CMTS that implements DOCSIS 1.0 or DOCSIS 1.1 specifications.

## 8240 Series Dimensions

Dimensions (all 8240 models)	Description
Product Dimensions (WxDxH)	15.60 in. x 11.20 in. x 3.25 in. (39.7 cm x 28.5 cm x 8.3 cm)
Product Weight	8.3 lbs (3.8 kg)
Carton Dimensions (WxDxH)	18.00 in. x 14.00 in. x 6.12 in. (45.8 cm x 35.6 cm x 15.6 cm)
Weight Including Packaging	11.6 lbs (5.3 kg)

## 8240 Series Temperature Range and Placement

Room Temperature (Operating)*	40°F to 105°F (5C to 40C)
-------------------------------	------------------------------

\*Locate the 8240 with at least two inches of open space above and on each side

# Explorer® 8240™ Digital-Only DVR for Standard, HD, and Multi-Room™ Capabilities

## 8240HD and 8240HD Multi-Room DVR Specifications

Additional HD Model Features	Description
DVR with a 160 GB Hard Drive  (Larger hard drives are available. Contact your North American marketing manager for more information.)	The 160 GB model allows up to 90 hours* of SD programs or up to 20 hours* of HD programs to be recorded and stored using DVR functions. Gives subscribers complete control over watching, pausing, rewinding, replaying, and fast forwarding live programs using the remote control.  <i>*The total program hours that can be stored depends upon the format and data rate of the programming source.</i>
Component HDTV Outputs	Provides YPbPr outputs for quick and easy connection to most HDTV sets
YPbPr and Audio Left/Right Cable Kit	Provides connection from the HD analog video and audio outputs to the HDTV set
Optical Digital Audio Output	Supports optical interconnection with surround sound receivers
MPEG-2 MP@HL High Definition Digital Video Decompression	Allows decompression and presentation of audio and video Delivers the following video resolutions: 1920 x 1080i    720 x 480p 1280 x 720p    720 x 480i
HDMI 1.0 Digital Audio/Video Output with HDCP Copy Protection	The High Definition Multimedia Interface (HDMI) provides uncompressed digital video and audio quality in a simple, user-friendly connector. HDMI, combined with HDCP (High-Bandwidth Digital Content Protection) provides the optimal, secure connection to an HDTV set that supports the HDMI with HDCP interface. HDMI is backward compatible with the DVI 1.0 with HDCP video interfaces on earlier versions of HDTVs.
Over 112 MB Total Memory	Flash: 512 KB Applications DRAM: 64 MB Media DRAM: 32 MB MPEG encoding: 16 MB of DRAM NVM: 8 KB
Dual IEEE 1394 Digital Outputs with Digital Transmission Content Protection (DTCP) (will require a software enhancement download when available)	Dual IEEE 1394 outputs with DTCP will provide a 400-Mbps interconnection to digital display devices (HDTVs)

# Explorer® 8240™ (Digital-Only DVR for Standard, HD, and Multi-Room™ Capabilities

## Ordering Information

Contact your Sales Representative for product availability in your area.

Part Number	Description
4010040	Explorer 8240 Digital-Only DVR with 80GB hard drive
4010036	Explorer 8240HD Digital-Only DVR with 160GB hard drive, HDMI, and Dual IEEE-1394 Ports
TBD	Explorer 8240HD Multi-Room Digital-Only DVR with 160GB hard drive, HDMI, and Dual IEEE-1394 Ports
752351	DVR Software License (line item on Explorer 8240 DVR Purchase Order)
4007961	Multi-Room DVR Software License (line item on 8240HD Multi-Room DVR Purchase Order)
4006369	AllTouch® 8550 Universal Remote Control
1002048	HDMI to HDMI Cable
1002056	HDMI to DVI Cable (for use in connecting the HDMI port to older, DVI equipped HDTVs)
4000633	Scientific-Atlanta Resident Application (SARA) DVR Software Installation CD (only order one CD for each headend)
4004725	4-Port Splitter Isolation Module (SIM) (required for MR-DVR installations). For more information refer to the <i>Passive Splitter Isolation Module</i> datasheet, part number 7001717.
749790	RGB adaptor and cables (for adapting Explorer HD set-tops to HDTV sets that are equipped with only RGB-type inputs) For more information refer to the <i>RGB Adaptor and Cables</i> datasheet, part number 752184.



AllTouch, Explorer, PowerKEY, PowerTV, Scientific-Atlanta, and the Scientific-Atlanta logo are registered trademarks of Scientific-Atlanta, Inc.

8240, 8240HD, and Multi-Room are trademarks of Scientific-Atlanta, Inc.

DOCSIS is a registered trademark of Cable Television Laboratories, Inc

Dolby is a registered trademark of Dolby Laboratories.

HDMI, the HDMI logo, and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.

Macrovision is a registered trademark of Macrovision Corp.

Specifications and product availability are subject to change without notice.

© 2005 Scientific-Atlanta, Inc. All rights reserved.

Scientific-Atlanta, Inc.

1-800-722-2009 or 770-236-6900

[www.scientificatlanta.com](http://www.scientificatlanta.com)

Part Number 7007202 Rev A  
July 2005

# Explorer<sup>®</sup>

## Digital Video Recorder

### User's Guide

#### Get More Out of Your TV...

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Watch</b>                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Your favorite shows <i>anytime</i> you want...on your schedule</li><li>• Pause live TV for up to 1 hour without missing a minute</li></ul>   |
| <b>Record</b>                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Two live programs at the same time</li><li>• All future episodes of your favorite programs by performing a simple, one-time setup</li></ul>  |
| <b>Watch &amp; Record</b>                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Watch one program while recording another</li><li>• Watch two programs at once (using the PIP feature) and record one of them</li><li>• Watch a pre-recorded program while recording one or two other programs</li></ul>                     |
| <b>Play Back Recordings on Other TVs</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use the Multi-Room™ DVR* system to play back recordings on up to 4 TVs at the same time</li><li>• Each room can either play back the same recording or different recordings, and each room has individual control of the play back</li></ul> |

\*The Multi-Room DVR feature is only available on the Explorer® 8300™ Multi-Room DVR models.



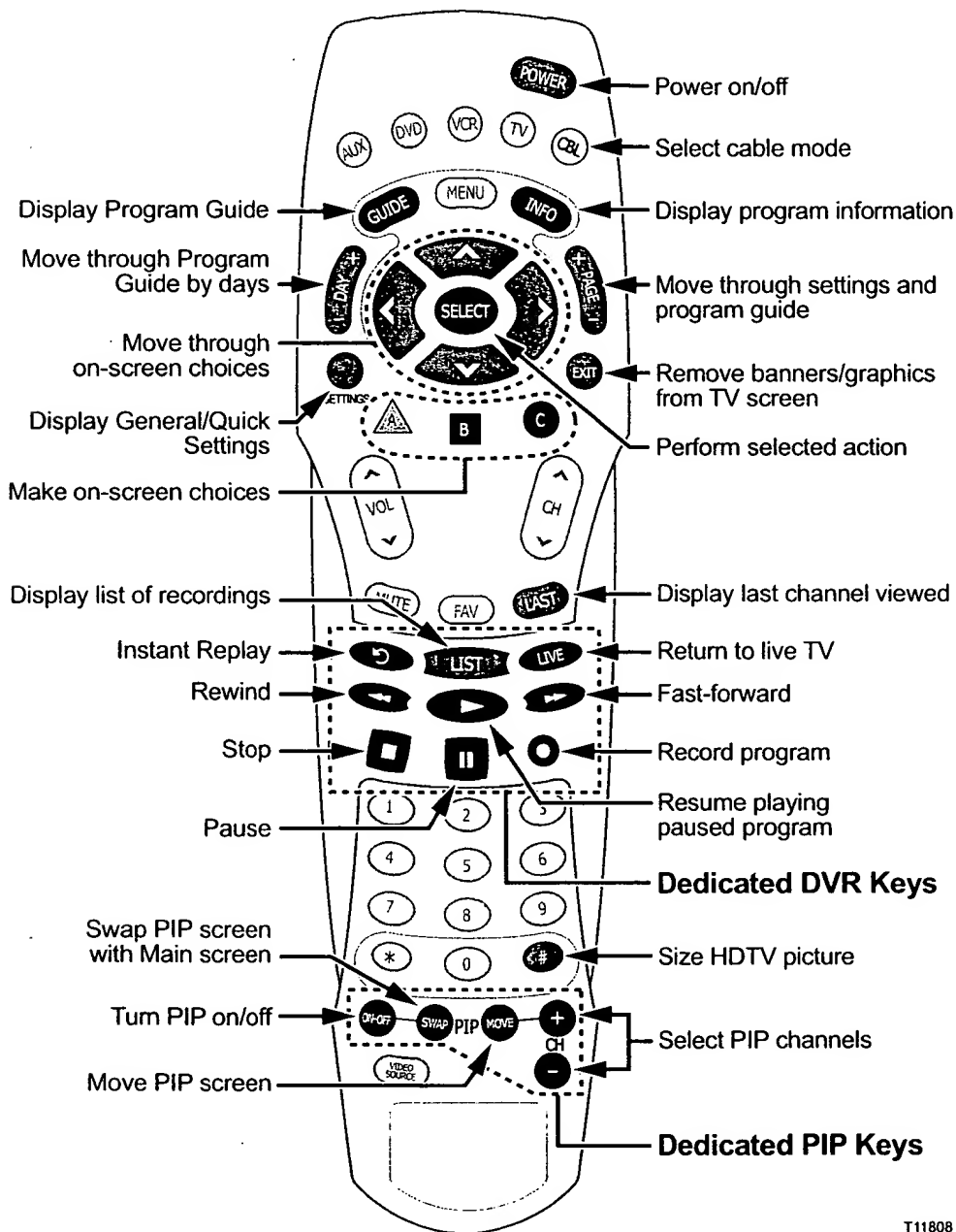
# ALLTOUCH REMOTE CONTROL

The AllTouch® Remote Control includes specific keys that enable you to control your Explorer® Digital Video Recorder (DVR).

**IMPORTANT!** You must place the remote control in *cable mode* (press **CBL**) to access the DVR features.

For descriptions of other remote control key functions, refer to the user's guide for your remote control model.

The following illustration shows the AT8550™ All Touch Remote Control. Your remote control model may vary.



## NOTICE FOR CATV INSTALLERS

The servicing instructions in this notice are for use by qualified service personnel only. To reduce the risk of electric shock, do not perform any servicing other than that contained in the operating instructions, unless you are qualified to do so.

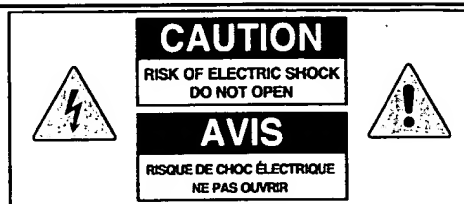
### Note to System Installer (U.S.A. and Canada Only)

This reminder is provided to call the system installer's attention to Article 820-93 and Article 820-100 of the NEC (Canadian Electrical Code Part 1), that provide guidelines for proper grounding and, in particular, specify that the metallic sheath of communications cables shall be connected to the grounding system of the building, as close to the point of cable entry as practical.



This symbol is intended to alert you that uninsulated voltage within this product may have sufficient magnitude to cause electric shock. Therefore, it is dangerous to make any kind of contact with any inside part of this product.

Ce symbole a pour but d'alerter toute personne qu'un contact avec une pièce interne de ce produit, sous tension et non isolée, pourrait être suffisant pour provoquer un choc électrique. Il est donc dangereux d'être en contact avec toute pièce interne de ce produit.



**CAUTION:** To reduce the risk of electric shock, do not remove cover (or back). No user-serviceable parts inside. Refer servicing to qualified service personnel.

**WARNING**  
TO PREVENT FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS UNIT TO RAIN OR MOISTURE.



This symbol is intended to alert you of the presence of important operating and maintenance (servicing) instructions in the literature accompanying this product.

Ce symbole a pour but de vous avertir qu'une documentation importante sur le fonctionnement et l'entretien accompagne ce produit.

20060907SISD

## SAFETY FIRST

Before using the DVR, read the IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS section of your DVR connectivity guide.

## U.S. PATENTS LIST

A patent notice is affixed to this product. In addition, the product may also be covered by one or more of the following patents:

4,498,169; 4,636,852; 4,641,181; 4,651,208; 4,691,353; 4,692,919; 4,698,598; 4,719,642; 4,748,667; 4,829,569; 4,866,770; 4,885,775; 4,888,799; 4,890,319; 4,922,456; 4,922,532; 4,924,498; 4,965,534; 4,991,011; 5,003,384; 5,012,510; 5,029,207; 5,045,816; 5,053,883; 5,054,071; 5,058,160; 5,142,575; 5,142,690; 5,146,526; 5,155,590; 5,214,390; 5,225,902; 5,225,925; 5,235,619; 5,237,610; 5,239,540; 5,241,610; 5,247,364; 5,255,086; 5,257,403; 5,267,071; 5,270,809; 5,271,041; 5,272,752; 5,282,028; 5,285,497; 5,287,351; 5,301,028; 5,309,514; 5,317,391; 5,319,709; 5,341,425; 5,347,388; 5,347,389; 5,357,276; 5,359,601; 5,361,156; 5,367,571; 5,379,141; 5,379,145; 5,381,481; 5,390,337; 5,400,401; 5,406,558; 5,418,782; 5,420,866; 5,420,923; 5,425,101; 5,428,404; 5,430,568; 5,434,610; 5,436,749; 5,438,370; 5,440,632; 5,442,472; 5,455,570; 5,457,701; 5,471,492; 5,477,199; 5,477,262; 5,477,370; 5,481,389; 5,481,542; 5,485,221; 5,493,339; 5,497,187; 5,500,758; 5,502,499; 5,506,904; 5,519,780; 5,539,822; 5,550,825; 5,579,055; 5,579,057; 5,583,562; 5,592,551; 5,596,606; 5,600,378; 5,602,933; 5,640,388; 5,657,414; 5,675,575; 5,684,876; 5,715,515; 5,724,525; 5,740,300; 5,742,677; 5,754,940; 5,757,416; 5,771,064; 5,774,859; 5,825,829; 5,826,167; 5,850,305; 5,854,703; 5,870,474; 5,892,607; 5,920,626; 5,923,755; 5,930,024; 5,930,515; 5,937,067; 5,963,352; 5,966,163; 5,982,424; 5,991,139; 5,999,207; 6,005,631; 6,005,938; 6,016,163; 6,028,941; 6,029,046; 6,052,384; 6,055,244; 6,072,532; 6,105,134; 6,148,039; 6,157,719; 6,188,729; 6,195,389; 6,212,278; 6,215,530; 6,219,358; 6,240,103; 6,243,145; 6,246,767; 6,252,964; 6,272,226; 6,292,081; 6,292,568; 6,320,131; 6,374,275; 6,405,239; 6,411,602; 6,417,949; 6,424,714; 6,424,717; 6,433,906; 6,438,139; 6,463,586; 6,467,091; 6,476,878; 6,493,876; 6,510,519; 6,516,002; 6,516,412; 6,526,508; 6,538,595; 6,546,013; 6,560,340; 6,567,118; 6,570,888; 6,622,308; 6,629,227; 6,664,984; 6,667,994; 6,671,879; 6,674,967; 6,678,891; 6,714,598; 6,721,352; 6,721,956; 6,725,459; 6,738,982; 6,744,892; 6,744,967; 6,751,271; 6,760,918; 6,795,972; 6,802,077; 6,804,708; 6,811,447; 6,817,028; 6,822,972; 6,823,385; 6,832,386; 6,845,106; 6,868,473; 6,874,075; 6,889,191; 6,909,471; 6,917,622; 6,917,628; 6,922,412; 6,927,806; 6,928,656; 6,931,058; 6,937,729; 6,969,279; 6,971,008; 6,971,121; 6,978,310; D348065; D354959; D359737; D363932; D390217; D434753; D507240; D507535; RE36368; RE36988

20051216PL

## CONTENTS

AllTouch Remote Control .....	inside of front cover
Notice for CATV Installers .....	iii
Safety First .....	iii
U.S. Patents List .....	iii

## GET STARTED

### NEED TO INSTALL YOUR DVR?

Get Started .....	1
Connect the Explorer DVR to Your TV .....	1
Important Note Regarding the HDMI Interface on the 8300HD/8300HDC .....	2
Connect External Devices to the DVR .....	2
Prepare the Explorer HD DVR to Work With Your TV .....	3
Start the Setup Wizard .....	3
Adjust Your HDTV Picture .....	5
Adjust Your Picture Format Using Quick Settings .....	6
Adjust Your HD Picture Using General Settings .....	6

### KEEP OUT — SET PARENTAL CONTROL AND BLOCKING

Set Parental Control .....	7
Program Rating Categories .....	8
Block Recordings with Parental Control .....	9
Watch Blocked Recordings .....	9
Set Favorite Channels .....	9

## CONTROL TV

### TRYING TO FIND A PROGRAM? USE THE PROGRAM GUIDE

Search for Programs Using the Program Guide .....	10
Display the Program Guide .....	10
Search for a Program by Channel, Title, or Theme .....	10
Search for a Program by Date .....	11
Select a Program from the Program Guide .....	12

### CONTROLLING LIVE TV AND RECORDINGS

Control Live TV and Recordings .....	13
Status Bar .....	13
Pause a Live Program or a Recording .....	13
Rewind or Fast-Forward a Live or Recorded Program .....	13
Use Instant Replay .....	14
Use Slow Motion .....	14
Watch Action Frame by Frame .....	14
Catch Up with a Live TV Program .....	14

## CONTENTS, CONTINUED

### USING THE PIP FEATURE

Use Picture-In-Picture .....	15
Turn PIP On and Off .....	15
Change the Channel of the PIP Screen .....	15
Move the Location of the PIP Screen .....	15
Swap the Main Screen and the PIP Screen .....	15

### RECORD

Record Programs .....	16
Record a Program You Are Watching .....	16
Record a Program from the Program Guide .....	16
Record Multiple Episodes of a Program .....	16
Record Two Live Programs at Once .....	17
Confirm Your Recordings .....	17
Record a Pay-Per-View Event .....	17
Schedule Future Pay-Per-View Recordings .....	17

### WATCH RECORDINGS

Watch Recordings .....	18
Display a List of Your Recorded Programs .....	18
Watch Your Recorded Programs .....	18
Display a List of Programs Scheduled to Record in the Future .....	18

### MANAGE

Cancel Recordings .....	19
Cancel a Scheduled Recording .....	19
Cancel a Recording That Is in Progress .....	19
Schedule Manual Recordings .....	19
Check Recording Space .....	20
Maximize Your DVR's Storage Space .....	20

### NO TIME TO WATCH A PROGRAM? SAVE IT

Save Recordings .....	21
Change the Default Save Time Setting for All Future Recordings .....	21
Change the Save Time of a Single Recording .....	21

## CONTENTS, CONTINUED

### FINISHED WITH A RECORDING? ERASE IT

Erase Recordings .....	22
Automatically Erase Oldest Recordings .....	22
Erase a Single Recording .....	22
Copy Recordings from Your DVR to a VCR Tape .....	23
Add Storage with a SATA Hard Disk Drive (Optional) .....	24
Connecting the SATA Device to the DVR .....	24
Troubleshooting the SATA Drive .....	25
Maximize the Life of the DVR .....	26
Turn Off Your DVR when Not In Use .....	26
Provide Adequate Ventilation .....	26

### USING YOUR DVR WITH A MULTI-ROOM DVR SYSTEM?

The DVR and Your Multi-Room DVR System .....	27
Using Parental Controls on the Client Set-Tops .....	27

## GET MORE INFORMATION

Frequently Asked Questions .....	29
Questions About the DVR .....	29
Questions About Controlling a Live Program or Recording .....	29
Questions About PIP .....	30
Questions About Recording and Playing Back Programs .....	30
Questions About the Multi-Room DVR Client Set-Top .....	32
Questions About HDTV Programs .....	33
Get More Information or Assistance .....	34
Online Documentation or the Explorer eClub .....	34
Customer Support .....	34
Index .....	36
Quick Tips .....	inside of back cover
Explorer Screens .....	inside of back cover

## GET STARTED



### Determine TV Connections.

Determine the types of connections you need to make, based on your TV type (high-definition [HDTV] or standard-definition [SDTV] TV) and home theater connection requirements. Refer to the manual that came with your TV for more information.



### Connect the DVR.

If your service provider has not already installed and connected the DVR for you, connect the DVR to your TV based on the connection information described in "Connect the Explorer DVR to Your TV," next in this guide.



### Configure the Picture Display.

Configure the picture display for your TV using the Setup Wizard. See "Prepare the Explorer HD DVR to Work With Your TV" on page 3.

## CONNECT THE EXPLORER DVR TO YOUR TV

The DVR family supports a number of connection options to support connections to many types of TVs. The following table describes the available DVR outputs, and includes when the output should be used. For more information about connectivity requirements and connection diagrams, refer to the connection guide for your DVR model, the user's guide for your TV, the Explorer eClub (see "Online Documentation or the Explorer eClub" on page 34), or contact your service provider.

### OUTPUT TYPE

### DESCRIPTION



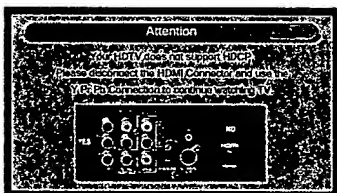
OR



Some HDTVs have a High-Definition Multimedia Interface (HDMI™) or Digital Visual Interface (DVI) connector. The HDMI connector provides both a digital video and audio connection. The DVI connector provides a digital video connection, but not a digital audio connection.

#### Notes:

- To connect the DVR with a DVI connector to a TV with an HDMI connector requires an adapter and a separate audio connection.
- When using the HDMI connection with TVs, you need to complete additional configuration steps. For more information, see "Important Note Regarding the HDMI Interface on the 8300HD/8300HDC" on the next page.
- If you connect to an HDTV using the DVI or HDMI ports, the DVR is automatically placed in "HD" mode.



**IMPORTANT!** Your service provider may have High-Bandwidth Digital Copy Protection (HDCP) activated for your area. If HDCP is activated for your area, and you connect the HDMI (DVI) output cable to an HDTV that does not support HDCP, a message appears, instructing you to disconnect the HDMI connection and watch video output through the PrPbY component connectors.



You can use the PrPbY ports, or component outputs, with either an HDTV or a non-HDTV with component inputs. If connecting to a TV using component outputs, you must use the Setup Wizard to select the output formats that your particular TV supports. See "Prepare the Explorer HD DVR to Work With Your TV" on page 3.



You can use the Y Output (on an HD unit configured for SD operation) or TV Video Output connector for connecting to an SDTV. If you do not see video using this connection, see "Prepare the Explorer HD DVR to Work With Your TV" on page 3.



OR



You can use these connections to connect the DVR to an SDTV. If you use the Cable Out connector, you must tune your TV to the correct channel (typically either channel 3 or channel 4). Contact your service provider for more information.

1394









**(OPTIONAL)** Some HDTVs have 1394 connectors. If you connect the DVR to your HDTV using 1394, you also need to connect separate video and audio connections to your HDTV.

## CONNECT THE EXPLORER DVR TO YOUR TV, CONTINUED

### IMPORTANT NOTE REGARDING THE HDMI INTERFACE ON THE 8300HD/8300HDC

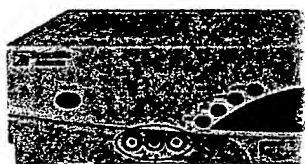
The HDMI interface automatically configures the audio output for a format supported by the TV attached to the DVR through the HDMI connection. This automatic configuration is only performed the first time the DVR is connected through the HDMI interface to a compatible TV. When the automated process is finished, the DVR sets the audio output format to either Dolby® Digital or Other (Linear PCM). The selected format is provided to all digital outputs. As a result, if the TV does not support Dolby Digital decoding, you may need to override the automatic setting to provide Dolby-formatted content to a Home Theater Receiver connected to the digital output on the DVR. In addition, if the DVR is connected to a different TV, you may need to manually set the output to a format that the new TV supports.

To override the automatic configuration or to change the audio output format used on the HDMI interface, complete the following steps:

1. Press  twice. The General Settings menu appears.
2. Press  or  to select **Audio: Digital Out**.
3. Press  to select **Dolby Digital**. This setting sends Dolby Digital audio to the HDMI, DIGITALAUDIO OUT, and OPTICALAUDIO OUT connectors.
4. Press  to accept the option for the DVR.
5. Press  to return to normal viewing.

**Note:** If you set the audio output to a format that the TV does support, you will not get any audio through the TV. You will either need to listen with a secondary device such as a Home Theater Receiver or manually switch the configuration back to one supported by the TV to hear the audio for the program using the TV speakers.

## CONNECT EXTERNAL DEVICES TO THE DVR



Example of front panel Audio/Video Inputs on an 8300 DVR

Do you have an external device, such as a VCR, camcorder, or video game device but no Audio/Video Input connectors on your TV for easy connectivity? Connect the external device to your DVR instead!

- On 8300-series DVRs, the DVR front panel has Audio and Video Input connectors that allow you to connect to the video and left/right (L/R) audio outputs of an external device to deliver the audio and video to your TV.
- On 8000-series DVRs, the Audio and Video Input connectors are located on the rear panel of the DVR.

After you connect the external device to your DVR, press the **Video Source** key on your remote to switch between the external device (Auxiliary) and your DVR. When you switch to the Auxiliary device, an on-screen banner briefly displays "Video Source: Auxiliary." When you press the **Video Source** key to switch back to the DVR device, the currently tuned channel is displayed.

**Note:** The on-screen content of the external device cannot be copied to your DVR hard drive.

## PREPARE THE EXPLORER HD DVR TO WORK WITH YOUR TV

The Setup Wizard is a program that helps you set up your DVR to provide the best picture quality that your TV supports. Based on the type of TV you have, the Wizard allows you to select all picture formats supported by your SDTV or HDTV.

**Note:** If you are connecting an SD DVR to an SDTV, no setup is required. Skip this section and go to "Set Parental Control" on page 7.

**IMPORTANT!** Any time that you change connections on your DVR, you must run the Setup Wizard again to make sure your TV is receiving its supported picture formats. This rule does not apply if you are using 1394 connectors.

### START THE SETUP WIZARD

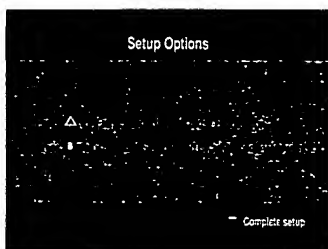
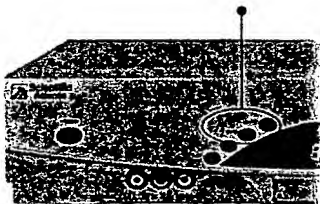
1. Press **Ⓢ** on your remote to place the remote in cable mode.  
**Note:** For more information about preparing the remote to work with your make and model of TV, refer to the user's guide for your remote model.
2. Make sure that the DVR is powered **OFF**, but still plugged into an active power outlet, and properly connected to the TV. See "Connect the Explorer DVR to Your TV" on page 1.
3. Turn the TV **ON**.
4. Configure the TV to display the input where the DVR is connected (see the user's guide for your TV for more information).
5. With the DVR powered **OFF**, press **Guide** and **Info** on the DVR front panel at the same time. The **TV Connection Set-up** screen appears (within 20 seconds).

#### Notes:

- The **TV Connection Set-up** screen toggles between an HD and SD mode selection screen until you make a selection. If you do not see video within 30 seconds, check your connections and TV settings.
- The DVR front panel displays either **HD** or **SD** while the TV Connection Set-up screen toggles between HD and SD mode.

6. Choose one of the following options:
  - To choose HD mode, press **B** on the remote to start the setup.
  - To choose SD mode, press **△** on the remote to start the setup.**Note:** If you are connected to your HDTV using the component ports and you incorrectly select "SD" mode, your video may appear pink in color.
7. Choose one of the following options:
  - If you selected SD mode in step 6, a Setup Complete screen appears. You're ready to begin using your DVR to watch and record programs. You may skip the rest of this section and go to "Set Parental Control" on page 7.
  - If you selected HD mode, the **HDTV Setup Wizard** screen appears.  
Press **△** to continue the setup.
8. Choose one of the following options from the **Setup Options** screen:
  - To choose the **Easy Setup** option, press **△**; then, go to the **Easy Setup Instructions** on page 4.
  - To choose the **Advanced Setup** option, press **B**; then, go to the **Advanced Setup Instructions** on page 4.

Press the **Guide** and **Info** buttons at the same time





# PREPARE THE EXPLORER HD DVR TO WORK WITH YOUR TV, CONTINUED

## EASY SETUP INSTRUCTIONS

1. Press **△** or **B** to select the type of TV screen you have. The setup is complete.
2. Press **POWER** to begin watching TV.

### Notes:

- If you pressed **△** for the standard screen (4:3) TV setting, the TV is set to receive programming in 480i format on non-HD channels and 1080i format on HD channels.
- If you pressed **B** for the widescreen (16:9) setting, the TV is set to only receive programming in 1080i format (even on non-HD channels).

3. You are ready to begin using your DVR to watch and record programs. Go to "Set Parental Control" on page 7.

**Note:** If you need to change your HDTV picture display, go to "Adjust Your HDTV Picture" on page 5.

**Tip:** After you complete the setup, press **⏏** to stretch or zoom the picture.

## ADVANCED SETUP INSTRUCTIONS

**Note:** Refer to the user's guide that came with your TV for information about the display formats your TV supports.

1. Press **△** or **B** to select the type of TV screen you have and display an Instructions screen.
2. The Instructions screen tells you that various picture formats will be displayed for your selection.

3. *Before you begin selecting picture formats, read the following:*

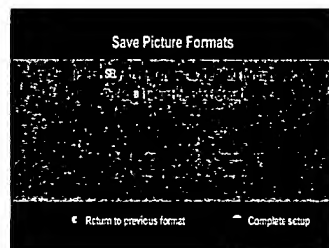
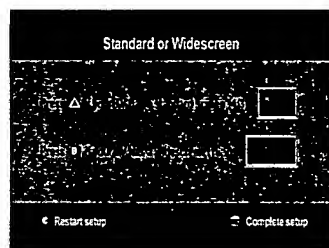
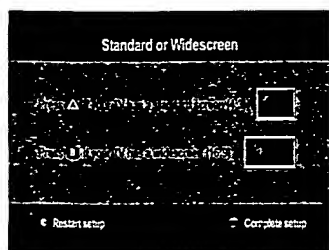
**IMPORTANT!** If you see a black screen or if the picture quality is not optimal, **do not** press **SELECT**. Press **B** again to view the next screen format.

4. Follow the on-screen instructions to select your picture formats.
5. Press **SELECT** to toggle between the Save and Remove options, or press **B** to see how the next format looks on your TV screen.
6. After finding the best picture format, press **EXIT**. The setup is complete.
7. Press **POWER** to begin watching TV.

8. You are ready to begin using your DVR to watch and record programs. Go to "Set Parental Control" on page 7.

**Note:** If you need to change your HDTV picture display, go to "Adjust Your HDTV Picture" on page 5.

**Tip:** After you complete the setup, press **⏏** to stretch or zoom the picture.



# ADJUST YOUR HDTV PICTURE

## PICTURE FORMATS AND YOUR HDTV DISPLAY

The following table shows the relationship between the picture format method, the signal the DVR receives, and the format of the picture that displays on your TV screen.

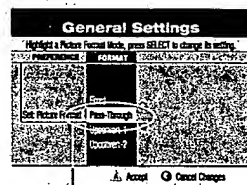
If you chose this picture format method:	And the DVR receives this signal:	The HDTV displays the picture in this format:
Fixed	1080i, 720p, 480i, 480p	Picture format selected in the Quick Settings menu
Pass-Through or Auto-DVI	1080 720p 480i 480p	1080i 720p 480i 480p
Upconvert 1	480i/480p 720p/1080i	480p 1080i
Upconvert 2	480i/480p 720p/1080i	480p 720p

### GENERAL SETTINGS: SET PICTURE FORMAT

**Upconvert 1 and Upconvert 2** - When possible, the DVR tries to improve the program display by taking an SD picture and changing it to a simulated HD picture (upconverting).

**Fixed** - All programming is displayed using the picture format you last selected. This setting remains *fixed* until you select a new picture format from the Quick Settings menu.

**Pass-Through or Auto DVI** - The programming format is not manipulated by the DVR. The DVR passes the signal through to the TV. (See the box on the previous page for more information about Pass-Through.)



If your HDTV uses a DVI or HDMI port, **Auto DVI/HDMI** appears here instead of **Pass-Through**.











### WARNING:

**Avoid Screen Burn-In!** Do not display the same fixed images on your HDTV screen for extended periods of time. Images such as letterbox bars or side bars, bright closed-captioning backgrounds, station logos, or any other stationary images may cause the picture screen in your HDTV to age unevenly; this is known as screen burn-in. Refer to the user's guide that came with your HDTV for more information.

## CHANGE THE DARKNESS OF BARS USED IN PICTURE DISPLAYS

The DVR automatically adds bars to certain types of program formats to reduce the chance for screen burn-in. If you decide to use these settings to watch programs, you can change the darkness of the bars from Light (default setting) to Medium or Dark.

1. Press  twice to access General Settings.
2. Press  or  to select the option **Set: TV Borders**.
3. Press  to display the Borders options (Light, Medium, or Dark).
4. Press  or  to select the shade you want to apply to the bars (Light, Medium, or Dark).
5. Press  to accept the setting. The DVR displays the Set: TV Borders option with your selection shown.
6. To exit from this screen and return to live TV, press .

## ADJUST YOUR HDTV PICTURE, CONTINUED

After using the Setup Wizard, if you want to change your picture preferences, you can adjust the HDTV picture display using options within the Quick Settings and General Settings menus.







If you do not need to change your picture quality, skip this section and go to "Set Parental Control" on page 7.

**Note:** The picture format is tied to the content provider's format and the picture formats supported by your TV.


### ADJUST YOUR PICTURE FORMAT USING QUICK SETTINGS

Because the picture quality of a program is affected by many factors, such as how the program was originally recorded and the method used to broadcast the program, you may find that displaying certain programs in a specific picture format provides the picture quality you prefer.

**Note:** If your HDTV uses a composite, DVI, or HDMI port, it automatically selects the best picture format for the program you are watching. DVI ports, however, can choose only from the picture formats that your HDTV supports.

1. Press  to access Quick Settings.
2. Press  or  to select **Picture Format**.
3. Press  to select the picture format setting.
4. Press  again to display another picture format setting. Each time you press , another setting displays.

**Note:** If you used the Setup Wizard to select picture format settings and your General Setting is not set to Pass-Through, the picture format settings that you selected are available here. For example, if you used the Easy Setup method in the Setup Wizard, only the settings 480i and 1080i are available for you to select.







5. Press  to view the picture with this setting.
6. If necessary, repeat these steps to find a setting that you prefer.

### ADJUST YOUR HD PICTURE USING GENERAL SETTINGS


You can adjust how your DVR displays pictures using the Picture Format and TV Borders General Settings menu options.

#### SET YOUR DEFAULT PICTURE FORMAT

By automating picture adjustments, the DVR uses a method that you choose to automatically select the picture format that provides the best display possible. The methods that you can select from depend partly on the type of video connection your HDTV uses.

1. Press  twice to access General Settings.
2. Press  or  to select **Set: Picture Format**.
3. Press  to select the picture format setting.
4. Press  or  to display each option.

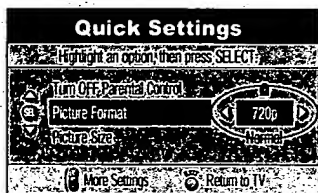
**Note:** See the "General Settings: Set Picture Format" box on the next page for an explanation of each option.

5. Press  to accept the option for the DVR.

**Note:** The Explorer 8300™ DVR (8300) front panel displays the selected option and scan rate. For example, if you selected Pass-Through, the 8300 front panel displays **AUTO**.

6. Press  to return to normal viewing.

**Note:** If you select **Pass-Through** or **Auto DVI/HDMI** in the **General Settings: Set Picture Format**, you cannot change the Picture Format in the Quick Settings menu (the Picture Format option will not be shown). You can only stretch and zoom the picture with the # key on the remote or within Quick Settings.













Pass-Through means that the DVR does not change the active signal it receives. It is just passing the signal through to the TV. Changing the picture format in **General Settings: Set Picture Format to Fixed** lets you "fix" or adjust the format in Quick Settings.

# SET PARENTAL CONTROL

## Notes:

- This section covers the basics for setting up parental control and blocking programs. You can also use parental controls to block recordings on your DVR. For more information, see **Block Recordings With Parental Control** on page 9.
- If you do not want to configure parental control and blocking, skip this section and go to **Search for Programs Using the Program Guide** on page 10.

## CREATING OR CHANGING A PIN

1. Using the remote, press  twice to access General Settings.
  2. Press  or  to select **Block: PIN**.
  3. What is the current setting for Block: PIN?
    - If **Enabled** and you do not know the PIN, contact your service provider to determine the default PIN, and then go to step 4.
    - If **Disabled**, press , press , and then go to step 7.
- IMPORTANT!** The PIN must be *Enabled* for the Parental Control feature to work.
4. After receiving the default PIN, press .
  5. Press  or  to select **Change** and then press .
  6. When prompted, enter the 4-digit PIN given to you by your service provider.
  7. When prompted, enter a new 4-digit PIN.
  8. Enter your new 4-digit PIN again for confirmation.
  9. Press  to exit General Settings.

## BLOCKING SYMBOLS








Indicates that a recording or program is blocked



Indicates that a recording or program is not blocked







## BLOCKING CHANNELS, RATINGS, AND PROGRAM TIMES

1. Using the remote, press  twice to access General Settings.
2. When prompted, enter a PIN and then re-enter it to ensure accuracy.
3. Press  or  and select one of the following options:
  - **Block: Channels**—to block all programs on a specific channel
  - **Block: Rating**—to block all programs according to program ratings
  - **Block: Time New**—to block all programs broadcast during a specific time
4. Press  and enter your 4-digit PIN when prompted.
5. Follow the on-screen instructions to block channels, ratings, or time slots.
 





**Note:** The DVR will record the blocked programs, but the DVR blocks the playback of the recording unless you enter a valid PIN.
6. Press  to exit General Settings.

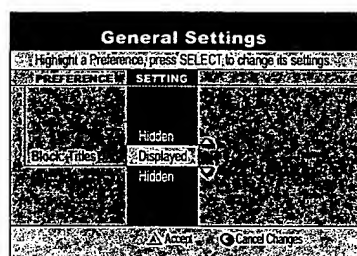
## HIDING OR VIEWING BLOCKED PROGRAM TITLES

You can prevent the DVR from displaying the titles of blocked programs on the program guide and in the DVR Recorded and Scheduled lists.

1. Using the remote, press  twice to access General Settings.
2. Press **Move Up**  or **Move Down**  to select **Block: Titles**.
3. Press **Select**  to set the Block: Titles setting to either **Hidden** or **Displayed**.
4. Press  to accept your changes.
5. Press  to exit General Settings.





## UNBLOCKING THE CURRENT CHANNEL


1. Using the remote, press  to access Quick Settings.
2. Press **Move Up**  or **Move Down**  to select **Unblock this Channel**.
3. Press **Select**  to change the Parental Control setting.
4. When prompted, enter your 4-digit PIN.



## SET PARENTAL CONTROL, CONTINUED

### TURNING ON AND OFF PARENTAL CONTROL

1. Using the remote, press  to access Quick Settings.
2. Press  or  to select **Turn ON Parental Control** or **Turn OFF Parental Control**, respectively.
3. Press  to change the Parental Control setting.
4. When prompted, enter your 4-digit PIN.

**Tip:** Turning off the DVR and turning it back on by pressing the **Power** button on the DVR (or by pressing  on the remote) is an easy way to turn on Parental Control for all the programming you have chosen to block.

## PROGRAM RATING CATEGORIES

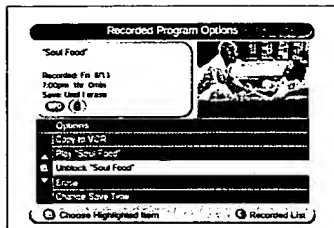
The following list describes the rating categories and codes associated with movies and television programs in the United States.

- TVY** The program is appropriate for children of all ages, and specifically designed for children ages 2 through 6 years.
- TVY7** The program is appropriate for children age 7 years or older. This rating can include the code FV, indicating mild fantasy or comedy violence.
- G, TVG** The program is appropriate for viewers of all ages.
- PG, TVPG** Parental guidance is suggested. The program contains material that parents can find unsuitable for young children. This rating can also include the following codes:
- V - Some violence
  - S - Some sexual situations
- PG-13** Parental guidance is suggested. Parents can find some program material unsuitable for children under 13 years. Additional codes may be included with the rating.
- TV14** Parents are strongly cautioned as some program material may be unsuitable for children under 14 years. This rating can also include the following codes:
- V - Intense violence
  - S - Intense sexual situations
  - L - Strong indecent language
  - D - Suggestive dialog
- TVMA** Mature audience. The program is designed for an adult audience. Parents can find the program material unsuitable for children under 17 years. This rating can also include the following codes:
- V - Graphic violence
  - S - Explicit sexual situations
  - L - Crude or indecent language
- R** Restricted to adult audiences only. The program contains material unsuitable for children.
- NC17** Under 18 never admitted. The program or movie is considered too adult (containing violence, sex, or drug use) for viewers under 17.
- NR** This program or movie is not rated.
- NR-Adult** No one under age 17 permitted. This program or movie is not rated (NR) but is considered too adult (containing violence, sex, or drug use) for viewers under 17.

## BLOCK RECORDINGS WITH PARENTAL CONTROL

You can keep others from watching a recording by using the Block feature. This feature is useful if children also use the DVR and you do not want them to watch certain recordings.

**Note:** To block a program that is scheduled to be recorded, block the program rating from the General Settings menu. (For details, see "Blocking Channels, Ratings, and Program Times" on page 7.) The DVR records the program, but the recording can be watched only after entering your 4-digit Parental Blocking PIN.



1. Press **LIST** to access the Recorded List.
2. Press **Left Arrow** or **Right Arrow** to select the recording you want to block.
3. Press **SELECT** to access the Recorded Program Options screen.
4. Press **Left Arrow** or **Right Arrow** to select the "Block [title of program]" option.
5. Press **SELECT**. The PIN Entry screen appears.
6. Enter your 4-digit PIN. The PIN Entry screen disappears, and **i** appears next to the Info icon in the Information area of the Recorded List screen. The lock icon indicates that the program is blocked.

## WATCH BLOCKED RECORDINGS



Use either of the two methods described here to watch a blocked program.

**Note:** If the titles of blocked programs are blocked, see "Hiding or Viewing Blocked Titles" on page 7.

1. Press **LIST** to access the Recorded List.
  2. Choose one of the following options:
    - Press **Left Arrow** or **Right Arrow** to select the "Play [title of program]" option, and then press **SELECT**. Enter your 4-digit PIN.
    - Press **Left Arrow** or **Right Arrow** to select the "Unblock [title of program]" option, and then press **SELECT**. Enter your 4-digit PIN.
- Note:** Entering your PIN in this screen allows viewing of *all programs and recordings*.
- Note:** Entering your PIN in this screen turns off blocking *only* for this recording.

## SET FAVORITE CHANNELS

1. Using the remote, press **SETTINGS** twice to access General Settings.
2. Press **Left Arrow** or **Right Arrow** to scroll to **Viewer: Favorites**.
3. Press **SELECT**.
4. Press **Left Arrow** or **Right Arrow** to scroll to the channel you want to mark as a favorite, and then press **SELECT**.
5. Repeat step 4 to mark other desired channels as favorites.
6. Press **SAVE** to save your favorite list.
7. Press **SETTINGS** to exit General Settings.

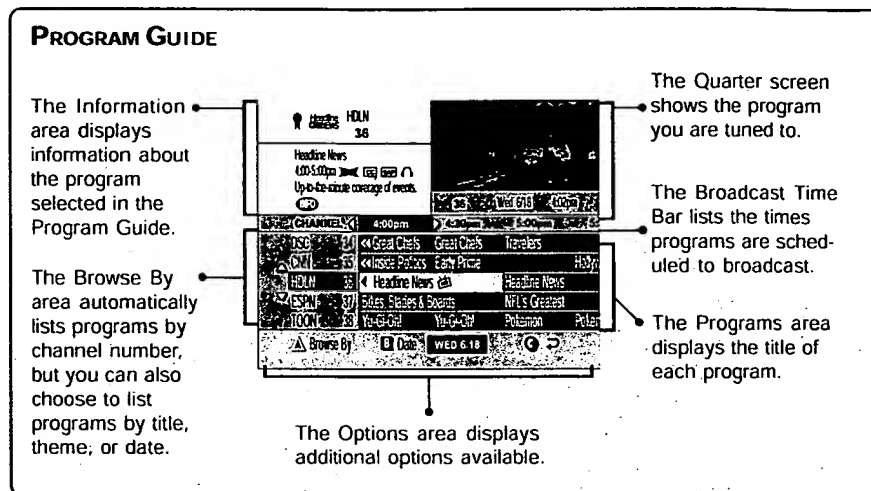
### ACCESSING YOUR FAVORITE CHANNELS

1. Press **FAV** on the remote to access a channel you have set up as a favorite.
2. Continue pressing **FAV** until the channel you want to watch appears.

## SEARCH FOR PROGRAMS USING THE PROGRAM GUIDE

### DISPLAY THE PROGRAM GUIDE

1. Press **GUIDE** to access the Program Guide.
2. To close the guide, press **GUIDE** or **EXIT**. The Program Guide closes and displays the program that was playing in the Quarter screen.



### SEARCH FOR A PROGRAM BY CHANNEL, TITLE, OR THEME

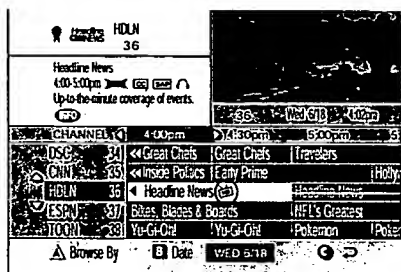
The DVR automatically lists programs by channel number, but you can change this and list programs by title or theme.

1. Press **GUIDE** to access the Program Guide.
2. Press **△**. The Browse By area of the Program Guide displays the options: Title, Channel, and Theme.
3. Press **←** or **→** to select one of the following options:
  - **Channel**, which lists programs numerically by channel number
  - **Title**, which lists programs alphabetically by program title
  - **Theme**, which lists programs by theme, such as adventure, comedy, sports, or news
4. Press **SELECT**. The Browse By area of the Program Guide displays the programs according to the option you selected.
5. Press **⏮** to return to the previous screen displayed.

**Note:** The Browse By option only shows programs for the current date. For information about searching on different dates, see "Search for a Program by Date" on page 11.

# SEARCH FOR PROGRAMS USING THE PROGRAM GUIDE, CONTINUED

## BROWSE BY OPTIONS



## BROWSE BY CHANNEL

Channel lists programs numerically by channel number.

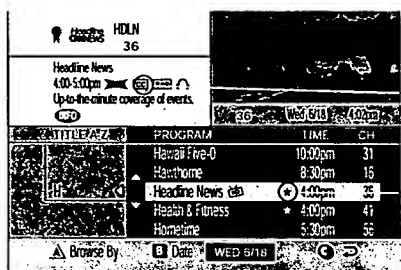
**Note:** HD next to a program indicates that the program is a high-definition broadcast.

## BROWSE BY TITLE

Title lists programs alphabetically by program title.

**Note:** The Parental Guide information is listed in the program description.

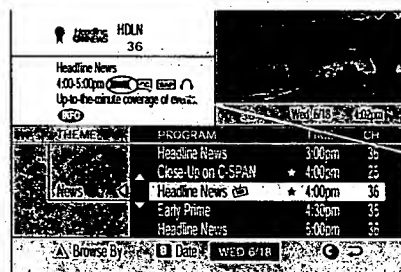
**Note:** A star next to a program indicates that the program is currently being broadcast.



## BROWSE BY THEME

Theme lists programs by theme, such as adventure, comedy, sports, or news.

**Note:** New next to a program indicates that the program is on for the first time (first-run program).



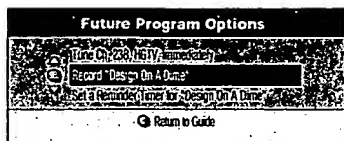
## SEARCH FOR A PROGRAM BY DATE

1. Press **GUIDE** to access the Program Guide.
2. Press **B**. The Browse By area of the Program Guide displays a list of upcoming dates.
3. Press **Left Arrow** or **Right Arrow** to select a date.
4. Press **SELECT**. The Program Guide displays the programs scheduled to be broadcast on that date.
5. Press **C** to return to the previous screen displayed.



## SELECT A PROGRAM FROM THE PROGRAM GUIDE

1. Press **GUIDE** to access the Program Guide.
2. Press **▲** to move through the program listings to select the program you want to watch.
3. Press **SELECT**.
  - If the program is currently on, the Program Guide closes and the program you selected appears in full-screen TV.
  - If the program is scheduled for a future time, the Future Program Options screen appears.
4. Choose one of the following Future Program options:
  - To tune to the future program channel immediately, choose the "Tune [channel number/name], immediately" option.
  - To record the future program, choose the "Record [program name]" option.
  - To set a reminder timer for the future program, choose the "Set Reminder Timer for [program name]" option. When selected, an on-screen banner is displayed 2 minutes prior to the start of the future program to remind you to watch the program.



**Tip:** When you select a future program in the Program Guide, you may also press **REC** to bypass the Future Program Options screen and record the future program. See "Record a Program From the Program Guide" on page 16 for instructions.

## CONTROL LIVE TV AND RECORDINGS

When you tune to a live program, the DVR begins buffering the program — that is, making a temporary recording of it — so that you can:

- Pause the live program for up to one hour
- Rewind the program up to the point when you tuned to the channel
- Fast-forward through the portion you have rewound
- Instantly replay the last eight seconds of TV anytime you want
- Save the buffered program to the DVR by recording it

### STATUS BAR

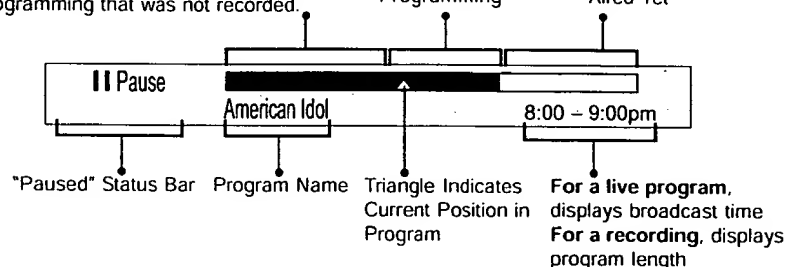
The **Status Bar** appears when you pause, rewind, or fast-forward a live program or recording.

**For a live program**, red indicates missed programming (from the beginning of the program until the time you tuned to the program).

**For a recording**, red indicates the portion of programming that was not recorded.

Green Area Indicates  
Stored or Recorded  
Programming

Clear Area Indicates  
Programming Not  
Aired Yet



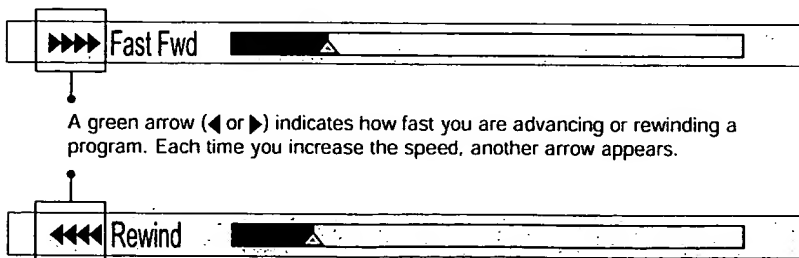
**Tip:** Some TV programs display "scrolling" information across the bottom of the TV screen (for example, news and sports "tickers"). The DVR on-screen status bar and other graphics may cover up information scrolling on-screen. Press **EXIT** to remove the status bar and any on-screen DVR graphics or banners.

### PAUSE A LIVE PROGRAM OR A RECORDING

1. Press **PAUSE**. The action freezes and the Status Bar appears briefly in the Pause position at the bottom of the screen. For both recorded and live programs, the DVR remains in pause for up to 1 hour.
2. Press **PAUSE** again or press **PLAY** to resume playing the program.

### REWIND OR FAST-FORWARD A LIVE OR RECORDED PROGRAM


1. Make sure that the program or recording is not Paused. If it is paused, press **PLAY** to resume normal play. If you press **FF** or **REW** while in Pause mode, the program will only advance or rewind one frame.
2. Rewind or fast-forward the buffered program or recording in any of four speeds:
  - The first press (**FF** or **REW**) increases the speed to **4 times** normal speed.
  - The second press (**FF** or **REW**) increases the speed to **10 times** normal speed.
  - The third press (**FF** or **REW**) increases the speed to **32 times** normal speed.
  - The fourth press (**FF** or **REW**) increases the speed to **128 times** normal speed.





3. To resume play at normal speed, press **PLAY**. The **Status Bar** indicates the Play mode and the program plays at normal speed.

## CONTROL LIVE TV AND RECORDINGS, CONTINUED

### USE INSTANT REPLAY

Press  to watch the last 8 seconds of a live or recorded program again. Every additional press jumps back 8 more seconds.





### USE SLOW MOTION

1. While watching live TV or while playing a recording at normal speed, press  once. The action slows.
2. To resume play in normal speed, press  again.


### WATCH ACTION FRAME BY FRAME

Analyze sports events and other programs by watching the action frame by frame. When you watch frame by frame, you fast-forward or reverse the action one frame at a time.


1. Press . The action stops.
2. Fast-forward or reverse action one frame at a time by following these steps.

To Move Action	Press	Result
Back by one frame		Each time you press  , action moves backward by one frame.
Forward by one frame		Each time you press  , action moves forward by one frame.

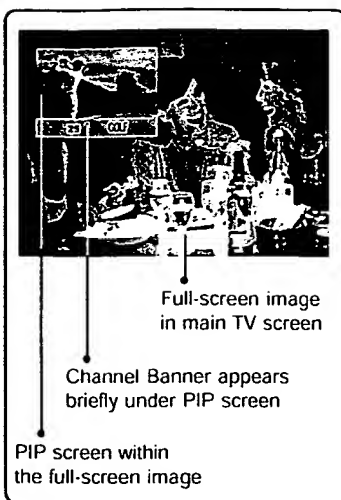
3. To resume play at normal speed, press .

**Tip:** To remove the status bar and any on-screen DVR banners, press .

### CATCH UP WITH A LIVE TV PROGRAM

When you pause or rewind a live program, the program continues to be broadcast. You can continue watching the buffered program (delayed TV), or you can catch up with the live broadcast by pressing .

# USE PICTURE-IN-PICTURE



## TURN PIP ON AND OFF

The PIP feature can only be activated while you are watching TV in full screen mode. You must remove any on-screen menus and exit the program guide to turn the PIP feature on. When you turn on the PIP feature, you can watch two channels at once. One channel appears as a full-screen image; the other channel appears as a small image within the full-screen image.

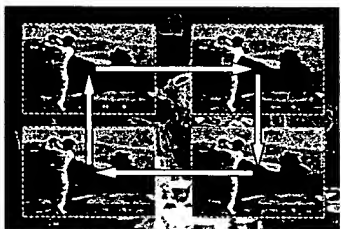
1. While watching a program in full screen mode, press PIP **ON**. The PIP screen appears within the full screen, and a channel banner appears briefly under the PIP screen.  
**Note:** You hear the sound of only the program that is shown in the full screen.
2. To turn off the PIP screen, press PIP **OFF** again.

**Note:** If you press **INFO** when the PIP feature is on, a channel banner appears for both screens. If either program is currently being recorded, its channel banner shows the Recording Now **REC** symbol.

**Tip:** The PIP keys are located at the bottom of the remote (see inside the front cover of this guide for an illustration of the remote).

## CHANGE THE CHANNEL OF THE PIP SCREEN

1. If the PIP feature is not on, turn it on by pressing PIP **ON**.
2. Press PIP **CH** or PIP **CH** to change the PIP channel.

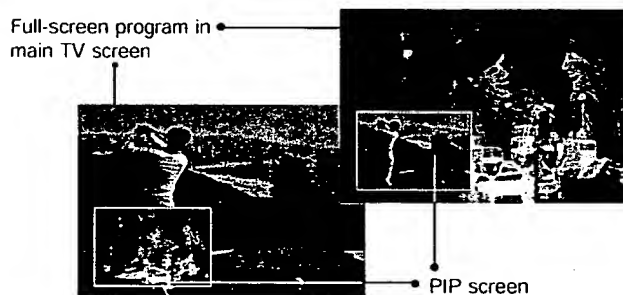


## MOVE THE LOCATION OF THE PIP SCREEN

Each time you press PIP **MOVE**, the PIP screen moves clockwise to the next corner of the main TV screen.

## SWAP THE MAIN SCREEN AND THE PIP SCREEN

Press PIP **SWAP** to swap the TV program in the PIP screen with the program in the main screen.



## RECORDINGS AND THE PIP SCREEN

**If you are . . .**  
Recording the program in the main TV screen...

**And you . . .**  
Have the PIP feature on, the recording does not capture the PIP screen in the recording. The recording shows only the program in the main TV screen.

Recording the program in the PIP screen...

Turn off the PIP feature, the program continues to be recorded.

Recording the program in the PIP or the main TV screen...

Press **INFO**, an information banner appears for both the PIP and main TV screens. If a program is being recorded, **REC** appears in the channel banner. The recording does not capture the channel banner in the recording.

## RECORD PROGRAMS

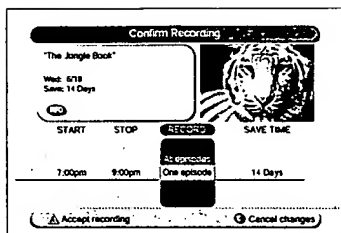
Feel free to do the following without affecting the DVR recording:

- Continue to watch the channel while the recording is being made.
- Pause, fast-forward, or rewind the program.
- Change channels (only if you are recording one program).
- Turn off the TV.
- Turn on the PIP feature.
- Display the Recorded List screen or the Program Guide.
- Playback a recording.

### RECORD A PROGRAM YOU ARE WATCHING

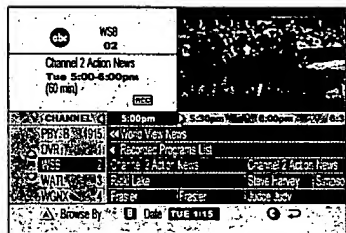
When you press Record while watching a live program, the DVR records all of the current program that you have buffered since you tuned to that channel.

For example, if you tune to a live, 1-hour program at 8:00 p.m., and you press record at 8:40 p.m., the DVR saves the first 40 minutes and continues to record for the next 20 minutes, until the program is scheduled to end.



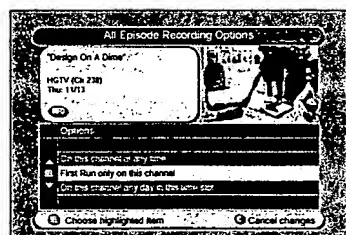
1. Press **REC** to start recording anytime during the program. The program records from the time that the channel was tuned.
2. In the Confirm Recording screen, use the arrow keys **←** **→** to choose your recording options and press **△**.

### RECORD A PROGRAM FROM THE PROGRAM GUIDE



1. Press **GUIDE**.
2. Press the arrow keys to select a current or future TV program, and then press **REC**.
3. In the Confirm Recording screen, choose your recording options and press **△**. The program to be recorded is highlighted in red in the Program Guide.

### RECORD MULTIPLE EPISODES OF A PROGRAM



1. Press **GUIDE**.
2. Press the arrow keys to select a program, and then press **REC**.
3. In the Confirm Recording screen, choose **All Episodes** and press **△**.
4. In the All Episode Recording Options screen, choose one of the following options:
  - **First Run only on this channel**  
Note: This option is subject to availability in your area.
  - **On this channel at any time**
  - **On this channel this day in this time slot**
  - **On this channel any day in this time slot**  
Note: This option records the program any day that the program airs in this time slot.
5. Press **SELECT** to save your All Episode recording settings and return to the Program Guide to continue watching TV.

#### SAVE LATEST

- 4 Episodes
- 5 Episodes
- All episodes**
- 1 Episodes
- 2 Episodes

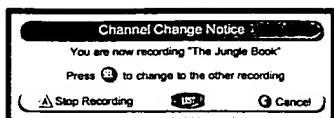
#### SAVE LATEST OPTIONS

When scheduling an All Episodes recording, you can choose to save from 1 to 5 of the most recent episodes. Or, you can save every episode until you cancel the recordings or run out of storage space.

For example, you save the two most recent episodes of a program that is broadcast every weeknight. When the DVR records the program on Wednesday, it automatically deletes the Monday program, and the Tuesday and Wednesday recordings are now saved. On Thursday, the Thursday episode is recorded, the Tuesday recording is erased, and so on.

For more information about saving recordings, see "Save Recordings" on page 21 of this guide.

## RECORD PROGRAMS, CONTINUED



If, while recording two programs, you try to tune to another channel, the DVR displays a Channel Change Notice to let you know that you must stop a recording to change channels. For details, see "Cancel a Recording That Is In Progress" on page 19.

### RECORD TWO LIVE PROGRAMS AT ONCE

1. Press **REC** to record the show that you are watching, and then press **△**.
2. Tune to the second show you want to record, press **REC**, and then press **△**.

**Note:** When you record two live programs at the same time, you can watch them both while they record using PIP, or you can watch a previously recorded program; but you cannot tune to another channel and watch a third program live.

### CONFIRM YOUR RECORDINGS

There are three ways to find channels that are currently being recorded:

- Turn on the PIP feature and press **INFO**. Both channel banners appear, and the **REC** symbol is displayed if one or both of the channels are currently recording.
- Press **LIST**. Use the arrow keys to move through the Recorded List. A program highlighted in red indicates that the program is currently recording.
- Press **GUIDE**. A program highlighted in red is currently recording or is scheduled to record.

### RECORD A PAY-PER-VIEW EVENT

If your service provider allows, you can record pay-per-view (PPV) events. To record a PPV event, follow these steps:

1. Purchase the event *and wait for it to begin playing*.
2. Record the event just like any other live program. For details, see "Record a Program You Are Watching" on the previous page.

### SCHEDULE FUTURE PAY-PER-VIEW RECORDINGS

1. If the Program Guide is not shown, press **GUIDE**.
2. Use the arrow keys to find the future PPV event you want to record. Press **SELECT** or press **REC** to display the Future Programs Option screen.
3. When you press **REC**, choose from one of the following options:
  - To *buy and record* the event, press **△** to access the "Buy" window. The Record Confirmation Screen will appear.
  - To *buy the PPV event*, press **B** to access the "Buy" window.
  - To *exit without purchasing* a future PPV event, press **C** to return to the Program Guide.

**Note:** You must have a PPV advertisement window open to purchase a future PPV event.

## WATCH RECORDINGS

**Note:** If you see **Blocked Title** instead of the title of a program, you are hiding the display of blocked program titles (a parental control function). See "Hiding or Viewing Blocked Program Titles" on page 7 for more information.

### DISPLAY A LIST OF YOUR RECORDED PROGRAMS

1. Press **LIST**. Programs that have been recorded, as well as those that are currently being recorded, appear in this list.  
**Note:** Programs currently being recorded are highlighted in red.
2. To exit from the Recorded List screen and display full-screen TV, press **LIST** again or press **EXIT**.

### WATCH YOUR RECORDED PROGRAMS

Play back your recordings whenever you want. You can even record one or two programs live while you play back any program you recorded earlier. However, you can play back only one recording at a time.

1. Press **LIST**.
2. Press **OK** or **ENTER** to select the recording you want to watch.
3. Press **SELECT** **Options/Play**. If you select the recording that you have most recently watched, the recording begins playing immediately from the scene you last viewed. Otherwise, the Recorded Program Options screen appears with the option "Play [title of program]" selected.
4. Press **SELECT**. The recording begins playing. You can use the pause, rewind, fast-forward, or any other remote keys to navigate during playback.
5. When you press **PAUSE** (or when the recording finishes), the Playback Status screen appears. To exit from this screen and return to live TV, press **LIVE**, **LAST**, or press **OK** or **ENTER**.

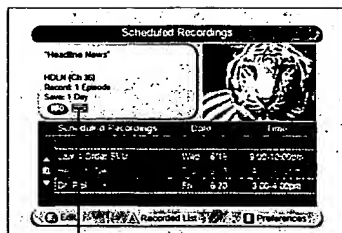
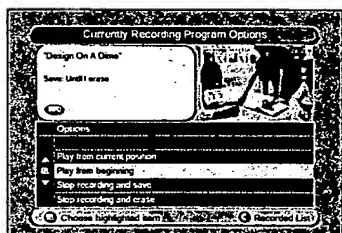
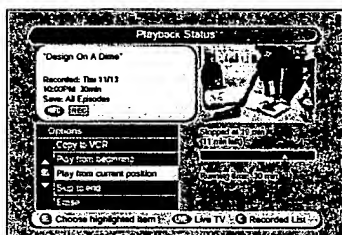
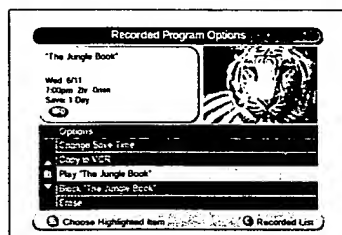
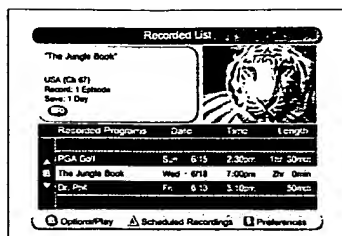
**Note:** If the Playback Status screen remains for 5 minutes, the DVR begins playing the recording to prevent screen burn-in.

### WATCH A RECORDING THAT IS IN PROGRESS

1. Press **LIST**.
2. Press **OK** or **ENTER** to select the program that is currently being recorded.
3. Press **SELECT** **Options/Play**. The Currently Recording Program Options screen appears.
4. Press **OK** or **ENTER** to select one of the following options:
  - Play from beginning
  - Play from current location
  - Stop recording and erase
  - Stop recording and save
5. Press **SELECT**.

### DISPLAY A LIST OF PROGRAMS SCHEDULED TO RECORD IN THE FUTURE

1. Press **LIST**.
2. Press **AT**. The Scheduled Recordings screen appears with a list of all the programs you have scheduled to record along with programs that are currently being recorded.  
**Note:** Programs currently being recorded are highlighted in red.

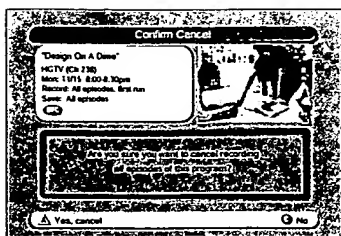


If a program is currently being recorded, **REC** appears in the Information area of the screen.

## CANCEL RECORDINGS

### CANCEL A SCHEDULED RECORDING

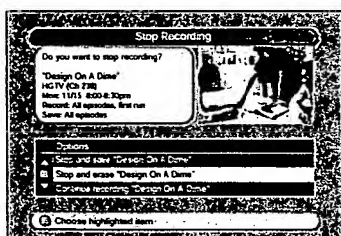
You can cancel a scheduled recording at any time.



1. Press **LIST**.
2. Press **△** to access the Scheduled Recordings screen.
3. Press **←** or **→** to select the recording you want to cancel.
4. Press **SELECT**. The Edit Scheduled Recording screen appears.
5. Press **B**. The Confirm Cancel screen appears and displays the question "Are you sure you want to cancel recording this program?"
6. Press **△**.

### CANCEL A RECORDING THAT IS IN PROGRESS

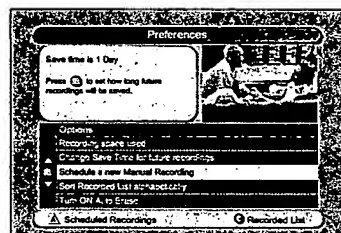
You can stop a recording in progress at any time. When you stop a recording, you can save what has been recorded or erase the entire recording.



1. If you are not watching the recording, tune to the channel that is being recorded.
2. Press **STOP** to display the Stop Recording screen.
3. Press **←** or **→** to select either the option "Stop and save" or the option "Stop and erase."
4. Press **SELECT**. The Record indicator on the DVR LED display turns off (unless another program is recording at the same time).

## SCHEDULE MANUAL RECORDINGS

Manual recording is the action of setting up a recording through the Preferences screen by manually specifying the channel and the start and stop time, independent of the program guide. More than one program can be recorded manually at one time.

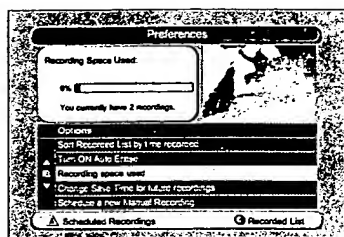


1. Press **LIST** to access the Recorded List screen.
2. Press **B** to access the Preferences screen.
3. Press **←** or **→** to select the "Schedule a New Manual Recording" option, and then press **SELECT**.
4. In the Preferences screen, set your channel, start and stop time, and save options, and then press **△** to save your changes.

**Note:** A manual recording is displayed as "Manual Recording" in the Recorded List screen.



## CHECK RECORDING SPACE



The Recording Space Used feature shows both the percentage of space currently used and lists the number of recordings stored.

1. Press **LIST**.
2. Press **B** to display the **Preferences** screen. The Information area displays the Storage bar, which shows the percentage of recording space currently used. In the graphic shown at left, the Storage bar indicates that a small portion (6%) of the DVR storage space is being used.  
**Note:** If the Storage bar indicates that over 90% of the space is being used, consider some of the suggestions in the "Maximize Your DVR's Storage Space" section for more storage options.
3. Press **EXIT** to close the Preferences screen.

## MAXIMIZE YOUR DVR'S STORAGE SPACE

**IMPORTANT!** The DVR is intended to be a short-term storage device. Use the following guidelines to make the most efficient use of your DVR's storage space.

- Set your default Save Time setting to 14 days or less. Setting it to "Until I Erase" causes the storage space to fill up more quickly. (For details, see "Change the Default Save Time Setting for Future Recordings" on page 21.)
- After you watch a recording, decide to either erase it or keep it permanently by transferring it to a VCR tape. (For details, see "Erase a Recording" on page 22, or "Copy Recordings From Your DVR to a VCR Tape," on page 23.)
- Turn on the Auto Erase feature. This feature automatically erases the oldest recordings whenever additional space is needed to record a new program. However, this feature does not erase recordings that have a Save Time of "Until I Erase." These recordings remain until you decide to erase them. (For details, see "Automatically Erase Oldest Recordings," on page 22.)
- Connect your 8300 to an optional external Serial ATA (SATA) hard disk drive for expanded recording capability. (For details, see "Add Storage With a SATA Hard Disk Drive [Optional]" on page 24.) **Note:** SATA connectivity is only available on the 8300 DVRs.

### HOW MANY HOURS OF PROGRAMS CAN I STORE ON MY DVR?

Explorer Model	*Storage Capacity
8000	Up to 50 hours of digital non-HD programs (based on an 80 GB capacity hard drive)
8000HD	Up to 90 hours of digital non-HD programs Up to 20 hours of HD programs (based on a 160 GB capacity hard drive)
8240, 8300, 8300MR	Up to 50 hours of digital non-HD programs (based on an 80 GB capacity hard drive)
8240HD, 8300HD, 8300HDC, 8300HD MR	Up to 90 hours of digital non-HD programs Up to 20 hours of HD programs (based on a 160 GB capacity hard drive)

\*The total program hours that can be stored depends upon the format and data rate of the programming source, as well as the DVR hard drive storage capacity.

## SAVE RECORDINGS

### SAVE TIME

2 Days

7 Days

14 Days

Until I Erase

1 Day

Whether you record a program you are watching live or schedule a program to be recorded in the future, you have three ways that you can select how long to save the recording:

- **Use the default Save Time setting.** Using the default Save Time setting is the quickest way to save recordings because you don't need to select the save time each time you record a program. For details, see the "Change the Default Save Time Setting for All Future Recordings," next in this guide.
- **Select the Save Time when you schedule a new recording.**
- **Change the Save Time after recording a program.** For details, see "Change the Save Time of a Single Recording," later in this guide.

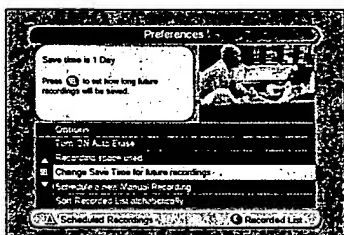
**IMPORTANT!** The DVR is not intended as a long-term storage device. When saving recordings, consider the impact of the save time on your storage space.

### CHANGE THE DEFAULT SAVE TIME SETTING FOR ALL FUTURE RECORDINGS

When the DVR leaves the factory, its default Save Time is set to 14 days. Using this setting, the DVR automatically saves each recording for 14 days. At the end of 14 days, the DVR erases the recording to make space for other programs that you want to record. You can change this setting from 14 days to 1, 2, or 7 days, or to "Until I Erase."

**IMPORTANT!** When you change the default Save Time setting, it affects *all future recordings*, not the programs that were previously recorded.

1. Press **LIST**.
2. Press **B** to access the Preferences screen.
3. Press **←** or **→** to select "Change Save Time for future Recordings."
4. Press **SELECT** to access the "Save Time" options.
5. Press **←** or **→** to select your desired Save Time.
6. Press **SELECT** to save your time selection and return to the Preferences screen. The new default Save Time setting appears in the Information area of the Preferences screen.



### SAVE TIME

2 Days

7 Days

14 Days

Until I Erase

1 Day

### CHANGE THE SAVE TIME OF A SINGLE RECORDING

After recording a program, you can change how long the DVR saves the recording.

1. Press **LIST**.
2. Press **←** or **→** to select the recording whose Save Time you want to change.
3. Press **SELECT**. The Recorded Program Options screen appears.
4. Press **←**. The option "Change save time" is selected.
5. Press **SELECT**. The Change Save Time screen appears.
6. Press **←** or **→** to select the new Save Time.
7. Press **SELECT**. In the Information area of the screen, the message "One moment please" appears, and the new save time displays on the Recorded List screen.

## ERASE RECORDINGS

### AUTOMATICALLY ERASE OLDEST RECORDINGS

To ensure that there is enough storage space for new recordings, turn on the Auto Erase feature. When Auto Erase is on, oldest recordings are automatically erased one by one until there is enough space to record your new programs.

**Note:** Recordings with save times of "Until I Erase" are not automatically erased.

1. Press **LIST**.
2. Press **B** to access the Preferences screen.
3. Press **←** to select "Turn ON Auto Erase."
4. Press **SELECT**. The Confirm Auto Erase On screen appears and displays the question "Are you sure you want your oldest recordings automatically erased if space is needed?"
5. Press **△**. The option now shows "Turn OFF Auto Erase" and the Information area displays the current status of the Auto Erase feature.

**IMPORTANT!** If you have both the "Auto Erase ON" and the "Save Latest - All Episodes" options set, you will lose your oldest recording if you do not have the available recording space on your DVR. See **page 16** for information on setting the "Save Latest - All Episodes" option.



### ERASE A SINGLE RECORDING

Erase a recording and permanently remove it from the DVR. Erasing programs that you no longer want to watch creates space to record and store other programs. If the DVR becomes full, some programs may be partially saved or not saved at all.

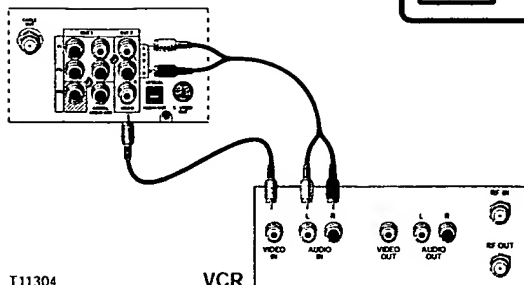
1. Press **LIST**.
2. Press **←** or **→** to select the recording you want to erase.
3. Press **SELECT** to access the Recorded Program Options screen.
4. Press **←** to select "Erase."
5. Press **SELECT**. The Confirm Erase screen appears and displays the question "Are you sure you want to erase this recording?"
6. Press **△**. The message "One moment please" appears in the Information area of the screen, and the Recorded List screen displays with the program no longer showing in the list.

## COPY RECORDINGS FROM YOUR DVR TO A VCR TAPE

The Copy to VCR feature lets you copy recordings from your DVR to a VCR tape.



**WARNING:** Avoid electric shock. Unplug all electronic devices before connecting or disconnecting any device cables to the DVR.



T11304

VCR

### Notes:

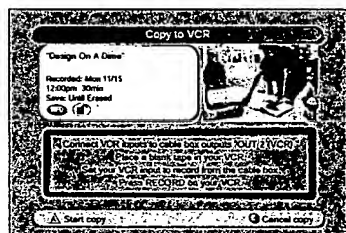
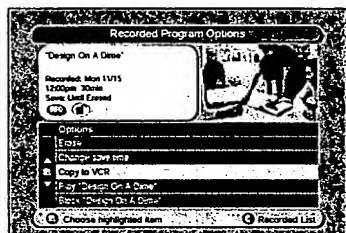
- This graphic shows the 8300HD back panel layout. Other DVR back panel layouts will vary.
- It is possible to record live TV directly to a VCR tape (instead of copying your recording) by connecting the main OUT 1 outputs directly to the VCR inputs. However, when you do this, all remote activity (bringing up menus, pausing, rewinding, etc.) will also be recorded on the VCR tape.

### COPY A RECORDING TO A VCR TAPE

1. Connect the VCR to the **OUT 2** connection on the back of the DVR.  
**Note:** Connecting to your VCR using the **OUT 2** outputs allows you to watch or record another program or even change channels in the Main screen, without affecting the copy in progress.
2. Make sure that a tape is in your VCR and that the VCR is set to record.
3. Press **LIST**.
4. Press **Left** or **Right** to select the recording you want to copy to the VCR. Make sure to select a program that is not currently being recorded.
5. Press **SELECT** to access the Recorded Program Options screen.
6. Press **Left** to select "Copy to VCR."
7. Press **SELECT** to access the Copy to VCR screen.
8. Make sure your VCR is properly connected to your DVR outputs, and press **Record** on your VCR.
9. Press **Enter** to begin copying to the VCR tape. The Recorded List displays the VCR symbol for the recording that is copying to VCR.
10. After the recording finishes copying to the VCR tape, playback the VCR tape in your VCR to verify that the recording was successfully copied.  
**Note:** Some DVR recordings, particularly pay-per-view events, cannot be archived to VCR tape, due to copy protection settings within the program content. If you copy a DVR recording to a VCR tape, *do not delete the DVR recording until you verify that you can successfully play the recording on the VCR tape.* You have to play the recording on the VCR tape to verify that the archiving process was successful.
11. If the DVR program was successfully recorded to VCR tape, you can delete the DVR recording.

### Notes:

- You can watch the copying in progress through the PIP. You can turn the PIP feature on and off without affecting the copy in progress. A "Copying to VCR" banner displays for 3 seconds when you turn the PIP feature on.
- While copying is in progress, you are free to change channels in the main screen. You can even simultaneously record 2 live programs while you copy a recording to a VCR tape.



## ADD STORAGE WITH A SATA HARD DISK DRIVE (OPTIONAL)

On the 8300-series DVRs, you can use a Serial ATA (SATA) hard disk drive for increased recording capability. Contact your service provider for a list of approved hard drive models that you can use with the 8300s.

**IMPORTANT!** You cannot choose between recording to the internal DVR hard drive or recording to the SATA drive. If a SATA drive is connected to the DVR, a program is automatically recorded to the hard drive with the most available space. Recordings are not split across both the internal and external drives.

**Note:** Recordings stored on the SATA drive can only be played back on the DVR originally connected to the SATA drive. For instance, you cannot record programs to the SATA drive, remove the drive, and then connect the drive to a different DVR for playing back programs.

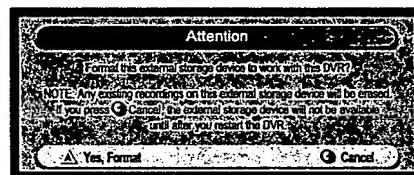
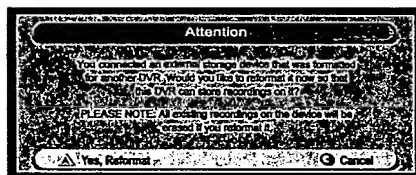
For instructions for connecting a SATA hard disk drive to the DVR, refer to the connectivity guide for your DVR model.



**WARNING:** Avoid electric shock. Unplug all electronic devices before connecting or disconnecting any device cables to the DVR.

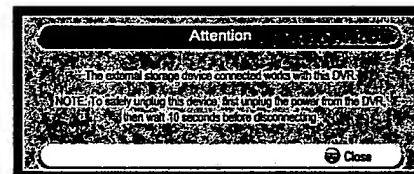
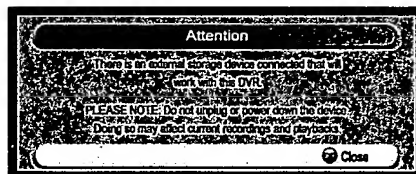
### CONNECTING THE SATA DEVICE TO THE DVR

When a new SATA device is detected by the DVR unit, one of the following banners appears, indicating that you need to format the device to work with the DVR.



Follow the on-screen instructions to format the device.

Because your SATA drive was formatted to work with your DVR unit, should you need to disconnect, then reconnect the SATA hard disk drive to your DVR, one of the following banners appears, indicating that the external device was properly connected.



Press  to close the banner.

**IMPORTANT!** Do not power down the SATA drive while the DVR is powered on. Doing so may result in lost or stopped recordings.

## ADD STORAGE WITH A SATA HARD DISK DRIVE (OPTIONAL), CONTINUED

### TROUBLESHOOTING THE SATA DRIVE

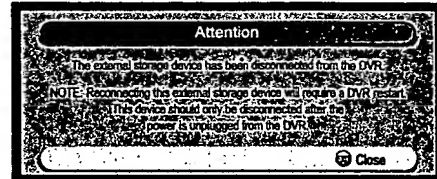
If you encounter problems when connecting or disconnecting your SATA hard disk drive, use the following warning banners to troubleshoot any drive issues.



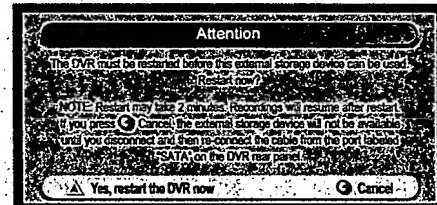
**WARNING:** Avoid electric shock. Unplug all electronic devices before connecting or disconnecting any device cables to the DVR.

If the SATA drive is improperly disconnected, one of the following warning banners appears.

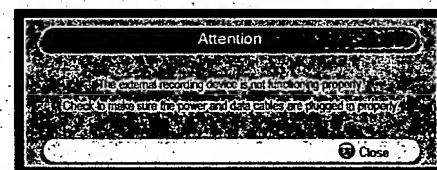
**Attention:** The external storage device has been disconnected from the DVR.



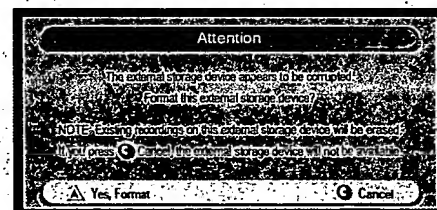
If you improperly disconnected the SATA drive from your DVR, then attempt to reconnect the drive to your DVR, a warning banner appears. Follow the on-screen instructions to restart the DVR.



If the power or data cables for the SATA drive are unplugged from the DVR, a warning banner appears. Check the DVR to make sure the power and data cables are properly plugged in.



If the DVR cannot read the SATA drive, a warning banner appears. Follow the on-screen instructions to format the SATA drive.



## MAXIMIZE THE LIFE OF YOUR DVR

### TURN OFF YOUR DVR WHEN NOT IN USE

To maximize the life of your DVR, you should turn **Off** the DVR when it is not in use. When the DVR is powered **Off** (and plugged into an active outlet), all scheduled recordings are performed automatically – and your recordings are protected.

To turn off your DVR, simply press **Ⓢ** and then **POWER** on your remote, or press **Power** on the front panel of the DVR. The Power light turns off; but, because the DVR is still plugged in to an active outlet, your scheduled recordings still occur.

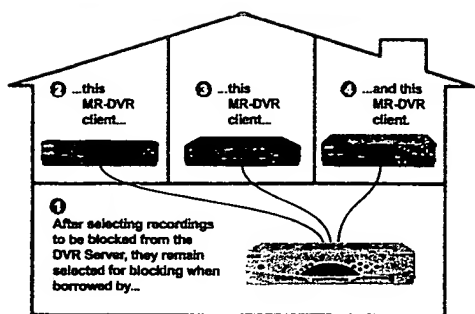
**IMPORTANT!** The Parental Control feature is automatically activated as a precaution when you turn your DVR back on. For more information about the Parental Control feature, see page 7.

### PROVIDE ADEQUATE VENTILATION

This product has openings for ventilation that protect it from overheating. To ensure the reliability of this product, do the following:

- Do not block or cover these openings.
- Do not place entertainment devices (such as VCRs or DVDs), lamps, books, vases with liquids, or other objects on top of this product.
- Do not place this product in any of the following locations:
  - On a bed, sofa, rug, or similar surface
  - Near heat sources such as radiators, heat registers, stoves, or other products (including amplifiers) that produce heat
  - In an enclosure, such as a bookcase or rack, unless the installation provides proper ventilation

## THE DVR AND YOUR MULTI-ROOM DVR SYSTEM



With the Multi-Room DVR system, you can record your favorite programs on the 8300 DVR server, and then use your other non-DVR Scientific Atlanta digital set-tops (client set-tops) to play back and control recordings stored on the Multi-Room DVR server.


### Notes:

- Multi-Room DVR service is subject to availability in your area. For more information, contact your service provider.
- The Multi-Room DVR feature is only available on the 8300 Multi-Room DVR models. As a future enhancement, the Explorer 3250HD™ client set-top will be able to play back HD recordings.
- Not all Scientific Atlanta digital set-tops can be used as clients. For more information, contact your service provider.

This section describes how you can set up your Multi-Room DVR system to restrict or block the viewing of certain programs and recordings to specific set-tops. *If you do not plan to block programming or recordings, you may skip this section.*

### USING PARENTAL CONTROLS ON THE CLIENT SET-TOPS



If you block a recording on the Multi-Room DVR server, you must activate Parental Controls in each room to keep other client set-tops from watching that recording. Each set-top (server and client) has its own independent Parental Control setting. You must set it the way you want it to work in every room by following two steps.

1. Press  to open Quick Settings.
2. Turn Parental Controls ON or OFF.
3. Block programming by channel, rating, or time within General Settings.

Some important points to remember about Parental Controls:

- For existing recordings on the Multi-Room DVR server, any recording (after it is recorded) can be manually blocked by choosing the **Block** option when selecting it from the Recorded List. Regardless of what blocking is set on the server, each client blocks content according to its own Parental Control settings. On each client, all ratings and channels blocked in General Settings will remain blocked until you turn Parental Controls off.
- For future scheduled recordings, any rating, channel, or time slot can be set for blocking within General Settings on the Multi-Room DVR server. These blocking settings do *not* automatically carry over to the client set-top even if the Parental Controls are activated on the client set-top. The client set-top must block the same future programming (by channel, rating, or time) within its General Settings so the blocking takes effect.
- Unblocking a recording on one client set-top will *not* unblock the same recording on other client set-tops or on the Multi-Room DVR server.

Use one of the following steps to quickly activate Parental Controls on either the Multi-Room DVR server or on the client set-top.

- Press the front panel **Power** button, or press  and then  on the remote to power off the set-top. The next time the client set-top is powered on, all the blocking you set up will take effect.
- Turn on the Parental Controls in the Quick Settings menu (see page 7).

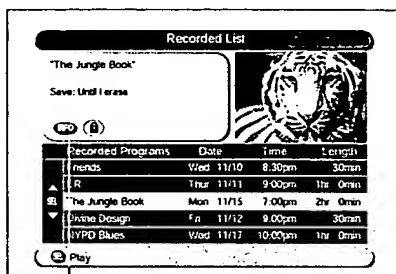


## THE DVR AND YOUR MULTI-ROOM DVR SYSTEM, CONTINUED

### SET UP PARENTAL CONTROL ON MULTI-ROOM DVR CLIENT SET-TOPS

After you have decided how to restrict viewing for the set-tops in your home, set up a Parental Control PIN for each client set-top. All of the set-tops in your system need a Parental Control PIN to view blocked programs. If you do not plan to block programming or recordings, you do not need to set up a Parental Control PIN.

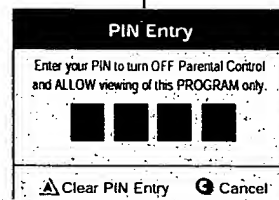
#### ON THE CLIENT SET-TOP:



The **i** symbol indicates that a recording is blocked and can be played only by entering a Parental Control PIN.

When selecting a recording that the Multi-Room DVR server has blocked, users must enter a Parental Control PIN.

**Note:** Turning off parental control here *does not* unblock this recording on other TVs.



### SELECTING A PARENTAL CONTROL PIN

When selecting a number for the Parental Control PIN, keep the following in mind:

- The PIN must contain four digits.
- You may use a PIN that is unique to each Multi-Room DVR system set-top in your home, or you may use the same PIN for all Multi-Room DVR system set-tops.
- You may use a PIN that is the same or different from the pay-per-view PIN.

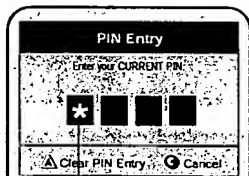
After you have selected a 4-digit number to use as a Parental Control PIN, set up the PIN by following the steps in "Setting or Changing the Parental Control PIN" below.

### SETTING OR CHANGING THE PARENTAL CONTROL PIN

Each Multi-Room DVR server and client set-top leaves the factory with a Parental Control PIN of 0000. Follow these instructions to change the factory-set PIN to your own PIN or to change your own PIN at any time in the future.

1. While aiming the remote at the front of a set-top, press **SETTINGS** twice. The General Settings menu appears.
2. Press **Block:PIN**.
3. Press **SELECT**. The options for Block: PIN appear.
4. Press **Change**.
5. Press **SELECT**. A PIN Entry screen appears.
6. Enter the current PIN by performing one of the following tasks:
  - If you are changing the PIN for the first time, press the numeric keys to enter **0000** (the number of the factory-set PIN). The PIN Entry screen prompts you to enter your new PIN.
  - If you are changing your current PIN, press the numeric keys to enter your current PIN. The PIN Entry screen prompts you to enter a new PIN.
7. Press the numeric keys to enter your new PIN. The PIN Entry screen prompts you to re-enter your new PIN for confirmation.
8. Press the numeric keys to enter your new PIN again. The General Settings menu appears.
9. To close the General Settings menu, press **EXIT**.

**Note:** For more information about turning the parental control feature on and off, see "Turning On and Off Parental Control" on page 7.



When you enter a PIN in the **PIN Entry** screen, an asterisk appears each time you press a number key. Displaying an asterisk instead of the number itself keeps others from learning your PIN and lets you know that the set-top has accepted the number.

## FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### QUESTIONS ABOUT THE DVR

**Q. What happens if the DVR temporarily loses power?**

- A. *The recordings that were saved before the power loss are preserved. Future recording schedules are also preserved. You miss only the recordings that were scheduled to be made or the portion of the program that aired while the power was out.*

**Q. Where can I find details on installing the DVR?**

- A. *Access Scientific Atlanta's Explorer eClub Web site at [www.scientificatlanta.com/explorerclub](http://www.scientificatlanta.com/explorerclub). It contains documentation on a number of topics, including installation and setup. You need the model number of the DVR and your email address to access the eClub Web site.*

**Q. Why doesn't the DVR respond when I press the keys on the remote?**

- A. *Consider the following suggestions when troubleshooting your remote:*
- *Your remote may not be in the cable mode. To use any of the features provided by the DVR, the remote must be in cable mode.*
  - *Verify that the batteries in your remote are positioned correctly. If the batteries are positioned correctly, you may need a new set of batteries.*
  - *Verify that the IR Sensor on the DVR front panel is not blocked or covered.*

**Q. I want to move the DVR to a new location. How do I do this?**

- A. *After disconnecting the DVR from your TV and other components, reconnect it by following the instructions in your DVR installation guide. If you can't find your copy of this guide, log on to Scientific Atlanta's Explorer eClub Web site at [www.scientificatlanta.com/explorerclub](http://www.scientificatlanta.com/explorerclub). It contains documentation on a number of topics, including installation and set up. You need the model number of the DVR and your email address to access the eClub Web site.*

### QUESTIONS ABOUT CONTROLLING A LIVE PROGRAM OR RECORDING

**Q. Can I remove the DVR on-screen graphics and banners?**

- A. *Yes. Some TV programs display "scrolling" information across the bottom of the TV screen (for example, news and sports "tickers"). The DVR on-screen status bar and other graphics may cover up information scrolling on-screen. Press **EXIT** to remove any on-screen graphic or banner.*

**Q. How far back can I rewind a program?**

- A. *It depends upon whether the program is a live or a recorded program. You can rewind all recorded programs to the beginning of the recording. The situation is different for live programs. If you have watched a live program for less than 1 hour, you can rewind back to the point that you started watching the channel. If you have watched a live program for longer than 1 hour, you can rewind up to the last hour that you've watched. For details on how the DVR allows you to rewind, fast-forward, pause, or record live TV, see page 13.*

**Q. Can I pause, rewind, or fast-forward a program in the PIP screen?**


- A. *No. Keys such as pause, rewind, and fast-forward control only the program shown in the main TV screen. They also control the small Quarter screen that appears on DVR screens like the Recorded List screen and the Program Guide.*

## FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS, CONTINUED

### QUESTIONS ABOUT PIP

- Q. If a program is being recorded in the PIP screen and I turn off the PIP feature, will this stop the recording?
- A. No. The DVR continues to record the program even if you turn off the PIP feature.
- Q. What if my TV doesn't have the PIP feature?
- A. That's no problem. You can still use the PIP feature because the DVR provides the PIP feature, not your TV.

### QUESTIONS ABOUT RECORDING AND PLAYING BACK PROGRAMS


- Q. If I've been tuned to a program since it started, do I have to rewind to the beginning to record the entire program?
- A. No, if you have been tuned to the program since its beginning, and the program is one hour or less, just press  from any point in the program to record the entire program. Recording automatically stops when the program ends.
- Q. Can I record the program that is shown in the PIP screen?
- A. You can record a program that is shown in the PIP screen, but you must swap the program to the main screen first. For details, see "Swap the Main Screen and the PIP Screen" on page 15.
- Q. Can I record a pay-per-view event?
- A. Yes, if you have been authorized by your service provider. After you purchase the event and wait for it to begin playing, you can record it just like any other live program. For details, see "Record a Pay-Per-View Event" on page 17.
- Q. Can I schedule a recording of a future pay-per-view event?
- A. Yes, if you have been authorized by your service provider. For details, see "Schedule Future Pay-Per-View Recordings" on page 17.
- Q. Can I record video-on-demand (VOD) programs?
- A. No.
- Q. Can I recover a recording that was erased from the DVR?
- A. No. There is no way to recover a recording that has been erased from the **Recorded List** screen. You can copy programs to a VCR tape or extend the length of time a program is saved, though. For details, see "Copy Recordings From Your DVR to a VCR Tape" on page 23 or "Change the Save Time of a Single Recording" on page 21.
- Q. Can I use PIP while copying a program to my VCR?
- A. When copying a program to a VCR, the PIP screen displays what is being copied to the VCR. You cannot use PIP to watch another program while copying a program to a VCR, but you can change channels in the main screen.
- Q. Can I record two programs at the same time and watch a live program on another channel?
- A. No. If, while recording two programs, you try to tune to another channel, the DVR displays a **Channel Change Notice** to let you know that you must stop a recording to change channels. You can watch either of the two channels you are recording, or you can play back a recording and watch it. For details, see "Cancel a Recording That Is in Progress" on page 19.

## FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS, CONTINUED

- Q. Can I erase part of a recording?  
A. No. The DVR erases the entire recording.
- Q. What happens if a sports event that I scheduled to record goes into overtime?  
A. The DVR cannot determine whether a live program will end at its scheduled time. If there is a chance that the event you are recording may continue past its scheduled time, you can allow for this uncertainty by extending the stop time on the Confirm Recording screen.
- Q. Do my Parental Controls in the Program Guide carry over to DVR recordings?  
A. Yes. If you block programs by channel or rating in the **General Settings** menu, recordings of these programs also are blocked. They will be recorded, but to play them back, you must enter your 4-digit PIN. For details, see "Watch Blocked Recordings" on page 9.
- Q. Do my Parental Controls on my multi-room DVR carry over to multi-room clients?  
A. No. Regardless of what blocking is set on the server (multi-room DVR), each client blocks content according to its own Parental Control settings.
- Q. A program I recorded on the DVR displays "Blocked Title" instead of the actual program title. Why?  
A. The General Setting Block: Titles is set to hidden, and the program was blocked by Parental Controls. For details, see "Hiding and Viewing Blocked Program Titles" on page 7.
- Q. At the end of the program playback, the DVR started playing the recording again from the beginning. Why?  
A. To prevent screen burn in, the DVR prevents graphics and a still image from being displayed for too long. The Playback Status screen displays when a recording ends. If this screen is shown for 5 minutes, the DVR begins playing the recording again from the beginning.
- Q. When the DVR is turned Off, will the programs that I have scheduled to record still be recorded?  
A. Yes. When the DVR is powered **Off** (but is still plugged into an active outlet), all scheduled recordings are performed automatically – and your recordings are protected. To turn off your DVR, simply press **⏻** and then **POWER** on your remote, or press **Power** on the front panel of the DVR. The Power light turns off; but, because the DVR is still plugged in to an active outlet, your scheduled recordings still occur.
- Q. I watched two 30-minute programs on the same channel, but when I pressed Record, the DVR recorded only the most recent program. Why didn't it record both programs since it buffered both programs?  
A. It recorded the most recent program because it was the live program at the time that you pressed Record. The DVR does buffer all programs on a channel for up to one hour. However, when you are watching live programming, the DVR assumes that you want to record a specific program, not a specific channel. For that reason, the DVR records only the program that is currently being broadcast at the time that you press Record.  
  
For example, let's say that you tune to a channel for 45 minutes and during that time watch a 30-minute "Friends" episode, and then you watch the first 15 minutes of "Seinfeld." You can rewind to the beginning of "Friends," but if you press Record, the DVR records only "Seinfeld." The DVR records only "Seinfeld" because "Seinfeld" is the live program at the time you pressed Record.

## FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS, CONTINUED

**Q. Why did the DVR record only part of a program?**

- A.** *If the beginning of the program is missing, you may have tuned to the program and pressed  after it began.*

*If the end of the program is missing, the DVR may have reached its storage capacity, the program may have continued past its scheduled time, or you may have manually stopped the recording.*

*If there is a chance that the program you are recording may continue past its scheduled time, you can allow for this uncertainty by extending the stop time on the Confirm Recording screen.*

*To determine why the entire program was not recorded, display the Recorded List screen and select the program in question. The Information area in the upper left of the Recorded List screen indicates one of the following reasons:*

- User stopped recording early.*
- Reached storage capacity.*

*If the DVR has reached its storage capacity, you must make space to record other programs. To make more space on the DVR:*

- 1. Erase recordings that you no longer want, or copy recordings you want to keep to a VCR tape and then erase them from the DVR. For details, see "Erase Recordings" on page 22 or "Copy Recordings From Your DVR to a VCR Tape" on page 23.*
- 2. Turn Auto Erase On. Your oldest recordings are erased automatically if space is needed. For details, see "Automatically Erase Oldest Recordings" on page 22.*

**Q. I tried to copy a DVR recording to a VCR tape, but nothing recorded. Why?**

- A.** *Some DVR recordings, particularly pay-per-view events, cannot be archived to VCR tape, due to copy protection settings within the program content.*


*If you copy a DVR recording to a VCR tape, do not delete the DVR recording until you verify that you can successfully playback the recording on the VCR tape. You have to playback the recording on the VCR tape to verify that the archiving process was successful.*

### QUESTIONS ABOUT THE MULTI-ROOM DVR CLIENT SET-TOP

**Q. Can a Multi-Room DVR client set-top record a program?**

- A.** *No. Programs must be set up to record on the Multi-Room DVR server.*

**Q. Can I erase a recording on the Multi-Room DVR server if someone is currently watching it on one of the client set-tops?**

- A.** *Yes. However, a warning/confirmation message will be displayed on the TV connected to the Multi-Room DVR server stating that someone is watching the recording on another TV. The message will state "....are you sure you want to erase it?" If your answer is yes, press  to confirm that you do want to erase it.*

**Q. Why can't the Multi-Room DVR client set-top play recordings whose titles are gray in the Recorded List?**

- A.** *The recording may be a high-definition program or someone may have erased the recording on the Multi-Room DVR server. You can find out if the recording has been erased by closing the Recorded List and then displaying it again. If the recording is not listed when you display the Recorded List for the second time, then it has been erased. If the recording is still listed in gray, the recording was made from a high-definition program and can only be played back on the 8300HD Multi-Room DVR server set-top.*

**Note:** *As a future enhancement, the Explorer 3250HD client set-top will be able to playback HD recordings.*

## FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS, CONTINUED

### QUESTIONS ABOUT HDTV PROGRAMS

**Q. Are local TV stations broadcasting in HDTV?**

- A. *Many local TV stations and other programmers are transmitting digital signals. However, transmitting a digital signal does not mean transmitting an HDTV signal. Most stations, however, once they begin broadcasting in digital are offering HD programs from their parent station, such as CBS, ABC, NBC, Fox, WB, UPN, or PBS.*

**Q. How can I find out which programs are broadcast in HD?**

- A. *To find out which programs are broadcast in HD, log on to the Web site of your service provider. Many service providers list their channel lineups on their Web sites and indicate the channels that are broadcast in HD.*

**Q. Why are some HDTVs 4:3 Aspect Ratio and Others 16:9?**

- A. *The aspect ratios differ because television manufacturers build both standard-screen and wide-screen HDTVs to appeal to consumer viewing preferences. The two aspect ratios are as follows:*
- *On wide-screen (16:9) HDTVs, the programming is displayed on the full screen.*
  - *On standard-screen (4:3) HDTVs, the programming is displayed in letterbox format in the middle of the screen. (There are bars surrounding the picture.)*

**Q. What are the differences between standard TVs and HDTVs?**

- A. • *HDTVs can be 1/3 wider than traditional TVs, although some HDTVs have a traditional (4:3 aspect ratio).*
- *HDTV uses a much finer resolution to create the TV picture—1125 lines for HDTV as compared to 525 lines used in standard TV (SDTV). This means that the resolution for HDTVs can be up to 1920 x 1080 pixels as compared with 720 x 480 for SDTVs.*
- *In the United States, HDTV is always broadcast with digital signals. SDTV is currently broadcast in both digital and analog. (However, HDTV and digital SDTV do not use the same digital signal.)*
- *Generally, all HDTV-ready monitors or integrated HDTV sets are capable of supporting an SDTV 480i or 480p signal. Not all HDTV monitors support both 720p and 1080i HDTV signals. For instance, some plasma displays support only 720p.*

**Q. I have a wide-screen HDTV and am tuned to a channel that is listed as an HD channel, but the picture is not displayed in a wide-screen format. What's wrong?**

- A. *The program may not be an HD program. Not all stations broadcast HD programs. Because non-HD programs do not use a wide format, the picture does not fill the width of the screen. To fill the space, the DVR automatically places bars on the sides of non-HD programs. You can change this display to one that removes the bars and fills the screen with the picture.*

**Q. I'm concerned about burn in. Can I remove the bars that display when watching certain programs on my HDTV?**

- A. *Yes. You can remove the bars and enlarge or stretch the picture to fill the screen. If you have a standard-screen HDTV, you might try removing the bars by displaying the program in a different picture format.*

*Burn in or "ghosting" occurs when an image is displayed on a TV for an extended period of time. Through time, the image becomes permanently burned into the screen, leaving a faint image of it on the screen. Some kinds of HDTVs are more susceptible to burn in than others. For other ways to reduce burn in, refer to the user's guide that came with your HDTV.*

## GET MORE INFORMATION OR ASSISTANCE

This guide is designed to help you become familiar with the tasks you use most often when controlling live programs or recordings, recording programs, playing recordings, and displaying the PIP. It does not provide comprehensive information about the DVR. For example, you won't find instructions on how to install the DVR in this guide.

If you haven't found the answer to a question you have, you can make use of the following resources.

### ONLINE DOCUMENTATION OR THE EXPLORER eCLUB

If you have questions after looking through the "Find Answers to Frequently Asked Questions" section of this guide, check the Scientific Atlanta Web site at [www.scientificatlanta.com](http://www.scientificatlanta.com). It contains online customer support on a number of topics, including installation and setup. You'll also find the latest information about the DVR there, including updates to frequently asked questions.

For additional information about your DVR, Scientific Atlanta invites you to join the Explorer eClub. This online club provides news and information about the DVR. Access the Explorer eClub on the Internet at the following Web address:

[www.scientificatlanta.com/explorerclub](http://www.scientificatlanta.com/explorerclub)

To join and access the Explorer eClub, you need to enter the model number of your DVR and your email address.

### CUSTOMER SUPPORT

If you have questions after looking through the "Frequently Asked Questions" section of this guide and the Explorer eClub, contact your service provider.

### INFORMATION TO PROVIDE WHEN CALLING FOR ASSISTANCE

To best answer your question, your service provider may ask you for the following information:

- **Product name and number:** To find the model name and number, look on the front of the DVR. The model name (Explorer) and model number (for example, 8300) are printed there.

Write your model name and number here: \_\_\_\_\_

- **Serial number:** To find this number, look on the back of the DVR for a label that is similar to the example shown below.

#### FIND THE DVR SERIAL NUMBER

To find the serial number, look on the back of the DVR for a label that is similar to the following example. The serial number begins with SA and is located in the lower left corner of the bar code.

Sample Serial Number



#### CAUTION:

**Avoid damage to the product!**

Your DVR contains a sophisticated hard disk drive that is designed to record and stream digital video. You must not mishandle this DVR product. Handle this product with the same level of care you would use when handling other electronics containing a hard disk drive, such as computers.

Always wait at least 10 seconds after powering down the DVR for the hard drive heads to spin down (stop) before moving or handling the DVR.

## NOTES



# INDEX

## B

- Blocked program titles 7
- Blocking programs, methods of 7, 27
- Blocking recordings 9, 27
- Browse By feature 10, 11
- Buffer, explanation of 13
- Buttons. *See* Remote control keys

## C

- Cable mode 3
- Camcorder, connecting 2
- Canceling
  - recordings in progress 19
  - scheduled recordings 19
- Changing
  - channel of PIP screen 15
  - number of days to save recording 21
- Channel banner, displaying 15
- Channel buffer, *See* Buffer
- Channel Change Notice** screen 17
- Channels
  - favorite 9
  - selecting to be blocked 7
- Closed lock symbol 7, 9, 28
- Confirm Recording** screen 16
- Connecting
  - DVR 1
  - External devices to DVR 2
- Copying recordings to VCR tape 23, 32
- Current recordings, finding 18
- Customer Support 34

## D

- Date, search programs 11
- Default Save Time setting
  - changing for future recordings 21
  - explanation of 21
  - recording with 21
  - single recording 21
- Displaying
  - Browse By options 11
  - channel banner 15
  - list of recordings 18
  - list of scheduled recordings 18
  - Parental Control setting 7
  - PIP screen 15
  - Program Guide 10
  - programs to block 7

## Displaying, continued

- Recorded List** screen 18
- Scheduled Recordings** screen 18

## E

- Erasing
  - portions of a recording 31
  - recordings 22, 30, 31
  - recovering 30
- Explorer eClub, about 34
- Explorer screens *inside of back cover*
- Extend recording time 21
- External devices, connecting 2

## F

- FAQs 29
- Fast-forwarding
  - live programs 13
  - PIP screen 29
  - recordings 13
  - speeds 13
- Favorite channels 9
- Finding Programs. *See* Program Guide
- Formats, picture 5
- Frame by frame viewing 14
- Future programs
  - changing default save time 21
  - recording 12, 16
  - selecting from Program Guide 12

## G

- General Settings menu
  - adjusting HD picture 5-6
  - audio output 2
  - blocking programs 7
  - favorite channels 9
- Guide screen. *See* Explorer screens

## H

- HDMI Interface 1, 2
- HDTV
  - display 5-6
  - storage of programs 20
- Hiding titles of blocked programs 7
- High-definition programs. *See* HDTV

# INDEX

## I

Information area on Explorer screens,  
*inside of back cover*

Installation, instructions for 29

Instant replay 14

## K

Keys, nonresponsive 29

*See also individual key names;*  
*inside of front cover*

## L

List of recordings, displaying 18

Live TV, controlling 13-14

Lock symbols

Closed Lock 7, 9, 28

Open Lock 7

Loss of power 29

## M

Main TV screen

PIP screen 15

Quarter screen 10

stretching 4

swapping with PIP screen 15

zooming 4

Manual recordings 19

MR-DVR system

controlling viewing 27

parental controls, clients and 28

## O

Online information, Explorer eClub 34

Open lock symbol 7

Overtime in sporting events and  
other programs, recording of 31

## P

Padlock symbol. *See* Lock symbols

Parental Control feature

blocking programs 7

blocking recordings 9

hiding blocked titles 7

how to use 7

playing blocked recordings 9

on DVR clients 27, 28

Parental Control feature, continued

turning on and off 8

watching blocked recordings 9

Pausing

live programs 13

PIP screen 29

recordings 13

Pay-per-view events, recording 17, 30

Picture-in-Picture feature. *See* PIP feature; PIP screen

Picture

adjusting display 6

changing darkness of bars in 5

setting format of 5, 6

**PIN Entry** screen 9, 28

PIN, create 7

PIP feature

explanation of 15

turning on or off 15

TV requirements for 30

PIP screen

changing channel 15

displaying 15

fast-forwarding in 29

main TV screen 15

moving location 15

pausing 29

recordings and 15

rewinding 29

swapping with main TV screen 15

**Playback Status** screen, exiting from 18

Playing

and recording simultaneously 16, 17, 30

blocked recordings 9

recordings 18

Power loss 29

Powering off DVR 26

Program Guide

Browse By feature 10, 11

displaying 10

finding programs 10-11

screen. *See* Explorer screens

searching for programs 10-11

selecting a program 12

selecting future programs from 12

Program rating categories 8

rewinding 13

selecting to be blocked 7

# INDEX

## Programs

- blocking with Parental Control 7
- fast-forwarding 13
- finding 10-11
- live control 13
- pausing 13
- ratings 8
- recording 16-17, 19
- removing blocking from 7

## Q

- Quarter screen 10
- Quick Settings
  - adjusting picture format 6
  - parental control on and off 7-8, 27
- Quick Tips *inside of back cover*

## R

- Ratings, TV programs 8
- Recorded List** screen, displaying 18
- Recording
  - all episodes of a program 16
  - blocked programs or channels 9, 31
  - blocking 9, 27
  - canceling 19
  - changing channels 16
  - copying to VCR tape 23, 32
  - displaying list of 18
  - episodes 16
  - erasing 22, 30
  - fast-forwarding 13
  - finding current 18
  - from the PIP screen 30
  - future programs 12, 17, 21
  - impact on storage space 20-21
  - in progress, canceling 19
  - manual 19
  - pausing 13
  - pay-per-view events 17, 30
  - playing 18
  - playing simultaneously 17, 30
  - playing when blocked 9, 28
  - programs that continue past scheduled times 31
  - recovering erased 30
  - rewinding 13
  - Save Time setting 21
  - saving 16, 21

## Recording, continued

- scheduled 18
- single programs 16
- stopped 32
- turning off TV 16
- two programs at once 17
- two programs at once and watching a live program 17, 30
- video-on-demand 30
- watching 9, 18
- watching TV 17
- while watching 16, 17, 30
- with the default Save Time setting 21
- without the default Save Time setting 21
- Recovering erased recording 30
- Remote control device
  - diagram *inside of front cover*
  - placing in cable mode 3
  - preparing to use with TV and DVR 3
- Remote control keys
  - # key *inside of front cover*
  - A *inside of front cover*
  - All keys *inside of front cover*
  - arrows *inside of front cover*
  - AUX *inside of front cover*
  - B *inside of front cover*
  - C *inside of front cover*
  - Cable (CBL) *inside of front cover*
  - Channel Down 18
  - Channel Up 18
  - Day +/- *inside of front cover*
  - DVD *inside of front cover*
  - Exit *inside of front cover*
  - Fast-forward 13
  - Favorites (FAV) *inside of front cover*
  - Guide 10-12
  - Info 15
  - Instant Replay 14
  - Last 18
  - List 17, 18
  - Live 14, 18
  - Instant Replay 14
  - Menu *inside of front cover*
  - Mute *inside of front cover*
  - non-responsive keys 29
  - numeric keys *inside of front cover*
  - Page Down *inside of front cover*
  - Page Up *inside of front cover*

# INDEX

## Remote control keys, continued

- Pause 13
- PIP keys 15
- Play 13-14
- Power *inside of front cover*
- Rewind 13
- Select *inside of front cover*
- Settings 2, 5-7, 9, 27-28
- Stop 18, 19
- TV *inside of front cover*
- VCR *inside of front cover*
- Video Source *inside of front cover*
- Volume Down *inside of front cover*
- Volume Up *inside of front cover*
- Record (REC) 12, 16-17
- Rewinding 13

## S

### SATA drive

- connecting to DVR 2, 24
- recording programs to 24
- troubleshooting 25

### Safety iii

- Save Latest options 16
- Save Time setting, changing 21
- Saving recordings 21
  - methods of 20
  - permanently. *See* Copying recordings to VCR tape storage space 20

### Scheduled recordings

- canceling 19
- displaying list of 18
- screen 18

### Screen explanation *inside of back cover*

### Search programs. *See* Program Guide

### Serial ATA. *See* SATA drive

### Serial number, locating 34

### Setup Wizard 3-4

### Simultaneous recording 17, 30

### Slow motion 14

### Speed indicator on Status Bar 13

### Status Bar 13

### Storage space 20-21

### Support 34

### Swap PIP and main TV screens 15

## T

### Troubleshooting. *See also* FAQs

- loss of power 29
- non-responsive remote control keys 29
- pay-per-view events 30
- program partially recorded 32
- SATA drive 25

### Turn off DVR 26

### TV connections and DVR 1

### TV picture

- stretching 4
- zooming 4
- swap with PIP 15

### TV ratings 8

## V

### VCR connections and DVR 2, 23

### VCR tape, copying recordings to 23, 32

### Ventilation 26

### Video games, connecting 2

### Video-on-demand 30

### Video source, switching 2

### Viewing titles of blocked programs 7

## W













### Watching recordings 9, 18

### Web access to more information, Explorer eClub 34

### Wizard, Setup 3-4

## NOTES

## QUICK TIPS

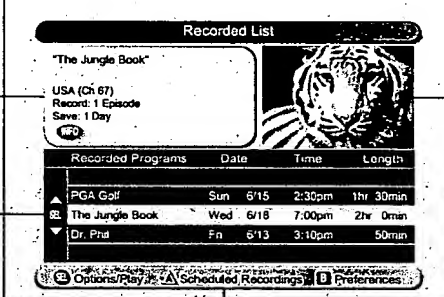
-  Press to display the last channel you were last watching.
-  While in normal Play mode, press once while watching live TV or a recording to see the program in slow motion. Press a second time to resume normal play.
-  Press to remove any Explorer screens or banners and display full-screen TV.
-  Press to display the Information banner. This banner provides information about the channel you are watching. It can also help you confirm that you are recording a particular channel. When a channel is being recorded, the **Recording Now**  symbol appears in the banner.
-  If watching a buffered program (delayed TV), press to catch up with the live TV broadcast. If playing back a recording, press to return to the last live TV channel you were tuned to.
-  Press to replay the last 8 seconds of a live or recorded program. Each additional press jumps back 8 more seconds.
-  For HDTVs, press to remove the letterbox or pillarbox bars. Press once to stretch the display and remove the bars. Press a second time to enlarge (zoom) the display and remove bars. Press a third time to return the display to the normal setting (letterbox or pillarbox).
-  then  Press **Pause** then **Fast Forward** to step through single frames going forward.
-  then  Press **Pause** then **Rewind** to step through single frames in reverse.

## EXPLORER SCREENS

This illustration explains the format of a typical Explorer screen, showing where to look for key information and how selections are presented. Although each screen contains information and options that are specific to a particular task, most of the screens are very similar to the example screen shown here.

The **Information area** displays information about the program you have selected from this screen or about the program you are tuned to.

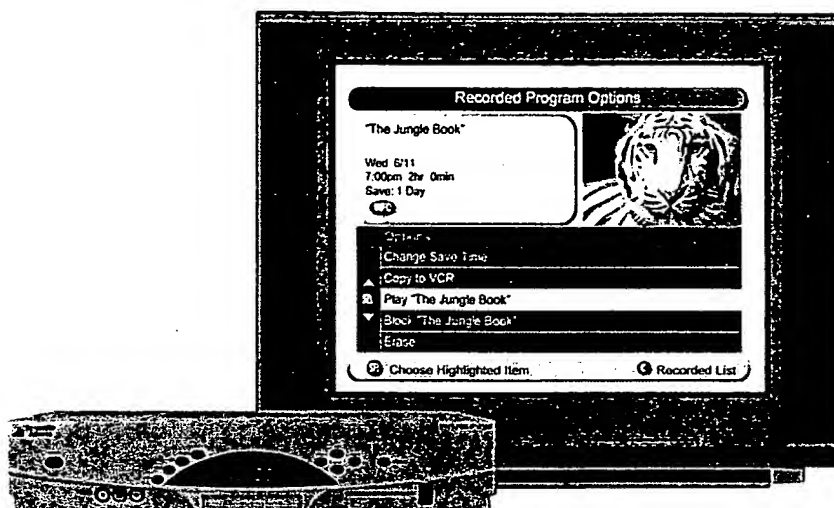
The **Selection area** displays items you can select. Here, for example, are recorded programs that you can select.



Recorded Programs	Date	Time	Length
PGA Golf	Sun 6/15	2:30pm	1hr 30min
The Jungle Book	Wed 6/18	7:00pm	2hr 0min
Dr. Phil	Fri 6/13	3:10pm	50min

The **Quarter screen** shows the program of the channel you are currently tuned to or the recorded program you are watching.

The bar at the bottom of each screen displays selections that you can make from the screen.



**With the Explorer DVR  
you can record your favorite programs  
and then play back your recordings  
whenever you want.**

The built-in digital video recorder and  
Picture-in-Picture feature give you

**complete control,  
convenience,  
and choice  
when watching TV.**



**Scientific  
Atlanta**

A CISCO COMPANY

Use this guide for the following Explorer models:

8000, 8000HD, 8240, 8240HD, 8300, 8300HD, 8300HDC, 8300 Multi-Room, 8300HD Multi-Room

3250HD, 8000, 8010HD, 8240, 8240HD, 8300, 8300HD, 8300HDC, AT8550, and Multi-Room are trademarks of Scientific-Atlanta, Inc.

Scientific Atlanta, the Scientific Atlanta logo, AllTouch, and Explorer are registered trademarks of Scientific-Atlanta, Inc.

Cisco, Cisco Systems, and the Cisco trademark are registered trademarks of Cisco Systems, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and certain other countries.

Dolby is a registered trademark of Dolby Laboratories.

HDMI, the HDMI logo, and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.

All other trademarks shown are trademarks of their respective owners.

Product and service availability subject to change without notice.

Scientific Atlanta, A Cisco Company 5030 Sugarloaf Parkway, Box 465447, Lawrenceville, GA 30042

[www.scientificatlanta.com](http://www.scientificatlanta.com)

© 2006 by Scientific-Atlanta, Inc. All rights reserved.

October 2006 Printed in United States of America

4003870 Rev D

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the U.S. Postal Service as Express Mail, Airbill No. EV 582592297 US, in an envelope addressed to: MS Amendment, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450, on the date shown below.

Dated: February 7, 2008

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

(Sarah J. Peromin)

Docket No.: 549222000101  
(PATENT)

**IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

In re Patent Application of:  
John O. RYAN

Application No.: 08/977,846

Confirmation No.: 3572

Filed: November 25, 1997

Art Unit: 3628

For: METHOD AND SYSTEM FOR  
INFORMATION DISSEMINATION WITH  
USER MENU INTERFACE (AS AMENDED)

Examiner: I. Borissov

**FIRST DECLARATION OF DONALD F. BOGUE UNDER RULE 132**

I, Donald F. Bogue, declare as follows:

1. I make each of the statements in this declaration based on my personal knowledge, except where I indicate that the statement is based on information and belief. I would, if necessary, testify to the truth of each of those statements.

2. I am President and Chief Executive Office of Command Audio Corporation ("Command Audio"), the assignee of above cited U.S. Patent Application No. 08/997,846 (the "Ryan Application").

3. In addition to the Ryan Application, Command Audio is the assignee of U.S. Patent Nos. 5,406,626, 5,590,195, 5,751,806, 6,330,334 and 5,524,051, (together the "Ryan Patents") all of which have the same inventor (John O. Ryan) and describe similar subject matter. (Indeed, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,590,195, 5,751,806, and 6,330,334 all share the same disclosure as the Ryan Application and are all continuations-in-part of U.S. Application No. 08/031,763 filed on March 15, 1993.)

4. Command Audio was founded in 1995 to commercialize on-demand media. From 1995 to 2000, Command Audio pioneered the development of on-demand interactive audio. During that period, Command Audio developed its audio-on-demand device based on John Ryan's invention and laid the foundation for its service to provide broadcasted



audio information for those devices. In 1999, as part of that development process, Motorola, Inc. ("Motorola") invested in Command Audio and took a license under the Ryan Patents. Command Audio introduced its audio-on-demand device (the "RCA CA-1000") at the 1999 Consumer Electronic Show ("CES") in Las Vegas, and its manufacturing and distribution partner, Thomson Consumer Electronics (RCA) earned the Innovation 2000 Design and Engineering Showcase Award for that device. A copy of that award is attached as Exhibit A-1. Further, Command Audio earned the Design and Engineering Showcase Award at the 2000 CES for its audio-on-demand service. A copy of that award is attached as Exhibit A-2.

5. Command Audio's introduction of the RCA CA-1000 and audio-on-demand service also received numerous positive reviews in the popular press. I set forth a selection of those reviews below:

"Command Audio is the first audio-on-demand service that makes it possible for commuters and other consumers to explore and satisfy their own interests by choosing just what they want from hundreds of local and national programs.... Command Audio, marketed under the RCA brand, will feature programs such as continuously updated local traffic, weather, in-depth news, business, finance and also programs on topics such as home improvement and personal investing. ... About the size of a television remote control unit, the RCA CA-1000 ... features easy-to-use controls that intuitively guide users to choose programs, skip from one to another, scan through them and save favorites for later replay. (Exhibit B.)

... At the recent Consumer Electronics Show in Las Vegas ... it was a small company, Command Audio..., that caught my attention and imagination with a new over-the-air pay service that enables listeners to choose the programming they want to hear, whenever and wherever they are. If successful, it would be the world's first audio-on-demand information and entertainment service. ... The service merges traditional radio broadcasting with the processing power of the computer. Command Audio transmits hundreds of programs each day to its network of receivers. The listener, through menu settings, chooses which of those programs he or she wants to hear. The preferred programs are then stored in the radio's internal memory. The listener can then pause, skip from one program to the next, scan by story or segment, and save programs for later listening. (Exhibit C)

6. I believe that those reviews accurately describe the RCA CA-1000 as the "first audio-on-demand" broadcast receiver that allowed "consumers to explore and satisfy their own interests by choosing just what they want from hundreds of local and national programs [including] continuously updated local traffic, weather, in-depth news" and "merges traditional radio broadcasting with the processing power of the computer." This functionality is made possible by the basic architecture described and claimed in the Ryan Application as well as other of the Ryan Patents: a tuner, memory, controller and playback sub-system all coupled together with a menu-driven user interface describing the stored data and allowing selections of specific data for consumption.

7. In mid-2000, Command Audio moved its business from audio-on-demand device and service provider to licensing and software development. In 2001, Command Audio licensed XM Satellite Radio Holdings, Inc. ("XM"). According to XM's Form 10-K filed March 1, 2007 for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2006 ("XM 10-K") (<http://www.sec.gov/Archives/edgar/data/1091530/000119312507044379/d10k.htm>), XM is the leading satellite radio service company, providing programming for reception by vehicle, home and portable radios nationwide and over the Internet to over 7.7 million subscribers. (See Exhibit D). According to page 5 of the XM 10-K, XM satellite receiver/recorders are available under the Delphi, Pioneer, Samsung and Audiovox names at national consumer electronics retailers. (See Exhibit E.) For example, the Pioneer Inno (described in Charles H. Jablonski's Third Declaration) was recipient of the 2006 Best of CES Award given by CNET (see [www.pioneerelectronics.com/PUSA/Products/CarAudioVideo/SatelliteRadio/Introducing+the+inno](http://www.pioneerelectronics.com/PUSA/Products/CarAudioVideo/SatelliteRadio/Introducing+the+inno)) and is available at national consumer electronics retailers such as Best Buy and Circuit City. (See Exhibit F.)

8. In mid-2002, Command Audio sold its software development business to iBiquity Digital Corporation ("iBiquity"), which is pursuing "HD" radio technology. Since then Command Audio has focused on licensing its patent portfolio, the core of which continues to be the Ryan Patents.

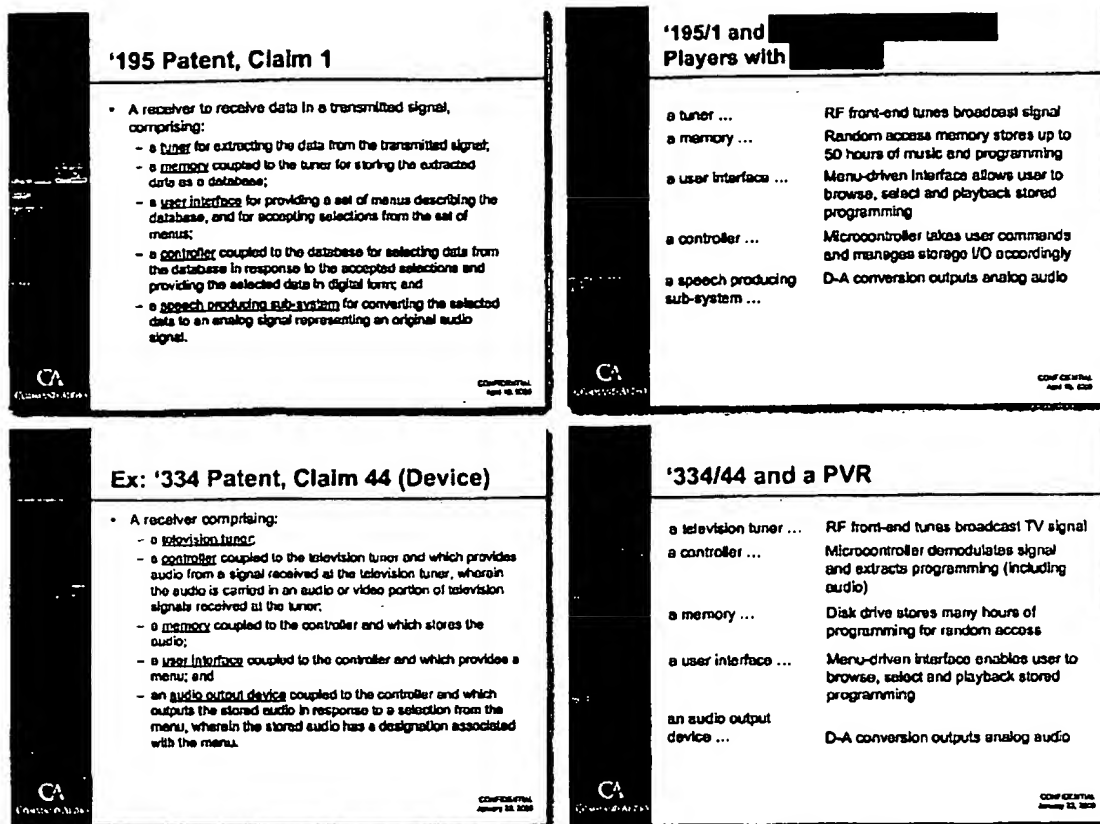
9. Throughout Command Audio's licensing program, I personally have approached prospective licensees, made presentations to them about the Ryan Patents and

pa-1226683

Ryan Architecture (see below), played a leading role in negotiations with them and approved all material terms of the resulting license agreements.

10. Command Audio's licensing program relates almost exclusively to the Ryan Patents and in particular the "Ryan Architecture" described in Charles H. Jablonski's Third Declaration. In its licensing presentations, Command Audio only discusses exemplary independent claims such as Claim 1 of U.S. 5,590,195 or Claim 44 of U.S. Patent No. 6,330,334 with potential licensees. In some cases licensees have negotiated for a license under Command Audio's entire patent portfolio for completeness and others have negotiated rights to Command Audio's non-patent intellectual property. Nevertheless, since its inception the principal focus of our licensing program, our licensing discussions and our licenses are the Ryan Patents and the Ryan Architecture; and since August 2002, the sole focus of our licensing program, our licensing discussions and our licenses has been the Ryan Patents and the Ryan Architecture.

11. Below are actual slides from Command Audio's presentations to prospective licensees relating the Ryan Patents to various products:



I have used versions of those same slides in Command Audio's licensing negotiations over the last approximately six years.

12. In our licensing negotiations, our proposed terms (i.e., royalties in our royalty bearing licenses as well as our paid up licenses) are based on projections of the prospective licensee's entire line of products (e.g., personal video recorders or PVRs) that incorporate the Ryan Architecture. Although we have structured licenses for device manufacturers differently than for broadcasters and have on occasion licensed our entire portfolio (which includes more than just the Ryan Patents), our license negotiations have all centered on the broad independent claims directed to different aspects of the Ryan Architecture. Command Audio has never discussed with any potential licensee structuring its licenses or payments around subsets of dependent claims in the Ryan Patents.

13. In addition to Command Audio's licensing in the audio-on-demand field (such as to XM and iBiquity), Command Audio has also licensed its patents covering the Ryan Architecture for PVRs. Command Audio's PVR licensees include Sony Electronics, pa-1226683

Inc. ("Sony"), ReplayTV (then owned by Digital Networks North America, Inc.) and Scientific Atlanta, a subsidiary of Cisco Systems. Our license revenues to date — which I attribute directly to the Ryan Architecture for the reasons stated above — are in excess of \$19 million.

14. Sony, for example, was one of the two companies (along with Philips) that helped launch TiVo's PVR device and service (which debuted at the same 1999 CES as Command Audio's RCA CA-1000).

15. On February 1, 2002, Command Audio filed its complaint in *Command Audio Corporation v. Sony Electronics, Inc.*, Case No. 02-cv-0599 (MJJ) in the United States District Court for the Northern District of California alleging, among other things, that Sony's SVR-2000 and SVR-3000 PVRs infringed two of the Ryan Patents (U.S. Patent Nos. 5,590,195 and 6,330,334). Those PVR products are described in Charles H. Jablonski's Third Declaration. After years of litigation (including Sony's unsuccessful motions to invalidate the claims of those patents and Command Audio's successful motion for summary judgment of infringement), Sony settled the litigation in 2005 on the eve of trial. In addition to a substantial cash payment for past infringement, Sony took a world-wide, royalty bearing, non-exclusive license under the Ryan Patents.

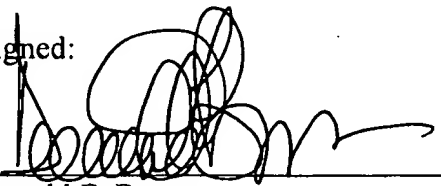
16. According to page 20 of the Form 10K filed with the SEC on April 15, 2004 by TiVo, Inc., ("TiVo") for the period ending January 31, 2004 (<http://www.sec.gov/Archives/edgar/data/1088825/000119312504063164/d10k.htm>), as of January 31, 2004, TiVo had sold 656,000 subscriptions to customers having TiVo-enabled products, including those manufactured by TiVo, Sony, Pioneer, Toshiba and Philips. (See Exhibit G).

17. Scientific Atlanta ("SA") also makes PVR products called the Explorer 8000, 8000HD, 8240 and 8300. ([www.scientificatlanta.com/Products/consumers/newableboxes.htm](http://www.scientificatlanta.com/Products/consumers/newableboxes.htm)). Those PVR products are also described in Charles H. Jablonski's Third Declaration. According to page 15 of SA's Form 10Q filed November 3, 2005 for the period ending September 30, 2005 (<http://www.sec.gov/Archives/edgar/data/87777/000119312505215567/d10q.htm>), during

the quarter ended September 30, 2005, SA sold 465,000 set-tops with digital video recording capability. (See Exhibit H). According to page 17 of SA's Form 10Q filed February 28, 2006 for the period ending December 30, 2005 (<http://www.sec.gov/Archives/edgar/data/87777/000119312506023772/d10q.htm>), during the quarter ended December 30, 2005, SA sold 556,000 set-tops with digital video recording capability. (See Exhibit I). On information and belief, SA has shipped more units of DVR-enabled cable set top boxes in the United States cumulatively through the first half of 2007 than any other company, representing in my estimation more than three billion dollars (\$3,000,000,000) of cumulative revenue.

18. I understand that willful false statements and the like in this declaration are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both (18 U.S.C. § 1001), and may jeopardize the validity of the above cited application or any patent issuing thereon. All statements made in this declaration of my own knowledge are true and all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true.

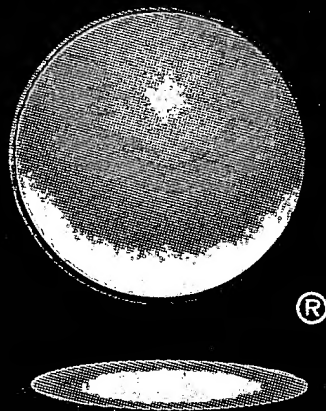
Signed:

  
\_\_\_\_\_

Donald F. Bogue

Date:

2/6/08  
\_\_\_\_\_



# DESIGN & ENGINEERING SHOWCASE AWARD

Presented To

**Thomson Consumer Electronics**

Command Audio Receiver

CA-1000

**1999 International CES**

A-2

®

# DESIGN & ENGINEERING SHOWCASE AWARD

Exhibitor Recognition  
Presented To

Command Audio  
Command Audio Audio On Demand Service



Reviews • On TV • Companies • DVD Movies • News Archives • Contact Us • About Us • Contest • Advertising

**Friends is on at 8:00 tonight.**Make this  
your home!Free  
software!Bulletin  
board!Shop  
online!

**THE NATION'S LEADING NEW  
PRODUCTS REPORTING SERVICE**  
[Click here to find out about us!](#)

**Command Audio****Audio-on-demand to debut in 1999**

**01/07/1999** – If you spend countless hours commuting to work on the subway, train, car or bus, there's a new way to get your daily news fix: From Thomson Consumer Electronics comes Command Audio -- no longer will you have to juggle your

newspaper and morning coffee or wait until you get to the office to read the morning paper.

Command Audio is the first audio-on-demand service that makes it possible for commuters and other consumers to explore and satisfy their own interests by choosing just what they want from hundreds of local and national programs, selected from both print and broadcast media.

Command Audio, marketed under the RCA brand, will feature programs such as continuously updated local traffic, weather, in-depth news, sports, business, finance and also programs on topics such as home improvement and personal investing.

Program sources include Time magazine, People magazine, Sports Illustrated, National Public Radio and ABC News, and include well known personalities such as Dr. Laura, Art Bell, Jim Rome and Bob Edwards from radio and Ted Koppel and Jim Lehrer from television.

About the size of a television remote control unit, the RCA CA-1000 wirelessly captures and stores the programs each listener wants, then plays them back at any desired time. The receiver requires no computer or Internet connection to select, receive or play back programs. It features easy-to-use controls that intuitively guide users to choose programs, skip from one to another, scan through them and save favorites for later replay. A natural "eyes free" interface ensures commuters can enjoy Command Audio safely while driving.

Every CA-1000 receiver comes pre-set to capture twenty to thirty of the most popular programs. A consumer can simply continue to receive and listen to those pre-set programs or, whenever convenient, can select from among the hundreds of programs available and personalize the service to match his or her specific needs and interests. Breaking news and local traffic is automatically updated as new information becomes available, typically every few minutes. Consumers can also choose from

**Hot News**

**RealNetworks' RealJukebox**  
Now you can turn your PC into a Jukebox with

RealNetworks' RealJukebox. RealJukebox is a digital music product that gives consumers everything they need to acquire, play and manage their music collections. RealJukebox is based on RealSystem MP. [Click here for more](#)



**JVC Portable CD Players**

The only thing that gets me through my workout on the treadmill is listening to tunes -- the only problem is that sometimes my CD player skips because of the movement. JVC recently introduced a new line of portable CD players for folks on the go. [Click here for more](#)



**Olympus V90 Digital Voice Recorder**

If you are involved in dictating notes, or prefer verbal notes when in meetings or on the road, check out this voice recorder from Olympus. The V90 Digital Voice Recorder is a tiny 1.6-ounce digital voice recorder that fits in the palm of the hand. [Click here for more](#)



**CLICK HERE  
AND SEE  
THE LIGHT**

**(WAHL)**

programs such as nationally syndicated radio shows "Car Talk", Garrison Keillor and Billy Graham; local radio and original content programs; and also spoken-word selections from popular publications including Business Week, Scientific American, Popular Science and the Associated Press.

The CA-1000 receiver plays wirelessly through a car's audio system. It can also be used with headphones or the built-in speaker outside of the car.

Command Audio will make its debut in 10 markets in 1999 and rollout across the country beginning in 2000. The service will cost \$15 a month, about as much as a daily newspaper. The RCA CA-1000 receiver will sell for about \$200.

by The Gadget Guru



PREV



INDEX



NEXT

Links to related product categories:

[Audio](#)  
[Car Audio](#)  
[Portable Audio](#)  
[Audio Accessories](#)  
[Transportation](#)  
[Auto Accessories](#)

## Free Newsletter!

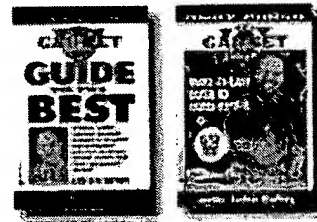
Subscribe now to our free email newsletter!

email address

☐ Join ☐ Quit

## Gadget Guru Books

You've seen him on TV and on his website -- now you can get the books as well! Each is chock full of useful product information that no consumer can afford to be without. Click [here](#) to order copies from Amazon.com, or click on one of the books to learn more!



The Gadget Guru's Guide to the Kitchen is now available online and in stores near you! Click [here](#) for more.

### Sears PartsDirect:

4 million repair parts from washers to lawn mowers.

[Reviews](#) • [On TV](#) • [Companies](#) • [DVD Movies](#) • [News Archives](#) • [Contact Us](#) • [About Us](#) • [Contest](#) • [Advertising](#)

Copyright © 1995-1999 The Gadget Guru LLC. All Rights Reserved.



## Back to the Future of Audio Broadcasting

by Frank Beacham – March 2000 Column #49

As a child of the 60s, I still carry a strong sense of nostalgia for the discoveries of the open road. Inspired by the transient adventures of Jack Kerouac and Neal Cassady, I loved nothing more than putting foot to the pedal and roaring off into what was then a widely diverse American landscape.

Those were days before the mass-marketed, homogenized entertainment culture had taken hold. Mom and pop diners (the best and the worst) still outnumbered fast food joints, you could always find a good hardware store along the way, and shopping malls were few and far between.

One of the best parts of those heady times was local radio. Each new town brought a new listening experience. Driving through the South in the early 60s, you might encounter "John R" introducing rhythm and blues music to a still segregated South from WLAC in Nashville. Or, in San Francisco a few years later, it might have been "Big Daddy" Tom Donahue's unique freeform "underground" radio on KSAN.

Spinning the dial along the open road offered an introduction to the town you were passing through. The best local DJ's -- shunning a programmer's playlist -- worked from the heart. They mirrored their local culture and gave the outsider a genuine lesson in the richness of diversity among places and people. It was "personal audio" at its finest.

Of course, corporate consolidation and the bottom line changed all that. Today, commercial radio is segmented into tight demographic formats that leave little room for local diversity or the DJ's personal input. Because of this trend, we've seen an explosion of creative Internet radio stations and a movement to establish a new category of low power stations that would dramatically lower the barriers to alternative broadcasters.

The real promise of diversity, however, might rest in new technology. At the recent Consumer Electronics Show in Las Vegas, the big hype was over the pending launch of satellite radio, a new pay medium that delivers dozens of narrowly-formatted music channels directly to the car or home.

Yet, it was a small company, Command Audio of Redwood City, CA, that caught my attention

and imagination with a new over-the-air pay service that enables listeners to choose the programming they want to hear, whenever they want and wherever they are. If successful, it would be the world's first wireless audio-on-demand information and entertainment service.

This is not some pie in the sky concept that may never see the light of day. Command Audio ([www.commandaudio.com](http://www.commandaudio.com)) has already launched in Denver and Phoenix and has plans to roll out to other cities throughout this year. Nationwide service is scheduled for 2001.

Currently, listeners access Command Audio broadcasts over a portable RCA receiver sold for \$199 through consumer electronics retailers. The signal is transmitted using a network of FM subcarriers. Subscriptions for audio services begin at \$11.95 a month.

Most of today's programs come from brand names in broadcasting and print media. But as the service ramps up, Command Audio plans to offer a diverse range of programming that's difficult, if not impossible, to find over traditional broadcast stations.

The service merges traditional radio broadcasting with the processing power of the computer. Command Audio transmits hundreds of programs each day to its network of receivers. The listener, through menu settings, chooses which of those programs he or she wants to hear. The preferred programs are stored in the radio's internal memory. The listener can then pause, skip from one program to the next, scan by story or segment, and save programs for later listening.

Beyond the current FM subcarrier technology, Command Audio and Motorola announced that the service will soon be broadcast to vehicles in the next generation of automotive telematics systems. Telematics technology combines wireless voice and data, including Global Positioning Systems (GPS), to provide location-specific security, information, and entertainment to the occupants of automobiles.

As a result of the alliance, Command Audio's service will be integrated into Motorola's new iRadio, a next-generation in-vehicle information and entertainment system. There are plans to extend the service to a variety of platforms, including handheld information appliances, in the future.

Of course, technologies like Command Audio can never deliver the mass audience that enabled radio to help shape our collective culture in an earlier era. By its very nature, this new personal audio technology isolates and further fragments listeners into even more narrow niches.

At least, however, it signals a return to listener choice. That alone is a triumph over the current commercial radio broadcasting system. One can only hope that the John Rs and Tom Donahues of the future will be able to find an audience with this powerful new technology.

Frank Beacham is a New York City-based writer and producer. Visit his web site at: <http://www.beacham.com>. E-mail: [frank@beacham.com](mailto:frank@beacham.com).

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549

FORM 10-K

ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF  
THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For The Fiscal Year Ended December 31, 2006

Commission File Number	Exact name of Registrant As Specified in its Charter	I.R.S. Employer Identification Number
000-27441	<b>XM SATELLITE RADIO HOLDINGS INC.</b>	54-1878819
333-39178	<b>XM SATELLITE RADIO INC.</b>	52-1805102

DELAWARE

(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization of both registrants)

1500 ECKINGTON PLACE, NE  
WASHINGTON, DC 20002-2194  
(Address of principal executive offices) (Zip code)

202-380-4000  
(Registrants' telephone number, including area code)

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:  
Class A Common Stock, \$.01 par value

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act:  
Not Applicable  
(Title of Classes)

Indicate by check mark if each registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark if each registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Act. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark whether each registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of each registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K. ☒

Indicate by check mark whether each registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, or a non-accelerated filer (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act).

XM Satellite Radio Holdings Inc.	Large Accelerated Filer <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Accelerated Filer <input type="checkbox"/>	Non-Accelerated Filer <input type="checkbox"/>
XM Satellite Radio Inc.	Large Accelerated Filer <input type="checkbox"/>	Accelerated Filer <input type="checkbox"/>	Non-Accelerated Filer <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Indicate by check mark whether each registrant is a shell company (as defined in Exchange Act Rule 12b-2). Yes ☐ No ☒

The aggregate market value of common stock held by non-affiliates of XM Satellite Radio Holdings Inc., based upon the closing price of its Class A common stock as of June 30, 2006, is \$3,929,035,815.

Indicate the number of shares outstanding of each of the issuer's classes of common stock, as of the latest practicable date.

(Class)	(Outstanding as of January 31, 2007)
XM SATELLITE RADIO HOLDINGS INC. CLASS A COMMON STOCK, \$.01 PAR VALUE	305,813,114 SHARES
XM SATELLITE RADIO INC. COMMON STOCK, \$.10 PAR VALUE (all shares are issued to XM Satellite Radio Holdings Inc.)	125 SHARES

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

Proxies of the definitive proxy statement for the Annual Meeting of Stockholders of XM Satellite Radio Holdings Inc. to be held on May 25, 2007, to be filed within 120 days after the end of XM Satellite Radio Holdings Inc.'s fiscal year, are incorporated by reference into Part III, Items 10-14 of this Form 10-K.

**ITEM 1. BUSINESS**

We are America's leading satellite radio service company, providing music, news, talk, information, entertainment and sports programming for reception by vehicle, home and portable radio nationwide and over the Internet to over 7.7 million subscribers. Our basic monthly subscription fee is \$12.95. We believe XM Radio appeals to consumers because of our innovative and diverse programming, nationwide coverage, many commercial-free music channels and digital sound quality.

Our channel lineup includes more than 170 digital channels of choice from coast to coast. We broadcast from our studios in Washington, DC, New York City, including Jazz at Lincoln Center, and the Country Music Hall of Fame in Nashville. We have added new and innovative programming to our core channel categories of music, sports, news, talk and entertainment. Also included in the XM Radio service, at no additional charge, are the XM customizable sports and stock tickers available to users of certain receivers and other online services.

Our target market includes the more than 240 million registered vehicles including the 16.5 million new cars sold each year as well as the over 110 million households in the United States. In addition, some of our recent and upcoming product offerings focus on the portable and wearable audio segments. Broad distribution of XM Radio through new automobiles and through mass market retailers is central to our business strategy. We are the leader in satellite-delivered entertainment and data services for new automobiles through partnerships with General Motors, Honda/Acura, Toyota/Lexus/Scion, Hyundai, Nissan/Infiniti, Porsche, Suzuki and Isuzu and available in more than 140 different vehicle models for model year 2007. XM radios are available under the Delphi, Pioneer, Samsung, Alpine, Audiovox, Sony, Polk and other brand names at national consumer electronics retailers, such as Best Buy, Circuit City, Wal-Mart, Target and other national and regional retailers. These mass market retailers support our expanded line of car stereo, home stereo, plug and play and portable handheld products. According to Greystone Communications, we have one of the fastest growing consumer electronics products having reached 5 million subscribers faster than new technology introductions such as cable television, Internet, cell phones and MP3 players.

**Proposed Merger**

On February 19, 2007, XM and Sirius Satellite Radio Inc. ("SIRIUS") entered into an Agreement and Plan of Merger (the "Merger Agreement"), pursuant to which XM and SIRIUS will combine our businesses through a merger of XM and a newly formed, wholly owned subsidiary of SIRIUS (the "Merger"). The Merger is discussed more fully below under the caption "Proposed Merger with SIRIUS."

**Our Programming**

The full XM channel lineup as of January 31, 2007 includes over 170 channels, featuring 69 commercial-free music channels; 5 commercial music channels, 37 news, talk and entertainment channels; 38 sports channels; 21 Instant Traffic & Weather channels; and one emergency alert channel. We broadcast from our studios in Washington, DC, New York City, including Jazz at Lincoln Center, and the Country Music Hall of Fame in Nashville. Our programming includes channels designed to appeal to different segments, including urban and rural listeners of different demographics and to specific groups that our research has shown are most likely to subscribe to our service, thereby aggregating a large potential audience for our service. In addition to providing radio formats that are appealing to different groups, in every format we deliver we strive to provide an entertaining or informative listening experience and make XM the audio service of choice for consumers. We continue to add new and innovative programming to our core channel categories of music, sports, news, talk and entertainment. Also included in the XM Radio service, at no additional charge, are the XM customizable sports and stock tickers available to users of certain receivers.

Hallmarks of our programming include:

*Broad range of commercial-free music genres and live radio entertainment.* XM offers commercial-free music channels covering genres including Decades, Country, Pop & Hits, Christian, Rock, Hip-Hop/Urban, Jazz & Blues,

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549

FORM 10-K

ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF  
THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For The Fiscal Year Ended December 31, 2006

Commission File Number	Exact name of Registrant As Specified in its Charter	I.R.S. Employer Identification Number
000-27441	<b>XM SATELLITE RADIO HOLDINGS INC.</b>	54-1878819
333-39178	<b>XM SATELLITE RADIO INC.</b>	52-1805102

DELAWARE

(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization of both registrants)

1500 ECKINGTON PLACE, NE  
WASHINGTON, DC 20002-2194  
(Address of principal executive offices) (Zip code)

202-380-4000  
(Registrants' telephone number, including area code)

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:  
Class A Common Stock, \$.01 par value

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act:  
Not Applicable  
(Title of Classes)

Indicate by check mark if each registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark if each registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Act. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark whether each registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of each registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K. ☒

Indicate by check mark whether each registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, or a non-accelerated filer (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act).

XM Satellite Radio Holdings Inc.	Large Accelerated Filer <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Accelerated Filer <input type="checkbox"/>	Non-Accelerated Filer <input type="checkbox"/>
XM Satellite Radio Inc.	Large Accelerated Filer <input type="checkbox"/>	Accelerated Filer <input type="checkbox"/>	Non-Accelerated Filer <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Indicate by check mark whether each registrant is a shell company (as defined in Exchange Act Rule 12b-2). Yes ☐ No ☒

The aggregate market value of common stock held by non-affiliates of XM Satellite Radio Holdings Inc., based upon the closing price of its Class A common stock as of June 30, 2006, is \$3,929,035,815.

Indicate the number of shares outstanding of each of the issuer's classes of common stock, as of the latest practicable date.

(Class)	(Outstanding as of January 31, 2007)
XM SATELLITE RADIO HOLDINGS INC. CLASS A COMMON STOCK, \$0.01 PAR VALUE	305,813,114 SHARES
XM SATELLITE RADIO INC. COMMON STOCK, \$0.10 PAR VALUE (all shares are issued to XM Satellite Radio Holdings Inc.)	125 SHARES

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

Proxies of the definitive proxy statement for the Annual Meeting of Stockholders of XM Satellite Radio Holdings Inc. to be held on May 25, 2007, to be filed within 120 days after the end of XM Satellite Radio Holdings Inc.'s fiscal year, are incorporated by reference into Part III, Items 10-14 of this Form 10-K.

*Harley-Davidson.* In 2005, we entered into the motorcycle market with Harley-Davidson's exclusive 2006 FLHTCUSEB "Heritage Softail" Eagle Ultra Classic Electra Glide, the first ever motorcycle model equipped with a standard XM Satellite Radio, and continue to be installed on the 2007 model. Our service can also be added as an accessory feature on 12 other Harley-Davidson bikes in its 2007 touring lineup.

*Other Automobile and Truck Manufacturers.* Isuzu, Lotus, Subaru, and Suzuki offer XM Radio as either a dealer and/or factory-installed option in numerous popular makes and models. We are educating automobile dealers about XM Radio to develop sales and promotional campaigns that promote XM radios to new car buyers. In addition, we have relationships with Freightliner Corporation and Pana Pacific, and XM radios are available in Freightliner and Peterbilt trucks.

### *Aftermarket*

XM radios are available in the aftermarket under the Audiovox, Delphi, Pioneer, AGT, Alpine, Sony, Polk, and eton/Grundig brand names at national consumer electronics retailers, such as Best Buy, Circuit City, Wal-Mart and other national and regional retailers. These mass market retailers support our expanded line of car stereo, home stereo, plug and play and portable handheld products. We develop in-store merchandising materials, including end-aisle displays for several retailers, and train the sales forces of all major retailers.

We further expanded our product line in 2006:

*XM2go Portable, Handheld Products.* In 2006, we and Pioneer introduced the Pioneer Inno™, the next-generation portable XM2go satellite radio that plays live satellite radio "on the go" and both MP3s and WMAs. The Inno™ includes a feature that allows the user to "bookmark" songs heard on XM, connect the Inno™ to a personal computer, and instantly purchase the songs from the XM + Napster online service. In 2005, Pioneer and Tao each introduced new XM2go models to follow up on the 2004 introduction of the XM Delphi XM2go MyFi, the first personal, portable satellite radio. The XM2go hand-held models enable users to enjoy XM Radio in two ways: a "live" listening mode that enables users to listen live to all of XM's channels and a "memory" mode that allows users to store five hours or more of XM content, even when the unit is not in use. XM2go models also feature customizable sports and stock tickers, as well as a clock and alarm.

*Plug-and-Play XM Radios.* In August 2005, we introduced the Rody XT, a small, lightweight unit with a built-in FM transmitter that can make any FM radio an XM radio by wirelessly transmitting XM Satellite Radio to any one of its 100 FM radio frequencies. The Rody XT has a customizable sports ticker that displays the latest scores and schedules for professional and college sports. It also has a customizable stock ticker for keeping track of up to 20 stocks, and the popular TuneSelect feature, which alerts the listener when favorite songs and artists are played on any XM channel. The Audiovox Xpress is the smallest satellite radio to offer a five-line display screen and also features customizable sports and stock tickers. The Delphi SkyFi2 has an innovative pause and replay function, a customizable sports and stock ticker and TuneSelect with a built-in FM transmitter. In the fall of 2006, we introduced the Delphi SkyFi3, the next generation in the SkyFi family. While providing similar features to that of the SkyFi2, the SkyFi3 is more compact and provides for 10 hours of storage of XM programming.

*Connect-and-Play and Passport Technologies.* Our "Connect-and-Play" and "Passport" technologies integrate into a broad range of home devices such as stereo receivers and DVD players by allowing the listener to simply plug an XM Connect-and-Play antenna into an XM-ready receiver. Yamaha offers XM-ready products including home receivers and home theater systems. Other manufacturers of our Connect-and-Play home equipment include eton/Grundig, Pioneer, Denon, Harmon Kardon, LG Electronics, Onkyo, Thomson/RCA, Polk Audio and Boston Acoustics.

*Advanced Applications.* In addition to TuneSelect and the customizable sports and stock tickers, we also offer XM NavTraffic, the nation's first satellite traffic data service, which provides continuously updated real-time traffic information for 44 major metropolitan cities across the United States for a monthly fee. For aviation and marine, the XM WX satellite weather service provides real-time graphical weather data for advanced situational awareness in prevailing weather conditions. At the 2007 International Consumer Electronics Show ("CES"), XM demonstrated the next steps in advanced applications featuring XM WeatherLink, providing real time weather information for vehicle and portable navigation systems (including a preview of the Bushnell ONIX 400, the first handheld device to feature the service), XM ParkingLink for dynamic parking space availability information for navigation systems, conversational speech interaction and video technology.

To facilitate attractive pricing for retail radio and automobile consumers, we have financial arrangements with certain radio manufacturers that include our subsidizing of certain radio component parts. We are pursuing additional arrangements for the manufacture and distribution of XM radios for the home and portable markets.



► CAR AUDIO/VIDEO

- The Source
- The Sound
- The Bass
- The Power
- Satellite Radio
- Portable Satellite Radio
- In-Car Satellite Radio
- Nautica Marine Products
- Other Products
- Accessories

Home > [Products](#) > [Car Audio/Video](#) > [Satellite Radio](#)

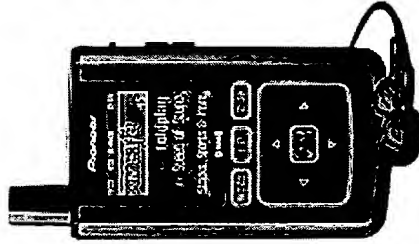
## Satellite Radio

PRINTER FRIENDLY VERSION  
OLDER MODELS

### Introducing the inno

**Live Satellite Radio and Your Downloaded Music Finally Unite in One Tiny Gadget**  
Two of the biggest names in the electronics industry, Pioneer and XM® Satellite Radio, brought their collaborative forces together to bring you inno™, recipient of the coveted 2006 Best of CES Award given by CNET. The buzz surrounding this new device is astounding; after all, this revolutionary handheld device incorporates live satellite radio and an MP3 player all in one. If you're always on the go and you need music to entertain you along the way, inno is your perfect solution.

**You May Have Already Done The Research, But The Facts Are Worth Repeating!**



inno boasts:

- A full color display
- Storage of up to 50 hours of XM content\*
- Ability to schedule recordings in advance so you don't miss a thing
- 170 digital channels of commercial-free programming including concerts, original broadcasts, sports, talk and entertainment
- Easy transfer of your WMA and MP3 files to your inno, to listen on the go
- Ability to create your own playlists incorporating a mix of either your own music or recorded XM songs
- Capability to "bookmark" songs: discovered a new tune? Tag it and purchase it online with XM + Napster
- Home Kit and remote included (Additional home kits available, [CD-INHOME1](#))
- Optional Car Kit is available as an additional accessory ([CD-INCAR1](#)) and is required to utilize FM Modulator/Transmitter

All this wrapped into one little 4.5-ounce gadget! inno will be available in stores and online in May. Check out all the features and specifications on the [inno™ Product Page](#).

### Record Live Satellite Radio

The greatest feature of inno is its recording abilities. Imagine the possibilities—while listening to XM, you hear new song, or an old favorite, and you can easily record it at the touch of a button! Here is a short cut: while listening to the song, press the center XM button for two seconds and your inno will automatically begin recording. And don't worry if you missed the beginning of the song; a 10-minute buffer will capture the recording from the beginning. You can even record a channel for any length of period until you tell it to stop recording, subject of course to how



Introducing the inno  
Live XM Radio and MP3s in one  
incredibly small device

Best Available Copy



SUPPORT ►



PRODUCT  
REGISTRATION ►



NEWSLETTER  
SIGNUP ►

much memory space you have available. Another fantastic option is to schedule a recording in advance. You can choose to record "Today", "Everyday" or even on a specific "Date".

**What More Could You Ask for? Pioneer, XM... and Now Napster Completes This Power House Team**  
Another huge perk of inno is the included XM + Napster software. Here is the exclusive low down. "Bookmarking" is easy to do—it is simply noting a song to be revisited later on XM + Napster. (You can only "bookmark" live or recorded XM tracks, not MP3 or WMA tracks.) Here is where Napster comes in. Connect your inno to your PC or laptop, which will then launch the XM + Napster program. These "tagged" songs will pop up on the screen and give you the option to buy. This feature helps immensely if you don't have time to look up artists or songs. Instead you do the research while you listen, and the XM + Napster software will lead you right to the music you're interested in. On this easy to use website you can also discover new artists, read bios and get further listening recommendations.

\* With maximum available memory set to 100% XM.

*The ability of XM Satellite Radio depends on the signal strength in your location of use and on the ability of the XM antenna to receive a signal. The signal may be unavailable if obstructed (e.g., by buildings, mountains, trees, bridges, bad weather, etc.). These factors may result in an interruption of service. For best recording results, record when the receiver is used in the Home Dock together with the Home Antenna.*

*Required monthly XM subscription , attachments sold separately. Other fees and taxes may apply, including a one-time XM activation fee. XM products, programming, services, and fees are subject to change, at any time, without notice. Live reception may vary by location. Subscription subject to terms and conditions available at xmradio.com. Only available in the 48 contiguous United States.*

*XM is a registered trademark of XM Satellite Radio Inc. INNO is a trademark of Pioneer Corporation. NAPSTER is a registered trademark of Napster. LLC.*

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**  
Washington, D. C. 20549

**FORM 10-K**

**Annual Report Pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934  
for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2004**

**Commission file number 000-27141**

**TIVO INC.**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

**Delaware**

(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

**77-0463167**

(IRS Employer Identification No.)

**2160 Gold Street, PO Box 2160, Alviso, CA**  
(Address of principal executive offices)

**95002**  
(Zip Code)

**(408) 519-9100**

(Registrant's telephone number including area code)

**Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:**  
**NONE**

**Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act:**  
**COMMON STOCK, \$.001 PAR VALUE PER SHARE**

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendments to this Form 10-K. ☒

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is an accelerated filer (as defined in Exchange Act Rule 12b-2). Yes ☒ No ☐

As of July 31, 2003, the aggregate market value of the voting stock held by non-affiliates of the registrant, based upon the closing sales price for the registrant's common stock, as reported in the Nasdaq National Market System, was \$481.6 million.

On April 1, 2004, the Registrant had 80,065,722 outstanding shares of common stock.

**DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE**

Parts of Registrant's Proxy Statement for the Annual Meeting of Stockholders to be held on August 4, 2004 are incorporated by reference into Part III of this Annual Report on Form 10-K (The Report of the Compensation Committee, the Report of the Audit Committee and the Comparative Stock Performance graph of the Registrant's Proxy Statement are expressly not incorporated by reference herein.)

## Table of Contents

**Cost of Revenues.** The costs of our revenues increased by approximately 52% during the fiscal year 2004 primarily because of increased costs of hardware revenues. This cost increased over \$30.2 million, or approximately 68%, compared to the prior fiscal year due to continued increases in our TiVo-enabled DVR manufacturing volume. Cost of service revenues for the fiscal year ended January 31, 2004 increased modestly compared to the prior fiscal year.

**Operating Expenses.** Over the last three years, our operating expenses have decreased primarily due to reductions in sales and marketing expenses. We expect operating expenses to increase due to the planned increased spending on subscriber acquisition activities.

**Cash Flows from Operations.** We expect cash flows from operations in the fiscal year 2005 to decline due to higher operating expenses attributable to our planned increased subscription acquisition activities.

### Key Business Metrics

Management periodically reviews certain key business metrics in order to evaluate the effectiveness of our operational strategies, allocate resources, and maximize the financial performance of our business. These key business metrics include subscription growth and cash flows used in operations.

### Subscription Growth

Management believes this metric provides an important leading indicator of revenue generation in future years. Management uses it to help evaluate the execution and performance of TiVo's and DIRECTV's marketing programs in acquiring new subscriptions and retaining existing subscriptions. We define a "Subscription" as a TiVo-enabled DVR for which (i) a customer has paid for the TiVo service and (ii) service is not canceled. DVRs with the TiVo Basic service that do not upgrade to the TiVo service are not included in our subscription totals. As of January 31, 2004, our total installed Subscription base was approximately 1,332,000, over twice the installed base as of January 31, 2003. Included in the 1,332,000 subscriptions are approximately 14,000 product lifetime subscriptions that had reached the end of the four-year period we use to recognize lifetime subscription revenues.

Below is a table that details the growth in our Subscription base during the past eight quarters. The TiVo Service line items refer to subscriptions sold to customers who have TiVo-enabled DVRs and products, including those manufactured by TiVo, Sony, Pioneer, Toshiba, Philips, and others. The DIRECTV line items refer to subscriptions sold to customers who have integrated DIRECTV satellite receivers with TiVo. Additionally, we provide a breakdown of the percent of TiVo Service Subscriptions for which consumers pay a recurring fee.

DIRECTV reports and pays us monthly subscription fees on a per-household basis. For households with multiple DVRs, we count each DVR as a Subscription. For the month of January 2004, DIRECTV paid us for approximately 576,000 households, which represented approximately 676,000 subscriptions. As a result, there were approximately 100,000 DIRECTV satellite receivers with TiVo for which we receive no additional payment from DIRECTV.

In January 2004, we recognized approximately \$1.62 in average subscription revenue per DIRECTV subscription, excluding advertising and audience research revenues, compared to approximately \$4.27 in January 2003. We expect the average monthly subscription revenue per DIRECTV subscription to decline in the future as the mix of DIRECTV subscriptions shifts to the rapidly growing number of additions of new DIRECTV subscriptions, which involve no acquisition costs, lower recurring expenses, and lower subscription fees.

(Subscriptions in thousands)	Three Months Ended							
	Jan 31, 2004	Oct 31, 2003	Jul 31, 2003	Apr 30, 2003	Jan 31, 2003	Oct 31, 2002	Jul 31, 2002	Apr 30, 2002
TiVo Service	130	59	34	37	75	30	21	24
DIRECTV	200	150	56	42	39	16	21	18
<b>Total Subscriptions Net Additions</b>	<b>330</b>	<b>209</b>	<b>90</b>	<b>79</b>	<b>114</b>	<b>46</b>	<b>42</b>	<b>42</b>
TiVo Service	656	526	467	433	396	321	291	270
DIRECTV	676	476	326	270	228	189	173	152
<b>Total Cumulative Subscriptions</b>	<b>1,332</b>	<b>1,002</b>	<b>793</b>	<b>703</b>	<b>624</b>	<b>510</b>	<b>464</b>	<b>422</b>
<b>% of TiVo Service Cumulative Subscriptions paying recurring fees</b>	<b>40%</b>	<b>36%</b>	<b>34%</b>	<b>34%</b>	<b>34%</b>	<b>34%</b>	<b>33%</b>	<b>34%</b>

**UNITED STATES**  
**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**  
Washington, D.C. 20549

**FORM 10-Q**

(Mark One)

☒ **QUARTERLY REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the quarterly period ended September 30, 2005

OR

☐ **TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the transition period from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_

Commission file number 1-5517

**SCIENTIFIC-ATLANTA, INC.**

(Exact name of Registrant as specified in its charter)

Georgia  
(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)

5030 Sugarloaf Parkway  
Lawrenceville, Georgia  
(Address of principal executive offices)

58-0612397  
(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification Number)

30044-2869  
(Zip Code)

770-236-5000  
(Registrant's telephone number, including area code)

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days.

Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act).

Yes ☐ No ☒

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is an accelerated filer (as defined by Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act).

Yes ☒ No ☐

As of September 30, 2005, Scientific-Atlanta, Inc. had outstanding 153,561,509 shares of common stock.

## OVERVIEW

Sales for the three months ended September 30, 2005 were \$490.0 million, an increase of 8 percent over the comparable period of the prior year. The year-over-year increase was driven by higher sales volume of Explorer® digital set-tops and WebSTAR™ cable modems. Sales of transmission products also increased 8 percent. Gross margin of 37.5 percent was 0.9 percentage points higher than the prior year. Operating expenses increased \$15.1 million due primarily to the expensing of compensation related to stock options and incremental hiring of engineers related to new set-top designs. Net earnings for the three months ended September 30, 2005 of \$60.7 million were \$4.9 million higher than the prior year driven primarily by the higher sales volume, improved gross margin and higher interest income in the first quarter of fiscal year 2006 as compared to the prior year. These increases were partially offset by the recording of compensation expense related to stock options.

## FINANCIAL CONDITION AND LIQUIDITY

Scientific-Atlanta had stockholders' equity of \$2.1 billion and cash and cash equivalents were \$496.7 million at September 30, 2005. We also had \$1.1 billion of short-term investments at September 30, 2005. Cash provided by operating activities for the quarter ended September 30, 2005 of \$27.5 million included net earnings of \$60.7 million and an increase of \$16.1 million in income taxes payable. These were offset by increases in accounts receivable and inventory of \$30.5 million and \$14.8 million, respectively, and a reduction in accrued liabilities of \$19.5 million. The increase in accounts receivable relates primarily to the timing of shipments and acceptance of product in the first quarter of fiscal year 2006 as compared to the preceding quarter. The increase in inventory relates to the production of products for new markets and a shift in product mix due to the variety of models and additional features on these models we are currently offering. Accrued expenses decreased primarily due to the payment of fiscal year 2005 incentives on performance-based plans.

During the quarter ended September 30, 2005, we increased our short-term investments by \$6.1 million and acquired property, plant and equipment for \$9.6 million. In addition, we acquired the outstanding interest in the Scientific-Atlanta Shanghai Limited joint venture from the other shareholders for a cash payment of \$4.3 million.

The current ratio of Scientific-Atlanta was 6.0:1 at September 30, 2005, up from 5.4:1 at July 1, 2005. At September 30, 2005, we had debt of \$7.2 million, primarily mortgages on facilities we assumed in connection with the acquisition of BarcoNet NV during fiscal year 2002. We believe that funds generated from operations, existing cash balances and our available senior credit facility will be sufficient to support operations.

## RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

Sales for the quarter ended September 30, 2005 were \$490.0 million, up \$37.4 million or 8 percent over the prior year. International sales for the first quarter of fiscal year 2006 were \$134.5 million, up 37 percent over the prior year. Year-over-year international sales increased in all regions except the Asia / Pacific region.

Sales of subscriber products increased 8 percent from last year's first quarter to \$360.8 million. The year-over-year increase was due to an increase in the number of digital set-tops sold to 1.1 million units, up from 1.0 million digital set-tops shipped during the first quarter of last year. In addition, an increase in the mix of higher-end digital set-top products and an increase in sales of WebSTAR cable modems to 957 thousand units contributed to the growth in sales. The impact related to the increase in volumes was partially offset by lower selling prices for all of our set-top and cable modem products. Of the 1.1 million Explorer digital set-tops sold during the quarter, 465 thousand units were set-tops with digital video recording capability (DVRs), including 244 thousand units of our standard-definition model and 221 thousand units of our high-definition DVR model. We also sold 141 thousand high-definition set-tops without DVR capability. Together with the high-definition DVRs mentioned previously, we sold 362 thousand high-definition set-tops in the quarter, an increase of 50 percent from the 241 thousand units shipped during the first quarter of last year.

Sales of transmission products were \$129.4 million in the first quarter of fiscal year 2006, an increase of 8 percent compared to the prior year. During the quarter we recognized \$19.2 million of sales related to SBC Communications Inc.'s acceptance of the first Super Hub Office, Video Hub Office, and Video Operations Center related to their Project Lightspeed initiative.

Gross margin in the first quarter was 37.5 percent of sales, an increase of 0.9 percentage points from last year. The major sources of the improvement in gross margin included year-to-year product cost improvements related to cost reductions through product design, procurement, and improvements in manufacturing efficiencies. In addition, benefits related to an 8 percent increase in sales compared to the first quarter of last year, also contributed to the gross margin improvement. These favorable

**UNITED STATES**  
**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**  
Washington, D.C. 20549

**FORM 10-Q**

(Mark One)

☒ **QUARTERLY REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the quarterly period ended December 30, 2005

OR

☐ **TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the transition period from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_

Commission file number 1-5517

**SCIENTIFIC-ATLANTA, INC.**

(Exact name of Registrant as specified in its charter)

Georgia  
(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)

5030 Sugarloaf Parkway  
Lawrenceville, Georgia  
(Address of principal executive offices)

58-0612397  
(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification Number)

30044-2869  
(Zip Code)

770-236-5000  
(Registrant's telephone number, including area code)

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes ☒ No ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, or a non-accelerated filer. See definition of "accelerated filer and large accelerated filer" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act (Check one):

Large accelerated filer ☒ Accelerated filer ☐ Non-accelerated filer ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). Yes ☐ No ☒

As of January 27, 2006, Scientific-Atlanta, Inc. had outstanding 154,827,972 shares of common stock.

MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS  
OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

OVERVIEW

Sales for three months ended December 30, 2005 were \$495.2 million, an increase of 12 percent over the comparable period of the prior year. Sales of subscriber products were \$372.8 million, up 14 percent over the prior year. The year-over-year increase in sales of subscriber products was due to higher volumes of Explorer® digital set-tops and WebSTAR™ cable modems and a continued mix shift toward higher-end set-top and modem products. Gross margins of 36.1 percent were one percentage point lower than in the prior year. Operating expenses increased \$19.1 million over the prior year due primarily to expenses related to the pending acquisition by Cisco and stock compensation expense. Net earnings for the three months of \$53.4 million were \$5.2 million lower than last year. Earnings generated by the higher sales volume in the three months ended December 30, 2005 as compared to the prior year were more than offset by lower gross margins and higher operating expenses.

In November 2005, we announced an agreement to be acquired by Cisco. On February 2, 2006, the shareholders of the company approved the acquisition at a special meeting of the shareholders. The companies expect the transaction to be consummated in the first calendar quarter of 2006.

FINANCIAL CONDITION AND LIQUIDITY

Scientific-Atlanta had stockholders' equity of \$2.2 billion and cash and cash equivalents of \$584.8 million at December 30, 2005. We also had \$1.1 billion of short-term investments at December 30, 2005. Cash provided by operating activities for the six months ended December 30, 2005 of \$121.4 million included net earnings of \$114.2 million. Accounts receivable and inventory increased \$26.2 million and \$8.4 million, respectively. In addition, accounts payable and accrued liabilities decreased by of \$15.2 million and \$6.7 million, respectively. The increase in accounts receivable relates to the timing of shipments. The increase in inventory relates to increased demand for cable modems for which shipments were disrupted due to a technical issue that was resolved late in the second quarter, production of new products we expect to begin shipping in the second half of fiscal year 2006, product mix, and reduced forecast visibility. Accrued liabilities decreased primarily due to the payment of fiscal year 2005 incentives on performance based incentive plans.

During the six months ended December 30, 2005, we increased our short-term investments by \$17.8 million and acquired property, plant and equipment of \$16.7 million. In addition, we acquired the outstanding interest in Scientific-Atlanta Shanghai Limited joint venture from its shareholders for a cash payment of \$4.3 million.

The current ratio of Scientific-Atlanta was 6.2:1 at December 30, 2005, up from 5.4:1 at July 1, 2005. At December 30, 2005, we had debt of \$6.8 million, primarily on mortgages on facilities we assumed in connection with the acquisition of BarcoNet NV during fiscal year 2002. We believe that funds generated from operations, existing cash and short-term investment balances and our available senior credit facility will be sufficient to support operations.

RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

Sales for the quarter ended December 30, 2005 were \$495.2 million, up 12 percent or \$53.6 million over the prior year. International sales for the second quarter of fiscal year 2006 were \$145.0 million, up 25 percent over the prior year. Year-over-year, international sales were up in all regions.

Sales of subscriber products for the quarter ended December 30, 2005 increased 14 percent from the prior year's second quarter to \$372.8 million. In the second quarter of fiscal year 2006, we sold 1.2 million Explorer digital set-tops as compared to 911 thousand in the prior year. During the second quarter of fiscal year 2006, we also sold 981 thousand WebSTAR™ cable modems, up from 460 thousand in the prior year. Sales of transmission products during the second quarter of fiscal year 2006 totaled \$122.4 million, an increase of 7 percent from the prior year.

During the quarter ended December 30, 2005, we sold 556 thousand set-tops with digital video recording capability (DVRs), including 295 thousand units of our standard-definition model and 261 thousand units of our high-definition DVR model. We also sold 125 thousand high-definition set-tops without DVR capability. Together with the high-definition DVRs mentioned previously, we sold 386 thousand high-definition set-tops in the quarter, an increase of more than 27 percent compared to the same quarter last year.

Sales for the six months ended December 30, 2005 were \$985.3 million, up 10 percent from \$894.3 million in the first six months of the prior year. Sales of subscriber products were \$733.6 million, an increase of 11 percent from the prior year. We sold approximately 2.3 million digital set-tops during the six months ended December 30, 2005, an increase from 1.9



**This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning  
Operations and is not part of the Official Record**

**BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- ☐ **BLACK BORDERS**
- ☐ **IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES**
- ☐ **FADED TEXT OR DRAWING**
- ☐ **BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING**
- ☐ **SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES**
- ☐ **COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS**
- ☐ **GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS**
- ☒ **LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT**
- ☐ **REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY**
- ☐ **OTHER:**

**IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.**

**As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.**